

160 Lessons of Persian

Week 1


Are you interested in Farsi? Here's the best step by step online class that starts with Farsi alphabet. Have problems listening to the audio files? Download one of these:


Lesson 1 (Start from the very beginning!)


This is the first Farsi lesson. For those who are, to some extent, familiar with these basics of Persian language, it might seem redundant. Nevertheless, as mentioned above, we are going to learn Persian from the very scratch that I think will be more helpful. Little by little, we will make great progress to begin advanced Persian that will let you communicate with others in Persian in both oral and written. In near future, you will find yourself speaking, reading, and even writing in Persian. These all can only be achieved through practicing these simple steps, which make learning as easy as possible.

Like anything else, you'll have to learn some basics first, and it's inevitable! In these lessons, I have tried hard to simplify the rules as much as possible. However, it's a new language for you and requires at least a little bit effort if not very much! All you have to do is be patient and follow the instructions one by one. In the meantime, we are going to learn the Persian letters and the way they are pronounced and of course we will do it step by step to make sure that everything is quite clear. After you got a little familiarity with some basics you would see that it's really as easy as 1, 2, 3.

1. Unlike western languages, Persian is written and read from right to left.
2. Persian consists of 32 letters. Some of them have small and big form like A / a in English while others have only one form. You don't need to memorize all of them now. Just be patient enough to learn it one by one. In the end you'll see your progress.
3. As you know, English words cannot be pronounced without these five letters: A, E, I, O, U, and sometimes Y as in BY. These are called vowels. In Persian, however, there are no letters considered as vowels. Instead, we put some sounds on or under the letters to make them readable. There are six main sounds in Persian recognized as vowels, three short vowels and three long vowels. Remember that these are not letters. These are sounds that come with letters and make them pronounceable. Today we will learn short vowels. The representatives (symbols) of these sounds (vowels) are as follows:

1-  Do you see the small symbol on A? If this sign sits on a letter, the letter will be pronounced as /æ/ in dad.


2-  If this sign, which is exactly written in the same way as in number one, sits under a letter, it will be pronounced as /e/ in set.


3-  If this sign, which has a circle on his head, sits on a letter, it will be pronounced as /o/ in border.
Note: this sign sits on the letters only.


These three sounds are called short vowels.


Now that you are familiar with these three short vowels you are ready to learn a couple of letters to practice with these sounds.

Today we are going to learn three big letters as well as their small forms.

1-  This is the big letter 'B' in Persian. In the meantime, you don't need to learn how to write it. We are just trying to pronounce it with the help of those three short vowels above. Ready? Don't worry. I'll write it for you. All you have to do is pronounce it.




 This is /bæ/ as in battery.

 This one is /be/ as in bed.

 This one is /bo/ as in border.


Try to repeat it for a couple of times.


2-  This one is the small letter 'b' in Persian. Now try to pronounce this letter in the same way. Don't


forget to read from right to left. You will say.   


Don't be afraid! It's not that much difficult. Don't believe me?

Note: big letters come at the end of the words and may stand either attached or separated from other letters (they are separable), while the small letters come at the beginning or in the middle of the words and are attached to some other letters (they are inseparable). There is only one exception that will be explained later.




3-  This one is the big letter 'P' in Persian. Try to pronounce it with the short vowels.


 as /pæ/ in pad.


 as /pe/ in pet.


 as /po/ in pork.


4-  This one is the small letter 'p' in Persian. Try to pronounce it. Don't forget to read from right to


left. You will say:   




5-  This one is big letter 'T' in Persian. Try to pronounce it with the short vowels.

 as /tæ/ in tab.

 as /te/ in tennis.

 as /to/ in torn.

6-  This is the small letter 't'. Don't forget to read from right to left. Try to pronounce it.

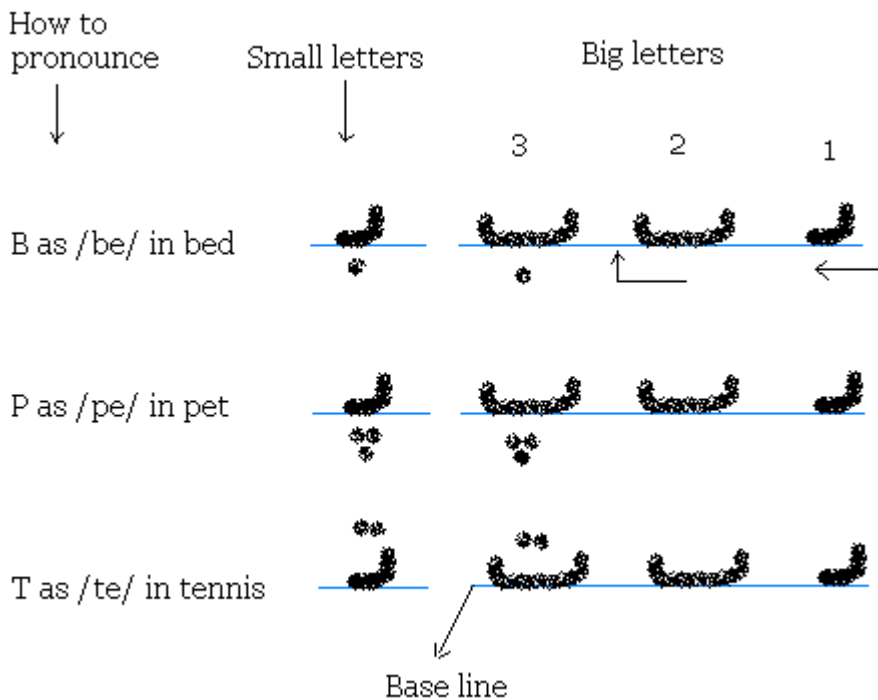
  

That's it for today. Each and every content throughout this site including all lessons, all poetry explanations, and all personal stories are copyrighted to easy Persian. *Do not* sell, copy, or edit the contents of this site without the written permission from the site owner.

This page is recommended if you want to write in Persian. On this page you'll find the same letters you have just studied This week. It will also help you detect Persian letters quite easily. Here, all you need to do is follow the arrows and numbers carefully. Please practice them for a couple of times.

Notes:

- 1- As you know, Persian letters are written from right to left. Please follow the arrows.
- 2- As you see, there are some 'dots' or 'full stops' on or under the letters. Please put the 'dots' in appropriate places.
- 3- Please pronounce the letters with /e/ sound. /e/ as in bed.
- 4- There are lines for Persian letters called 'base lines'. When writing, you'll have to keep an eye on the 'base lines'.



Week 1

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are not asked to either read or write these words at this stage. Please do not try to pronounce these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. All you have to do is identify the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you must at least be able to recognize the letters you have just studied on This week. And this is all I want you to do.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Note 1: please pronounce the requested letters with /e/ sound. /e/ as in bed.

Note 2: it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. Big letter 'B'?
2. Small letter 'b'?
3. Big letter 'P'?
4. Small letter 'p'?
5. Big letter 'T'?
6. Small letter 't'?

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

بزرگ - آب - قاب - بابا - سراب - ترانه -
پروانه - پرستو - تیر - پرتاب - تابش -
مهتاب - قنات - پندار - پند - تولد - باب -
تازه - مهرت - سپاس - پا - تشکر - تنها -
باقی .

The answers:

1. 6 letters.
2. 7 letters.
3. 0 letters.
4. 7 letters.
5. 2 letters.
6. 10 letters.

Pictorial answers:

بزرگ - آب - قاب - بابا - سراب - ترانه -
پروانه - پرستو - تیر - پرتاب - تابش -
مهتاب - قنات - پندار - پند - تولد - باب -
تازه - مهرت - سپاس - پا - تشکر - تنها -
باقی .

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6

WEEK 2

Welcome back!

Before beginning lesson two, I think it's necessary to mention that each lesson is the continuation of the previous one. Consequently, you may find yourself unable to understand the new lessons perfectly if you ignore the previous lessons. So, I strongly recommend that you study the lessons step by step without skipping any of them. I'm sure you will make great progress in near future if you follow the instructions. In the case you followed the instructions as you are being told and still found it difficult to learn, then you would have the right to angrily blame me for wasting your time and I would certainly shut down this site forever! It's a deal!

Ok. How was lesson one? Was everything clear? If not, please let me know. Your suggestions will certainly improve the quality of this site to help you get most out of these pages.

Last week, we learned many things, such as short vowels, three big letters along with their small forms, the correct pronunciation of the letters and so on. We also learned how to write these letters. Do you remember those letters? Perfect! Now try to review them before we proceed.

Today, we are going to learn *long vowels* with the help of the same letters. Then, you will be able to pronounce each letter with six vowels (sounds, as used more frequent in Persian). From now on, make the habit of pronouncing each letter with these six vowels. If this is correctly done, you will become unbelievably fluent in learning and pronouncing the letters.

Ready? Let's begin!

As you know, we have *three long vowels* in Persian. Although we can put some signs *on* or *under* the letters as we did it with the short vowels, I am trying to *avoid* doing this with the *long vowels* here. Therefore, we are not going to put some symbols *on* or *under* the letters. We can *find* these *long vowels* by *detecting* some letters. This will make it easier. If you remember, I told you that all big letters come at the end of the words and may stand either attached or separated from other letters with only one exception. Today, we will see that exception.

Look at this letter. **آ** This is the big letter 'A' in Persian, which *unlike* all other big letters comes at the *beginning* of the words only. Do you still remember the big letter B and P? As you remember, they come at the end of the letters and may stand either attached or separated from other letters. But, here, the big letter **آ** (the only exception) *does not* attach to other letters. It stands separated only. The pronunciation of this letter is not so difficult. It has only one pronunciation, and does not accept any other short and long vowels. You have to pronounce it as /a:/ in arm.

In one word, **آ** this is the big letter 'A' in Persian and pronounced as /a:/ in arm.

Is that clear? If you need to know how the big letter **آ** is pronounced in Persian,

ا This one is the small letter 'a' in Persian. It may appear anywhere in words: beginning, middle, and in the end. This letter can accept all six main vowels, including short and long vowels. Now that we are familiar with the long vowel /a:/ in Persian, we are ready to learn two other long vowels. Those are /i:/ as in see. And /u:/ as in two.

ی This is the big letter 'Y' in Persian. Only this letter *can* be pronounced as /i:/ sound. /i:/ as in see. Note: like all other big letters, this comes at the end of the words and may stand either attached or separated. This can be pronounced as /i:/ *only when* it is *attached* to other letters.

ی This one is the small letter 'y' in Persian. Like all other small letters, it comes at the beginning or middle of the words and accepts all six vowels. The last one is the long sound /u:/.

As I told you before, some Persian letters have only one form. That is to say, their small and big forms are equal.

This letter is *one* of them. **و** This is the only letter that *may* be pronounced as /u:/. /u:/ as in two. I guess you may find these explanations a little bit confusing. Nevertheless, this is the only way to explain the long vowels. I am now trying to make it easier to understand through writing.

As you remember, this is 'B' in Persian: **ب**. Last week, we learned how to pronounce this letter with

short vowels: **بُ** **بِ** **بَ**. Today we will pronounce it with the long vowels too.

- 1- **با** this is pronounced as /ba:/ in barter. **ب + ا**
- 2- **بی** this is pronounced as /bi:/ in beat. **ب + ی**
- 3- **بو** this one is pronounced as /bu:/ in boot. **ب + و**

Now, try to pronounce **ب** with the help of these three long vowels. You will say: **با بی بو**.

Well done! Was it really difficult? Now, we pronounce the letter **ب** with the help of six main vowels. Ready? Don't forget to read from *right* to *left*.

بُ بِ بَ بَو بِی بَا

From now on, we should pronounce each letter with these six sounds. Now it's your turn.

پ This is 'p' in Persian. Try to pronounce it with the six vowels. You will say:

پ پ پ پ پ پ . Great job! If you need help,

Finally, ت this is 'T' in Persian. Try to pronounce it with the six vowels. You will say:

ت ت ت ت ت ت .

All right. This is the end of lesson two. Please remember that the most difficult part of our job is pronouncing the letters with these six vowels, which is the start point of entering into a new language. We wouldn't have this much problem after we learned the letters successfully. From next week, all we have to do is practicing some new letters with these vowels till we complete the letters. So, you may consider today's lesson the most difficult one for weeks to come.

Week 2

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have *to do* is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you *to do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find the long vowels but *don't pronounce them*.

3- as you see, the *majority* of the long vowels are the combination of two letters. Here, all you need to do

is find a letter combined with ا or ی or و , and آ that stands alone.

Examples:

با <= ب + ا pronounced as /ba:/ in barter.

بی <= ب + ی pronounced as /bi:/ in beat.

ای <= ا + ی pronounced as /i:/ in eat.

Note: Although the letter ی or ی (the small form of the same letter) can be potentially pronounced as long /i:/ at the time of combining with long vowels, they must come **after** a letter to accept long /i:/.

Otherwise, when alone, ی is pronounced as /ye/, not /i:/. Here, the small letter ا lets us pronounce

ی as long /i:/, not /ye/. You may also see the combination of ب + ی , which pronounced as بی /bi:/.

بو <= ب + و pronounced as /bu:/ in boot

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. long vowel /a:/?
2. long vowel /i:/?
3. long vowel /u:/?

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

بابا - بازار - پا - تابش - پایان -
بازی - بی آزار - آب - بوران -
توشه - بوزینه - تی تاب - بی -
مهتاب - بی همتا - ماهی - این -
نیست - اینجا - آزادی - دیدار -

The answers:

1. 21 ==> The red ا in these words (اینجا - این) lets us pronounce ی as long /i:/ , not /a:/. (ا + ی)

2. 12 ==> If ی comes before ا , it is pronounced as یا /ya:/. Like this word: پایان
3. 3

Pictorial answer:

بابا - بازار - پا - تابش - پایان -
بازی - بی آزار - آب - بوران -
توشه - بوزینه - تی تاب - بی -
مهتاب - بی همتا - ماهی - این -
نیست - اینجا - آزادی - دیدار -

1 - 2 - 3

WEEK 3

Welcome back!

I hope you are enjoying these lessons. I will be thankful if you let me know about your suggestions.

Last week, we studied long vowels with the help of three letters ت , پ , and ب . I hope you remember the previous lessons. Don't worry if you are not so fluent at this stage.

As you know, Rome was not built in one day! Remember that where there is a will, *there is a way*. All I can say is that you will not be able to find an online method to learn Persian, which is easier than this. Keep practicing, and you will see your progress in near future.

Now, let's begin.

So far, we have learned some letters that helped us a lot with learning vowels. To do this, I had to

introduce some end letters like **و** and **ی** at the very beginning and it was inevitable. To explain the long vowels, we needed these letters. Now that we are familiar with the short and long vowels, which are the most important part of our job at this stage, it will not be difficult to learn and pronounce all letters (alphabets) from the very beginning with the help of those vowels. In learning Persian alphabets, sometimes, it is possible to find the English equivalents for them. Nevertheless, not all Persian letters necessarily have an English equivalent. Therefore, during these lessons, for further explanation we try to find the English and sometimes, other languages equivalents to make it easier to understand.

As you know, Persian language is built on 32 letters. Let's try them one by one.

Note: each letter has a name, which may not necessarily be the same as its pronunciation. In one word, *each letter has a name and can potentially have six pronunciations when combined with the vowels.*

1- **آ** - **ا** this is called Alef /ælef/. You know the explanation of this letter. **آ** this one comes at the beginning of the words and pronounced as /a:/ only. Do you remember it? Perfect! **ا** this one appears anywhere in the words: beginning, middle, and end and accepts all six vowels. Please pronounce it again

with both short and long vowels. You will say: **ا ا ا ا ا ا**

2- **ب** - **ب** this is called /be/ as in bed. When combined, it may be pronounced as:

ب ب ب ب ب ب

3- **پ** - **پ** this is called /pe/ as in pet. When combined, it may be pronounced as:

پ پ پ پ پ پ

4- **ت** - **ت** this is called /te/ as in ten. When combined, it may be pronounced as:

ت ت ت ت ت ت

Now that we have reviewed the letters from the beginning, it is easy for us to learn the rest of the letters. Today, we will learn some more letters.

5- **ث** - **ث** this is called /se/ as in set. When combined, it may be pronounced as:

ث ث ث ث ث ث

6- **ج** - **ج** this one is called /Jim/. When combined, it may be pronounced as:

ج ج ج ج ج ج

7- **چ** - **چ** this is called /che/ as in chess. When combined, it may be pronounced as:

چ چ چ چ چ چ

8- **ح** - **ح** this is called /he/ as in hen. When combined, it may be pronounced as:

ح ح ح ح ح ح

All right. If you need to know how these letters' names are pronounced,

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to

pronounce these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have to do is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you to do.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find what you are asked but *don't pronounce them*.

3- As you see, persian letters have 'dots' with them. Some letters may have up to three 'dots' while some others have no 'dots'.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. Small letter ش ?
2. Big letter ش ?
3. Small letter ج ?
4. Big letter ج ?
5. Small letter چ ?
6. Big letter چ ?
7. Small letter ح ?
8. Big letter ح ?

Note: in addition to these questions, you may find other letters that we have already studied. To keep

yourself updated, you'd better find those letters as well. For example, you may find پ or ت or ب and so on.

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

اثاث - ثابت - رایج - جواب - جایز -
چاه - چمن - ماچ - رواج - چای -
چاره - حامی - حمایت - ارواح -
محبت - محتاج - پایدار - مباح

The answers:

1. 2
2. 1
3. 2
4. 3
5. 4

6. 1
7. 4
8. 2

Pictorial answers:

اثاث - ثابت - رایج - جواب - جایز -
چاه - چمن - ماچ - رواج - چای -
چاره - حامی - حمایت - ارواح -
محبت - محتاج - پایدار - مباح -

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 - 7 - 8

WEEK 4

Welcome back!

So far, we have learned eight letters as far as the alphabet is concerned. Do you remember the letters? Excellent! Now, pronounce them again before we proceed.

ا - ب - پ - ت - ث - ج - چ - ح

Remember that a building will remain strong if it has got a strong foundation. The more you try to learn these basics, the more fluent you will be with the rest of the lessons. Don't be so hasty to learn complete words and sentences at this stage. You will find yourself fluent very soon.

Today, we are going to learn some more letters. Ready? Let's begin.

9- خ - خ this letter has no English equivalent. Do you know the pronunciation of 'J' in Spanish words like Juan Gonzales? Perfect! So, this letter is called /khe/. /kh/ as /j/ in Spanish Juan, and /e/ as e in set. Need help?

Like other letters, when combined with the vowels, it may be pronounced as

خُ خِ خَ خُو خُو

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have to *do* is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you to *do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find what you are asked but *don't pronounce them*.

3- As you see, persian letters have 'dots' with them. Some letters may have up to three 'dots' while some others have no 'dots'.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. Small letter خ ?
2. خ with /a:/ sound?
3. د with /a:/ sound?
4. د with /u:/ sound?
5. د with /i:/ sound?
6. ر with /i:/ sound?
7. ر with /u:/ sound?
8. ذ ?
9. ز with /a:/ sound?
10. ز with /i:/ sound?

Note: in addition to these questions, you may find other letters that we have already studied. To keep

yourself updated, you'd better find those letters as well. For example, you may find ت or پ or and so on.

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

خالی - خیال - شاخی - درخت - خوشه -
 دل - دانش - دوش - دیشب - دست - داد -
 ذرت - ذینفع - مذکر - ذات - روز - ری را -
 رامین - سبزه - زالو - زبردست - زیر - زور

The answers:

1. 5
2. 1
3. 2
4. 1
5. 1
6. 1
7. 1
8. 4
9. 1
10. 1

Pictorial answers:

خالی - خیال - شاخی - درخت - خوشه -
 دل - دانش - دوش - دیشب - دست - داد -
 ذرت - ذینفع - مذکر - ذات - روز - ری را -
 رامین - سبزه - زالو - زبردست - زیر - زور

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 - 7 - 8 - 9 - 10

WEEK 5

Welcome back!

So far, we have learned eight letters as far as the alphabet is concerned. Do you remember the letters? Excellent! Now, pronounce them again before we proceed.

ا - ب - پ - ت - ث - ج - چ - ح . If you still need to listen to their pronunciations, Remember that a building will remain strong if it has got a strong foundation. The more you try to learn these basics, the more fluent you will be with the rest of the lessons. Don't be so hasty to learn complete words and sentences at this stage. You will find yourself fluent very soon. Today, we are going to learn some more letters. Ready? Let's begin.

9- خ - خ this letter has no English equivalent. Do you know the pronunciation of 'J' in Spanish words like Juan Gonzales? Perfect! So, this letter is called /khe/. /kh/ as /j/ in Spanish Juan, and /e/ as e in set. Need help? Click [here](#).

Like other letters, when combined with the vowels, it may be pronounced as

خُ خِ خَ خُو خُو

10- د , this is called /da:l/. This letter has only one form. When combined, it may be pronounced as دُ دِ دَ دُو دُو . Need help?

11- ذ , this is called /za:l/. This letter has only one form. When combined, it may be pronounced as ذُ ذِ ذَ ذُو ذُو .

12- ر , this is called /re/ as in rent. This letter has only one form. When combined, it may be pronounced as رُ رِ رَ رُو رُو .

13- ز , this is called /ze/. /z/ as in zebra and /e/ as in set. This letter has only one form too. When combined, it may be pronounced as زُ زِ زَ زُو زُو .

Note: as you have noticed, these two letters, ذ and ز , when combined with vowels, have the same pronunciation. That is to say, these two letters have the same pronunciation but different functions. For some words we must use ذ while for others we have to use ز instead. For the time being, you don't need to worry about these issues at all. Currently, all you have to do is learn the letters as you are being told. That's all.

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have

to do is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you *to do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find what you are asked but *don't pronounce them*.

3- As you see, persian letters have 'dots' with them. Some letters may have up to three 'dots' while some others have no 'dots'.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. س both small and big?
2. سد with /a:/ sound?
3. سد with /u:/ sound?
4. سد with /i:/ sound?
5. ش with /a:/ sound?
6. ش with /i:/ sound?
7. ش with /u:/ sound?
8. ص both small and big?
9. ض both small and big?

Note: in addition to these questions, you may find other letters that we have already studied. To keep

yourself updated, you'd better find those letters as well. For example, you may find ت or ت or and so on.

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

ژاله - ژولیده - ژیلا - سراب - سارا -
سیراب - هراس - سوزن - شکر - شاخ -
شوریده - شیر - صابون - صورت -
خلاص - عرض - مرض - ضرر -

The answers:

1. 5
2. 1
3. 1
4. 1
5. 1
6. 1
7. 1
8. 3
- 9.3

Pictorial answers:

ژاله - ژولیده - ژیلا - سراب - سیارا -
سیراب - هراس - سوزن - شکر - شاخ -
شوریده - شیر - صابون - صورت -
خلاص - عرض - مرض - ضرر -

1 - 2 - 3 (=) - 4 (=) - 5 - 6 - 7 - 8 - 9

WEEK 6

Welcome back!

Have you studied the previous lessons carefully? It's wonderful if the answer is yes! If not, please study those lessons before taking care of the new ones.

Last week, we covered five more letters. Do you remember them? They are

خ , د , ذ , ر , ز . If you need to listen to these letters again,
All right. Today, we are going to learn five more letters. Ready?

14. ژ This letter has no English equivalent. I am sure all of you know the pronunciation of J in French words such as 'Bonjour!' So, this letter is called /zhe/. /zh/ as j in 'bonjour' and /e/ as e in set. This letter has one form only.. When combined with vowels, it may be pronounced as

ژ ژا ژی ژو

Note: as you have noticed, to write the way letters are pronounced (phonetic alphabet), sometimes, I have

used the combination of two English letters such as /zh/ for ژ , or /kh/ for خ . These are the Latin - based Persian that enable you communicate with Persian-speaking people without having to write in Persian. For the time being, you have to learn these phonetic alphabets along with each letter.

Nevertheless, I *do not* recommend you to use these in your writing, at least at this stage. You will become more familiar with this later. In the meantime, please try to write Persian letters

15. س - سد - سس This is called sin /sin/. When combined, it may be pronounced as

س س س س س س س س س س

Note: like ذ and ز , when combined with vowels, س and ث have the same pronunciation. That is to say, they have the same pronunciation, but different functions. Currently, you don't need to learn about these differences. Just learn the letters as you are being told.

16. ش - ش This is called /shin/. When combined, it may be pronounced as
ش شِ شُ شَا شِي شُو

17. ص - ص This is called /sa:d/. When combined, it may be pronounced as
ص صِ صُ صَا صِي صُو

Note: These three letters (ص , س , ث), when combined, have the same pronunciation, and of course with different functions. In the meantime, just learn the letters and don't worry about their differences.

18. ض - ض This is called /za:d/. When combined, it may be pronounced as
ض ضِ ضُ ضَا ضِي ضُو

Like the previous ones, ض , ز , ذ , when combined, have the same pronunciation.

Note: As I have reminded you repeatedly, you don't really need to worry about the different functions of the letters that have the same pronunciations. Just try to learn the letters as you are being told. Nothing more.

If you need to listen to the names of today's letters, from number 14 to number 18,

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself.

Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have to *do* is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you to *do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find what you are asked but *don't pronounce them*.

3- As you see, persian letters have 'dots' with them. Some letters may have up to three 'dots' while some others have no 'dots'.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. ع ?

2. ه ?

3. ف ?

4. ط ?

5. ظ ?

6. ع ?

Note: in addition to these questions, you may find other letters that we have already studied. To keep yourself updated, you'd better find those letters as well. For example, you may find **ت** or **پ** or and so on.
Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

باغ - باغچه - وداع - عادت - متقاضی - تغییر -
حیات - طناب - محوطه - ظالم - ظلمت - ناظم -
نظم - شایع - جامع - معبر - معابر - دریغ -

The answers:

1. 1
2. 2
3. 2
4. 3
5. 4
6. 2

Pictorial answers:

باغ - باغچه - وداع - عادت - متقاضی - تغییر
حیات - طناب - محوطه - ظالم - ظلمت - ناظم
نظم - شایع - جامع - معبر - معابر - دریغ

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6

WEEK

7

Hello everyone, welcome back!

How do you find the lessons? Is it really helping? I hope it is. I'll be grateful if you let me know how the site is doing. Please keep on writing.

All right. To begin with, let's take a look at the letters we learned last week. Remember? Good! Now

repeat them again. They are **ژ** , **س** , **ش** , **ص** , **ض** .

Ok. Now let's start the new lesson. As you know, so far we have studied 18 letters and practiced them well with the help of short and long vowels. As I have told you before, you shouldn't skip any of the lessons and at the same time you have to learn how to write and detect the letters. It will help you get strong with the basics. You are quite aware that it's you who have chosen this site to learn Persian. And you know that you are doing this because of the reasons you have in learning this language. As a result, I don't need to remind you on and on to follow the instructions as you are being told. All I must do is try hard, as much as I can, to provide you with the good, easy, and reasonable way to help you learn this language. In response, all you have to do is follow the instructions and practice as much as you need. I'll be really happy just when I see your progress. Is that fair enough?!

Today's letters,

19. **ط** This is called /ta:/. This letter has only one form. When combined with the vowels, it may be

pronounced as **ط** , **ط** , **ط** , **ط** , **ط** .

Note: as you see, these two letters, **ط** and **ت**, when combined with the vowels, have the same pronunciation. And of course, they have different functions.

20. **ظ** This is called /za:/. This letter has only one form. By one form, I mean they have no distinguishable big and small forms. When combined, it may be pronounced as

ظَ ظُ ظِ ظٍ ظُو ظُي ظَا ظُي ظُو

Note: as you see, these letters, **ظ**, **ض**, **ز**, and **ذ**, when combined, have the same pronunciations but different functions. Currently, you don't need to worry at all about these functions. Later you will see that it will not be really confusing. Just learn the letters as you are being told. That's all.

21. **ع** This is the big letter. I need to explain some about the way it is pronounced. I am sure all of you know the pronunciation of this English word: Main /mein/. Is that correct? Ok. Now, just suppose that we pronounce it this way: /mæin/. And you know /æ/as /æ/ in dad. Now what will happen if we delete 'm' from its pronunciation? It's quite clear. We will have /æin/instead of /mæin/. So, this letter is called /æin/.

شعاع

It appears at the end of the words and stands separately. Like this word: Sometimes, it appears at the end of the letters but it is attached to the previous letter. In this case, it will be

written as **ع**. Like this word: جمع

ع This is the small letter /æin/. It comes at the beginning of the words and is attached to the letters that

come after it. Like this word: عاصي

ع This one is the small form of the same letter too. The difference is that this small form sits between two letters and is attached to them. Like this word: معاهده. It does not appear at the beginning or end of the words.

In short, this is **ع** /æin/, and has four different forms.

When combined, it may be pronounced as **ع** **ع** **ع** **ع** عا عى عو

Note: as you see, these two letters, **ع** and **ا**, when combined, have the same pronunciation but different functions.

22. **غ** This is the big letter. Like the previous one, it has four forms. The way it is pronounced needs some explanations. However, if you think the explanations of the letters are not convincing, simply listen to their pronunciations.

Hopefully, all of you know the pronunciation of 'r' in French words like 'bonjour'. The pronunciation of this letter in Persian is represented by /gh/, in Latin-based writings. As you saw in number 21, we changed the pronunciation of this English word 'Main' into /æin/. Now, simply put the French letter 'r' or its Persian Latin-based equivalent /gh/ at the beginning of /æin/. We will have /ræin/ or /ghæin/. Is that clear? So, this letter is called /ghæin/. It stands separately at the end of the words, like what you see in this word:

چراغ

Note: At this stage, you don't need to know these words and it's quite natural. All you need to know is the letters that you are just learning. I show these letters in different words to just let you see the status of these letters in different words. That's all.

This one is the small letter گ /ga:f/.

When combined, it may be pronounced as گَ گِ گُ گا گی گو .

Ok. With this we come to the end of lesson seven. Hopefully, it hasn't been that much difficult today.

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have *to do* is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you *to do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find what you are asked but *don't pronounce them*.

3- As you see, persian letters have 'dots' with them. Some letters may have up to three 'dots' while some others have no 'dots'.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. ق ؟

2. گ ؟

3. ک ؟

4. گ ؟

5. ف ؟

6. ف ؟

Note: in addition to these questions, you may find other letters that we have already studied. To keep

yourself updated, you'd better find those letters as well. For example, you may find ت or پ or and so on.

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

فراق - دفتر - فارسی - غرق - عایق -

شقایق - کتاب - کیوتر - کشف - کار -

گرگ - گل - برگ - بزرگ - گزارش -

The answers:

1. 4

- 2. 3
- 3.4
- 4. 3
- 5. 3
- 6. 1

Pictorial answers:

فراق - دفتر - فارسی - غرق - عایق
 شقایق - کتاب - کیوتر - کشف - کار
 گرگ - گل - برگ - بزرگ - گزارش

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6

WEEK 8

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Before we start, I would like to express my deep appreciation to all of you who have been sending me really warm messages during this time. The more feedback you send, the better insight I get, and this will help me organize the theme of the lessons better. Please keep on writing to me. I deeply hope this site is supportive. As I have told you before, I would be really happy just when I saw your progress. Please be kind enough to forgive me if I am not really able to respond to all of your messages.

Has everything been quite clear so far? If not, please let me know. Hopefully, we will complete part one next week. Then, we will take a very short review of what we have already learned before we start part two which will bring us the real work.

So far, we have learned 26 letters. As always, let's see what we learned last week. Last week we learned

these four letters: ف , ق , ک , گ

Today, we are going to learn four more letters.

27. ل This is the big letter 'L' in Persian. It is called /la:m/. Like other big letters, it comes at the end of the words and stands either attached or separated from other letters.

This one is the small letter ل /la:m/.

Note: this small letter can be written in two ways *only when* it is attached to ا /alef/. You may find it

either لا as in ملال, or لا as in ملال. Both of them are the same.

When combined with the vowels, it may be pronounced as لَ لِرُ لِی لُو .

28. م This is the big letter 'M' in Persian. It is called /mim/.

This one is the small letter م /mim/.

When combined, it may be pronounced as مَ مِرُ مِی مُو .

29. ن This is the big letter 'N' in Persian. It is called /nu:n/, like 'noon' in English.

This is the small letter ن /nu:n/.

When combined, it maybe pronounced as نَ نِرُ نِی نُو .

30. **و** This one can be a good equivalent for English 'V', but sometimes it has a different function. For example, sometimes it is pronounced as /u:/ in 'tool'. In this case, it works other than English 'V'. We will learn more about it later in more appropriate sections. This letter is called /va:v/. This letter has only one form.

When combined, it may be pronounced as **و و و و و**.

Note: as you noticed, this letter when combined with long vowel /u:/ is pronounced as both /vu:/ and /u:/. It depends on different words. As far as I remember now, this letter is pronounced /vu:/ in just a few words, and in most cases it is pronounced as /u:/. You will become more familiar with it later.

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have *to do* is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you *to do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find what you are asked but *don't pronounce them*.

3- As you see, persian letters have 'dots' with them. Some letters may have up to three 'dots' while some others have no 'dots'.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. Big letter **ل** /la:m/?
2. Small letter **ل** /la:m/?
3. **م** /mim/, both small and big?
4. Big letter **ن** /nu:n/?
5. Small letter **ن** /nu:n?
6. **و** /va:v/?

Note: in addition to these questions, you may find other letters that we have already studied. To keep

yourself updated, you'd better find those letters as well. For example, you may find **ت** or **پ** or and so on.

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

گل - پوں - ملال - بلال - بالا - حاوت -
خام - من - میان - نادر - نسترن - نان -
وارث - وارد - وزنه - موازین - ولگرد -

The answers:

1. 4
2. 5
3. 5
4. 5
5. 4
6. 7

Pictorial answers:

گل - پوں - ملال - بلال - بالا - حاوت
خام - من - میان - نادر - نسترن - نان
وارث - وارد - وزنه - موازین - ولگرد

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6

WEEK

9

Hello everyone, Welcome back!

Last week I received a very good message from a 15-year-old Brazilian with some good suggestions in it. I wish all of your messages were like this! He had some good suggestions one of which was to present the Persian samples page bilingually. It is a good idea, but believe me that it demands a lot of work. Nevertheless, in spite of all the problems I have, I am going to update the Persian samples page and present it in both Persian and English. In the meantime, I want to make it clear right now that most of the Persian texts you see in Persian samples page are really the masterpieces of our modern literature. Honestly, it is beyond the ability of my knowledge to present a comprehensive word for word translation for all of them. Nevertheless, I am trying to give you a general idea about each work and translate parts of these works into English *wherever possible*. What you should keep in your mind is that the original texts are at least ten times stronger than my work. Anyway, I have tried hard during the last week to do my best to give you a very interesting explanation of the texts in English (at least I think so!). Kindly forgive me that due to many things (lack of enough knowledge, lack of resources, lack of references, lack of time! and so on) I haven't been able to provide you with a comprehensive translation for these works. What I am sure of is that you are going to like it! So, I strongly invite all of you to go back to the first week and Persian samples page and read the explanations of the Persian samples text from the very beginning. I have just uploaded nine explanations for the nine previous weeks. You may find each explanation on each week's Persian samples pages (from week 1 to week 9) in their own original pages. Please take a look at them and please let me receive your suggestions or even a single message. You are going to support yourselves by supporting me through sending simple messages. Ok. Now let's begin.

How was the previous lesson? Let me know if you faced any problems. Today we are going to complete the part one which was about learning the letters and vowels. Most probably, we will take a very short review of the previous lessons next week. After that we will begin the main part of our work. Please try to get fluent with these basics now.

Last week, we learned four letters. Let's take a look at them again. ل , م , ن , و .
As you know, we have two more letters for today. Right? They are as follows:

31. ه This one is the big letter 'H' in Persian. It is called /he/ as in hen. It appears at the end of the words only and stands *separated* from other letters. Like this one: ماه .

This letter has three small forms. Look at this ه . It appears at the *beginning* of the words and is *attached* to the *next letter*. Like here هما .

Sometimes it sits *between* two letters and *attaches* to *both* of them. In this case you will find it as ه .

Like this word بهار .

The third form is when it appears at the *end* of the words and is *attached* to the *previous* letter. In this case you will find it as ه .

When combined with the vowels, it may be pronounced as هـ هـ هـ هـ هـ .

Note: As you see, these two letters ه and ح , when combined with the vowels, have the same pronunciation.

32. ی This is the big letter 'Y' in Persian. It is called /ye/ as in yes.

It appears at the end of the words and stands either attached or separated. Like these words: نانی , برای .

And finally, this is the small letter ی /ye/.

When combined, it may be pronounced as ی ی ی ی ی ی .

All right. Now that we have learned the letters and the way they are pronounced, I need to explain something that is somehow necessary.


As you remember, we have six vowels in Persian, which enable us to pronounce the letters. And as you have probably noticed, I have already mentioned that we have six *main* sounds (vowels). Do you remember? I said that because in addition to these six vowels we have two more that can hardly be called vowels.

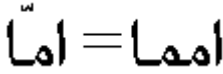

Let me explain it a bit more. How do you pronounce this English word 'address'? I am sure all of you can pronounce it well. It is something like this /ædres/. Is it correct? Good! Now tell me how do you pronounce the letters 'd' and 's' here? It's quite clear. Your tongue simply stops or pauses on these letters without producing any extra sounds. It seems not so important in English. Nevertheless, in Persian we have a name for this. It is called pause or *sokoon* /soku:n/in Persian. The representative of this pause is

what you see on A .

Let's see the second one. Look at this English word 'attach'. As you see, we have two 'T' in this word. *Just suppose* that we are breaking this word like this: 'at- tach'. What we find out here is that our tongue stops or pauses on the first 'T' and pronounces the second 'T'. What the Persian grammar, or I'd better say the Arab-based grammar, is asking us to do is this: "Whenever one letter is written *twice* and the *first one* is *paused*, we should simply delete the first one and pronounce the second one with an *emphasis*." Is the explanation clear? I need to mention it here that this one is not used very often in Persian but it is used anyway!

This *emphasis* is called *Tashdid* /tæshdid/.

The representative of this emphasis or *Tashdid* is what you see here on 'A': . For example

 = . You don't need to worry about this. Maybe you will see it once in one hundred words and probably you won't use this rule at all!

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have *to do* is *identify* the letters you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able* to *recognize* the *letters* you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you *to do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.



Notes: 1- it is recommended that you visit Let's Write page first before doing these exercises. It will certainly help you a lot with detecting the letters.

2- please pronounce the letters that we have already studied. For those letters that we haven't studied yet, just find what you are asked but *don't pronounce them*.



3- As you see, persian letters have 'dots' with them. Some letters may have up to three 'dots' while some others have no 'dots'.

Questions:

In the following words, how many... do you detect?

1. All  /he/?
2. All  /ye/?
3. Tashdid /tæshdid/?

Note: in addition to these questions, you may find other letters that we have already studied. To keep

yourself updated, you'd better find those letters as well. For example, you may find  or  or and so on.

Please try to answer the questions first. Then, if you want to be sure, find the correct answers at the bottom of the following words.

همراه - شاه - ترانه - پرنده - مهارت -
شهاب - سرای - یار - بی قرار - دیدیم -
بچه - اما - بازی - توبه -

The answers:

1. 9
2. 6
3. 2

Pictorial answers:

همراه - شاه - ترانه - پرنده - مهارت
شهاب - سرای - یار - بی قرار - دیدیم
بچه - اما - بازی - توبه

1 - 2 - 3

Lesson 10 -----

Revision

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Let me start by wishing a wonderful Christmas followed by a very prosperous new year to all of you.

Merry Christmas and Happy New Year!

Now, let's begin.

As you know, we have successfully completed part one that was learning the letters. Today, we are going to take a very short review from what we have already studied to make sure that everything has been clear. So far we have learned that there are 32 letters upon which the Persian language is built. We also learned that to pronounce the letters, we needed to put some vowels *on* or *under* the letters. And you remember that we have six vowels: three long and three short vowels. Then we learned that sometimes we have to put an emphasis on some letters, which is called *Tashdid*. And sometimes, it happens very often, we stop or pause on some letters and this is called *Sokoon*.

As you remember, we have many letters that when pronounced with the help of vowels, have the same pronunciations. As I have told you before, you don't need to worry about it at all. Once more, let's see the letters that have the same pronunciations. They are as follows:

- 1- ا , ع .
- 2- ت and ط .
- 3- ص , س , and ث .
- 4- ح and ه .
- 5- ظ , ض , ز , ذ .
- 6- ق , غ .

During this time, we have learned how to write all these letters. I invite you once more to practice writing if you haven't tried it so far. It has some great advantages. One of them is that writing will help you learn things better. The other one, more important one, is that you'll have to use it during our next lessons.

All right. Although I have already mentioned that this lesson is about what we have already studied, we are going to learn some new words today if you have no objections!

Let's simply start by learning the subjective pronouns today. Hopefully you know them in English. These are the subjective pronouns: I, you, he, she, it----- we, you, they. Is it correct? Wonderful! Now, let's see their equivalents in Persian.

Note: We have learned that letters when combined with **و**, which is supposed to be long /u:/, should be pronounced as /u:/ like what you see here: **بو** /bu:/. But sometimes, there can be found some words in which that special letter will be pronounced as short /o/ instead of the normal /u:/. One of them is what you see below for the *singular you*.

1- I = **من** /mæn/ as man in English.

2- You = **تو** /to/ as in torture. And this is one of them I just talked about. It *is not* pronounced as /tu:/.

3- He and She = او /u:/ as in moon.

Note: He and She have the same equivalent in Persian. So, if you simply say او , the people will not know that it's a man or a woman whom you are talking about.

4- It = آن /a:n/ as in answer in British English not American English.

5- We = ما /ma:/ as in mother.

6- You = شما /shoma:/.

7- They = آنها /a:nha:/. And /i:sha:n/.

Note: As you see, 'They' has two equivalents in Persian.

All right. With this, we come to the end of lesson 10. I hope it hasn't been difficult.

WEEK 11

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Last week we learned the subjective pronouns in Persian. I hope you had no problems with them. Let's take a look at them again.

1- I = من . 2- You = تو . 3- he and she = او . 4- it = آن .

5- we = ما . 6- You = شما . 7- they = آنها . And ایشان .

In learning a language, we normally begin with present tenses, like present simple tense (ex. I go to school every day) or present continuous tense (ex. I am writing a letter now). It seems quite natural, as these present tenses bring us less difficulty for other complicated ones. However, I am going to change this procedure a bit and I believe it will be more helpful.

Here, we are going to start with the simple past tense. The reason I am doing this is that we, as beginners, will find it easier to follow, as almost all verbs in this tense are *regular* not irregular. Let me explain it a bit more for those who have problems with these items.

Look at this verb: Go. This verb is *irregular* because we have to change its construction in different tenses. Like this: go – went – gone.

Examples:

- 1- I go to school everyday. (Present simple tense)
- 2- I went to school yesterday. (Simple past tense)
- 3- I have already gone to school. (Present perfect tense)

As you see, the verb 'Go' has different forms in different tenses. That's why I said its construction changes! These kinds of verbs are *irregular* verbs.

Now, look at this one: Clean. This verb is different from the previous one. Here we don't have to change its construction! All we need to do is putting 'ed' at the end of this verb.

Examples:

- 1- I clean my room everyday. (Present simple tense)
- 2- I cleaned my room yesterday. (Simple past tense)
- 3- I have already cleaned my room. (Present perfect tense)

As you see, we just added 'ed' to this verb in different tenses. These kinds of verbs are *regular*. Is that clear? Wonderful!

Now, let's go back to our Persian.

In Persian, it's not the verbs that define the regularity or irregularity of the verbs. Rather, it's the *tense* that imposes a regular or an irregular form on the verbs. Confused? Let me explain it more.

In English we say that this *verb* is regular or irregular. Is that correct? Great! But in Persian, we say that this *tense* is regular or irregular. For example, verbs in simple past tense are regular while in present simple tense are irregular. It doesn't depend on the verbs; it depends on *tenses*. All verbs follow the same rule. As far as I remember now, all tenses except present tenses can be considered regular. So, our problem will be with present simple tense only. That's why I have currently put off this tense.

As far as I remember, there is no such a well-defined rule in the Persian grammar books. Probably, there hasn't been a necessity to define such a rule for Persian-speaking students. I'm afraid, you will not be able to find such clear explanations in Persian grammar books.

All right. The following examples will show you that it is really as easy as 1-2-3! Don't believe me? Look at the following examples.

As I have already mentioned, we are going to start with simple past tense. To do this, we need to learn some verbs or I'd better say some *infinitives*.

All we have to do is finding the *infinitives* (to + verb, like: to go).

Let's see what's 'to go' means in Persian.

'To go' means رفتن /ræftæn/, which is an infinitive.

Now, let's see its form in simple past tense. As you know, in simple past tense almost all verbs are regular.

Now, if we simply delete ن /nu:n/ from the infinitive رفتن , we will have رفت /ræft/, which is in simple past tense.

Note: all infinitives (to + verb) end with ن in Persian. Simply delete ن , and you'll have simple past tense. It's that easy!

In short, this is رفتن /ræftæn/ and means 'to go'. Just delete ن from its end to change it into simple past tense. You will have رفت /ræft/.

Now that we know the rule, it will not be difficult to have this verb with the subjective pronouns. Ready?

I went ===== من رفتم /mæn ræftæm/. ==> رفت + ام /æm/ = رفتم

You went== تو رفتی /ræfti/. =====> رفت + ای /i:/= رفتی

He and she went === او رفت /u: ræft/. . ==> رفت + nothing= رفت

It went ===== آن رفت /a:n ræft/. =====> رفت + nothing = رفت

We went === ما رفتیم /ma: ræftim/. . =====> رفت + ایم /im/= رفتیم

You went ===== شما رفتید /shoma: ræftid/. . => رفت + ید /id/ = رفتید

They went === آنها رفتند /a:nha: ræftænd/. => رفت + ند /ænd/= رفتند

Was it difficult? You may apply this rule to all verbs in simple past tense.

Now try this one.

'To write' means نوشتن /neveshtæn/, which is an infinitive.

Delete ن /nu:n/ from its end, and you will have نوشت /nevesht/.

Then combine it with subjective pronouns. You will say:

I wrote === من نوشتم /mæn neveshtæm/.====> نوشت + ام /æm/

You wrote==== تو نوشتی /to neveshti/. =====> نوشت + ای /i:/

He and she wrote === او نوشت /u: nevesht/.! =====> نوشت + nothing

It wrote === آن نوشت /a:n nevesht/. =====> نوشت + nothing

We wrote == ما نوشتیم /ma: neveshtim/. =====> نوشت + ایم /im/

You wrote === شما نوشتید /shoma: neveshtid/. ==> نوشت + ید /id/

They wrote==== آنها نوشتند /a:nha: neveshtænd/. ==> نوشت + ند /ænd/

All right. With this we come to the end of lesson 11.

As you know, practice makes perfect! Every week, along with each lesson, you are given some words or sentences to practice. I know that, as a beginner, you will find it difficult to read the entire words by yourself. Therefore, you are *not* asked to either *read* or *write* these words at this stage. Please *do not* try to *pronounce* these words on your own or you will remain in an insolvable confusion for good. *All* you have *to do* is *identify* the letters and words you have already studied. So, first go to the This week and study the new lesson carefully. Then click on the Useful drills button to get connected to this page. On this page you will find some words that seem quite stranger to you at the first glance. Nevertheless, you *must* at least *be able to recognize* the *letters* and words you have just studied on This week. And this is *all* I want you *to do*.

NOTE: as you see in the following words, there are no symbols (signs) *on* or *under* the letters. We, as beginners, use these symbols during our lessons to learn the correct pronunciation of the words. Later, after you got enough familiarity with the words and the way they are pronounced you would find it redundant to use these symbols with letters, except for some ambiguous words that are not used very often. I have eliminated these symbols on purpose to let you see the real Persian words that take no symbols with them.

Look at this word: دیدن /didæn/. It means 'to see'. Now simply delete ن from the end, and you'll have دید /did/ Now pronounce this word with the subjective pronouns. Example:

I saw= من دیدم /mæn didæm/. ==> دید + م /æm/

You saw= تو دیدی /to didi/. ==> دید + ی /i:/

Now it's your turn! Try this verb with other pronouns.

Now look at this one: بستن /bæstæn/. It means 'to close'. Now simply delete ن and you'll have بست /bæst/. Now try this with the subjective pronouns. Example:

I closed= من بستم /mæn bæstæm/.

It's your turn to Continue!

Now look at this one: شکستن /shekæstæn/. It means 'to break'. Delete ن and you'll have شکست /shekæst/.

I broke = من شکستم /mæn shekæstæm/.

Now continue!

Week 12

Hello everyone, welcome back!

As you remember, we started learning simple past tense last week. From today, we are going to practice with this tense to make sure that it is clearly understood. Try to make the foundation of your building as strong as possible! To do this here, we need to practice a lot.

Last week, we learned that all infinitives in Persian ended with ن /nu:n/. Example: رفتن . We also learned that we'd have a verb in simple past tense by simply deleting ن from infinitives. Example:

رفت . Correct?

Then, we learned that we could combine verbs in simple past tense with subjective pronouns. Doing this, we found that we had to add something to the end of the verbs to match that verb with each pronoun.

Example: **من رفتم = رفت + م**. Clear?

All right. Now, let's see what do we have for today.

Before we start, let me tell you something. As you have probably noticed, in some cases the pronunciation of the words you hear is a little bit different from the phonetic alphabets you find with each word. The

example I can mention here is this: **تو دیدی**. The phonetic alphabet written next to this word is /didi/, but when you listen to the recorded sound it is pronounced as /di:di:/. (Long /i:/ instead of short /i/). It is because I am trying to pronounce the words as slowly and clearly as possible. Basically, there is no big difference with these different pronunciations. All these three pronunciations are acceptable: /didi/- /didi:/- and /di:di:/. Don't pay too much attention on these minor differences. I would certainly let you know if the difference was big enough to be mentioned.

Note: One of the problems with Persian verbs is that there are a considerable amount of compound verbs instead of single verbs. These compound verbs have apparently imposed a negative flexibility on creating new words in Persian. Although attempts have been made to change these compound verbs into single ones, less progress has been achieved till now. Most probably it comes from the dominant Arab language that has changed the structure of Persian language quite negatively. Statistics presented by some great linguists show that the capability of Persian language in generating new words was unbelievably higher if we could re-separate the structure of Persian language from Arabic, which are totally different from each other in origin.

Let's see an example.

'To speak' means **صحبت کردن** /sohbæt kærdæn/.

As you see in the above example, we have two words in Persian for one English word. This is what I am talking about. Quite fortunately, this problem has nothing to do with us as beginners! Still, we can apply the same rule here. In all cases, we need to change the second part, not the first one. Here we have to

change **کردن** /kærdæn/.

Now, let's apply the rule. Delete **ن** from **کردن** and you'll have **صحبت کرد** /sohbæt kærd/, which is in simple past tense. Now try it with the subjective pronouns. You'll say:

I spoke = **من صحبت کردم** /mæn sohbæt kærdæm/.

You spoke = **تو صحبت کردی** /to sohbæt kærði/.

He and she spoke = **او صحبت کرد** /u: sohbæt kærd/.

It spoke == **آن صحبت کرد** /a:n sohbæt kærd/.

We spoke == **ما صحبت کردیم** /ma: sohbæt kærdim/.

You spoke == **شما صحبت کردید** /shoma: sohbæt kærdid/.

They spoke == **آنها صحبت کردند** /a:nha: sohbæt kærdænd/. And **ایشان صحبت کردند** /i:sha:n sohbæt kærdænd/.

All right. As you see nothing can break our rules!! (Except some exceptions that might happen once in a thousand!)

Now let's learn some new words today. We will need some words to start making sentences. Please try to learn these words before we see each other next week!

English ===== Persian

Door **در** /dær/. And **درب** /dærb/.

Window **پنجره** /pænjereh/.

Yesterday دیروز /di: ru:z/.

Today امروز /em ru:z/.

All right. What I am trying to do is helping you with some basic rules first. Remember that I am not going to give you a fish; I am trying to teach you fishing! So, be patient enough to be with me on our fishing path!!

During our next lessons, you'll see that we are not limited to memorizing some words. But to take our next steps, we need to learn some words first.

Practice makes perfect!

'To kiss' means بوسیدن /bu:sidæn/. Delete ن /nu:n/ and you'll have بوسید /bu:sid/. Now try it with the subjective pronouns. You'll say:

I kissed == من بوسیدم /mæn bu:sidæm/.

You kissed == تو بوسیدی /to bu:sidi/.

Now continue!!

'To have' means داشتن /da:shtæn/. Delete ن and you'll have داشت /da:sht/. With subjective pronouns you'll say:

I had == من داشتم /mæn da:shtæm/.

You had == تو داشتی /to da:shti/.

Now continue!

From today, you may go to Persian samples pages to see if you can find any verbs in simple past tense. Do not pronounce the verbs that we have not studied yet. Just try to find the familiar ones.

Week 13

Hello everyone, welcome back!

I hope all of you have been following the lessons patiently and step by step. As I have told you on and on, we are going to learn Persian from the very beginning. It will take us a while to find ourselves fluent. I think the quality is more important than the quantity. Don't get impatient if you don't find lots of words each week. Probably, many of you will give up if I put a lot of words and ask you to do a lot of work every week.

Note: Almost every day, I receive a message asking for some translations. I would be more than happy if I could do this much work for each of you separately. But, I am only one and have a lot to do. Please be patient with me if I am not really able to write back to all of you directly. However, to meet your basic needs in translation, I have added one more page to this site from this week, and it's 'Your words'. You may send me your short sentences and I will translate them for you. But, please send me just one sentence and make it as short as possible.

All right. Now let's start.

Hopefully, you have already learned the previous words. Today, we are going to make some short sentences in *simple past tense*.

To begin with, we need to know the structure of a sentence in both English and Persian.

Look at this sentence: I closed the door. I = subject. Closed = verb. The door = object. Is that correct? So, here the structure of the sentence in English is like this:

subject + verb + object. All right?

In Persian, we have subjects at the beginning and verbs at the end of the sentences. All other items such as objects come between these two. That is to say, for the same English sentence we have this structure in Persian: subject + object + verb.

Now, let's organize the words in this rule. For 'I closed the door', we have this in Persian:

من در را بستم /mæn dær ra: bæstæm/. which means 'I closed the door'. Is that difficult?

Note: as you see, we have **را** /ra:/ after **در** /dær/, which is the object of our sentence. As a rule, whenever a word is followed by **را** /ra:/ is an *object*. It's that simple: word + **را** /ra:/ makes *object*. Now let's try this with all subjective pronouns:

- 1- I closed the door. **من در را بستم** /mæn dær ra: bæstæm/.
 - 2- You closed the door. **تو در را بستی** /to dær ra: bæsti/.
 - 3- He/she closed the door. **او در را بست** /u: dær ra: bæst/.
 - 4- It closed the door. **آن در را بست** /a:n dær ra: bæst/.
 - 5- We closed the door. **ما در را بستیم** /ma: dær ra: bæstim/.
 - 6- You closed the door. **شما در را بستید** /shoma: dær ra: bæstid/.
 - 7- They closed the door. **آنها در را بستند** /a:nha: dær ra: bæstænd/.
- and **ایشان در را بستند** /i:sha:n dær ra: bæstænd/.

Is it really difficult? Wonderful!

Now replace **در** /dær/ with **پنجره** /pænjereh/. You will say:

- 1- I closed the window. **من پنجره را بستم** /mæn pænjereh ra: bæstæm/.
- 2- You closed the window. **تو پنجره را بستی** /to pænjereh ra: bæsti/.
- 3- He/she closed the window. **او پنجره را بست** /u: pænjereh ra: bæst/.
- 4- It closed the window. **آن پنجره را بست** /a:n pænjereh ra: bæst/.
- 5- We closed the window. **ما پنجره را بستیم** /ma: pænjereh ra: bæstim/.
- 6- You closed the window. **شما پنجره را بستید** /shoma: pænjereh ra: bæstid/.
- 7- They closed the window. **آنها پنجره را بستند** /a:nha: pænjereh ra: bæstænd/.

Now, let's change the verb.

You already now what 'to see' means in Persian. **دیدن** /didæn/.
Let's try this one.

- 1- I saw the door. **من در را دیدم** /mæn dær ra: didæm/.
- 2- You saw the door. **تو در را دیدی** /to dær ra: didi/.
- 3- He/she saw the door. **او در را دید** /u: dær ra: did/.
- 4- It saw the door. **آن در را دید** /a:n dær ra: did/.
- 5- We saw the door. **ما در را دیدیم** /ma: dær ra: didim/.
- 6- You saw the door. **شما در را دیدید** /shoma: dær ra: didid/.
- 7- They saw the door. **آنها در را دیدند** /a:nha: dær ra: didænd/.

Practice makes perfect!
Look at these new words:

Table = میز /mi:z/.

Glass = لیوان /liva:n/.

Book = کتاب /keta:b/.

Note 1: Please try the following verbs with all subjective pronouns first. Then, go to note 2 for further works!

To clean = تمیز کردن /tæmi:z kærdæn/. First change it into تمیز کرد /tæmi:z kærd/. Then, pronounce it with subjective pronouns:

1- I cleaned = من تمیز کردم /mæn tæmi:z kærdæm/.

2- You cleaned = تو تمیز کردی /to tæmi:z kærdi/.

Now continue!

To wash = شستن /shostæn/. Change it into شست /shost/.

1- I washed = من شستم /mæn shostæm/.

2- You washed = تو شستی /to shosti/.

Now continue!

To open = باز کردن /ba:z kærdæn/. Change it into باز کرد /ba:z kærd/.

1- I opened = من باز کردم /mæn ba:z kærdæm/.

2- You opened = تو باز کردی /to ba:z kærdi/.

Now continue!

Note 2: Now combine each sentence with the new words above. Example:

I cleaned the table = من میز را تمیز کردم /mæn mi:z ra: tæmi:z kærdæm/.

All right. Now it's your turn to continue.

Note: You may go to Persian samples pages to see if you can find any verbs in *simple past tense*. Do not pronounce the verbs that we have not studied yet. Just try to find the familiar ones.

Week 14

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words completely.

New words:

This = این /in/.

That = آن /a:n/.

Man = مرد /mærd/.

Woman = زن /zæn/.

To buy = خریدن /khæridæn/. Delete ن /nu:n/ first. Then combine it with subjective pronouns.

This book = این کتاب /in keta:b/.

That book = آن کتاب /a:n keta:b/.

Make sentences: (Follow the example) : subject+ object + time + verb

Note: You may delete subjects from your sentences.

- 1- I bought this book yesterday. **من این کتاب را دیروز خریدم** /mæn in keta:b ra: diru:z khæridæm/.
- 2- She bought this book yesterday.
- 3- We bought that book today.
- 4- They saw that man today. To see = **دیدن** /didæn/.
- 5- You (plural) saw this woman yesterday.
- 6- He cleaned this table today.

Note: You may go to Persian samples pages to see if you can find any verbs in *simple past tense*. Do not pronounce the verbs that we have not studied yet. Just try to find the familiar ones.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words completely.

New words:

This = **این** /in/.

That = **آن** /a:n/.

Man = **مرد** /mærd/.

Woman = **زن** /zæn/.

To buy = **خریدن** /khæridæn/. Delete **ن** /nu:n/ first. Then combine it with subjective pronouns.

This book = **این کتاب** /in keta:b/.

That book = **آن کتاب** /a:n keta:b/.

Make sentences: (Follow the example) : subject+ object + time + verb

Note: You may delete subjects from your sentences.

- 1- I bought this book yesterday. **من این کتاب را دیروز خریدم** /mæn in keta:b ra: diru:z khæridæm/.
- 2- She bought this book yesterday.
- 3- We bought that book today.
- 4- They saw that man today. To see = **دیدن** /didæn/.
- 5- You (plural) saw this woman yesterday.
- 6- He cleaned this table today.

Note: You may go to Persian samples pages to see if you can find any verbs in *simple past tense*. Do not pronounce the verbs that we have not studied yet. Just try to find the familiar ones.

Week 15

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Some of you seem curious about the total number of the lessons I'll provide you with. Well, in one word, I don't really know the answer! These lessons are not pre-written. So, the total number is not clear. I just write one lesson for each week whenever I am close to my computer! The only thing I can say now is that I will be with you as long as I have something new to tell you. No matter how many years the wait will take me, I will be waiting for you to talk and write to me in Persian. Teaching gives me a new life; fresh and strong.

After all, I have just owned my own domain name and my own web site! Don't expect me to give up so easily! Will you?

Hopefully, all of you know that learning a language is different from learning about a language. As long as we are busy learning the rules and grammar of a language, we are learning about that language. And when the 'learning about a language' procedure is over successfully, we will start learning the language, which is using the language practically in our daily conversations. During these lessons we are actually trying to learn 'about Persian'. When these grammar rules are finished we will enter a new and interesting stage that is learning this language. During the 'learning this language procedure', we will use our knowledge really efficiently. And that day, which I am waiting for, will be the great day when we can work together more positively. I can see the day when you are the real English to Persian translators and vice versa. Then, we won't have this much trouble with these rules any more. We will create a great atmosphere together right here in this site, and you will become active partners in this course not as silent students. You see, we have a lot to do. So, don't waste your time and energy in finding the total number of the lessons! Just stay with me and I'll take you to the Persian world!

All right. How are the lessons? Please be in touch! The more I know you, the better I'll teach you.

Now let's keep on working with simple past tense to make sure that it is fully understood and we have no problems with this tense.

Please try to learn the following words first. Then go to Useful drills page for more work.

Friend = دوست /du:st/.

Father = پدر /pedær/. And بابا /ba:ba:/.

Mother = مادر /ma:dær/. And مامان /ma:ma:n/.

Brother = برادر /bæra:dær/.

Sister = خواهر /kha:hær/.

Ok. Now let's see how we can say 'my friend' in Persian.

Do you remember میم /mim/? Great! The problem is solved! Simply put میم after each word. That's it! You will say:

My friend = دوستم /du:stæm/.

My father = پدرم /pedæræm/! And بابام /ba:ba:m/.

My mother = مادرم /ma:dæræm/. And مامانم /ma:ma:næm/.

My brother = برادرم /bæra:dæræm/.

My sister = خواهرم /kha:hæræm/.

Note: As you see, in most cases, we add میم /mim/ with /æm/ pronunciation to the end of words. And in a few cases, when the word ends with long vowels, we just put میم with no especial sound, like what you

see in بابام. This rule is applicable to all nouns. You may simply put میم after a noun to make it 'mine'!

Example:

My book = کتابم /keta:bæm/.

Note: as you have noticed, most Persian words have 'stress' on last syllable. To see where you can put stress on your words.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Car = ماشین /ma:shin/.

House = خانه /kha:neh/.

To sell = فروختن /foru:khtæn/.

Please translate the following words and sentences into Persian.

Section A:

1- Car.

2- This car.

3- My brother sold.

4- My brother sold this car.

5- My brother sold this car yesterday. subject+ object+ time+ verb.

Section B:

Now replace 'car' with 'house'.

Section C:

Now replace 'my brother' with 'my friend'.

Section D:

Now replace 'to sell' with 'to buy'.

Note: You may go to Persian samples pages to see if you can find any verbs in *simple past tense*. Do not pronounce the verbs that we have not studied yet. Just try to find the familiar ones.

Week 16

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To read = خواندن /kha:ndæn/. I read /red/= من خواندم /mæn kha:ndæm/.

To find= پیدا کردن /peida: kærdæn/. I found = من پیدا کردم /mæn peida: kærdæm/.

To build= ساختن /sa:khtæn/.

Last year = پارسال /pa:r sa:l/.

Bridge = پل /pol/.

Please translate the following words and sentences into Persian.

Section A:

1- Book.

2- Her book.

3- My friend.

4- My friend found.

5- My friend found her book yesterday. subject+ object+ ra: + time+ verb.

Section B:

1- Bridge

2- That bridge

3- Your father

4- Your father built

5- Your father built that bridge

6- Your father built that bridge last year

Section C:

1- Her mother

2- Her mother read

3- Her mother read this book

4- Her mother read this book today.

Note: You may go to Persian samples pages to see if you can find any verbs in *simple past tense*. Do not pronounce the verbs that we have not studied yet. Just try to find the familiar ones.

Hello = سلام /sæla:m/.

Welcome = خوش آمدید /khosh a:mædid/.

Last week we learned how to say 'my friend' in Persian. Today, we are going to learn some more.

Let's see how we can say the followings:

My friend

Your friend

His/her friend

Its friend

Our friend

Your friend

Their friend

Wow! Seems a Herculean job! Isn't it?

Don't worry! I am here to simplify the rules for you!

We already know how to say 'my friend'. This makes our job much easier today. Let's try it again.

My friend = دوستم /du:stæm/.

We added م to the noun, which is دوست /du:st/. And we know that we should pronounce م as /æm/ in most cases.

All right. Our problem is almost over.

Now I want to say 'your friend'. I replace /æm/ sound with /æt/sound. I will say دوستت /du:stæt/. So,

My friend = دوستم /du:stæm/. Noun + /æm/.

Your friend = دوستت /du:stæt/. Noun + /æt/.

Note: for 'your + noun', like what you see above, the rule changes a bit in oral conversation. In this case, we might replace /æt/ sound with /et/ in some words. However, to avoid any confusion, just learn the rules that are applicable in written speech and forget the oral conversation at this stage.

His/her/its friend = دوستش /du:stæsh/. Noun + /æsh/.

Our friend = دوستان /du:stema:n/. Noun + مان /ma:n/.

Your friend = دوستان /du:steta:n/. Noun + تان /ta:n/.

Their friend = دوستان /du:stesha:n/. Noun + شان /sha:n/.

Note: as you have noticed, in the case of plural pronouns, we combine the above items with nouns with /e/

sound. Like دوست . دوستان + /e/ sound + /ma:n/. Is that clear? Wonderful!

This is all we have to add to a noun:

م /æm/.

ت /æt/.

ش /æsh/.

مان /ma:n/.

تان /ta:n/.

شان /sha:n/.

Now, replace **دوست** with **کتاب** /keta:b/. You will say:

My book = **کتابم** /keta:bæm/.

Your book = **کتابت** /keta:bæt/.

His/her/its book = **کتابش** /keta:bæsh/ .

Our book = **کتابمان** /keta:bema:n/. Noun + /e/ sound + /ma:n/

Your book = **کتابتان** /keta:beta:n/. Noun + /e/ sound + /ta:n/

Their book = **کتابشان** /keta:besha:n/. Noun + /e/ sound + /sha:n/

Ok. With this, we come to the end of lesson 16.

Bye bye! **خدا حافظ!** /Khoda: ha:fez/.

Week 17

Salam! Khosh amadid!

How was the previous lesson? Like it? Let me know if you faced any problems, but please specify the problems so clearly that I can understand you.

So far, we have almost learned the simple past tense. For example we know that we should follow the following rule to make a sentence in Persian: subject + object + time + verb; Like we see in the following sentence: I bought this book yesterday. Do you remember how to say it in Persian? Excellent!! We say:

من این کتاب را دیروز خریدم /mæn in keta:b ra: diru:z khæridæm/. Is it ok? Good!

Now we want to say this sentence: I bought this book in the market yesterday.

You see, we are expanding the sentence. Here, the order of the words in English is as follows: subject + verb + object + place + time. No objection? Good! Now, let's try to convert this rule into Persian.

Before doing this, look at the previous Persian rule we already know. That is: subject + object + time + verb, as we see in the sentence above (I bought this book yesterday). Now we want to add 'place' to this rule. All we should do is putting 'place' between 'time' and 'verb'. We will have this rule: subject + object + time + place + verb.

Easy?

Now, let's translate this sentence: I bought this book in the market yesterday.

Market = **بازار** /ba:za:r/.

In = **در** /dær/.

In the market = **در بازار** /dær ba:za:r/.

In/at + place = **در** + place.

We will say: **من این کتاب را دیروز در بازار خریدم** /mæn in keta:b ra: diru:z dær ba:za:r khæridæm/.

Note: as you have probably noticed, we have two **در** in Persian. One is what we already know, and that means 'door'. Remember? Ok! The other one is what you see here today, which means 'in'. These two are written and pronounced the same way, but have different meanings. I don't think you will be confused, as the context will help us a lot to differentiate them.

All right. This is our final and the most difficult rule we should learn. This rule is applicable to all tenses in Persian. Wow! At last I did it!! Well, we did it!

Try to memorize this rule now: subject + object + time + place + verb.

From now on (as long as we are in simple past tense), all I have to do is speak in English and all you have to do is speak in Persian! Accepted? Wonderful! All right, with this we come to the end of lesson 17.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To be = بودن /bu:dæn/. I was = من بودم /mæn bu:dæm/.

At/in = در /dær/.

Home = خانه /kha:neh/.

Suddenly = ناگهان /na:gæha:n/.

Somebody/someone = یکی /yeki/.

To Knock at the door = در زدن /dær zædæn/. He knocked at the door. او در زد /u: dær zæd/.

To turn off = خاموش کردن /kha:mu:sh kærdæn/. He turned off. او خاموش کرد /u: kha:mu:sh kærd/.

To stand up = بلند شدن /bolænd shodæn/. They stood up. آنها بلند شدند /a:nha: bolænd shodænd/.

Alone = تنها /tænha:/. I was alone. من تنها بودم /mæn tænha: bu:dæm/.

To have = داشتن /da:shtæn/. We had. ما داشتیم /ma: da:shtim/.

Basket = سبد /sæbæd/.

A = یک /yek/. I had a book. من یک کتاب داشتم /mæn yek keta:b da:shtæm/.

To take (here)= برداشتن /bær da:shtæn/.

To thank somebody/something = از ... تشکر کردن /æz 'somebody' or 'something' tæshæk.kor

kærdæn /. He thanked me. او از من تشکر کرد /u: æz mæn tæshæk.kor kærd/.

Note: 'k.kor' tells us that we have 'Tashdid' here. The letter 'K' is emphasized.

To sit down = نشستن /neshæstæn/.

Please translate the following paragraph into Persian.

Note 1: Just follow the rule: subject + object + time + place + verb. If any of these items is absent, simply skip over it to reach the next one. For example: in ' I was at home yesterday', we have this rule: subject + time + place + verb. Is it clear?

Note 2: Please note that for 'The + noun' in English, we have only 'noun' in Persian. For example: The door = در /dær/.

Note 3: Please do your best to do it all first. Then, if you want to be sure, look for the answer at the bottom of this page. No cheating!!

I was at home yesterday. Suddenly, somebody knocked at the door. I turned off the TV. I stood up. I opened the door. I saw my friend. He was alone. He had a basket. He opened the basket. I saw a book. I took the book. He took the basket. I thanked him. He went. I closed the door. I sat down. I read his book. Note: You may go to Persian samples pages to see if you can find any verbs in *simple past tense*. Do not pronounce the verbs that we have not studied yet. Just try to find the familiar ones.

من دیروز در خانه بودم . ناگهان ، یکی در زد .
 من تلویزیون را خاموش کردم . من بلند شدم .
 من در را باز کردم . من دوستم را دیدم .
 او تنها بود . او یک سبد داشت . او سبد را باز کرد .
 من یک کتاب دیدم . من کتاب را برداشتم .
 او سبد را برداشت . من از او تشکر کردم .
 او رفت . من در را بستم . من نشستم .
 من کتابش را خواندم .

Week 18

Correction

Last week, on [Useful drills](#) page I made a mistake for which I owe you a big excuse! I gave you a paragraph in English and asked you to translate it into Persian. Quite accidentally, the title sentence was this: Please translate the following paragraph into English, instead of saying 'into Persian'. It is now corrected. Sorry for such a mistake. And thanks a lot to those who reported it to me.

OK. Now let's start.

Do you remember what I told you about making verbs in simple past tense? Good! As you remember, we

will have a verb in simple past tense if we delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of an infinitive. But, quite unfortunately, I forgot to tell you something very important!! You want to know it? Ok! I forgot to ask

you not to throw that ن /nu:n/ away!! We need it now!

We already know how to say 'my brother sold this car'. Remember? All right! Today, we are going to say this sentence: 'my brother didn't sell this car'.

Correct! We are going to make a sentence negative in simple past tense. That's why we need ن

/nu:n/ again. If we put ن with /næ/ sound in the beginning of a verb, we have made that verb or that sentence negative. You see how easy Persian is!

Delete ن from the end of an infinitive to make a verb in simple past tense. Put ن with /næ/ sound in the beginning of the same verb to make it negative.

Example:

He/She went= او رفت /u: ræft/.

He/She didn't go = او نرفت /u: næræft/.

Now let's go back to that sentence above once more.

My brother sold this car = برادرم این ماشین را فروخت /bæra:dæræm in ma:shin ra: foru:kht/.

My brother didn't sell this car = برادرم این ماشین را نفرخت /bæra:dæræm in ma:shin ra: næforu:kht/.

Now try this one:

She found her book yesterday = او کتابش را دیروز پیدا کرد /u: keta:bæsh ra: diru:z peida:kærd/.

She didn't find her book yesterday = او کتابش را دیروز پیدا نکرد /u: keta:bæsh ra: diru:z peida:nækærd/.

Note: I am sure all of you remember what I told you about the compound verbs in Persian. In compound verbs, it's the second part of the verb that accepts changes. Am I right? Like what we see above: 'to find'

means پیدا کردن /peida:kærdæn/. We have nothing to do with the first part, which is پیدا /peida:/. Do you remember it? Great!

I think it's now good to start learning numbers in Persian. Before doing this, let me tell you something. The most difficult part in learning numbers is in the beginning. If we learn them from one to twenty correctly we will have no problems with the rest of the numbers. So, please try to learn the first twenty numbers fluently and you'll have no more problems!

Ready?

One = یک = ۱ /yek/.

Two = دو = ۲ /do/.

Three = سه = ۳ /seh/.

Four = چهار = ۴ /chæha:r/.

Five = پنج = ۵ /pænj/.

Six = شش = ۶ /shesh/.

Seven = هفت = ۷ /hæft/.

Eight = هشت = ۸ /hæsht/.

Nine = نه = ۹ /noh/.

Ten = ده = ۱۰ /dæh/.

With this we come to end of lesson 18.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To be = بودن /bu:dæn/. I was = من بودم /mæn bu:dæm/. They were not = آنها نبودند /a:nha:næbu:dænd/.

I was at home = من در خانه بودم /mæn dær kha:neh bu:dæm/.

At/in = در /dær/.

Home = خانه /kha:neh/.

Street = خیابان /khiya:ba:n/.

In street = در خیابان /dær khiya:ba:n/.

To come = آمدن /a:mædæn/. She came = او آمد /u: a:mæd/. She didn't come = او نیامد /u:næya:mæd/.

Teacher = معلم /moæ.l.lem/. ==> /l.lem/ means that the letter 'L' is emphasized: Tashdid.

Week = هفته /hæfteh/.

Last = گذشته /gozæshteh/.

Last week = هفته گذشته /hæfteh ye gozæshteh/.

Absent = غایب /gha:yeb/.

Homework = مشق /mæshgh/.

To do homework = مشق نوشتن /mæshgh neveshtæn/. Delete ن /nu:n/ and you'll have /mæshgh nevesht/. I did my homework. من مشقم را نوشتم /mæn mæshghæm ra: neveshtæm/.

Letter = نامه /na:meh/.

This week = این هفته /in hæfteh/

To talk to somebody = با ... صحبت کردن /ba: 'somebody' sohbæt kærdæn/.

I talked to him. من با او صحبت کردم /mæn ba: u: sohbæt kærdæm/.

Boy = پسر /pesær/.

This boy = این پسر /in pesær/.

Girl = دختر /dokhtær/.

Night = شب /shæb/.

Last night = دیشب /dishæb/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Note 1: Just follow the rule: subject + object + time + place + verb. If any of these items is absent, simply skip over it to reach the next one. For example: in 'I was at home yesterday', we have this rule: subject + time + place + verb. Is it clear?

Note 2: Please note that for 'The + noun' in English, we have only 'noun' in Persian. For example: The door = در /dær/.

Note 3: Please do your best to do it all first. Then, if you want to be sure, look for the answer at the bottom of this page. No cheating!!

1-I saw your friend in the street today.

2-My teacher didn't come last week.

3-My friend was absent yesterday.

4-She wrote a letter this week.

5-She didn't write a letter last week.

6-They didn't do their homework last night.

7-We were not at home last week.

8-She didn't talk to her friend yesterday.

9-My father didn't build this bridge last year.

10-This boy broke the window yesterday.

11-This girl didn't break the window yesterday.

Note: try to memorize the sentences as much as possible.

- ۱- من دوستت را امروز در خیابان دیدم
- ۲- معلم هفته گذشته نیامد
- ۳- دوستم دیروز غایب بود
- ۴- او این هفته یک نامه نوشت
- ۵- او هفته گذشته یک نامه ننوشت
- ۶- آنها دیشب مشقشان را ننوشتند
- ۷- ما هفته گذشته در خانه نبودیم
- ۸- او با دوستش دیروز صحبت نکرد
- ۹- پدرم این پل را پارسال نساخت
- ۱۰- این پسر پنجره را دیروز شکست
- ۱۱- این دختر پنجره را دیروز نشکست

Week 19

Are you still with me or not? How was the previous lesson? Please be in touch and let me know about your progress. And please be patient with me if many of you don't receive direct replies to their messages! Next week I'll talk some about some words, which could have different spellings or pronunciations. Like

خواندن /kha:ndæn/, **صبح** /sobh/ and some others that use different kinds of /h/ sound. Thanks to those who have raised such questions.

Ok. Now let's see what we have got to do this week.

Last week, we learned how to make a sentence negative in simple past tense. Today, we are going to work with it a bit more to make sure that everything is clearly understood.

Can you say this sentence in Persian?

My father built that bridge last year. I believe you can do it. If not, go to [Useful drills 16](#) to have another look at it.

Now, make it negative.

My father didn't build that bridge last year.

You already know what 'to build' means in Persian. It means **ساختن** /sa:khtæn/. Remove **ن** /nu:n/ from the end of the infinitive and put it with /næ/ sound in the beginning of the same word, which is now in simple past tense. That's it! The verb is now negative.

Now try the sentence again. You will say **پدرم آن پل را پارسال نساخت** /pedæræm a:n pol ra: pa:rsa:l næsa:kht/. Really easy, isn't it?

Now try this sentence.

I didn't see him yesterday.

Before doing this, let me tell you something. We already know the subjective pronouns in Persian. Do you remember it?

Actually, we learned more than subjective pronouns by learning those pronouns, but you didn't know it!

Look at this sentence:

I saw him.

As you know, "I" is our subject here. 'saw' is the verb. And 'him' is the object of the sentence. Correct? Good! And as you know, 'him' is the object that refers to a person. So, this object is an objective pronoun. Let's take a look at all the objective pronouns in English.

Me = he saw me.

You = I saw you.

Him = I saw him.

Her = I saw her.

It = I saw it.

Us = he saw us.

You = he saw you.

Them = he saw them.

No objections? Great!

Now let's go back to Persian.

Fortunately or unfortunately, we don't have this much pronouns in Persian! In Persian, all subjective pronouns can be objective pronouns without any change. Look at the examples below.

He saw the book. او کتاب را دید /u: keta:b ra: did/. In Persian sentence, او /u:/ is the subject of the sentence. کتاب /keta:b/ is the object. را /ra:/ is a word that comes after an object and tells us that کتاب /keta:b/ is the object. And finally دید /did/ is the verb. Now look at this sentence:

I saw him. من او را دیدم /mæn u: ra: didæm/. من /mæn/ = subject. او /u:/ = object.

As you see, او /u:/ is not changed. We know او /u:/ as the object of our sentence here because it is sitting in the place of an object and is followed by را /ra:/. Is it clear?

In one word, all subjective pronouns can be objective pronouns without any change in their form, if they are followed by را /ra:/.

Ok. I talked too much!! Now let's go back to our sentence again, which is: I didn't see him yesterday. We will say: من او را دیروز ندیدم /mæn u: ra: diru:z nædidæm/.

Now, let's learn the numbers.

11 = یازده = ۱۱ /ya:zdæh/.

12 = دوازده = ۱۲ /dæva:zdæh/.

13 = سیزده = ۱۳ /sizdæh/.

14 = چهارده = ۱۴ /chæha:rdæh/.

15 = پانزده = ۱۵ /pa:nzdæh/.

16 = شانزده = ۱۶ /sha:nzdæh/.

17 = هفده = ۱۷ /hefdæh/.

18 = هجده = ۱۸ /hejdæh/. In daily conversation, it is rather pronounced as هژده = ۱۸ /hezhdæh/.

19 = نوزده = ۱۹ /nu:zdæh/.

20 = بیست = ۲۰ /bist/.

All right. With this we come to the end of lesson 19. I hope you enjoyed it.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

School = **مدرسه** /mædreseh/.

To go to 'some place' = **به ... رفتن** /beh 'some place' ræftæn/. I went to school.

من به مدرسه رفتم /mæn beh mædreseh ræftæm/.

At/in = **در** /dær/.

Home/house = **خانه** /kha:neh/.

Street = **خیابان** /khiya:ba:n/.

In street = **در خیابان** /dær khiya:ba:n/.

Teacher = **معلم** /moæ1.lem/. ==> /1.lem/ means that the letter 'L' is emphasized: Tashdid.

Week = **هفته** /hæfteh/.

Last = **گذشته** /gozæshteh/.

Last week = **هفته گذشته** /hæfteh ye gozæshteh/.

This week = **این هفته** /in hæfteh/

Head = **سر** /sær/.

Night = **شب** /shæb/.

Last night = **دیشب** /dishæb/.

To push = **هل دادن** /hol da:dæn/.

To kill = **کشتن** /koshtæn/.

Dog = **سگ** /sæg/.

Ago = **پیش** /pish/. Three days ago = **سه روز پیش** /seh ru:z-e- pish/.

Afternoon = **بعد از ظهر** /bæd æz zohr/. Yesterday afternoon = **دیروز بعد از ظهر** /diru:z bæd æz zohr/.

To steal = **دزدیدن** /dozdidæn/. They didn't steal = **آنها نذرزدیدند** /a:nha: nædozdidænd/.

Young = **جوان** /jæva:n/.

Lady/Mrs/Miss/Ms = **خانم** /kha:nom/.

Young lady = **خانم جوان** /kha:nom-e- jæva:n/.

To touch = **دست زدن** /dæst zædæn/. To touch 'something' = **به ... دست زدن** /beh 'something' dæst zædæn/.

I didn't touch your book. **من به کتابت دست نزدم** /mæn beh keta:bæt dæst næzædæm/ Don't

say **من کتابت را دست نزدم** /mæn keta:bæt ra: dæst næzædæm/.

Note: Although it seems acceptable if we apply the same rule here, it is better to use 'Time' between 'Subject' and 'Object' (When the verb is 'Touch'). Like what you see in sentence number 10. I have followed the general rule, you may change it.

Student = دانش آموز /da:nesh a:mu:z/.

Morning = صبح /sobh/.

This morning = امروز صبح /emru:z sobh/. Don't say این صبح /in sobh/.

To beat = زدن /zædæn/. He beat me. او من را زد /u: mæn ra: zæd/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Note 1: Just follow the rule: subject + object + time + place + verb. If any of these items is absent, simply skip over it to reach the next one. For example: in 'I was at home yesterday', we have this rule: subject + time + place + verb. Is it clear?

Note 2: Please note that for 'The + noun' in English, we have only 'noun' in Persian. For example: The door = در /dær/.

Note 3: Please do your best to do it all first. Then, if you want to be sure, look for the answer at the bottom of this page. No cheating!!

- 1- I went to market today.
- 2- He didn't go to market yesterday.
- 3- My friend didn't find that house last week.
- 4- We saw him at school today.
- 5- I didn't break his head last night.
- 6- He pushed me.
- 7- They killed our dog two days ago.
- 8- She found us in the street yesterday afternoon.
- 9- That man didn't steal my book five days ago.
- 10- This young lady didn't touch your son yesterday.
- 11- That student broke the table this morning.
- 12- The teacher didn't beat him today.

Note: try to memorize the sentences as much as possible.

- ۱- من امروز به بازار رفتم
- ۲- او دیروز به بازار نرفت
- ۳- دوستم آن خانه را هفته پیش پیدا نکرد
- ۴- ما او را امروز در مدرسه دیدیم
- ۵- من سرش را دیشب نشکستم
- ۶- او من را هل داد
- ۷- آنها سگمان را دو روز پیش کشتند
- ۸- او ما را دیروز بعد از ظهر در خیابان پیدا کرد
- ۹- آن مرد کتابم را پنج روز پیش نذرید
- ۱۰- این خانم جوان به پسران دیروز دست نزد
- ۱۱- آن دانش آموز میز را امروز صبح شکست
- ۱۲- معلم او را امروز نزد

Week 20

Before we start today, let me answer to some of your questions first.

1- Which Farsi / Persian are you teaching?

Well, I am teaching Persian/Farsi that is currently spoken in Iran! We may divide Persian/Farsi into Old and Modern Persian. Old Persian is no longer used among the common people in their daily conversations. We can also mention pre-Islam and post-Islam Persian in this category. The pre-Islam Persian was Persian originated, Persian based, and Persian oriented language. Lots of words in that era are considered obsolete in nowadays, as they are no longer used. Even lots of people who graduate from the universities are not able to understand the main part of that language. To understand that language clearly, you need to pass at least a two-year-term related to that particular subject in universities.

After the Arab invaded Iran, lots of things changed. Among them was the language. They imported lots of Arab-based words and structures into Persian language. This lingual invasion was improved by almost all scholars and literary leaders who wrote wonderful masterpieces during this period. From among them is Hafez who knew Quran by heart. Saadi, Rumi and many others are just few examples. Their languages, although closer to our Modern Persian, are difficult to understand as well.

Now, we have our Modern Persian, which is mixed with Arabic, French, English, even Turkish, and some others! It seems impossible to purify a language from imported foreign words at this period. Lots of things are changed. The communication is spreading all over the world. New technologies, new ways of communication, new social and political systems, and new affections towards foreign words, and lots of other things affect the structure of almost every language. We are approaching our world village utopia! Iran can not be an exception! The different kinds of social and political movements support their own way of importing or imposing foreign words such as Arabic, English, French, on Persian. Although a couple of great linguists have been trying hard to Persianize all importing words, little progress has been achieved by now. It has many reasons. One of the most important one, I think, is that they do not install a valid filter around the borders to Persianize the words that are coming into the country. They let people use the same foreign words for a long time and then ask some experts to look for the Persian equivalents for those words, whose main efforts turn into daily jokes among people! There are lots of other reasons which I can not explain due to lack of knowledge, etc.

For more technical explanation about Farsi language, you may read the article called 'Pahlavi/ Farsi/ Dari' on 'Afghanistan Online' website, which is available on 'Links' page.

2- Why do you write خواندن /khæva:ndæn/ and pronounce it as خاندن /kha:ndæn/? Why don't

you write خاندن /kha:ndæn/ instead?

I am not a linguist or a philologist to explain it technically. Philologically/linguistically speaking, words come from certain roots. As time changes, people might change the structure of the words or the way they are used. These changes might happen in either oral or written form, or both. Sometimes, words are changed in oral conversations, but not in writing. That is to say, the pronunciation of a word is changed

but its spelling has remained unchanged. A good example here is the word خواندن /kha:ndæn/. This word had a slightly different pronunciation in the past. People have changed its pronunciation to make it easier to pronounce, but they haven't changed its spelling. It has its own reasons. Sometimes, if we change the spelling of a word, we might get a different word which is already exist with a different meaning. And sometimes, this change will create a new word that can not be included or harmonized in the main body of

that language. The pronunciation of the old version of خواندن /kha:ndæn/ was something like this. It seems a little difficult to pronounce, isn't it?

Another example is the word 'sister', which is written in this way: خواهر /kha:hær/. This one has the same explanation as the previous one. The way it was pronounced in the past was something like this. I think you agree with me that the old pronunciations of such words are acceptably difficult!

As far as I remember now, the combination of و /va:v/ and خ /khe/ gives us such a different pronunciation in many words (if not all), not other letters.

3- How do we recognize different /h/ sounds or /z/ sounds in different words? For example, why do we say **بعد از ظهر** /bæd æz zohr/ (afternoon) and not **بعد از زهر** /bæd æz zohr/? Or why do we say **حمال** /hæm.ma:l/ (Porter: A person employed to carry travelers' bags, luggage, especially at railway stations, airports, etc.), and not **همال** /hæm.ma:l/?

I think I just explained it. Some words come from different roots, which refer to that particular action. We cannot write **زهر** /zohr/ for **ظهر** /zohr/. If we do, we have written a different word with a different pronunciation and meaning. It will be pronounced as **زهر** /zæhr/ which means 'poison'.

حمال /hæm.ma:l/ has the same problem. It comes from **حمل** /hæml/, which means 'carrying something from one place to another'. We cannot write it like this **همل** /hæml/ or **همال** /hæm.ma:l/, which do not exist in Persian.

After all, don't call somebody **حمال** /hæm.ma:l/, or he will get really angry with you!! (Even if you are calling a real porter). This is a 'Taboo!' word, which is almost removed from normal daily conversations.

But, it's ok if your father gets angry with you and calls you **حمال** /hæm.ma:l!! Don't take it serious!

صبح /sobh/ has the same story. This **سبح** /sobh/ or this one **ثبح** /sobh/ do not exist in Persian.

So, if we simply see **صبح** /sobh/ with this spelling, we will normally discard the other options.

Let's look at some English words. Why 'Telephone' and not 'Telefone'? Why 'Cinema' and not 'Sinema'? Why 'Cat' and not 'Kat'? Why 'Xerox' and not 'Zerox'? Why 'Quantity' and not 'Kuantity'? Why 'Brick' and not 'Brik'?, and lots of others.

Sometimes we know the root of the word, and sometimes we have to just memorize it.

All right. I hope the explanations are convincing!

Now let's go back to our today's lesson.

Do you know how to say the following words in Persian? Give them a try again.

Book

Car

Table

House

Television

Week

Night

Did you do it?

Yes? Great!

No? Try the previous lessons once more!

Now, we want to see how we can say 'books' in Persian. Correct! We are going to make plural nouns today.

In making plural nouns, we should add something (maybe we can call it suffix) to the end of each noun. I believe it will become a little confusing if we make a rule for each specific option. Therefore, we will try to learn them one by one.

Look at this: **ها** it is /ha:/. If we put **ها** /ha:/ at the end of the nouns, we will have plural nouns. This is one of them.

Sometimes, we add **ان** /a:n/ to a noun to make it plural.

Sometimes, we add **ات** /a:t/ to the end of a noun to make it plural.

And finally, sometimes, we change the appearance of a noun to make it plural!

Frightened?!

You don't need to learn them all at this stage, it's just for your information. As I told you, we are not going to learn them through different rules, as these rules will bring some new problems to us by themselves. We will have to know the rules, the words which can be included in each rule and so on and so on. I don't like

it! You too!

Instead, if we practice a bit, we will be able to find the exact suffix for each noun to make it plural.

So, what we are going to do is this: I give you a noun and tell you how to make it plural. Then it will be your turn to try. It's that easy!

Ready?

کتاب /keta:b/ + ها /ha:/ = کتابها /keta:b ha:/.

ماشین /ma:shin/ + ها /ha:/ = ماشینها /ma:shin ha:/.

Is it easy? Good!

Now you try! Change the following nouns into plural form (currently use ها /ha:/ only).

Table

House

Television

Week

Night

Hopefully you have no problems.

Now look at this:

I bought two books.

How do you say this one? I am sure that you don't know!

You already know the numbers, don't you? The numbers will solve our problems.

Try this simple rule first:

Whenever we want to add numbers to a plural noun (like: two books), we should delete the plural suffix

(here ها /ha:/) and put the number before the noun.

Example:

کتاب /Keta:b/ + ها /ha:/ = کتابها /keta:b ha:/. Delete ها /ha:/, and put دو /do/ in the

beginning. You will say: دو کتاب /do keta:b/.

Or this one: Two cars.

ماشین /ma:shin/ + ها /ha:/ = ماشینها /ma:shin ha:/. Delete ها /ha:/, and put دو /do/

before ماشین /ma:shin/. You will say: دو ماشین /do ma:shin/.

Clear? Wonderful!

You see how easy it is! No matter what the number is, from two to two billions!, just delete the suffix and put the number at the beginning of the noun.

I hope it is easy to follow.

There is one more thing I have to tell you now.

You already know how to say 'my book'. Remember? Good! Now, how do you say 'my books'?

Here, you have two choices, both of which are accepted.

1- Choice 1: You may put the same letters (/æm, æt, æsh, ma:n, ta:n, sha:n/, (which you already know), directly after the plural nouns. This rule is mostly used in daily conversations. Example:

My book = کتابم /keta:bæm/.

My books = کتابهام /keta:b ha:m/.

My car = ماشینم /ma:shinæm/. My cars = ماشینهام /ma:shin ha:m/.

Our car = ماشینمان /ma:shinema:n/. Our cars = ماشینهامان /ma:shin ha:ma:n/.

In this rule, there is only one exception. And this exception refers to 'singular you'. Look at this example:

Your car = ماشینت /ma:shinæt/. Your cars = ماشینهات /ma:shin ha:t/. As you see, we change /æt/ in to /t/. No problems? Good!

2- Choice 2: You may change the same letters /æm, æt, æsh, ma:n, ta:n, sha:n/ into what you see below.

/yæm, yæd, yæsh, yema:n, yeta:n, yesha:n/. Don't be afraid! It's really easy. Look at the examples below:

My books = کتابهایم /keta:b ha: yæm/.

Your books = کتابهایت /keta:b ha: yæt/.

His/ her/books = کتابهایش /keta:b ha: yæsh/.

Our books = کتابهایمان /keta:b ha: yema:n/.

Your books = کتابهایتان /keta:b ha: yeta:n/.

Their books = کتابهایشان /keta:b ha: yesha:n/.

Is it really difficult? Now you try these two choices with the following nouns:

Table

House

Television

Week

Night

OK! That's it for today. I just foamed at the mouth!!

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Supermarket = سوپرمارکت /su:perma:rket/.

Some = مقداری /meghda:ri/. Some water. مقداری آب /meghda:ri a:b/.

Meat = گوشت /gu:sht/.

Ice-cream = بستنی /bæstæni/.

Milk = شیر /shi:r/.

To like = دوست داشتن /du:st da:shtæn/. I liked milk. من شیر دوست داشتم /mæn shi:r du:st da:shtæm/.

Ball = توپ /tu:p/.

To look at = به ... نگاه کردن /beh... nega:h kærdæn/. She looked at me.

او به من نگاه کرد /u: beh mæn nega:h kærd/.

Balloon = بادکنک /ba:d konæk/.

Child = بچه /bæch.cheh/.

Children = بچه ها /bæch.cheh ha:/. Apply the same rule when it comes with numbers.

Bicycle = دوچرخه /do chærkkeh/.

To break = (here): ترکیدن /tærekidæn/. The balloon broke. بادکنک ترکید /ba:d konæk tærekid/.

Hand = دست /dæst/.

Their hands. دست هایشان /dæst ha: yesha:n/. Our hands = دست هایمان /dæst ha: yema:n/.

Needle = سوزن /su:zæn/.

Fat = چاق /cha:gh/.

Fat boy = پسر چاق /pesær-e- cha:gh/.

To scream = جیغ زدن /jigh Zædæn/.

To laugh = خندیدن /khændidæn/.

To take = (here): برداشتن /bær da:shtæn/.

To jump on = پریدن ... روی /pæridæn ... ru: ye /. He jumped on his bicycle.

او پرید روی دوچرخه اش /u: pærid ru: ye do chærkkeh æsh/.

Any more = دیگر /digær/. I didn't see them any more. من آنها را دیگر ندیدم /mæn a:nha: ra: digær nædidæm/.

Please translate the following paragraph into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

I went to supermarket yesterday. I saw my friend in the supermarket. She was alone. She had two baskets. She bought some meat. I didn't buy meat. I bought four ice-creams. She didn't buy ice-cream. She bought some milk. I didn't like milk. I bought two balls. She didn't look at the balls. She bought two balloons. I saw four children. They had four bicycles. We didn't have four bicycles. We had two bicycles. The children looked at the balloons. My friend didn't look at them. They touched the balloons. The balloons broke. I looked at their hands. They had two needles. The fat boy didn't have two needles. He had one needle. My friend screamed. The children didn't scream. They laughed. My friend didn't laugh. They took their bicycles. We didn't take our bicycles. They jumped on their bicycles. They looked at us. We didn't see them any more!

من دیروز به سوپر مارکت رفتم .

من دوستم را در سوپرمارکت دیدم .

او تنها بود . او دو سبد داشت .

او مقداری گوشت خرید . من گوشت نخریدم .

من چهار بستنی خریدم . او بستنی نخرید .

او مقداری شیر خرید . من شیر دوست نداشتم .

من دو توپ خریدم . او به توپها نگاه نکرد .

او دو بادکنک خرید . من چهار بچه دیدم .

آنها چهار دوچرخه داشتند . ما چهار دوچرخه نداشتیم .

ما دو دوچرخه داشتیم . بچه ها به بادکنک ها نگاه کردند .

دوستم به آنها نگاه نکرد . آنها به بادکنک ها دست زدند .

بادکنک ها ترکیدند . من به دست هایشان نگاه کردم .

آنها دو سوزن داشتند . پسر چاق دو سوزن نداشت .

او یک سوزن داشت. دوستم جیغ زد. بچه ها جیغ نزدند.
 آنها خندیدند. دوستم نخندید.
 آنها دوچرخه هایشان را برداشتند.
 ما دوچرخه هایمان را برداشتیم. آنها پریدند روی
 دوچرخه هایشان. آنها به ما نگاه کردند.
 ما دیگر آنها را ندیدیم!

Week 21

Hopefully you are enjoying the lessons. Please let me know if you have any questions that you think I can answer! Don't get impatient if you receive no direct reply although I am trying to write back to many of you as much as I can. Anyway, you may find the answers to your questions regarding the lessons here on this site even if there is no direct reply to your messages through e-mail. Before we start today, let me answer to some of your questions.

1- In [Useful drills 19](#), why **هفته پیش** /hæfteh ye pish/ and not **هفته گذشته** /hæfteh ye gozæshteh/ for 'last week'?

Both **هفته پیش** /hæfteh ye pish/ and **هفته گذشته** /hæfteh ye gozæshteh/ are the same. You may use both of them, which are absolutely correct.

You may also say **سه روز پیش** /seh ru:z-e- pish/ or **سه روز گذشته** /seh ru:z-e- gozæshteh/ for 'three days ago'. Certainly our Persian grammar has no objections! Me too!

2- We have **روز** /ru:z/ for 'day' and **دیروز** /diru:z/ for 'yesterday'. We also have **شب** /shæb/ for 'night' and **دیشب** /dishæb/ for 'last night'. Can we say **دیهفته** /di hæfteh/ for 'last week'? Well, you can but you have to create a new grammar for Persian language, which is too soon for you at this stage!! (just a joke!)

you seem absolutely right. Nevertheless, we don't have such a rule in Persian. although the structure you have offered seems acceptable, it sounds non sense in this language and people can not understand you.

3- the Persian translation of 'this young lady didn't touch your son yesterday', is this:

این خانم جوان دیروز به پسران دست نزد /in kha:nom-e- jæva:n diru:z beh

پسران /pesæreta:n/ and not **پسران را** /pesæreta:n ra:/?
 pesæreta:n dæst næzæd/. Why I think I have already explained on the same page. Some English verbs when used in Persian need some extra elements such as prepositions and so on. Let's have a look at the sentence once more:

This young lady didn't touch your son yesterday. When converting the same sentence into Persian, we have to say 'this young lady didn't touch to your son yesterday'. But in English 'to' is redundant.

Look at this sentence which is much closer to what I am trying to say:

'I said to you yesterday. As you see, we cannot say 'I said you' in English. This verb needs 'to', which cannot be deleted. We'll have to change the verb if we want to delete 'to' from our sentence. In this case, we should say: 'I told you yesterday'.

Some Persian verbs have the same story. We can not put **را** /ra:/ after some words although we know that this word is sitting in the place of an object. It rather depends on the nature of verbs not the objects.

But currently, you don't need to worry about these verbs. Even I, as a Persian who is teaching you, don't know all the verbs which should fall in this category, before using them. To me it's not necessary to overload your brain with memorizing a group of words, rules, verbs, etc.... Instead, you'd better try to use words in your sentences and then correct the structure of your sentence actively by deleting or adding some elements to your sentence, which seems more sensible; and avoid memorizing a group of words and rules and different things that you haven't used it by yourself in your sentences. What I am trying to say is that the context should be your first priority in choosing and applying words. I remember when I was a high school student in my town. We had an English teacher who was really active, but I think he was, to some extent, wrong in properly teaching the rules. He was a really hard-working one. He had tried really hard to tell us different rules and let us write them down one by one. You don't believe me if I tell you that I had memorized more than two long pages about when and how to use 'The' in English! I had memorized more than 100 pages rules and regulations altogether! And I was quite sure that I would get a high mark in the exam. Do you know what happened to me? I failed in the exam!! Don't laugh at me! I did really fail in the English exam! I was never able to use all those rules in real texts! Today, I don't even remember one of those hundreds rules I had filled my brain with. What I do now is I use a word in a sentence and then take a look at it to see how I can change it properly and how I can find a rule for that. Now, the context is my biggest teacher.

Please note that I don't want to neglect the efforts of my teachers to whom I owe a lot. I just want to tell you that you can find the rules from within the contexts not from your memorized knowledge.

4- how can we use 'A' in our Persian translations? For example: I was a student.

As you know, 'A' has different meanings and functions in different sentences. Sometimes it means 'one' and sometimes it refers to something that is not known or clear to us and so on. In English, we use 'A' or 'An' before a singular noun which is countable, such as 'a student', 'a book', 'an apple', and so on. We are not allowed to say 'I was student'; instead we should say 'I was a student'. This is the nature of this language. But it does not mean that 'I was one student and not two students!' correct? Well, basically, this

'A' should not be translated as **یک** /yek/ in Persian, since every body knows that you can be only one student and not two! As a result, you may only say **من دانش آموز بودم** /mæn da:nesh a:mu:z

bu:dæm/ and don't say **من یک دانش آموز بودم** /mæn yek da:nesh a:mu:z bu:dæm/.

Nevertheless, 'A' in the following sentence has two equivalents in Persian both of which are accepted.

I bought a book. **من یک کتاب خریدم** /mæn yek keta:b khæridæm/ or

من کتابی خریدم /mæn keta:bi khæridæm/. The first one is mostly used in daily conversation while the second one is more literary oriented and mostly used in writings. You are allowed to use either of them in your sentences. It has some other functions which I believe will put you in confusion if

explained at this stage. So, currently feel free to use either **من یک کتاب خریدم** /mæn yek keta:b

khæridæm/ or **من کتابی خریدم** /mæn keta:bi khæridæm/.

To tell the truth, this question goes deeper than this, but we don't need it now. Let's do first things first and let's do things step by step. Ok?

Now let's see what we have for today.

Today, we'll learn some more numbers and then we'll go to Useful drills page to test our ability in using our knowledge.

We already know the numbers from one to twenty. As I told you before, this was the most difficult part of our work in learning numbers. Before we continue, let's try the following numbers first.

20 = **بیست** /bist/.

30 = **سی** /si:/.

40 = **چهل** /che hel/.

50 = **پنجاه** /pænja:h/.

60 = ۶۰ شخصت /shæst/.

70 = ۷۰ هفتاد /hæfta:d/.

80 = ۸۰ هشتاد /hæshta:d/.

90 = ۹۰ نود /nævæd/.

100 = ۱۰۰ صد /sæd/.

No problems? Great!

Now we want to say the following numbers:

21

22

23

and so on.

The easiest way and explanation in learning the numbers is this:

The main number (20, 30, 40, 50, ...) + /o/ sound + one of the first ten numbers. Don't let this rule scare you! Let's try and see!

21 = بیست و یک /bist-o- yek/.

22 = بیست و دو /bist-o- do/.

23 = بیست و سه /bist-o- seh/.

24 = بیست و چهار /bist-o- chæha:r/.

You continue!

30 = سی /si:/.

31 = سی و یک /si: -o- yek/.

32 = سی و دو /si: -o- do/.

33 = سی و سه /si:-o- seh/.

You continue!

40 = چهل /che hel/.

41 = چهل و یک /che hel-o- yek/.

42 = چهل و دو /che hel-o- d-/.

Continue!

50 = پنجاه /pænja:h/.

51 = پنجاه و یک /pænja:h-o- yek/.

52 = پنجاه و دو /pænja:h-o-do/.

Continue!

60 = شصت /shæst/.

61 = شصت و یک /shæst-o- yek/.

62 = شصت و دو /shæst-o- do/.

Continue!

70 = هفتاد /hæfta:d/.
71 = هفتاد و یک /hæfta:d-o- yek/.
72 = هفتاد و دو /hæfta:d-o- do/.
Continue!

80 = هشتاد /hæshta:d/.
81 = هشتاد و یک /hæshta:d-o- yek/.
82 = هشتاد و دو /hæshta:d-o- do/.
Continue!

90 = نود /nævæd/.
91 = نود و یک /nævæd-o- yek/.
92 = نود و دو /nævæd-o- do/.
Continue!

100 = صد /sæd/.
101 = صد و یک /sæd-o- yek/.
102 = صد و دو /sæd-o- do/.
Continue!

All right! With this we come to the end of lesson بیست و یک /bist-o-yek!/ I hope you liked it.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To visit = از ... دیدن کردن /æz 'someone or something' didæn kærdæn/. He visited two countries
last week. او هفته گذشته از دو کشور دیدن کرد /u: hæfteh ye gozæshteh æz do
keshvæz didæn kærd/.
Note: this word is like 'to touch' which you already know.

Country = کشور /keshvæz/.

Chocolate = شکلات /shokola:t/.

To eat = خوردن /khordæn/.

To break = (here): ترکیدن /tærekidæn/. The balloon broke. بادکنک ترکید /ba:d konæk
tærekid/.

To break = ترکاندن /tæreka:ndæn/. He broke my balloon. او بادکنکم را ترکاند /u: ba:d
konækæm ra: tæreka:nd/. Don't say: /u: ba:d konækæm ra: tærekid/.

Younger(here) = کوچک /ku:chek/. My younger brother برادر کوچک من /bæra:dær-e-
ku:chek-e- mæn/. Or /bæra:dær-e- ku:chekæm/.

To catch = گرفتن /gereftæn/.

Mouse = موش /mu:sh/.

White = سفید /sefid/. A white horse اسب سفید /æsb-e- sefid/.

Kite = بادبادک /ba:d ba:dæk/.

Ball = توپ /tu:p/.

Plate = بشقاب /bosh gha:b/.

Jack's mother = مادر جک /ma:dær-e- Jack/.

Jack's friend = دوست جک /du:st-e- Jack/.

Balloon = بادکنک /ba:d konæk/.

To fly (here) = پرواز دادن /pærva:z da:dæn/. And sometimes in daily conversation

هوا کردن /hæva: kærdæn/. He flew a kite. او یک بادبادک را پرواز داد /u: yek ba:d

ba:dæk ra: pærva:z da:d/. Also او یک بادبادک را هوا کرد /u: yek ba:d ba:dæk ra: hæva: kærd/.

Cat= گربه /gorbeh/. The white cat /gorbeh ye sefid/.

Mr. = آقا /a:gha:/. Mr. Jones آقای جونز /a:gha: ye Jones/.

Mrs./Miss/ Ms. = خانم /kha:nom/. Mrs. Poodle خانم پودل /kha:nom-e- Poodle/.

Room = اتاق /ota:gh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- My friend read /red/62 books last year.
- 2- John didn't read 47 books last year.
- 3- Mr. Jones visited 12 countries two years ago.
- 4- Mrs. Poodle didn't see her students three weeks ago.
- 5- That fat girl ate 27 chocolates this morning.
- 6- This boy broke 49 balloons this afternoon.
- 7- Her younger brother flew four kites this evening.
- 8- This cat caught 11 mice last week.
- 9- That white cat didn't catch 16 mice last week.
- 10- Helen sold 51 balls yesterday.
- 11- I didn't sell 43 balls this week.
- 12- She didn't break the table three days ago.
- 13- My mother washed 77 plates this afternoon.
- 14- Jack's mother didn't wash 66 plates this morning.
- 15- Tom's friend didn't clean his room tonight.

- ۱- دوستم شصت و دو کتاب را سال پیش خواند
- ۲- جان چهل و هفت کتاب را سال پیش نخواند
- ۳- آقای جونز دو سال پیش از دوازده کشور دیدن کرد
- ۴- خانم پودل دانش آموزانش را سه هفته پیش ندید
- ۵- آن دختر چاق بیست و هفت شکلات را امروز صبح خورد
- ۶- این پسر چهل و نه بادکنک را امروز بعد از ظهر ترکاند
- ۷- برادر کوچکش چهار بادبادک را امروز عصر پرواز داد
- ۸- این گربه یازده موش را هفته پیش گرفت
- ۹- آن گربه سفید شانزده موش را هفته پیش نگرفت
- ۱۰- هلن پنجاه و یک توپ را دیروز فروخت
- ۱۱- من چهل و سه توپ را این هفته نفروختم
- ۱۲- او میز را سه روز پیش نشکست
- ۱۳- مادرم هفتاد و هفت بشقاب را امروز بعد از ظهر شست
- ۱۴- مادر جک شصت و شش بشقاب را امروز صبح نشست
- ۱۵- دوست جک اتاقش را امشب تمیز نکرد

Week 22

Hello everyone! Before we start today, let me simply wish you a very great and prosperous New Year on the eve of our Persian New Year. May the coming year bring you success in whatsoever you are doing and may your brains remain fresh with fresh ideas and positive attitudes!!

As always, we have got some questions to deal with.

1- I still do not know when I have to use "RA" or when not. When is something an object and when not? Well, you seem looking for trouble!!

I think it's a bit soon to know this fluently in Persian. But, I'll try to answer to your question now. Don't worry if you find it a little difficult to understand completely at this stage. It will give you some insight and will prepare you for future.

We have two kinds of verbs in Persian:

A- Transitive, a verb that takes a direct object

B- Intransitive, a verb that has a subject and not an object.

I don't think it's really difficult to find the object of your sentences. In one word 'Objects' receive the actions done by 'Subjects'. That is to say, subjects are doers of an action and this action is done on objects.

Look at the following example:

I killed him.

I = subject

Killed = verb

Him = object

In Persian, however, there is a very small and easy rule which helps us to recognize the objects more easily. I am afraid I can not translate this simple rule as short as it is in Persian. Instead, I'll try to explain it a bit more to make it understandable.

Objects can be either persons or things (non-person). In the above sentence 'I killed him', the object is a person or human being. Am I right?

Now look at the following sentence:

I broke the table.

I = subject

Broke = verb

The table = object

Here, 'the table' is a non-human object (things). Is it correct?

So, we have put 'objects' into two main categories: 1- human 2- non-human which includes animals, and other things.

Now, let's do the main part of our job!

In Persian, we have two questions which can be raised after each verb to find the exact object and to see if we can put /ra:/ after the object. Confused! I know!! It's because I can not translate these two short sentences into English without damaging their meaning!

In 'I killed him' the person who is listening to me will raise this question: whom did you kill?

Let's see some more examples:

I saw him. The question is: whom did you see?

I found him. Whom did you find?

I hurt him. Whom did you hurt?

The answer to these questions is the object of our sentence. It's that simple!

In Persian we have to ask the following question if the object is human-based.

چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/?

And we have to ask this question if the object is non-human based: چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
And we have to ask this question if the object is non-human based:

I killed (him/it). من کشتم /mæn koshtæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
I killed (him/it). من کشتم /mæn koshtæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
I saw (him/it). من دیدم /mæn didæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
I found (him/it). من پیدا کردم /mæn peida: kærdæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs
ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
The answer to چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/ or چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/ is the direct object of
our sentence and we can put را /ra:/ after that object.
In short,
Can you put these questions after a sentence (verb)? Yes.
Can you find a single word as the answer to your question? Yes.
So, that answer is the object of your sentence and you can put را /ra:/ after that word.
Well, this is not the main problem! The problem appears when the verb has a preposition. Look at the
examples below:
I talked with him.
I said to him.
I listened to him.
This is the question here:
Whom did you talk to/with?
Whom did you say to?
Whom did you listen to?

I saw (him/it). من دیدم /mæn didæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
I saw (him/it). من دیدم /mæn didæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
I found (him/it). من پیدا کردم /mæn peida: kærdæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs
ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
The answer to چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/ or چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/ is the direct object of
our sentence and we can put را /ra:/ after that object.
In short,
Can you put these questions after a sentence (verb)? Yes.
Can you find a single word as the answer to your question? Yes.
So, that answer is the object of your sentence and you can put را /ra:/ after that word.
Well, this is not the main problem! The problem appears when the verb has a preposition. Look at the
examples below:
I talked with him.
I said to him.
I listened to him.
This is the question here:
Whom did you talk to/with?
Whom did you say to?
Whom did you listen to?

I found (him/it). من پیدا کردم /mæn peida: kærdæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs
ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
I found (him/it). من پیدا کردم /mæn peida: kærdæm/. You will ask: چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs
ra:/? Or
چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/.
The answer to چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/ or چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/ is the direct object of
our sentence and we can put را /ra:/ after that object.
In short,
Can you put these questions after a sentence (verb)? Yes.
Can you find a single word as the answer to your question? Yes.
So, that answer is the object of your sentence and you can put را /ra:/ after that word.
Well, this is not the main problem! The problem appears when the verb has a preposition. Look at the
examples below:
I talked with him.
I said to him.
I listened to him.
This is the question here:
Whom did you talk to/with?
Whom did you say to?
Whom did you listen to?

The answer to چه کس را؟ /cheh kæs ra:/ or چه چیز را؟ /che chi:z ra:/ is the direct object of
our sentence and we can put را /ra:/ after that object.
In short,
Can you put these questions after a sentence (verb)? Yes.
Can you find a single word as the answer to your question? Yes.
So, that answer is the object of your sentence and you can put را /ra:/ after that word.
Well, this is not the main problem! The problem appears when the verb has a preposition. Look at the
examples below:
I talked with him.
I said to him.
I listened to him.
This is the question here:
Whom did you talk to/with?
Whom did you say to?
Whom did you listen to?

In short,

Can you put these questions after a sentence (verb)? Yes.

Can you find a single word as the answer to your question? Yes.

So, that answer is the object of your sentence and you can put را /ra:/ after that word.

Well, this is not the main problem! The problem appears when the verb has a preposition. Look at the
examples below:

I talked with him.

I said to him.

I listened to him.

This is the question here:

Whom did you talk to/with?

Whom did you say to?

Whom did you listen to?

As you see, there is a preposition after the verb. Therefore, you can not put **را** /ra:/ after the words that seem to be the objects of our sentence.

Some Persian verbs need a preposition. It is not possible for me to tell you all these verbs here. It depends on the verbs. You may see the following verbs as the examples:

To touch

To face

To encounter

To visit

To telephone

And many others.

You cannot put **را** /ra:/ after the objects that come with these verbs. It seems nonsense in Persian. Each of the above verbs comes with a preposition.

I touched him. **من به او دست زدم** /mæn beh u: dəst zædæm/, not

من او را دست زدم /mæn u: ra: dəst zædæm/.

As you see, we have **به** /beh/ before **او** /u:/ which is sitting in the place of an object in our Persian sentence. So, we cannot say **چه کس را؟** /che kæs ra:/, here the question is **به چه کس؟** /beh cheh kæs/ or whatsoever which is not included in our rule and we have nothing to do with that. In this case, you can not put **را** /ra:/ after the object.

Result: look at the verb first. Ask this question: **چه کس را؟** /cheh kæs ra:/ or **چه چیز را؟** /che chi:z ra:/. Find a direct object for your question. If there is a direct object after your question, your

verb is transitive and you can put **را** /ra:/ after the object. If there is no direct object after your question and you need to add something like a preposition to get the answer to your question, that verb is not transitive and you can not put **را** /ra:/ after your object.

I know this rule seems difficult for you to follow. But, in Persian it is really easy for everybody. It's because they know the verbs. You will become more familiar with this in near future.

2- ... I'm wondering when you will stop doing this (teaching)? I already read what you said about it but that was at the beginning...

We are still in the beginning. 20 lessons for a language with thousands years of written history is nothing. I hope I'll be with you for quite long if you are patient enough to tolerate me! There might come some changes in the structure of this site or the way I offer the lessons, but I will not stop it, at least at this stage.

3- There is some difference between the letters in writing. The typed letters are different from what you write on 'Let's write' page. Why?

I am not a machine! All languages are like this. What you read in a machine-typed text is different from what you write with a pen. Usually handwritings are easier than what the machine offers. As a simple example, all of us see and read this letter 'a' without even noticing the way it is written. But when writing this letter with a pen, almost all of us write it differently and maybe we have never thought about it before. Try it now and you'll see the difference! explanations,

And finally, it's the following message. I received this message a bit late but it was a good one and made me change some of the paragraphs I had already written earlier this week. I found it unfair to summarize this message. So, I have copied the main part of it to let you see the questions. Maybe, many of you have the same questions.

Currently I have one small request from you if you don't mind. In the future, if possible, please send your questions regarding these lessons before Wednesday so that I can answer to them in the same week.

Otherwise you'll have to wait for the next week to receive your answers.

4- I am becoming puzzled about how to guess the pronunciation of syllables, and the special case of va:v. How can I know when two letters are pronounced as together, as in the 'ft' and 'nd' in ræftænd, and when they are separated by a vowel sound. Consider the word for 'friend': da:l va:v sin te. In lesson 15 it is

pronounced

du:st, but in the Persian for "I love you" the same series of letters are pronounced du:set.

Again in lesson 15, in the word for 'sister', kha:hær, the va:v is sounded as a vowel. How would I know, on seeing the word the first time, that it is not pronounced khæv:ahær?

A suggestion, in the written drills, it would be helpful to see the printed Persian along with the hand-written word. I have trouble guessing the letters when they are hand-written.

All right, Let me solve the problem of /va:v/ first. It seems to be the problem of many!

Sometimes /va:v/ pronounced as /u:/ and sometimes it accepts other short and long vowels. Unfortunately, there is no clear and general rule about this problematic feature of this letter. In many cases, however, it refers to the root of words. Whatever it is, I don't think it's possible to read a foreign word correctly when it's your first meeting with that word! Even in English, I have many problems with the pronunciation of a lot of words that I haven't seen before or I haven't used them very often. So, I mustn't feel puzzled when I am not able to pronounce an unfamiliar word. It seems quite natural. Instead, I should try to correct my pronunciation with the help of some reliable sources such as dictionaries, friends, and even my teacher and so on. So, I believe, as a beginner, you'd better try to learn new words in a parrot like repetition or mimicry. Little by little, you'll come to understand and separate the different pronunciation of similar words or different letters that come together to make a word in different situations. I am quite aware that it is not possible to look for the roots of all words especially at this stage, and I have to confess that it is beyond my ability to teach such a course to you, as it demands a different and stronger knowledge.

Try to learn the words first(as you are being told) and avoid pronouncing the new words based on your own knowledge.

As far as I remember, the combination of /khe/ and /va:v/ is pronounced /kha:/ in most words (which are used more frequently) if they are followed by /a:/ sound. The familiar examples to this are /kha:hær/, /kha:b/. In some words the same combination can be pronounced as /khæva:/, but fortunately these words are not used very often and they are really short in numbers, maybe less than five words. I promise you won't have to use these words with this pronunciation /khæva:/ once in a million or even less than this. I don't think there is more than ten words altogether for both /khæva:/ and /kha:/ in Persian and more than seventy percent of this ten words are not very common among people. So, I don't think this problem is really frightening. All you have to do is memorize less than ten words in this category.

What you said about /du:st/ is correct. It needs some explanations. The language we are learning is the written form of Persian. Unlike English, there is a considerably big difference between oral and written Persian although both of them are understandable to native Persians. Generally, the Iranians do not use the written form in their daily conversations. They do understand it but they don't use it. As far as I know, there is no considerable course in Persian conversation. All you learn in Persian classes, whether inside the country or outside (most of them), is the written form of this language which enables you to read, write and communicate with others in a written form. By written form I mean your style in communication is in a book style and it does not mean that you have to write down your words in order for others to understand you. But the way you speak seems funny and somehow entertaining for others. They will like your style but most probably they will laugh! Most of the sentences and phrases you see on 'Your words' page is in daily conversation form, not book style, as the manner of those sentences demands such equivalents in Persian.

'I love you' means 'du:stæt da:ræm', but if you say this sentence to one Iranian he or she will certainly laugh at you for such an accent (and maybe he or she will like you more for such an interesting accent!). In daily conversation we say 'du:set da:ræm' not 'du:stæt da:ræm' which is a literary style and is found in our poetry and that's why it will make others laugh if you use it in daily conversation. They will see themselves in a couple of centuries back in the history! A good example I can mention here is 'how are you'? It has two basic equivalents in Persian. Let's take a look at it:

What people say in their daily conversations is this: /ha:letu:n chetoreh/?

What you find in books is this: /ha:l-e- shoma: chetor æst/? Try this one with one of your Iranian friends and look at his/her face to see the smile or maybe loud laughter! But both of them are understandable.

Your suggestion about writing is humbly obeyed. I have done it today, but it is not very patiently done! It's because of my terrible cold that has knocked me down for almost a week. I hope I'll take care of writings much better in future.

All right, now let's start.

Today, we are going to see how two words are connected in Persian. What does it mean? Let's see!

Suppose that we have these two words:

Mr.
Jones

Now we want to combine them. I know it's easy. We will say: Mr. Jones. Right? Great job! How do you

say it in Persian? Right! We'll say: آقای جونز /a:ga: ye Jones/.

How do you combine this one?

Fat
Boy

You'll say 'a fat boy'. Say it in Persian! Great! پسر چاق /pesær-e- cha:gh/.

Now try this one:

Big = بزرگ /bozorg/.
House

You'll say 'a big house. Try it in Persian! Good! خانه بزرگ /kha:neh ye bozorg/.

What about this?

Big
Country

You'll say 'a big country'. And you know it in Persian, don't you? کشور بزرگ /keshvær-e- bozorg/.

All right!

Now, imagine you are a teacher and are supposed to make a rule out of what you have seen above.

I am listening! Louder please! Well done!

Now let me try!

As we know, in English there is no sound between two words when they come together, like Mr. Jones. This is the way we say it: Mr. (then pause), Jones (then pause). In Persian, however, we have to use a sound between these two words. Generally, we have these two sounds which work as conjunctions; /ye/ sound and /e/ sound.

If the first word has ا /a:/ or this /he/ attached to به at the end, then we have to use /ye/ between the two words.

Examples:

Mr. Jones

Mr. has ا /a:/ sound at the end in Persian آقا /a:gha:/. So, we'll say : آقای جونز /a:gha: ye Jones/.

We use /ye/.

Big house

House has this به /he/ at the end. So, we will say خانه بزرگ /kha:neh ye bozorg/.

Good neighbor

Neighbor = همسایه /hæmsa:yeh/.

همسایه /hæmsa: yeh/ has this به /he/ at the end. So, we will say: همسایه خوب /hæmsa:ye ye khu:b/. The first /ye/ belongs to the word, and the second one is the conjunction.

White cat = گربه سفید /gorbeh ye sefid/. گربه /gorbeh/ has this به /he/ at the end.

Note: in 'big house', 'good neighbor', and 'white cat', 'big', 'good', and 'white' are adjectives. As you see in the above examples, unlike English, adjectives come after nouns in Persian.

No questions? Good!

In almost all other cases, we connect two words together with /e/ sound.

Example:

Good book = کتاب خوب /keta:b-e- khu:b/.

Big country = کشور بزرگ /keshvær-e- bozorg/.

Fat boy = پسر چاق /pesær-e- cha:gh/.

Mrs. Jones = خانم جونز /kha:nom-e- Jones/.

Now, how do you say the following words? When the name is the first name not last name.

Mr.

Ali علی /æli/.

Mrs./Miss Helen

Easy? Did you say آقای علی /a:gha: ye Ali/? Yes? Well, it's wrong!

As a rule, when we have Mr. or Mrs. before the first name of somebody we should use this combination:

Name + آقا /a:gha:/ or خانم /kha:nom/.

Here we can say:

Mr. Ali = علی آقا /Ali a:gha:/.

Mrs./Miss Helen = هلن خانم /Helen kha:nom/.

Note: in a few cases, we may change the above rule into what we see below:

آقا /a:gha:/ or خانم /kha:nom/ + name (the title comes before the name for a few names)

example:

Mr. Reza = آقا رضا /a:gha: Reza/.

Important note: This is not a very strict rule. So, don't worry if you put a title before or after a name.

Note: using this rule with foreign names looks a little funny in Persian!

All right, today I have got the same feeling as my high school teacher's! Believe me I just had to explain these things here!

OK! With this we come to the end of lesson 22. I hope you liked it.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these home works, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Tall (here) = قد بلند /ghæd bolænd/. A tall boy پسر قد بلند /pesær-e- ghæd bolænd/.

Short (here) = قد کوتاه /ghæd ku:ta:h/. A short boy پسر قد کوتاه /pesær-e- ghæd ku:ta:h/.

To take (here)= برداشتن /bærda:shtæn/.

New = تازه /ta:zeh/. His new car ماشین تازه اش /ma:shin-e- ta:zeh æsh/.

Note:

A big country = یک کشور بزرگ /yek keshvær-e- bozorg/.

His big country = کشور بزرگش /keshvær-e- bozorgæsh/. We add /æsh/ and other suffixes to the end of adjectives.

His new car = ماشین تازه اش /ma:shin-e- ta:zeh æsh/.

The day before yesterday = پریروز /pæriruz/.

To turn on = روشن کردن /roshæn kærden/. He turned on the TV.

او تلویزیون را روشن کرد /u: televisiyu:n ra: roshæn kærd/.

Computer = کامپیوتر /ka:mpiyu:ter/.

To turn off = خاموش کردن /kha:mu:sh kærdæn/.

Miss Helen's brother = برادر هلن خانم /bæra:dær-e- Helen kha:nom/.

Miss Helen's friend = دوست هلن خانم /du:st-e- Helen kha:nom/.

Husband = شوهر /shohær/

Mrs. Gate's husband = شوهر خانم گیت /shohær-r- kha:nom-e- Geit/. (Gate is a family name)

Mrs. Gate's son = پسر خانم گیت /pesær-e- kha:nom-e- Geit/.

Light = لامپ /la:mp/.

Hour = ساعت /sa:æt/. Five hours ago پنج ساعت پیش /pænj sa:æt-e- pish/.

Wife = زن /zæn/.

Note: in daily conversation we mostly use خانم /kha:nom/ for زن /zæn/ to show respect.

Mr. Ali's wife = زن علی آقا /zæn-e- Ali a:gha:/ Or خانم علی آقا /kha:nom-e- Ali a:gha:/.

Small = کوچک /ku:chek/. That small book آن کتاب کوچک /a:n keta:b-e- ku:chek/.

Several = چندین /chændin/. several years ago چندین سال پیش /chændin sa:l-e- pish/.

Several weeks ago چندین هفته پیش /chændin hæfteh ye pish/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

1- I saw a tall man in the street yesterday.

2- He didn't see that short woman yesterday.

3- Mr. Farshid didn't take your new car last week.

Note: Farshid is a first name. Put the title before the name.

You don't need to know which name should come

Before or after a title. This rule is not very strict.

You may put the title before or after each name.

Anyway, I'll tell you which place is the best for a title,

But you may consider yourself free!

4- Mr. Reza didn't buy that house the day before yesterday.

(You may put the title before the name).

5- My friend didn't see Mr. Jones this morning.

6- Miss Helen turned on your computer this afternoon.

7- Miss Helen's brother didn't turn on your computer this evening.

8- Mrs. Gate turned off this computer today.

9- Mrs. Gate's husband didn't turn off this computer yesterday.

10- Mr. Ali turned on that light two hours ago.

11- Mr. Ali's friend didn't turn on this light five hours ago.

12- Mr. Ali's wife turned off that small TV 12 hours ago.

13- Mr. Ali's son didn't turn off that big TV 15 hours ago.

14- Mr. Irani sold his big house several years ago.

15- Mrs. Irani sold her white car several years ago.

Irani is a family name.

- ۱- من یک مرد قد بلند را دیروز در خیابان دیدم
- ۲- او آن زن قد کوتاه را دیروز ندید
- ۳- آقا فرشید ماشین تازه تان را هفته پیش برنداشت
- ۴- آقا رضا آن خانه را پریروز نخرید
- ۵- دوستم آقای جونز را امروز صبح ندید
- ۶- هلن خانم کامپیوترتان را امروز بعداز ظهر روشن کرد
- ۷- برادر هلن خانم کامپیوترتان را امروز عصر روشن نکرد
- ۸- خانم گیت این کامپیوتر را امروز خاموش کرد
- ۹- شوهر خانم گیت این کامپیوتر را دیروز خاموش نکرد
- ۱۰- علی آقا آن لامپ را دو ساعت پیش روشن کرد
- ۱۱- دوست علی آقا این لامپ را پنج ساعت پیش روشن نکرد
- ۱۲- خانم علی آقا آن تلویزیون کوچک را دوازده ساعت پیش خاموش کرد
- ۱۳- پسر علی آقا آن تلویزیون بزرگ را پانزده ساعت پیش خاموش نکرد
- ۱۴- آقای ایرانی خانه بزرگش را چندین سال پیش فروخت
- ۱۵- خانم ایرانی ماشین سفیدش را چندین سال پیش فروخت

Week 23

To begin with, let me thank all of you who have sent me New Year messages. Your warm messages are deeply appreciated.

Thanks God we have no questions for this week! (Joke that is!!)

Now let's begin.

Last week, we learned how to use a noun with an adjective. As you remember, unlike English, adjectives come after nouns in Persian and there can be two conjunctions between nouns and adjectives: /ye/, and /-e- / sounds. Today we are going to practice more with this to make sure that everything is clearly understood.

Small = کوچک /ku:chæk/.

Big = بزرگ /bozorg/.

Beautiful = قشنگ /ghæshæng/.

Ugly = زشت /zesht/.

Good = خوب /khu:b/.

Bad = بد /bæd/.

Flower = گل /gol/.

A small house = خانه کوچک /kha:neh ye ku:chæk/.

A small car = ماشین کوچک /ma:shin-e- ku:chæk/.

A small book = کتاب کوچک /keta:b-e- ku:chæk/.

A small bridge = پل کوچک /pol-e- ku:chæk/.

A small flower = گل کوچک /gol-e- ku:chæk/.

A big house = خانه بزرگ /kha:neh ye bozorg/.

A big car = ماشین بزرگ /ma:shin-e- bozorg/.

A big book = کتاب بزرگ /keta:b-e- bozorg/.

A big bridge = پل بزرگ /pol-e- bozorg/.

A big flower = گل بزرگ /gol-e- bozorg/.

A beautiful house = خانه قشنگ /kha:neh ye ghæshæng/.

A beautiful car = ماشین قشنگ /ma:shin-e- ghæshæng/.

A beautiful flower = گل قشنگ /gol-e- ghæshæng/.

A beautiful bridge = پل قشنگ /pol-e- ghæshæng/.

An ugly house = خانه زشت /kha:neh ye zesht/.

An ugly car = ماشین زشت /ma:shin-e- zesht/.

An ugly flower = گل زشت /gol-e- zesht/.

An ugly bridge = پل زشت /pol-e- zesht/.

A good house = خانه خوب /kha:neh ye khu:b/.

A good book = کتاب خوب /keta:b-e- khu:b/.

A good car = ماشین خوب /ma:shin-e- khu:b/.

A good flower = گل خوب /gol-e- khu:b/.

A good bridge = پل خوب /pol-e- khu:b/.

A bad house = خانه بد /kha:neh ye bæd/.

A bad car = ماشین بد /ma:shin-e- bæd/.

A bad flower = گل بد /gol-e- bæd/.

A bad bridge = پل بد /pol-e- bæd/.

Note: in all the above phrases, 'a' does not mean 'one'. Rather it's an 'indefinite article'. We could put /yek/ in front of all the above Persian phrases or /i:/ sound at the end of adjectives if 'a' referred to 'one'. Please look at the following examples:

A house = خانه /kha:neh/.

I sold a house = من یک خانه را فروختم /mæn yek kha:neh ra: foru:khtæm/. Or

من خانه ای را فروختم /mæn kha:neh i: ra: foru:khtæm/.

Note: as you see, /i:/ comes after the noun.

I sold a beautiful house = من یک خانه قشنگ را فروختم /mæn yek kha:neh ye ghæshæng

ra: foru:khtæm/. Or من خانه قشنگی را فروختم /mæn kha:neh ye ghæshængi: ra: foru:khtæm/.

Note: as you see, /i:/ comes after the adjective, not the noun.

Examples:

I bought a small house last year. من خانه کوچکی را پارسال خریدم /mæn kha:neh ye

ku:chæki: ra: pa:r sa:l khæridæm. Or من یک خانه کوچک را پارسال خریدم /mæn yek kha:neh ye ku:chæk ra: pa:r sa:l khæridæm/.

To receive = دریافت کردن /dærya:ft kærdæn/.

I received a beautiful flower yesterday. من گل قشنگی را دیروز دریافت کردم /mæn gol-e- ghæshængi: ra: diru:z dærya:ft kærdæm/. Or

من یک گل قشنگ را دیروز دریافت کردم /mæn yek gol-e- ghæshæng ra: diru:z

dærya:ft kærdæm/.

My friend built an ugly house two years ago.

دوستم خانه زشتی را دو سال پیش ساخت /du:stæm kha:neh ye zeshti: ra: do sa:l-

e- pish sa:kht/. Or دوستم یک خانه زشت را دو سال پیش ساخت /du:stæm yek kha:neh ye zesht ra: do sa:l-e- pish sa:kht/.

All right, that's all we have to learn today.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To hurt = زخمی کردن /zækhmi kærdæn/.

To steal = دزدیدن /dozdidæn/.

To break (here) = خراب کردن /khæra:b kærdæn/.

To lose (here) = گم کردن /gom kærdæn/.

Short man = مرد قدکوتاه /mærd-e- ghæd ku:ta:h/.

Classmate = هم کلاسی /hæm kela:si:/.

My short classmate = هم کلاسی قدکوتاهم /hæm kela:si: ye ghæd ku:ta:hæm/.

Bulldozer = بولدوزر /boldozer/.

To destroy = خراب کردن /khæra:b kærdæn/.

Pencil = مداد /meda:d/.

Lady = خانم /kha:nom/.

To give = دادن /da:dæn/. To give somebody something = /something ra: beh somebody da:dæn/. He

gave me that book three days ago. او آن کتاب را سه روز پیش به من داد /u: a:n keta:b
ra: seh ru:z-e- pish beh mæn da:d/
To write = /neveshtæn/.

Light = لامپ /la:mp/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- Your ugly dog hurt my beautiful cat this morning.
- 2- That bad man stole my beautiful car last week.
- 3- This bad neighbor broke my good computer last year.
- 4- My good friend lost his big car 25 days ago.
- 5- That short man built this big bridge 72 days ago.
- 6- My short classmate bought a big dictionary 44 days ago.
- 7- That big bulldozer destroyed our beautiful house 22 years ago.
- 8- That tall man didn't look at my small car.
- 9- That ugly student broke my good pencil 19 days ago.
- 10- This beautiful lady gave me a beautiful flower 16 weeks ago.
- 11- That good man wrote this big book 82 years ago.
- 12- My big cat didn't kill her small mouse 101 days ago.
- 13- My good dog didn't hurt your small cat yesterday.
- 14- I didn't touch that big light the day before yesterday.

- ۱- سگ زشتت گربه قشنگم را امروز صبح زخمی کرد
- ۲- آن مرد بد ماشین قشنگم را هفته پیش دزدید
- ۳- این همسایه بد کامپیوتر خوبم را پارسال خراب کرد
- ۴- دوست خوبم ماشین بزرگش را بیست و پنج روز پیش گم کرد
- ۵- آن مرد قد کوتاه این پل بزرگ را هفتاد و دو روز پیش ساخت
- ۶- هم کلاسی قد کوتاهم دیکشنری بزرگی را چهل و چهار روز پیش خرید

- ۷- آن بولدوزر بزرگ خانه قشنگمان را
 بیست و دو سال پیش خراب کرد
- ۸- آن مرد قد بلند به ماشین کوچکم نگاه نکرد
- ۹- آن دانش آموز زشت مداد خوبم را
 نوزده روز پیش شکست
- ۱۰- این خانم قشنگ گل زیبایی را
 شانزده هفته پیش به من داد
- ۱۱- آن مرد خوب این کتاب بزرگ را
 هشتاد و دو سال پیش نوشت
- ۱۲- گربه بزرگم موش کوچکش را
 صد و یک روز پیش نکشت
- ۱۳- سگ خوبم گربه کوچکت را دیروز زخمی نکرد
- ۱۴- من پریروز به آن لامپ بزرگ دست نزدم

Week 24

Hello everyone! I hope you are not giving up! How do you find the lessons? Are they getting difficult or still easy to follow? I am really trying hard to make the lessons as easy as possible. All I want you to do is a little cooperation, not too much! We are almost on our way. Do you remember what I told you during the first lessons? When there is a will, *there is* a way. There is no impossible if we are strong. Learning a language, like many other things, demands our patience and continuous work. Don't get disappointed if you are still unable to clearly understand your Iranian friends during your night gatherings! You need more patience and I need more time to help you with this. You had strong motivation to stay with me for 23 weeks. So, don't let it fade away. Remember, what stops you is a simple laziness not a busy time! No more preaching!!

Let's begin.

Now that we are a little familiar with the combination of nouns with adjectives, I think it's not a bad idea to learn some colors today.

The combination of colors and nouns is just the same as nouns with adjectives. That is to say, in normal speech, colors come after nouns. Let's see some examples:

But before that, let me tell you that my 'colorology' (!!) is really terrible!

Let's learn some of them now.

Red = قرمز /ghermez/.

Yellow = زرد /zærd/.

Blue = آبی /a:bi:/.

Green = سبز /sæbz/.

White = سفید /sefid/.

Black = سیاه /siya:h/. Or مشکی /meshki/.

Purple = بنفش /bænæfsh/.

Now lets' see some examples:

A red flower = گل قرمز /gol-e- ghermez/.

A yellow car = ماشین زرد /ma:shin-e- zærd/.

A blue door = در آبی /dær-e- a:bi:/.

A green tree = درخت سبز /derækht-e- sæbz/.

A white cat = گربه سفید /gorbeh ye sefid/.

A black dog = سگ سیاه /sæg-e- siya:h/. Or سگ مشکی /sæg-e- meshki:/.

Is it difficult? As you see, colors like other adjectives come after nouns.

All right, that's the color.

Today, we are going to learn some more numbers.

We already know the numbers from 1 to 100 or maybe more. Today, we will learn the main numbers from 100 to 500.

I know most of us don't really like learning the numbers of a language as it demands a different taste! But, this is part of a learning language procedure and we shouldn't ignore it.

Ready?

100 = صد /sæd/.

200 = دویست /devist/.

300 = سیصد /sisæd/.

400 = چهار صد /chæha:r sæd/.

500 = پانصد /pa:nsæd/.

All right, that's it for today.

Week 24

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Bus = اتوبوس /oto bu:s/.

Bag = کیف /ki:f/.

To cut = بریدن /boridæn/.

Tree = درخت /derækht/.

To plant = کاشتن /ka:shtæn/.

Knife = چاقو /cha:ghu:/.

Kitchen = آشپز خانه /a:sh pæz kha:neh/.

Curtain = پرده /pærdeh/.

To fix = to repair = تعمیر کردن /tæmi:r kærdæn/.

Box = جعبه /jæbeh/.

To eat = خوردن /khordæn/.

Bird = پرنده /pærænde/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

Note: I understand using these strange numbers in these sentences seem a little funny! But, this is the only way we can practice them now. After all, learning these numbers in such sentences must be much easier than learning them through some mathematical procedures (addition, multiplication, and so on)!!

- 1- His fat friend saw your red bus 69 days ago.
- 2- This short girl gave a red flower to her friend.
- 3- My good classmate bought a black bag 8 days ago.
- 4- Your white dog broke my yellow glass the day before yesterday.
- 5- That bad man cut 500 green trees last year.
- 6- This good student planted 15 red flowers 3 years ago.
- 7- Mr. Watson found two big knives in the kitchen tonight.
- 8- Miss Helen washed those purple curtains 23 hours ago.
- 9- Mr. Reza fixed my blue bicycle 8 hours ago.
- 10- Mrs. Green received four white boxes this morning.
- 11- My tall teacher wrote two big books two years ago.
- 12- We didn't write one big book last year.
- 13- His black cat didn't eat my yellow bird last night.
- 14- They didn't find their white dog any more.
- 15- Mr. Green didn't cut this green tree 7 days ago.

- ۱- دوست چاقش اتوبوس قرمزت را ۶۹ روز پیش دید.
- ۲- این دختر قد کوتاه گل قرمزی را به دوستش داد.
- ۳- هم کلاسی خوبم کیف سیاهی را ۸ روز پیش خرید.
- ۴- سگ سفیدت لیوان زردم را پریروز شکست .
- ۵- آن مرد بد پانصد درخت سبز را پارسال برید.
- ۶- این دانش آموز خوب پانزده گل قرمز را سه سال پیش کاشت .
- ۷- آقای واتسن دو چاقوی بزرگ را امشب در آشپزخانه پیدا کرد.
- ۸- هلن خانم آن پرده های بنفش را ۲۳ ساعت پیش شست .

- ۹- آقا رضا دوچرخه آبی ام را ۸ ساعت پیش تعمیر کرد.
- ۱۰- خانم گرین چهار جعبه سفید را امروز صبح دریافت کرد.
- ۱۱- معلم قد بلندم دو کتاب بزرگ را دو سال پیش نوشت.
- ۱۲- ما یک کتاب بزرگ را پارسال نوشتیم.
- ۱۳- گربه سیاهش پرنده زردم را دیشب نخورد.
- ۱۴- آنها سگ سفیدشان را دیگر پیدا نکردند.
- ۱۵- آقای گرین این درخت سبز را هفت روز پیش نیرید.

Week 25

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Before we start today, let's take a look at one of your e-mails. It says: I have been avidly following your lessons from the very beginning, and I have one suggestion for you. It would be helpful if you posted a small test at the beginning of each lesson covering the material from the previous lesson. This would encourage your pupils to actively learn the words and sentence structures instead of just reading along. Sometimes I find myself just writing everything down but not memorizing the words. I am sure others would find this helpful also. Could you say 'No' to this suggestion?

Generally, other students in the class don't like such suggestions!! But this class is different from other classes. Here, you won't be punished if you don't know the answers. So, you don't need to get angry with the person who has offered such a good suggestion! But remember, if you don't answer to these questions and ignore them carelessly you will see my angry face on your desktop!! Just take a close look at your desktop if you want to skip this simple quiz!!

From this week, I am trying to present a short quiz weekly before starting the new lesson. This will help us review what we have already learned. I will try to make it better during the next lessons. I hope you will like it. As you see, your suggestions bring a lot of change which will be really helpful for all of you. Please keep on writing to me and please don't get upset if you receive no direct reply from me.

Quiz:

1- Translate the following words into Persian.

Blue - White - Black - Purple - Tree - Curtain - Knife - To repair - To eat - Bird

2- Translate the following sentences into Persian.

A- We didn't write one big book last year.

B- My good classmate bought a black bag 8 days ago.

C- Miss Helen washed those purple curtains 23 hours ago.

D- Tom's friend didn't clean his room tonight.

E- Mr. Jones visited 12 countries two years ago.

F- Her younger brother flew four kites yesterday evening.

G- That white cat didn't catch 16 mice this week.

3- Say these numbers in Persian.

366 - 289 - 114 - 491 - 7 - 19 - 89 - 98 - 67 - 76 - 316 - 420

All right, now let's see what we have got for today.

Today, we are going to learn some more colors and numbers to hopefully finish this section. Ready?

Brown = قهوه‌ای /ghæh ve i:/.
قهوه‌ای

Grey = خاکستری /kha:kestæri/.
خاکستری

Orange = نارنجی /na:renji/.
نارنجی

Sky = آسمان /a:sema:n/. (This is not color!!)
آسمان

Sky blue = آبی آسمانی /a:bi ye a:sema:ni/.
آبی آسمانی

Bright = روشن /roshæn/.
روشن

Bright color = رنگ روشن /ræng-e- roshæn/.
رنگ روشن

Dark (here) = تیره /ti:reh/.
تیره

Dark color = رنگ تیره /ræng-e- ti:reh/.
رنگ تیره

OK.

Now, let's learn some more numbers. I don't think we'll need more numbers than we are going to learn today. This can be enough for us except you are a millionaire and want to count your money!! If this is the case, just let me know and I'll count your money!! (of course with you and for you!!!).

These are the numbers:

600 = ششصد /shesh sæd/.
ششصد

700 = هفتصد /hæft sæd/.
هفتصد

800 = هشتصد /hæsht sæd/.
هشتصد

900 = نهصد /noh sæd/.
نهصد

1000 = هزار /heza:r/.
هزار

10000 = ده هزار /dæh heza:r/.
ده هزار

100000 = صد هزار /sæd heza:r/.
صد هزار

1000000 = یک میلیون /yek milyu:n/.
یک میلیون

601 = ششصد و یک /shesh sæd-o-yek/.
ششصد و یک

602 = ششصد و دو /shesh sæd-o- do/.
ششصد و دو

610 = ششصد و ده /shesh sæd-o- dæh/.
ششصد و ده

625 = ششصد و بیست و پنج /shesh sæd-o- bist-o- pænʃ/.
ششصد و بیست و پنج

Note: We already know the numbers from 1 to 100 fluently. All we need to do with the rest of our numbers, is connect them with -o- as you see in 601, 610, 625. All numbers follow the same rule.

Example:

Suppose that we want to say 1587 in Persian. We will say 1000 + 500 + 80 + 7. Put -o- between all of them. You will say /heza:r-o- pa:nsæd-o- hæshta:d-o- hæft/. Is it difficult? I hope not!

OK. That's it for today.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

belt = کمر بند /kæmær bænd/.

shop = مغازه /mægha:zeh/.

shop keeper = مغازه دار /mægha:zeh da:r/.

trousers = شلوار /shælva:r/.

color TV = تلویزیون رنگی /televiziyu:n-e- rængi/.

black and white TV = تلویزیون سیاه و سفید /televiziyu:n-e- siya:h-o- sefid/.

to publish = انتشار دادن /entesha:r da:dæn/.

gate = دروازه /dærvɑ:zeh/.

coat = کت /kot/.

pencil = مداد /meda:d/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- Our classmate bought 5 orange belt the day before yesterday.
- 2- That big house had 14 grey windows.
- 3- This short shop keeper sold 329 black trousers last week.
- 4- We bought that color TV this morning.
- 5- They didn't have that black and white TV last year.
- 6- Mr. Green published his good book two years ago.
- 7- Ten students broke that purple gate this morning.
- 8- Three black cats caught two white mice 15 hours ago.
- 9- My mother didn't wash that green basket this evening.
- 10- I had two brown coats last year.

- ۱- همکلاسیمان پنج کمر بند نارنجی را پریروز خرید
- ۲- آن خانه بزرگ چهارده پنجره خاکساری داشت
- ۳- این مغازه دار قد کوتاه سیصد و بیست و نه شلوار مشکی را هفته پیش فروخت
- ۴- ما آن تلویزیون رنگی را امروز صبح خریدیم
- ۵- آنها آن تلویزیون سیاه و سفید را پارسال نداشتند
- ۶- آقای گرین کتاب خویش را دو سال پیش انتشار داد
- ۷- ده داتش آموز آن دروازه بنفش را امروز صبح شکستند
- ۸- سه گربه سیاه دو موش سفید را پانزده ساعت پیش گرفتند
- ۹- مادرم آن سبد سبز را امروز عصر نشست
- ۱۰- من پارسال دو کت قهوه ای داشتم

Week 26

Hello everyone, welcome back!

To begin with, let's have a look at parts of three messages.

1- ... I need to know one thing that I could not find anywhere in your site. What is the word/letter for Zero? ...

A good one, isn't it? I have simply forgotten the first number! Zero = صفر = /sefr/.

2- ... I just want to know is it a class in university or just for fun? And also what should I do in order to be able to learn this language fluently?...

Well, it's neither a class in university nor simply for fun! It's a class on Internet!!

In one word, it's for love. Probably, I have reasons to suffer this much trouble to prepare these lessons for you. You may accept it as just a simple gift from a teacher who has been separated from hundreds of his true students who loved him as a young father. Whatever the reasons are, they must be really far from money-making purposes.

To learn this language, like any other language, simply you should try! As I have told you repeatedly, practice makes perfect. Unlike me, you should have clear reasons in learning this language! You'd better focus on your goal first. Try to practice it with somebody. Listen to some Persian speaking radios or other sources to improve your listening ability. Try to stay close to its culture through listening to its music or whatever you think is helpful. Make a comparison between learning English, if English is your second language, and Persian. How could you improve your English? So, there must be a similar way in learning Persian or any other languages. How long did it take you to become acceptably fluent in English? The same thing might happen when you are learning another language. Generally, it takes us some two years to partially understand a particular language. But in some cases, we could accelerate this process via some factors, such as staying with some people who speak in that language, taking a practical conversation course, and so on. We know that there are many linguistic elements that can explain it better, but frankly, it is beyond the patience of this lesson to count them one by one!

3- This message has three questions in it.

Question A- Words are sometimes introduced with "(here)" in the English translation. Examples: To break = (here): , To fly (here) = , Short (here) = , and Younger(here) = . To what does the "(here)" refer?

As you know, words may have different meanings in different contexts. The word "(here)" refers to the meaning of this particular word in the given sentence. Look at the two examples below:

Birds flew. (Intransitive verb)

I flew a kite. (Transitive verb)

I think you agree that the word 'fly' is not completely the same in these two sentences. In 'birds flew', the word 'flew' means: to move through the air by means of wings or a machine. While, in 'I flew a kite', the same word means: to cause something to move through the air. Is this correct?

In English, however, we have the same word for these two meanings. But, this word has two equivalents

in Persian in these two situations. The word 'fly' as noun means پرواز /pærva:z/. Nevertheless, for the word 'fly' as a verb, we have two words in Persian.

1- It means پرواز کردن /pærva:z kærdæn/ if it refers to this meaning: to move through the air by means of wings or a machine. So, for 'birds flew' we have this sentence in Persian:

پرنندگان پرواز کردند /pærændega:n pærva:z kærdænd/.

2- It means پرواز دادن /pærva:z da:dæn/ if it refers to this meaning: to cause something to move through the air. So, for 'I flew a kite' we have the following sentence in Persian:

من یک بادبادک را پرواز دادم /mæn yek ba:d ba:dæk ra: pærva:z da:dæm/.

Question B-You have given three words for "to break": To break = ترکاندن /tæreka:ndæn/, To

break (here) = خراب کردن /khæra:b kærdæn/, and شکستن /shekæstæn/ (Lesson 23, Useful Drills, translation sentence number 9). How do I know which to use?

Answer: this one is also a context-oriented one. Let's see the word 'break' in English.

I broke my computer.

Does the word 'broke' mean that I broke my computer into pieces? Certainly not. It means that the physical appearance of my computer is ok, but it is not working due to some internal problem, malfunctioning, or something like this. But, we use 'broke' for this in English.

So, if this is the case and we mean some malfunctioning of something such as computers, cars, TVs and so

on, we should use خراب کردن /khæra:b kærdæn/ in Persian.

Now, look at this example:

I broke his head.

Certainly, here the word 'broke' doesn't refer to malfunctioning of his head. It means that I have really broken his head!! His head is bleeding!

So, if we mean 'breaking the physical appearance of something' such as breaking a window, a cup, a table,

a head!, we should use شکستن /shekæstæn/ in Persian.

How about the following sentence?

I broke his balloon.

Here, we mean that the balloon is blasted, burst, or something. In this case, we should use ترکاندن /tæreka:ndæn/ in Persian.

As you see, we have different words to convey different meanings. I hope it's not confusing.

Question C- I do not understand when to use 'they' = /a:nha:/ vs /isha:n/.

Answer: I think I have already explained it somewhere.

'They' means /a:nha:/ when the subject is plural. Example: they went = /a:nha: ræftænd/.

'They' means /isha:n/ when the subject is 'he' or 'she' and we want to show our respect to that person. This is very polite and common to use plural verbs for single verbs in Persian.

Example: he went = /u: ræft/. This is the exact Persian equivalent for this English sentence. However, to show our respect to that person, we'd better say /isha:n ræftænd/ not /u: ræft/. The same is true with plural 'you' for singular 'you'. We'd better say /shoma:/ for /to/.

I deeply hope the problem is solved. If not, I'll break my fingers to stop writing for good!!

All right, now it's your turn to answer!!

Quiz:

1- Say these words in Persian:

Street- homework- girl- country- kite- balloon- to fly- room- car- bag- knife- bus

2- Say these numbers in Persian:

5- 10- 18- 33- 123- 312- 960- 1255- 15000- 65231- 156897- 855446- 5635472-

3- Say these sentences in Persian:

A- They didn't find their white dog any more.

B- That bad man cut 500 green trees last year.

C- That big bulldozer destroyed our beautiful house 22 years ago.

D- I didn't touch that big light the day before yesterday.

Any problems? Try to review the lessons once more!!

All right,

Today, we are going to say this sentence in Persian: did he break your table?

Great guess! Today, we are going to see the question form of sentences in simple past tense.

We already know how to say : he broke your table. Don't we? Let's try it again now.

او میزتان را شکست /u: mi:zeta:n ra: shekæst/. Is this correct? Wonderful!

Now, look at this word: آیا /a:ya:/. Put this word at the beginning of the above sentence and replace the full stop with a question mark. That's it! We have proudly changed the above sentence into a question form!!

Note: here, the intonation of the verb(the way we pronounce the verb) should change a bit; like what you see in the following sentence:

آیا او میزتان را شکست؟ /a:ya: u: mi:zeta:n ra: shekæst/?

Is this clear? Perfect!

Now try this one:

او آن مرد را دید /u: a:n mærd ra: did/. Question?

آیا او آن مرد را دید؟ /a:ya: u: a:n mærd ra: did/?

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

No new words for this session! Just keep practicing with the sentence structure today.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- I bought that book yesterday.
- 2- I didn't buy that book yesterday.
- 3- Did I buy that book yesterday?
- 4- They broke this table the day before yesterday.
- 5- They didn't break this table the day before yesterday.
- 6- Did they break this table the day before yesterday?
- 7- She found her cat in the market yesterday.
- 8- She didn't find her cat in the market yesterday.
- 9- Did she find her cat in the market yesterday?
- 10- Helen cleaned her computer this morning.
- 11- Helen didn't clean her computer this morning.
- 12- Did Helen clean her computer this morning?

- 13- Mike lost his bag this evening.
14- Mike didn't lose his bag this evening.
15- Did Mike lose his bag this evening?

-
- ۱- من آن کتاب را دیروز خریدم
۲- من آن کتاب را دیروز نخریدم
۳- آیا من آن کتاب را دیروز خریدم؟
۴- آنها این میز را پریروز شکستند
۵- آنها این میز را پریروز نشکستند
۶- آیا آنها این میز را پریروز شکستند؟
۷- او گربه اش را دیروز در بازار پیدا کرد
۸- او گربه اش را دیروز در بازار پیدا نکرد
۹- آیا او گربه اش را دیروز در بازار پیدا کرد؟
۱۰- هلن کامپیوترش را امروز صبح تمیز کرد
۱۱- هلن کامپیوترش را امروز صبح تمیز نکرد
۱۲- آیا هلن کامپیوترش را امروز صبح تمیز کرد؟
۱۳- مایک کیفش را امروز عصر گم کرد
۱۴- مایک کیفش را امروز عصر گم نکرد
۱۵- آیا مایک کیفش را امروز عصر گم کرد؟

Week 27

Hello everyone, welcome back!

I hope you are enjoying the lessons. Did you have any problems with lesson 26?

Today, we'll practice a bit more to get more fluent in changing a sentence into a question form (interrogative). As you have noticed, what is important here is the way we pronounce the sentence or I'd better say the intonation of verbs. Before we try, let's take a short quiz. Agreed? Good!

Quiz:

1- Say these words in Persian:

window - to go - to see - glass - to clean - woman - lady - Mr. - to buy - welcome - good bye (bye bye) -

2- Say these numbers in Persian:

Zero - 10000 - 14000 - 99 - 111 - 888 - 150000 - 500000 - 1659236 - 97 - 469

3- Say these sentences in Persian:

a - Her younger brother flew four kites yesterday evening.

B - Tom's friend didn't clean his room tonight.

C - Mr. Jones visited 12 countries two years ago.

D - Mrs. Green received four white boxes this morning.

E - They didn't find their white dog any more.

F - Our classmate bought 5 orange belts the day before yesterday.

G - They didn't have that black and white TV last year.

H - Three black cats caught two white mice 15 hours ago.

All right, hope you have no problems.

Now let's see what we have today.

You already know this sentence in Persian:

They went.

Try it again. You will say آنها رفتند /a:nha: ræftænd/.

What is the negative form of this sentence? Easy, isn't it? آنها نرفتند /a:nha: næræftænd/.

Question form? آیا آنها رفتند? /a:ya: a:nha: ræftænd/? As you have noticed, this sentence '

آیا آنها رفتند? /a:ya: a:nha: ræftænd/?' is the same as this one رفتند? /ræftænd/?

Result: In short sentences like this, instead of saying the entire sentence, we can simply say the verb with a question intonation. Is the explanation clear?

Now let's see some more examples:

Did they write? آیا آنها نوشتند? /a:ya: a:nha: neveshtænd/? = نوشتند? /neveshtænd/?

Did he write? آیا او نوشت? /a:ya: u: nevesht/? = نوشت? /nevesht/?

Did you write? آیا تو نوشتی? /a:ya: to neveshti/? = نوشتی? /neveshti/?

Now you try the followings:

Did you buy? خریدی? /khæridi/?

Did she buy? خرید? /khærid/?

Did they buy? خریدند? /khæridænd/?

Did you see? دیدی? /didi/?

Did he see? دید? /did/?

Did they see? دیدند? /didænd/?

Did you clean? تمیز کردی? /tæmiz kærði/?

Did she clean? تمیز کرد? /tæmiz kærd/?

Did they clean? تمیز کردند? /tæmiz kærdænd/?

I am sure you can do it.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To stop = متوقف کردن /motevæghæf kærdæn/.

Police = پلیس /polis/.

Mechanic = مکانیک /meka:nik/.

Motorcycle = موتور سیکلت /motor siklet/.

To paint (here) = رنگ کردن /ræŋg kærdæn/.

Wall = دیوار /diva:r/.

New = تازه /ta:zeh/.

New computer = کامپیوتر تازه /ka:mpiyu:ter-e- ta:zeh/.

Old (here) = کهنه /kohneh/.

Old computer = کامپیوتر کهنه /ka:mpiyu:ter-e- kohneh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- Police stopped my car two days ago.
- 2- Police didn't stop his car yesterday.
- 3- Did police stop their car today?
- 4- The mechanic fixed my bicycle last week.
- 5- The mechanic didn't fix our car the day before yesterday.
- 6- Did the mechanic fix our motorcycle this morning?
- 7- Our neighbor painted his house three weeks ago.
- 8- His neighbor didn't paint that wall last night.
- 9- Did your neighbor paint this gate this evening?
- 10- Paul bought this new computer yesterday.
- 11- Mike didn't buy that old computer last week.
- 12- Did Helen buy that old computer yesterday?

۱- پلیس ماشینم را دو روز پیش متوقف کرد.

۲- پلیس ماشینش را دیروز متوقف نکرد.

۳- آیا پلیس ماشینشان را امروز متوقف کرد؟

۴- مکانیک دوچرخه ام را هفته پیش تعمیر کرد.

۵- مکانیک ماشینمان را پریروز تعمیر نکرد.

۶- آیا مکانیک موتور سیکلتمان را امروز صبح تعمیر کرد؟

۷- همسایه مان خانه اش را سه هفته پیش رنگ کرد.

۸- همسایه اش آن دیوار را دیشب رنگ نکرد.

۹- آیا همسایه ات این دروازه را امروز عصر رنگ کرد؟

۱۰- پل این کامپیوتر تازه را دیروز خرید.

۱۱- مایک آن کامپیوتر کهنه را هفته پیش نخرید.

۱۲- آیا هلن آن کامپیوتر کهنه را دیروز خرید؟

Hello everyone, how are you?

Let's have a look at two messages before we start today.

Message 1

Dear Hassan H.

I am following your lessons since November. I have learned a lot since then, thanks to you.

When I was learning the letters, I looked for a way to remember all those "strange" signs in an entertaining way, thus I developed a little memory-game with all the letters. I send it to you in the attachment.

You need the shockwave plug-in from macromedia to play it then just open the farsi-memory.html page in your browser. I hope you like it, you are free to do with it whatever you want, for example offer it to your pupils on your site.

Greetings

Assuna

I am really grateful for this wonderful gift. I have seen this page and it's really helpful. I don't think it's fair enough to simply post it on my site. Therefore, after exchanging a couple of messages, I have decided to put a direct link to her site where you can find the game. To play this game click on **مَمورِي** = 'Memory' after loading her page. You may find this site on our Links page. I hope it's a positive response to her encouraging efforts.

Message 2

Dear Hassan,

Thanks for every lesson.

Why should I do the quiz every week?

I can study the previous lessons myself!

There is nobody to correct my mistakes!

Can you please give the good translation in Farsi the next week,

or give the numbers of the lessons in which we can find the good answers to correct ourselves.

Now the most of the time I am busy looking for the correct translation if I cannot remember some words.

This person has been in a close contact with me since the very beginning. He has made great progress for which I am deeply happy.

The quiz here is just a booster or reminder! It's not a real one! As you have probably noticed, I have divided the quiz into two parts: Seen and Unseen. All the sentences and words are under the Seen section.

It means that you have already seen them and they are not new to you. You will know them if you have successfully learned the previous lessons. I am trying to just review what we have already learned. So, you don't need a different knowledge or initiation to answer to these questions. Here, 'search makes perfect!!'

The more you search for the previous sentences the more you review them. This will help you keep your knowledge active. In this way, you haven't stored any passive information in your brain. Everything is active and ready to use. After all, you don't need to look for the previous sentences in the previous lessons; rather you should search them in your memory.

The second section is almost Unseen, which you might find new, I mean the numbers. This will probably bring you the real work of the quiz. Fortunately, we know the formula, which can solve our problem. Let's take a look at the formula once more.

Suppose that we are to say this number in Persian: 98

In reading numbers, we start from left to right even if the language is written from right to left like Persian! So, we start from 9.

We have only two numbers here, which are 9 and 8. So, we know that 9 is /nævæd/ and 8 is eight or /hæsht/. We will say /nævæd/ + /hæsht/. The only thing here is that the plus sign (+) pronounces as /o/. So, we will say /nævæd/ -o- /hæsht/. Is it clear? Good.

Now suppose that we have this number: 987

Here, we have three numbers: 9 , 8 , 7.

Our mathematical knowledge tells us that 9 belongs to 'Hundred' family! We also know that 8 is eighty here. That is to say, we pronounce it as: nine hundreds and eighty and seven. Am I right? So, we'll have to start from the left again:

We already know '900' in Persian. All we have to do here is connect them from left to right with /-o-/
between them. Here's how: /noh sæd/ -o- /hæshta:d/ -o- /hæft/. No problem? Good!

Now suppose that this is the number: 1987

We have to stick to the same rule.

We already know 1000 in Persian, which is /heza:r/. Again, start from left to right:

One thousands and nine hundreds and eighty and seven. It shouldn't be difficult now: /heza:r/ -o- /noh sæd/ -o- /hæshta:d/ -o- /hæft/. Clear?

How about this one?

10987

ten thousands and nine hundreds and eighty and seven. We already know 10000 in Persian: /dæh heza:r/. So, we will say: /dæh heza:r/ -o- /noh sæd/ -o- /hæshta:d/ -o- /hæft/. No questions? Good!

Let's take a look at this one: 15987

It follows the same rule.

Fifteen thousands and nine hundreds and eighty and seven. It means: /pa:nz dæh heza:r/ -o- /noh sæd/ -o- /hæshta:d/ -o- /hæft/.

Is it really clear?

Now let's see some bigger numbers. Suppose that we have this number: 198987

Again, our mathematical knowledge tells us that this belongs to one hundred thousands family! Right?

So we have this: one hundred and ninety and eight thousands and nine hundreds and eighty and seven.

You see it's not my fault if the numbers get bigger!!

For this, we have the following in Persian: /sæd/ -o- /nævæd/-o- /hæsht heza:r/-o- /noh sæd/ -o- /hæshta:d/ -o- /hæft/. As you see, we begin from the biggest to the smallest one.

The same is true with million.

Now let's try this one: 1198987

One million and one hundred and ninety and eight thousands and nine hundreds and eighty and seven.

/yek milyu:n/-o- /sæd/ -o- /nævæd/-o- /hæsht heza:r/-o- /noh sæd/ -o- /hæshta:d/ -o- /hæft/.

For ten million, we have /dæh milyu:n/.

For fifteen million, we have /pa:nz dæh milyu:n/.

For twenty million, we have /bist milyu:n/.

For twenty five million, we have /bist/-o- /pænʃ milyu:n/.

And so on.

Wow, mathematics is really frightening!!

I have explained it all to save myself from giving you the answers of the previous quizzes every week!! I am sure you can manage it by yourself.

All right,

Unfortunately, it's your turn to answer now!!

Quiz:

1- Say these words in Persian:

to stop - mechanic - wall - new - old - school - street - at/in -

2- Say these numbers in Persian!!

5 - 45 - 145 - 1145 - 10145 - 100145 - 1145145 - 10145145 -

3- Say these sentences in Persian:

A - The teacher didn't beat him today.

B - He pushed me.

C - That student broke the table this morning.

D - She didn't talk to her friend yesterday.

E - My friend was absent yesterday.

Ok. Let's start now.

I think we have almost familiar with the simple past tense. Today, we are going to learn another tense, which is luckily very easy. This tense is Present Perfect Tense. I am not going to deal with the Simple Present Tense at this stage as I believe it's still too soon to deal with an irregular tense. Let's get more fluent first, and let's do first things first. I hope you agree with me.

Look at this short sentence:

I saw him.

We already know it perfectly. It means **من او را دیدم** /mæn u: ra: didæm/. Is it correct? Great!

Today, we want to say this:

I have seen him.

Scared?! Just be cool! We will make all 'Impossible' 'Possible'!!

Let's take another look at this sentence: I saw him. It means **من او را دیدم** /mæn u: ra: didəm/.

Now look at the verb **دیدن** /didæn/.

Do you remember how we made a verb in simple past tense? Yes? Good!

We had **دیدن** /didæn/ for 'to see'. We deleted **ن** /nu:n/ from the end of the infinitive to make a verb in simple past tense. We deleted **ن** /nu:n/, and we got **دید** /did/, which was a verb in simple past tense. Then we said:

دیدم /didəm/ = I saw

دیدیدی /didi/ = you saw

دید /did/ = he/she saw

دیدیم /didim/ = we saw

دیدید /didid/ = you saw

دیدند /didænd/ = they saw

As you remember, we simply added **م** /æm/, **ی** /i:/, **یم** /im/, **ید** /id/, **ند** /ænd/ to the end of the verb above.

Do you remember that? Wonderful!

Here, in Present Perfect Tense we follow the same rule with a bit difference. Here's how:

Delete the **ن** /nu:n/ from the end of an infinitive first. We will have a verb in simple past tense like

دید /did/. Then, add **ه** /he/ sound to this verb. We will have **دیده** /dideh/ Next, put **ام** /æm/ after the newly made verb. We will have **دیده ام** /dideh æm/! which means I have seen. In short,

دید /did/ + **ه** /he/ + **ام** /æm/ = **دیده ام** /dideh æm/ which means I have seen.

Still scared? I hope not! You see, it's really easy. Let's continue!

دید /did/ + **ه** /he/ + **ای** /i:/ = **دیده ای** /dideh i:/ which means you have seen.

دید /did/ + **ه** /he/ + **است** /æst/ = **دیده است** /dideh æst/ which means he/she has seen.

دید /did/ + **ه** /he/ + **ایم** /im/ = **دیده ایم** /dideh im/ which means we have seen.

دید /did/ + **ه** /he/ + **اید** /id/ = **دیده اید** /dideh id/ which means you have seen.

دید /did/ + **ه** /he/ + **اند** /ænd/ = **دیده اند** /dideh ænd/ which means they have seen.

Was it difficult? Of course not! it's as easy as 1, 2, 3 or I'd better say It's as easy as drinking water!! (A Persian expression)

Now, let's try this one: to go = **رفتن** /ræftæn/

Delete **ن** /nu:n/ and you'll have **رفت** /ræft/.

Add **ه** /he/ to **رفت** /ræft/ and you'll have **رفته** /ræfteh/.

Add the above suffixes to **رفته** /ræfteh/ and you'll have:

I have gone = **رفته ام** /ræfteh æm/.

You have gone = **رفته ای** /ræfteh i:/.

He/she has gone = **رفته است** /ræfteh æst/.

We have gone = **رفته ایم** /ræfteh im/.

You have gone = **رفته آید** /ræfteh id/.

They have gone = **رفته اند** /ræfteh ænd/.

Easy, isn't it?

Now try this one: to write = **نوشتن** /neveshtæn/.

I have written = **نوشته ام** /neveshteh æm/.

You have written = **نوشته ای** /neveshteh i:/.

He/she has written = **نوشته است** /neveshteh æst/.

We have written = **نوشته ایم** /neveshteh im/.

You have written = **نوشته آید** /neveshteh id/.

They have written = **نوشته اند** /neveshteh ænd/.

And finally this one: to paint = **رنگ کردن** /ræng kærdæn/.

I have painted = **رنگ کرده ام** /ræng kærdeh æm/.

You have painted = **رنگ کرده ای** /ræng kærdeh i:/.

He/she has painted = **رنگ کرده است** /ræng kærdeh æst/.

We have painted = **رنگ کرده ایم** /ræng kærdeh im/.

You have painted = **رنگ کرده آید** /ræng kærdeh id/.

They have painted = **رنگ کرده اند** /ræng kærdeh ænd/.

All right, we have done a great job today. I hope you enjoyed it.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- I have broken the table.
- 2- He has written two letters.
- 3- You (singular) have cleaned the room.
- 4- They have washed the car.
- 5- You (plural) have fixed the bicycle.
- 6- My friend has done his homework.
- 7- My neighbor has bought three cats.
- 8- Your teacher has published five books.
- 9- They have destroyed our house.
- 10- I have seen your country.
- 11- That student has broken my computer.
- 12- This boy has broken your balloon.

- ۱- من میز را شکسته ام .
- ۲- او دو نامه را نوشته است.
- ۳- تو اتاق را تمیز کرده ای.
- ۴- آنها ماشین را شسته اند.
- ۵- شما دو چرخه را تعمیر کرده اید.
- ۶- دوستم مشقش را نوشته است.
- ۷- همسایه ام سه گربه را خریده است.
- ۸- معلمت پنج کتاب را انتشار داده است.
- ۹- آنها خانه مان را خراب کرده اند.
- ۱۰- من کشورتان را دیده ام.
- ۱۱- آن دانش آموز کامپیوترم را خراب کرده است.
- ۱۲- این پسر بادکنکت را ترکانده است.

Week 29

Hello everyone, how are you?

Last week, we learned some about Present Perfect Tense. Today, we are going to practice it more to become more fluent.

As always, here's the quiz:

1- Say these words in Persian:

Purple - blue - knife - bird - curtain - sky blue - bright - bright color - brown

2- Say these numbers in Persian:

7 - 77 - 777 - 7777 - 77777 - 777777 - 7777777 -

3- Say these sentences in Persian:

A - I had two brown coats last year.

B - Mr. Farshid didn't take your new car last week.

C - I saw a tall man in the street yesterday.

D - Mrs. Irani sold her white car several years ago.

E - Miss Helen turned on your computer this afternoon.

All right, now let's start.

We already know how to make a verb in present perfect tense. Remember? Good! Let's see some more examples today.

To turn off = خاموش کردن /kha:mu:sh kærden/. Delete ن /nu:n/, and we'll have خاموش کرد

/kha:mu:sh kærdeh/. Add ه /he/ to this verb to get خاموش کرده /kha:mu:sh kærdeh/. Then say it in the following sentences:

I have turned off = من خاموش کرده ام /mæn kha:mu:sh kærdeh æm/.

You have turned off = تو خاموش کرده ای /to kha:mu:sh kærdeh i:/.

He/she has turned off = او خاموش کرده است /u: kha:mu:sh kærdeh æst/.

We have turned off = ما خاموش کرده ایم /ma: kha:mu:sh kærdeh im/.

You have turned off = شما خاموش کرده اید /shoma: kha:mu:sh kærdeh id/.

They have turned off = آنها خاموش کرده اند /a:nha: kha:mu:sh kærdeh ænd/.

To break = شکستن /shekæstæn/.

I have broken = من شکسته ام /mæn shekæsteh æm/.

You have broken = تو شکسته ای /to shekæsteh i:/.

He/she has broken = او شکسته است /u: shekæsteh æst/.

We have broken = ما شکسته ایم /ma: shekæsteh im/.

You have broken = شما شکسته اید /shoma: shekæsteh id/.

They have broken = آنها شکسته اند /a:nha: shekæsteh ænd/.

To fix/repair = تعمیر کردن /tæmir kærdæn/.

I have fixed = من تعمیر کرده ام /mæn tæmir kærdeh æm/.

You have fixed = تو تعمیر کرده ای /to tæmir kærdeh i:/.

He/she has fixed = او تعمیر کرده است /u: tæmir kærdeh æst/.

We have fixed = ما تعمیر کرده ایم /ma: tæmir kærdeh im/.

You have fixed = شما تعمیر کرده اید /shoma: tæmir kærdeh id/.

They have fixed = آنها تعمیر کرده اند /a:nha: tæmir kærdeh ænd/.

Note: as I have already mentioned, in the case of longer sentences, we have to use the same rule for all tenses: subject + object + time + place + verb

Example:

I have broken that window = (in Persian sentence) subject + object + verb =

من آن پنجره را شکسته ام /mæn a:n pænjereh ra: shekæsteh æm/.

Now, you continue:

You have broken that window =

He has broken that window =

We have broken that window =

You have broken that window =

They have broken that window =

Khoda Hafez!

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Cook (noun) = آشپز /a:sh pæz/.

To cook = پختن /pokhtæn/.

Cake = کیک /keik/.

To sharpen = تیز کردن /ti:z kærdæn/.

Knives = چاقوها /cha:ghu: ha:/.

To obey = اطاعت کردن /eta: æt kærdæn/. To obey 'something' = از ... اطاعت کردن /æz 'something' eta: æt kærdæn/.

Law = قانون /gha:nu:n/.

To catch = گرفتن /gereftæn/.

Fish = ماهی /ma: hi:/.

Earthquake = زلزله /zel zeleh/.

Bomb = بمب /bomb/.

People (here) = نفر /næfær/.

To send = فرستادن /feresta:dæn/.

To eat = خوردن /khordæn/.

Watermelon = هندوانه /hendeva:neh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- The cook has cooked.
- 2- The cook has cooked a cake.
- 3- The cook has cooked a big cake.
- 4- We have sharpened the knives.
- 5- They have obeyed the law.
- 6- I have caught 5 fish.
- 7- The earthquake has destroyed 65 houses.
- 8- A big bomb has killed 7 people.
- 9- I have sent 4 letters.
- 10- You have closed the door.
- 11- My friend has bought that white ball.
- 12- That man has eaten a big watermelon.

- ۱- آشپز پخته است.
- ۲- آشپز کیکي را پخته است.
- ۳- آشپز کیک بزرگی را پخته است.
- ۴- ما چاقوها را تیز کرده ایم.
- ۵- آنها از قانون اطاعت کرده اند.
- ۶- من پنج ماهی را گرفته ام.
- ۷- زلزله شصت و پنج خانه را خراب کرده است.
- ۸- بمب بزرگی هفت نفر را کشته است.
- ۹- من چهار نامه را فرستاده ام.
- ۱۰- شما در را بسته اید.
- ۱۱- دوستم آن توپ سفید را خریده است.
- ۱۲- آن مرد هندوانه بزرگی را خورده است.

Week 30

Salam! Khosh amadid!

Hello everyone, how are you?

Today, I am going to change the mood a bit! I know this class is different from the routine ones, but I think we are in a big class where everybody has the right to participate in it by raising a question or something. This will bring us all together and we will find ourselves in a real class.

Last week I received a couple of messages and I think it's not a bad idea to let you see them. Maybe some of you have the same feeling and my answers could be for all of you.

Message 1 (the complete message with no change)

Subject: I can't hear a thing

Thank you for putting easypersian on the internet for free

I discovered it today and tried it out. When I wanted to listen to the words/sounds, I clicked on listen, then the computer told me to download a file which I did. Then, when I wanted to open it, it asked me where I want to open it, not knowing what to put, I chose RealAudio. Now, everytime I want ot listen to it, it tells me "this is not a RealAudio file" and that's it. I cannot change it or anything.

Why don't you give people some adise how they can use this program. For me it got screwed up the first day I tried it.....

In almost one hour, I received the second message from the same person on the same day. Here's message 2 (the complete message with no change)

Subject: Frustrated

Dear Hassan,

I am so frustrated with your course, that I have to write again. I understand, that you put a lot of work into your course, but I really think it is very frustrating for beginners.

When you learn a new language, you want to start speaking a few words as soon as possible. It is simply incomprehensible to me that one has to "waste" a full ten (10) weeks, before the first word is taught. That is almost three months. I have some prior knowledge, so I went through these lessons in about half an hour. Any book you buy, gets you started with a few words, so you can learn, practice and retain the new letters. Why don't you????

You give examples of words early on, but you don't explain/translate them. What would you say, if I am teaching you to read and write "er geht heute abend nach hause" but for three months or longer I am withholding from you what it means ("he is going home tonight")???

Likewise, you are so busy presenting Persian poetry, which nobody can understand (at least not anyone who just started learning the language), not realizing that it is more annoying than anything else. Why do you think the 15 year old Brazilian wanted you to translate the poetry? In my mind he wanted to try to make a little sense of it all, and probably actually start learning (!) a few words.

I have already vented about the audio problem. I cannot fix it. I guess I will never be able to listen to this. It is too bad that there will be no response from you, I would really like to know what you have to say. But I guess, you get too many e-mail, to answer individually, and that is your prerogative.

Thanks for reading this and thanks again for putting up your online course (even though I have yet to discover its usefulness for me....), I don't mean to be a total nag, but you are inviting criticism and - as mentioned above - I am too darn frustrated to keep it to myself.

Sincerely,

Birgit

I wrote back to him immediately. As I told you before, listening to the ideas of your classmates will give you the feeling of attending in a real class. That's why I have posted these messages here today. I hope you will not consider it as wasting your time. I do really like these messages. Frankly, what I get from these messages is much more than the messages in which I am praised. I strongly believe that those who criticize me teach me more than those who are just praising me. So, I do respect the policy of being criticized!

Here's my answer to Mr. Birgit, which I have already sent him:

Dear Birgit

Let me frankly thank you for the two messages. To be honest, this is the first time I'm receiving such clear criticism for which I am deeply grateful.

I believe the problem you have with listening to the audio files comes from your own computer. I, myself, am using the real audio player to listen to these files and have no problems with it. The sounds are in MP3 format and should not cause problems by themselves. I am not really sure how you can solve this problem now, but I guess you have to go through the explorer to fix it. Unfortunately, this is a computer related matter and I have little knowledge about it. If you want to use other media player to listen to these files, please download Winamp. This one is already tested and many of my visitors are using it. You may find it here: <http://www.winamp.com/> . I hope this will solve the problem. This is for your first message.

About your second message, I'd like to say some although I agree that you are right in many aspects.

I am sure you have read my homepage. As I have mentioned in my homepage as well as in lesson one (start from the very beginning), this course is basically designed for those who have no knowledge about Persian. That's why I have started from the very scratch. How can I let you drive a car when you don't know how to start the engine, how to use the brakes, or how to turn on the lights? What I have done during the first ten lessons is to help everyone become familiar with the very basics of this language. Many

students have described it strange because it is really different from the western languages. So, how can I let them "start speaking a few words as soon as possible"? They haven't touched the car in their life and you are asking me to let them drive for a while as soon as possible! They need to know some about it first or they will face some serious problems later. In this online course, I have imagined that no one knows Persian and I am supposed to teach those who knows nothing at all about this language. Don't think it's a matter of 'wasting' your time for ten weeks learning not a single word. It took me more than ten weeks to introduce my site on the internet. Therefore, it gave everyone some time to find it first. Then, it's up to you to either learn it in ten weeks or simply go "through these lessons in about half an hour".

The examples I have given are to let you see each given letter in different words. I think you are absolutely right that these examples might be confusing. However, what is important is that you don't need to know these words at this stage. These words are supposed to give you hints to see the explained letters in different situations, like what you see in [Lesson 6](#). It helps your eyes get more familiar with them and you are not asked or supposed to know the words. Unfortunately, I didn't explain it in those lessons so clearly as I am doing now. So, you seem right! But be honest! I haven't given you such a sentence: "er geht heute abend nach hause"! (by the way, which language it is?)

The idea of presenting Persian poetry or Persian Samples did not come from a fifteen-year-old Brazilian! As you have seen, I had already posted some samples without translating them. I thought, as a beginner, you needed to see some Persian Samples. I thought this because I was afraid many of you might have no access to other Persian writings. As you have complained for not translating some Persian words "early on", I received a suggestion from a fifteen-year-old Brazilian who was eager to know what those strange writings were about! That's why I decided to present it bilingually in spite of all the problems I have in my daily life. And I guess I'll close the Persian Samples page in future due to the difficulties I have in my time limit. Anyway, no one is supposed to do any homework on Persian Samples page. As it comes from its name, it's just a sample page, which I think can be useful in many ways.

I deeply hope I have answered to your questions although I am honestly happy with your messages and the way you expressed your feeling. If you don't mind, I am going to post your messages on my next week lesson since I think it is probably the problems of many other students.

I wish you all the best in your daily life and I will certainly be glad of receiving such messages again and again.

Kind regards,

Hassan.

Quite fortunately, I received the following message from Mr. Birgit soon after my answer:

Message 3

Subject: Thank you

Dear Hassan

I was impressed: not only did I receive an answer, but you wrote right away. Thank you very much.

Sincerely,

Birgit

P.S.: The language is German

For your convenience, here's the original message of the Brazilian student who wrote to me long ago:

Message 4 (the complete message with no change)

Subject: salute and suggestions!

First off all, I want to congratulate you for the website and your initiative, that makes possible the easy apprenticeship of this interesting language. All lessons are simple to be learned and the explanations are enough good, but the course should be more dynamic; if you put more contents in each lesson, or publish them more frequently, it will be perfect. Ok, as you are asking, I'm Brazilian, 15 years old and I'm learning Farsi just for fun! I'm don't have any relationship with any persian speaking... That's my hobby, I now something about Russian, Esperanto and about other constructed language, Quenya, made by J.R.R. Tolkien for his famous book, Lord of The Rings.

Oh, I almost forgot to say that the "Persian Samples" should be a bilingual zone, since the texts looks very nice, and while we don't understand this language very good, we can't read these compositions.

So, thank you for the attention, and good bye! I wait for your answer!

Edelberto Neto

And finally, here's the message of Mr. B. Duffey from Canada. I like this message because of the way he has described the feeling of a new student and asking everybody to be patient!

Message 5 (the complete message with no change)

Hello Hassan H.

I think you will be hearing from me quite a bit. I am at Lesson 4. I really like the way you offer so much encouragement to someone starting out on such a long journey. Learning a language is not like climbing Mount Everest - something hard that only the few can do - it is like walking from one end of the earth to the other - anyone COULD do it - but most people would give up before reaching the end because the journey is so long and doubt undermines one's belief that one can ever get there - so thank you - not just for the lessons and your knowledge - but for understanding the plight of the new student - and offering encouragement.

Barry Duffey

Toronto, Canada

All right, I hope everyone enjoyed the messages today. These are all parts of a class and as it happens in your daily classes, listening and respecting other's ideas and suggestions is a different course, which is by all means important.

Now let's start:

Today, it's you who should work! Please do the quiz first and then go to Useful drills page to do more!!

Quiz: (this quiz is a little bit different from what we have already experienced. Hope you can do it)

1- Listen (only once) to the audio sounds and write down the Persian and their English translations on a paper: (You have already seen these sentences, so it's not a real test!)

2- Say these words in Persian first, then make two sentences with each given word (one in simple past tense and one in present perfect tense, and of course your sentences must be in Persian not English!).

Wall =

Mechanic =

Red =

The day before yesterday =

To like =

To look at =

Fat =

To scream =

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

5 - 35 - 235 - 1235 - 11235 - 80 - 180 - 881 - 21

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Carpet = فرش /færsh

To park (a vehicle) = پارک کردن /pa:rk kærdæn/.

Outside = بیرون /biru:n/.

Office = دفتر /dæftær/.

To issue = صادر کردن /sa:der kærdæn/.

Ticket = بلیط /belit/ Or بلیت

To fine = جریمه کردن /jærimeh kærdæn/.

To pay = پرداخت کردن /pærda:kht kærdæn/.

Debt = بدهکاری /bedeh ka:ri/. Debts = بدهکاری ها /bedeh ka:ri ha:/.

Piano = پیانو /piya:no/. A small piano = پیانوی کوچکی /piya:no ye ku:chæki/.

To introduce = معرفی کردن /moærefi kærdæn/.

Method = روش /rævesh/.

Lunch = ناهار /na:ha:r/.

Dinner = شام /sha:m/.

Breakfast = صبحانه /sob ha:neh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

You already know how to use the rule. You may find the answers bellow.

- 1- I have seen your carpets.
- 2- They have parked their car outside.
- 3- My friend has pushed me.
- 4- This office has issued 55 tickets this week.
- 5- The police have fined my brother.
- 6- Helen has paid her debts.
- 7- I have bought a small piano.
- 8- This man has introduced a new method.
- 9- You have eaten your lunch.
- 10- I have eaten my dinner.
- 11- She has eaten her breakfast.

- ۱- من فرشهایتان را دیده ام .
- ۲- آنها ماشینشان را بیرون پارک کرده اند .
- ۳- دوستم من را هل داده است .
- ۴- این دفتر پنجاه و پنج بلیط را این هفته صادر کرده است .
- ۵- پلیس برادرم را جریمه کرده است .
- ۶- هلن بدهکاری هایش را پرداخت کرده است .
- ۷- من پیانوی کوچکی را خریده ام .
- ۸- این مرد روش جدیدی را معرفی کرده است .
- ۹- شما ناهارتان را خورده اید .
- ۱۰- من شامم را خورده ام .
- ۱۱- او صبحانه اش را خورده است .

Week 31

Hello everyone, how are you?

Let me thank all of you first for sending several wonderful messages and support regarding lesson 30. I do appreciate your support, the suggestions, and the possible solutions you had for Mr. Birgit's messages.

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio sounds (preferably once) and put them all on a paper. Repeat them for a couple of times and find their English equivalents. (Seen).
- 2- Find the English equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, and one in present perfect tense).

Black

A black bag

Red

A red flower

Bird

To cut

To find

Neighbor

Ticket

3- Say these numbers in Persian:
66 - 125 - 206 - 811 - 1996 - 2002

All right, now let's begin:

Today, we are going to see the negative form of a sentence in present perfect tense.

I don't think we'll have any problems here since we already know the negative form of sentences in simple past tense. Here in present perfect tense, we have to follow the same rule. That is to say, put ن /nu:n/ with /næ/ sound in the beginning of a verb to make it negative in present perfect tense. Is it really clear? Wonderful!

Let's see some examples:

We already know how to say this in present perfect tense:

I have broken

As you remember, it means من شکسته ام /mæn shekæsteh æm/. Am I right? Good!

Now, we want to say 'I haven't broken'.

Put ن /nu:n/ with /næ/ sound in the beginning of the verb, and we'll have من نشکسته ام /mæn næshkæsteh æm/.

Now let's see this verb with all subjective pronouns. Ready?

I haven't broken = من نشکسته ام /mæn næshkæsteh æm/.

You haven't broken = تو نشکسته ای /to næshkæsteh i:/. Listen!

He/she hasn't broken = او نشکسته است /u: næshkæsteh æst/.

We haven't broken = ما نشکسته ایم /ma: næshkæsteh im/.

You haven't broken = شما نشکسته اید /shoma: næshkæsteh id/.

They haven't broken = آنها نشکسته اند /a:nha: næshkæsteh ænd/.

You see how easy Persian is! This language has been described as 'sugar' in sweetness!! We say 'Persian is sugar'! فارسی شکر است! /fa:rsi shekær æst!/.
Ok, let's try this verb: to cook پختن /pokhtæn/.

Ok, let's try this verb: to cook پختن /pokhtæn/.

I haven't cooked = من نپخته ام /mæn næpokhteh æm/.

You haven't cooked = تو نپخته ای /to næpokhteh i:/.
He/she hasn't cooked = او نپخته است /u: næpokhteh æst/.

We haven't cooked = ما نپخته ایم /ma: næpokhteh im/.

You haven't cooked = شما نپخته اید /shoma: næpokhteh id/.

They haven't cooked = آنها نپخته اند /a:nha: næpokhteh ænd/.

Hopefully, this lesson is very simple.

That's it for today.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To turn on = روشن کردن /roshæn kærdæn/.

To receive = دریافت کردن /dærya:ft kærdæn/.

Award = جایزه /ja:yezeh/.

Driver = راننده /ra:nænde/.

To break = شکستن /shekæstæn/.

To tell somebody = به ... گفتن /beh somebody goftæn/.

To say = گفتن /goftæn/.

President = رییس جمهور /ræi:s-e- jomhu:r/. Also /ræi:s jomhu:r/, without /-e-/ sound.

To resign = استعفا دادن /estefa: da:dæn/.

Prime minister = نخست وزیر /nækhost væzi:r/.

To express hope = اظهار امیدواری کردن /ez ha:r-e- omidva:ri kærdæn/.

To leave = ترک کردن /tærk kærdæn/.

Taxi = تاکسی /ta:ksi/.

Taxi driver = راننده تاکسی /ra:nænde ye ta:ksi/.

Anything = چیزی /chizi:/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I haven't turned on the TV.
- 2- She has received two awards this year.
- 3- Your driver has broken the law.
- 4- They haven't told me.
- 5- This lady hasn't said anything.
- 6- The president of this country has resigned.
- 7- The prime minister has expressed hope.
- 8- My friends have left their country.
- 9- I haven't seen her this week.
- 10- He was a taxi driver.

- ۱- من تلویزیون را روشن نکرده ام.
- ۲- او دو جایزه را امسال دریافت کرده است.
- ۳- راننده ات قانون را شکسته است.
- ۴- آنها به من نگفته اند.
- ۵- این خانم چیزی نگفته است.
- ۶- رییس جمهور این کشور استعفا داده است.
- ۷- نخست وزیر اظهار امیدواری کرده است.
- ۸- دوستانم کشورشان را ترک کرده اند.
- ۹- من او را این هفته ندیده ام.
- ۱۰- او راننده تاکسی بود.

Week 32

Hello everyone, how are you?

Before we start today, let's take a look at one of your questions.

... What's the difference between "I went to the store" and "I have gone to the store?"

Answer:

I believe you should know the answer if you have studied the previous lessons carefully.

Anyway, who knows the answer? Try to answer the above question before I get angry with you, sorry, before I try to answer! You have one minute to explain it clearly to your classmate, giving its Persian translation.

Did you do it? Great!

Now let's try together.

"I went to the store" is in simple past tense while "I have gone to the store" is in present perfect tense.

Fortunately, the person who has asked this question knows this definition. So, where is the problem?

He has probably forgotten to put ه/he/ sound between the verb and the suffixes, which gives us a verb in present perfect tense. Here's how:

1- Delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of an infinitive to make a verb in simple past tense, here we have

رفتن /ræftæn/ minus ن /nu:n/ = رفت /ræft/.

2- Attach ه/he/ to this verb and you'll have رفته /ræfteh/.

3- Put the following suffixes at the end of /ræfteh/,

/æm/ - /i:/ - /æst/ - /im/ - /id/ - /ænd/

And you will have رفته ام /ræfteh æm/ for 'I have gone', رفته ای /ræfteh i:/ for 'you have gone',

رفته است /ræfteh æst/ for 'he/she has gone', etc.

Result: we have made a verb in present perfect tense.

Now, let's try again to make a verb in simple past tense.

1- Delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of an infinitive to make a verb in simple past tense, here we have

رفتن /ræftæn/ minus ن /nu:n/ = رفت /ræft/.

2- Attach the following suffixes to this verb:

/æm/ - /i:/ - /nothing/ (when the subject is he/she/it) - /im/ - /id/ - /ænd/.

And you'll have رفتم /ræftæm/ for 'I went', رفتی /ræfti/ for 'you went', رفت /ræft/ for 'he or she went', etc.

As you see, all the suffixes are the same except for 'he/she/it' for which we have no suffix in simple past

tense. The difference between these two tenses is that there is ه/he/ sound between verbs and suffixes in present perfect tense, which does not exist in simple past tense.

Is the answer clear? I know it took more than one minute! But for me it's ok! You have to be faster than me!

Now let's translate these two sentences:

Store = مغازه /mægha:zeh/.

I went to the store = من به مغازه رفتم /mæn beh mægha:zeh ræftæm/.

I have gone to the store = من به مغازه رفته ام /mæn beh mægha:zeh ræfteh æm/.

I hope the problem is solved. If not, you have run into a problem that this online course cannot help you solve! Contact your local manufacturer!! (Just a joke)

All right, let's see the quiz.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen).

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make five sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, and finally negative in present perfect tense).

Last week

Student

Mr.

To catch

Room

Market

To turn off

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

0 - 16 - 29 - 510 - 1001 - 12100 - 19999 - 50000

Ok, now let's begin:

Last week, we learned how to make a sentence negative in present perfect tense. Today, we'll practice it a bit more to become more fluent with it. Some of you have asked for more complicated structures, which need a wide variety of words. Please be patient, eh! Let's do things step by step. In the meantime, we are not ready for more complicated sentences. What I am trying to do at this stage is to help you become acceptably familiar with all tenses using the very simple sentences. When the tenses are over successfully, I can be sure that longer sentences will bring us little difficulties, which can be solved more easily. Let me remind you again that Rome was not built in one day! It may take time to reach your final destination but, at least, you can be sure that what you are doing in this class is by all means a real job, which may not be found anywhere else.

Now, let's begin!

Today, we need two words, which can help us a lot. Look at the following examples:

1- I haven't seen him for one week.

2- I haven't seen him since last week.

Can you guess the words? Perfect! They are 'for' and 'since' which are mostly used in this tense.

We already know all other words in the above sentences. Let's try them one by one:

1- I haven't seen him for one week.

I = subject

Haven't seen = verb

Him = object

For one week => let's accept this phrase as our 'time' in all sentences. And let's start our Persian translation

with this phrase. We already know 'one week' in Persian, which is **یک هفته** /yek hæfteh/. Is that correct? Good!

Now, just suppose that this phrase has a verb and that verb is **است** /æst/. We have already seen this verb in present perfect tense when the subject is he or she, like 'he has gone' = **او رفته است** /u: ræfteh æst/.

Now, put the verb **است** /æst/ after **یک هفته** /yek hæfteh/ and you'll have **یک هفته است** /yek hæfteh æst/. Is that clear? Good! Now put this word **که** /keh/ after our newly made phrase and you'll have this: **یک هفته است که** /yek hæfteh æst keh/.

Although it is not necessary for you to know and you are not asked to do anything with **که** /keh/ at this stage, this word has the same function as 'that' in the following sentence:

'I know that he has gone'. Here, the word 'that' = **که** /keh/. This is just for your information, that's all.

All right, so far we have made this sentence: **یک هفته است که** /yek hæfteh æst keh/, which is the Persian equivalent for 'for one week'. Now, translate the first part of our above sentence, which is 'I

haven't seen him'. It should be really easy. It means **من او را ندیده ام** /mæn u: ra: nædideh æm/. Correct? Wonderful! The problem is gone!

Put this sentence **من او را ندیده ام** /mæn u: ra: nædideh æm/ after our previous sentence, which is **یک هفته است که** /yek hæfteh æst keh/, and you'll have the following sentence:

یک هفته است که من او را ندیده ام /yek hæfteh æst keh mæn u: ra: nædideh æm/, which means I haven't seen him for one week.

Was it difficult? Of course not!

One more thing,

In the above sentence, you can simply delete the subject, here **من** /mæn/. So, we can say

یک هفته است که او را ندیده ام /yek hæfteh æst keh u: ra: nædideh æm/. As you already know, we can easily find the subject of our sentences through the suffixes attached to the verbs. Do you remember it? Perfect!

Let's see some more examples:

How do you say this sentence in Persian?

He hasn't seen his book for one week.

It should be very simple now. We can say: **یک هفته است که کتابش را ندیده است** /yek hæfteh æst keh keta:bæsh ra: nædideh æst/.

Easy, isn't it?

Need more examples? Try the following:

I haven't cleaned my computer for one week.

We can say: **یک هفته است که کامپیوترم را تمیز نکرده ام** /yek hæfteh æst keh ka:mpyu:teræm ra: tæmiz nækærdeh æm/.

They haven't written a letter for one year.

یک سال است که نامه ای ننوشته اند /yek sa:l æst keh na:meh i: næneveshteh ænd/.

Paul hasn't touched this table for one day.

یک روز است که پل به این میز دست نزده است /yek ru:z æst keh Paul beh in mi:z dæst næzædeh æst/.

All right, I think this is enough for today

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To turn on = **روشن کردن** /roshæn kærdæn/.

To receive = **دریافت کردن** /dærya:ft kærdæn/.

Award = **جایزه** /ja:yezeh/.

Driver = **راننده** /ra:nænde/.

To break = **شکستن** /shekæstæn/.

To tell somebody = **به ... گفتن** /beh somebody goftæn/.

To say = **گفتن** /goftæn/.

President = **رییس جمهور** /ræi:s-e- jomhu:r/. Also /ræi:s jomhu:r/, without /-e-/ sound.

To resign = **استعفا دادن** /estefa: da:dæn/.

Prime minister = **نخست وزیر** /nækhost væzi:r/.

To express hope = **اظهار امیدواری کردن** /ez ha:r-e- omidva:ri kærdæn/.

To leave = **ترک کردن** /tærk kærdæn/.

Taxi = **تاکسی** /ta:ksi/.

Taxi driver = **راننده تاکسی** /ra:nænde ye ta:ksi/.

Anything = **چیزی** /chizi:/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I haven't turned on the TV.
- 2- She has received two awards this year.
- 3- Your driver has broken the law.
- 4- They haven't told me.
- 5- This lady hasn't said anything.
- 6- The president of this country has resigned.
- 7- The prime minister has expressed hope.
- 8- My friends have left their country.
- 9- I haven't seen her this week.
- 10- He was a taxi driver.

- ۱- من تلویزیون را روشن نکرده ام.
- ۲- او دو جایزه را امسال دریافت کرده است.
- ۳- راننده ات قانون را شکسته است .
- ۴- آنها به من نگفته اند .
- ۵- این خانم چیزی نگفته است.
- ۶- رییس جمهور این کشور استعفا داده است.
- ۷- نخست وزیر اظهار امیدواری کرده است.
- ۸- دوستانم کشورشان را ترک کرده اند .
- ۹- من او را این هفته ندیده ام.
- ۱۰- او راننده تاکسی بود .

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Cloth = لباس /leba:s/.

Month = ماه /ma:h/.

For a long time = مدت‌هاست /mod.dæt ha:st/.

To eat = خوردن /khordæn/.

Food = غذا /ghæza:/.

Several = چندین /chændin/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I haven't washed my cloth for three weeks.
- 2- She hasn't washed the window for five days.
- 3- They haven't cleaned the room for one month.
- 4- Bill hasn't turned on the TV for one day.
- 5- My friend hasn't painted his house for ten years.
- 6- Your neighbor hasn't opened the door for two days.
- 7- Helen hasn't read a book for one year.
- 8- I haven't seen my friend for a long time.
- 9- My classmate hasn't gone to school for four weeks.
- 10- This man hasn't eaten food for several days.

- ۱- سه هفته است که لباسم را نشسته ام
- ۲- پنج روز است که پنجره را نشسته است
- ۳- یک ماه است که اتاق را تمیز نکرده اند
- ۴- یک روز است که بیل تلویزیون را روشن نکرده است
- ۵- ده سال است که دوستم خانه اش را رنگ نکرده است
- ۶- دو روز است که همسایه ات در را باز نکرده است
- ۷- یک سال است که هنر کتابی نخوانده است
- ۸- مدتهاست که دوستم را ندیده ام
- ۹- چهار هفته است که همکلاسی ام به مدرسه نرفته است
- ۱۰- چندین روز است که این مرد غذا نخورده است

Week 33

Hello everyone, how are you?

During the past two weeks, I have received several messages from your friends who had suggested great sites to share with all of you. That is a great work and I do really appreciate it. It's not always possible for me to look for new links, you can share your favorite links with all your friends and be sure that they will be thankful, me too!

This week, I received another great site from one of your friends, which is absolutely helpful for all of us. This site gives you the chance to watch the masterpieces of Hafez poems with clear Persian writings, and at the same time listen to the audio sounds reading the same poem. You may find the site on our Links page today.

I have received a couple of messages from some of your friends who have problems printing the lessons. I will really appreciate if you kindly let me know about printing the pages. Do you have any problems with printing or not? If not, do you have any suggestions for your friends to solve their problems? Please let me know.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen).

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make six sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, and negative using 'for').

They

We

Window

To kiss

To close

Glass

To turn on

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

12 - 17 - 18 - 19 - 80 - 70 - 90 - 690

All right,

Last week we learned how to use 'for' in Persian sentences. I hope it was not difficult for you to follow.

Today we are going to learn another word, which is 'since'.

Look at this sentence:

I haven't seen him since last week.

Let's break the sentence together.

I = subject

Haven't seen = verb

Him = object

Since (here in this structure) = از /æz/.

Last week = time

Now let's translate the first part of our English sentence:

I haven't seen him.

It means من او را ندیده ام /mæn u: ra: nædideh æm/. Is it correct? Good!

Now, let's see the second part:

"Since last week"

We already know 'last week', which means هفته پیش /hæfteh ye pish/ or هفته گذشته /hæfteh ye gozæshteh/. Remember? Wonderful!

Put از /æz/ in the beginning of this phrase and you'll have از هفته پیش /æz hæfteh ye pish/.

The problem is almost gone. Now suppose that this phrase is our 'time' in our sentences: از هفته پیش /æz hæfteh ye pish/.

Do the same with this 'time' in your general rule of the sentences. That is to say, put it in the place of time in your general rule, which is: subject + object + time + place + verb

Did it? Good!

So, for 'I haven't seen him since last week', we have this in Persian:

من او را از هفته پیش ندیده ام /mæn u: ra: æz hæfteh ye pish nædideh æm/.

Easy? Wonderful! Now let's see some examples:

He hasn't seen his friend since last week. او دوستش را از هفته پیش ندیده است /u: du:stæsh ra: æz hæfteh ye pish nædideh æst/.

They haven't cleaned the TV since last year. آنها تلویزیون را از پارسال تمیز نکرده اند /a:nha: televiziyu:n ra: æz pa:rsal tæmiz nækærdeh ænd/.

Now, take a look at the sentence below:

This man hasn't eaten food since yesterday.

Let's break this sentence:

This man = subject

Hasn't eaten = verb

Food = object

Since = /æz/

Yesterday = time

Naturally, we should follow the same rule here. That is to say, according to our rule we should say this sentence as follows:

این مرد غذا را از دیروز نخورده است /in mærd ghæza: ra: æz diru:z nækhordeh æst/.

/in mærd/ = subject

/ghæza:/ = object

/æz diru:z/ = time

/nækhordeh æst/ = verb

However, this sentence seems a bit odd in Persian. Here, we should change our rule a bit. It means that we should replace the existing rule (subject + object + time + place + verb) with the following rule:

subject + time + object + place + verb

As you see, 'time' comes before 'object' in this sentence. So, instead of saying

این مرد غذا را از دیروز نخورده است /in mærd ghæza: ra: æz diru:z nækhordeh æst/, we

should say این مرد از دیروز غذا نخورده است /in mærd æz diru:z ghæza: nækhordeh æst/.

/in mærd/ = subject

/æz diru:z/ = time

/ghæza:/ = object

/nækhordeh æst/ = verb

'time' comes before 'object'

Result:

In this structure, it is very difficult for us to know which rule should be chosen here since we will face a variety of sentences like this in future.

Solution:

For this structure, make the habit of using our new rule for all sentences to avoid any confusion in future. That is to say, you'd better follow this rule (subject + time + object + place + verb) in all your sentences that are in present perfect tense based on 'since'.

As a result, we can translate all the above sentences in this way. Here's how:

I haven't seen him since last week = من او را از هفته پیش ندیده ام /mæn u: ra: æz hæfteh ye pish nædideh æm/ = من از هفته پیش او را ندیده ام /mæn æz hæfteh ye pish u: ra: nædideh æm/.

He hasn't seen his friend since last week = او دوستش را از هفته پیش ندیده است /u: du:stæsh ra: æz hæfteh ye pish nædideh æst/ = او از هفته پیش دوستش را ندیده است /u: æz hæfteh ye pish du:stæsh ra: nædideh æst/.

They haven't cleaned the TV since last year = آنها تلویزیون را از پارسال تمیز نکرده اند /a:nha: televiziyu:n ra: æz pa:rsa:l tæmiz nækærdeh ænd/ = آنها از پارسال تلویزیون را تمیز نکرده اند /a:nha: æz pa:rsa:l televiziyu:n ra: tæmiz nækærdeh ænd/.

This man hasn't eaten food since yesterday.

این مرد از دیروز غذا نخورده است /in mærd æz diru:z ghæza: nækhordeh æst/.

Important note:

Now that we have faced two rules in our Persian sentences, and now that we know our first rule fluently, we can write all sentences based on our new rule. That is to say, we can use 'time' before 'objects' in our Persian sentences, which is not wrong and is acceptable. But, remember that our first rule is our basic rule which should not be forgotten.

Ok. Hopefully it is not difficult for you.

Next week, I will explain 'objects' more clearly to see whether an object should receive ^{را} /ra:/ or not. I know I have already explained it a bit, but that was at the very beginning and I don't think it was enough. Now, at this stage I feel it a necessity which should be done once more.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Since + year = از سال /æz sa:l-e- .../. Since 1990 = از سال ۱۹۹۰ /æz sa:l-e- heza:r-o- noh sæd-o-nævæd/.

To call (to telephone) = تلفن کردن /telefon kærdæn/.

To play = بازی کردن /ba:zi: kærdæn/.

These children = این بچه ها /in bæch.cheh ha:/.

Radio = رادیو /ra:diu/.

New = تازه /ta:zeh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- My friend hasn't eaten food since last week.
- 2- This cat hasn't caught a mouse since last month.
- 3- I haven't seen my country since 1979.
- 4- Mike hasn't fixed his bicycle for three months.
- 5- Mrs. Jones hasn't called since this morning.
- 6- These children haven't played for five days.

- 7- We haven't bought a new motorbike for 11 years.
 8- They haven't turned on the radio since this morning.

- ۱- دوستم از هفته پیش غذا نخورده است
 ۲- این گربه از ماه پیش موشی نگرفته است
 ۳- من از سال ۱۹۷۹ کشورم را ندیده ام
 ۴- سه ماه است که مایک دوچرخه اش را تعمیر نکرده است
 ۵- خانم جونز از امروز صبح تلفن نکرده است
 ۶- پنج روز است که این بچه ها بازی نکرده اند
 ۷- یازده سال است که موتور سیکلت تازه ای خریده ایم
 ۸- آنها از امروز صبح رادیو را روشن نکرده اند

Week

34

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen).
 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make six sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, and negative using 'for').

To cook

To sharpen

To obey

Watermelon

Letter

Homework

- 3- Say these numbers in Persian:

12 - 15 - 50 - 601 - 106 - 2002 - 5555

All right,

As I told you last week, we are going to take another look at 'objects' and /ra:/.

Note: I am teaching you based on my own knowledge without having any access to Persian grammar books. Everything throughout this site comes from my memory. Nevertheless, it does not mean that I have memorized all these things. Whenever I need to find a rule, I try to say a couple of sentences first. Then, I find a rule based on these sentences. So, it seems natural that sometimes I forget something. If this is the case, I will try to correct or complete the rules later. Whatever it is, you can be sure that I will not teach you something wrong.

Look at the following sentence:

I saw him.

I = subject

Saw = verb

Him = object

Here, to understand the concept of objects, I am going to explain it in different situations. In the above sentence, both the Person who is speaking and the one who is listening know whom we are talking about. I mean, the object of our sentence is known to both of us. The person who is saying 'I saw him' expect me, as a listener, to know 'him', which is the object of the sentence. Is the explanation clear?

In this case, we have to put /ra:/ after the object of our Persian sentence. We should say /mæn u: ra: didæm/.

Now look at this sentence:

I saw your friend.

This sentence has the same story. That is to say, the object of our sentence is known to me, as the subject, and the person who is listening to me. So, we should say /mæn du:stæt ra: didæm/. We should put /ra:/ after the object.

Is it clear? Good.

Now, look at this sentence:

I saw the book.

I am sure your English is better than mine. You know that 'the' in this sentence has made the 'book' known to us. In another word, 'the' is a 'definite article' through which we know which book we are talking about. Am I right?

So, if we have a 'definite article' (the) before the object of our sentence, we should put /ra:/ after the object in our Persian sentence. This is our Persian sentence: /mæn keta:b ra: didæm/.

Now, look at the following example:

I saw a book.

As you see, there is 'a' before object, and we know that 'a' is an 'indefinite article', which does not specify the object so clearly as 'the' does. That is to say, we don't know which book we are talking about.

Here, we'd *better not* add /ra:/ to our object in the Persian sentence. So, our Persian sentence is this: /mæn keta:bi didæm/, or /mæn yek keta:b didæm/.

Note: as you see, I said '*better not*' for this rule. It means that this rule is not very strict. It, mostly, depends on the nature of the verb and our context. So, you are allowed to say your sentences with or without /ra:/ in Persian.

Now, try this one:

I saw two books.

Here, we don't know which books we saw. Therefore, if we accept 'two' as an article, we should call it an 'indefinite article'. So, we shouldn't put /ra:/ after the object of our Persian sentence. Our Persian sentence is this: /mæn do keta:b didæm/.

Or, I bought two books = /mæn do keta:b khæridæm/.

Sometimes, we are talking about a general concept. Look at the following example:

I have eaten food.

As you see, food is a general concept.

So, in such general concepts, we shouldn't put /ra:/ after the object. We simply say /mæn ghæza: khordeh æm/.

But, if we say /mæn ghæza: ra: khordeh æm/, we mean that 'I haven't eaten the food', which, for example, you left for me and so on.

In short,

If the object is known to us, we should put /ra:/ after it in our Persian sentences. An object can be known to us if it has 'the', 'this', 'that', 'these', 'those', 'my', 'your', ...

But, if the object is not clear to us or conveys a general concept, or if the object comes with numbers in our English sentences, we shouldn't put /ra:/ after the object in our Persian sentences.

Note: /ra:/ has almost the same function in Persian as 'the' in English. That is to say, we make an object known by putting /ra:/ after it.

Note: the words I can remember here are 'someone' or 'somebody'.

I saw somebody.

Somebody is not so clear to us. But, it has the same structure as 'I saw him'. Therefore, we should say that the structure of these two sentences is the same:

I saw him = I saw somebody

They have the same structure. Therefore, we should use the same rule for both of them.

I saw somebody/someone = /mæn yeki ra: didæm/.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Electricity = برق /bærgh/.

To rent = اجاره کردن /eja:reh kærdæn/.

Room = اتاق /ota:gh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- Electricity went.
- 2- Electricity has gone for two hours.
- 3- Electricity has gone since this morning.
- 4- Electricity came.
- 5- My friend has bought a house.
- 6- They have eaten lunch.
- 7- We have eaten our lunch.
- 8- She has written a letter.
- 9- My teacher has written three letters.
- 10- They haven't rent a room.
- 11- They haven't rent that room.
- 12- I haven't found a friend.
- 13- I haven't found my friend.

- ۱- برق رفت
- ۲- دو ساعت است که برق رفته است
- ۳- برق از امروز صبح رفته است
- ۴- برق آمد
- ۵- دوستم خانه ای خریده است
- ۶- آنها ناهار خورده اند
- ۷- ما ناهارمان را خورده ایم
- ۸- او نامه ای نوشته است
- ۹- معلم سه نامه نوشته است
- ۱۰- آنها اتاقی اجاره نکرده اند
- ۱۱- آنها آن اتاق را اجاره نکرده اند
- ۱۲- من دوستی پیدا نکرده ام
- ۱۳- من دوستم را پیدا نکرده ام

Week 35

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen).

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make six sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, and negative using 'for').

To buy

To stop

Old

New

To paint

Sister

Brother

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

40 - 14 - 80 - 18 - 16 - 61 - 605 - 506 - 110 - 101

All right,

We already know how to say this sentence in Persian:

I have broken the window.

Do you remember it? Wonderful!

Today, we are going to say the following sentence:

Have I broken the window?

Wonderful guess! We are going to see the question form of sentences in present perfect tense.

It shouldn't be difficult for us now that we have already experienced the question forms in simple past tense. I hope all of you remember it.

As you remember, we had to put the word **آیا** /a:ya:/ in the beginning of a sentence in simple past tense to change the sentence into a question form.

Do you remember what else did we learn about the interrogative forms? Excellent! We know that we have to pronounce the last word of our sentences in a question form.

You see, it shouldn't be difficult for us now if you know the previous lessons fluently.

So, let's translate the above sentence now:

Have I broken **the** window?

آیا من پنجره را شکسته ام؟ /a:ya: mæn pænjereh **ra:** shekæsteh æm/?

Note: in translating an English sentence into Persian, we should convey the same message with the same emphasis. That is to say, we should know which word in our English sentence is emphasized. Then, we should put the same emphasis on its Persian equivalent.

For example, in the above sentence, if the word "have broken" is emphasized in our English sentence we should put the emphasis on /shekæsteh æm/. Alternatively, if the emphasis is on "I" in our English sentence we should put the emphasis on /mæn/ in our Persian sentence. Is that clear? Good!

Now, let's see some other examples:

Have you fixed **the** bicycle?

آیا دوچرخه را تعمیر کرده ای؟ /a:ya: do chær kheh **ra:** tæmir kærdeh i:/?

Has she turned off **the** TV?

آیا تلویزیون را خاموش کرده است؟ /a:ya: tele visiyu:n **ra:** kha:mu:sh kærdeh æst/?

Have you seen **that** man?

آیا آن مرد را دیده ای؟ /a:ya: a:n mærd **ra:** dideh i:/?

Has your friend eaten food?

آیا دوستت غذا خورده است؟ /a:ya: du:stæt ghæza: khordeh æst/?

Have you eaten lunch?

آیا ناهار خورده ای؟ /a:ya: na:ha:r khordeh i:/?

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To change = **عوض کردن** /ævæz kærdæn/.

Job = **شغل** /shoghl/.

Parents = **والدین** /va:ledein/. Also **پدر و مادر** /pedær-o- ma:dær/ (mostly in daily conversation).

Medicine = **دارو** /da:ru:/.

Bag = **کیف** /ki:f/.

Wallet/Purse = **کیف پول** /ki:f-e- pu:l/.

Anyone = **کسی** /kesi/.

No one = هیچکس /hich kæs/.

To lose = گم کردن /gom kærdæn/.

Watch = ساعت /sa:æt/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- Have you bought a new car?
- 2- Has your friend changed **his** job?
- 3- Have your parents seen **your** friend?
- 4- My child hasn't gone to school for one week.
- 5- She hasn't eaten **her** medicine since yesterday.
- 6- Have they sold **their** house?
- 7- Has anyone touched **my** wallet?
- 8- No one has taken **your** bag.
- 9- I have lost **my** watch since this morning.
- 10- Has your brother found **my** watch?

- ۱- آیا ماشین تازه ای خریده ای؟
- ۲- آیا دوستت شغلش را عوض کرده است؟
- ۳- آیا والدینت (پدر و مادرت) دوستت را دیده اند؟
- ۴- یک هفته است که پسر من به مدرسه نرفته است.
- ۵- او از دیروز دارویش را نخورده است.
- ۶- آیا آنها خانه شان را فروخته اند؟
- ۷- آیا کسی به کیف پولم دست زده است؟
- ۸- هیچکس کیفتم را بر نداشته است.
- ۹- من از امروز صبح ساعتم را گم کرده ام.
- ۱۰- آیا برادرت ساعتم را پیدا کرده است؟

Week 36

Hello everyone, how are you?

Before we start today, I would like you to see two messages I have received this week.

Message 1

Dear Mr. Hassan H.

I have been meaning to tell you that I am sticking with your lessons. I find that, while the pace is much less intense than a college class, there is just enough to keep me learning without cutting into my time for work, family, etc. At one point, I understood you to say that you would not be including the poems and their translations. I am glad to see that you continue to include them. Also, the brief descriptions of each lesson that you added to the Previous Lessons section have been helpful.

I have made a glossary of the words you introduced so far, which I am attaching as a MSWord document. It requires Kick Keys KKFarsi. I thought that some of your other students might find it helpful.

Robert Burdick

Well, I believe this is a great work done by Robert. I do appreciate it and I am sure you will like it too. You may download the dictionary here. You'll still be able to see the dictionary if you don't have Kick Keys installed on your machines. Then, if you think you'll need this good work, get Kick Keys here.

I'd like to thank him again for his kind cooperation and feeling such a great responsibility in creating, re-editing, and sharing such a work with all of us. **NOTE: THE LINK TO THIS DICTIONARY IS NO LONGER IN USE SINCE KICK KEYS DOES NOT SUPPORT FARSI FONT ANY MORE. PLEASE ACCEPT MY APPOLOGIES.**

Message 2

Dear Hassan,

Thanks again for the great work you do. My question concerns Farsi itself. I read that Farsi in Iran is not spoken the same way in every cities. For example, in Tehran and Shiraz, Farsi has some differences. Is that true? If it is, may I know which one you are teaching us? What kind of differences are there anyway?...

kheili moteshakeram, Mahtab. Actually, that is true. Different cities and even two neighboring villages in Iran have got different accents or dialects. That is to say, people of different areas speak in their own accent. We have lots of local accents and some languages in Iran. Inside each Province, the different accents in different cities are not so big and will not bring much troubles in communication . They can understand each other regardless of such a difference. Nevertheless, people of different provinces must speak in standard Persian to be understood properly. These accents are somehow the lingual identity of each person, which help us find the origin of that person more easily. Through a person's special accent, you could say that this person is from this or that city or province.

In addition to these accents, there are a few languages in Iran. You know that languages are different from accents or dialects. As far as I remember now, these languages are as follows: Farsi or Persian, Turkish, Kurdish, Arabic, Armenian, Zoroastrian, Urdu, and even Jewish. Maybe there are some more of them, which are not very popular.

The language I am teaching you is Farsi or Persian, which is the standard language of Iran. This language is totally understood in each and every city and village of Iran regardless of their accents or language. You can freely communicate with all Iranians of different backgrounds, language, and religion with this standard Persian.

I hope, I have explained it well!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalent. (Seen).

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make seven sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since').

They

Door

To close

Woman

To see

To kiss

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

11 - 23 - 51 - 900 - 1009 - 3010 - 46211

All right, let's begin now.

Today, we are going to learn days of a week in Persian.

As you probably know, weeks in Iran start with Saturday and ends with Friday. So, we'll start from Saturday.

Here, all you need to know is Saturday and Friday. You won't have problems with the rest of them. Ready?

Saturday **شنبه** /shæn beh/. Listen!

Sunday **یکشنبه** /yek shæn beh/.

Monday **دوشنبه** /do shæn beh/.

Tuesday **سه شنبه** /seh shæn beh/.

Wednesday **چهارشنبه** /chæha:r shæn beh/.

Thursday پنج شنبه /pænʃ shæn beh/.

Friday جمعه /jomeh/. Listen!

Ok, hope it's not difficult!

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To receive دریافت کردن /dærya:ft kærdæn/.

Present (gift) هدیه /hed yeh/.

Poems شعر /sher/.

To write نوشتن /neveshtæn/. To write poems = to say poems = شعر گفتن /sher goftæn/ not شعر نوشتن /sher neveshtæn/.

Birthday party جشن تولد /jæshn-e- tævæl.lod/.

To be بودن /bu:dæn/. Was بود /bu:d/.

Girlfriend دوست دختر /du:st dokhtær/.

To call somebody به ... تلفن کردن /beh somebody telefon kærdæn/.

Boyfriend دوست پسر /du:st pesær/.

Football فوتبال /fu:t ba:l/.

Match مسابقه /mosa:begheh/.

Writer نویسنده /nevisænde/.

To experience تجربه کردن /tæjrobeh kærdæn/.

Accident تصادف /tæsa:dof/.

Car accident تصادف ماشین /tæsa:dof-e- ma:shin/.

By accident بطور تصادفی /betor-e- tæsa:dofi/.

To accept قبول کردن /ghæbu:l kærdæn/.

Suggestion پیشنهاد /pish næha:d/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- My friend received two presents (gifts) on Monday.
- 2- He has written two poems since last Tuesday.
- 3- Her birthday party was on last Friday.
- 4- His girlfriend hasn't called him since last Thursday.
- 5- She hasn't seen her boyfriend for two weeks.
- 6- Did you see the football match on Sunday?
- 7- This writer has written two books since last month.
- 8- I have experienced two car accidents since last year.
- 9- She found her friend by accident.
- 10- No one accepted my suggestion.

- ۱- دوستم دوشنبه دو هدیه دریافت کرد.
- ۲- او از سه شنبه گذشته دو شعر گفته است.
- ۳- جشن تولدش جمعه گذشته بود.
- ۴- دوست دخترش از پنج شنبه گذشته به او تلفن نکرده است.
- ۵- دو هفته است که دوست پسرش را ندیده است.
- ۶- آیا یک شنبه مسابقه فوتبال را دیدی؟
- ۷- این نویسنده از ماه گذشته دو کتاب نوشته است.
- ۸- من از سال گذشته دو تصادف ماشین (را) تجربه کرده ام.
- ۹- او بطور تصادفی دوستش را پیدا کرد.
- ۱۰- هیچکس پیشنهادم را قبول نکرد.

Week 37

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make seven sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since').

Bridge

Ugly

Bad

Beautiful

Big

Small

To steal

To hurt

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

40 - 60 - 30 - 64 - 231 - 1364 - 64231 - 230460

All right,

So far, we have successfully learned simple past tense as well as present perfect tense. I think we are now ready to take another step in our learning. Today, we are going to learn a new tense, which is Simple Future Tense.

Please be patient if we are still avoiding the simple present tense. As I have already told you, this tense (simple present tense) is irregular and will probably bring us a little difficulty. That's why I don't want to deal with it now. But, don't worry; we'll have plenty of time to take care of it! You will face it willy-nilly!! Ok, now let's see the simple future tense.

Suppose that we want to say this in Persian: I will write

I deeply hope all of you remember the way we made verbs in simple past tense. We would delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of infinitives to make a verb in simple past tense.

Let's see an example:

To write = نوشتن /neveshtæn/, which is 'infinitive'.

Delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of this infinitive and you'll have نوشت /nevesht/, which is a verb in simple past tense.

Remember? Great!

Keep it in your mind for what we are going to do next.

Now, suppose that we are going to say the followings:

I will

You will

He/she will

We will

You will

They will

Here, we have a kind of auxiliary verb in Persian, which can help us a lot. I am not going to tell you the root of this auxiliary verb since it refers to simple present tense. Instead, I'll give you the verb and you'd better memorize it without any special rule to learn. This will be much easier. Ready?

I will = **خواهم** /kha:hæm/.

You will = **خواهی** /kha:hi/.

He/she will = **خواهد** /kha:hæd/.

We will = **خواهیم** /kha:him/.

You will = **خواهید** /kha:hid/.

They will = **خواهند** /kha:hænd/.

Hopefully, it's not difficult for you to memorize.

Now, you may put all verbs in simple past tense (infinitive minus **ن** /nu:n/, like **نوشت** nevesht) after the above phrases to change it into simple future tense. Here's how:

I will write = **خواهم نوشت** /kha:hæm nevesht/.

You will write = **خواهی نوشت** /kha:hi nevesht/.

He/she will write = **خواهد نوشت** /kha:hæd nevesht/.

We will write = **خواهیم نوشت** /kha:him nevesht/.

You will write = **خواهید نوشت** /kha:hid nevesht/.

They will write = **خواهند نوشت** /kha:hænd nevesht/.

Note: as you see, the main verb (**نوشت** nevesht) does not change.

Result: we have happily created a verb in Simple Future Tense!

Now, let's see another example:

I will close = **خواهم بست** /kha:hæm bæst/.

You will close = **خواهی بست** /kha:hi bæst/.

He/she will close = **خواهد بست** /kha:hæd bæst/.

We will close = **خواهیم بست** /kha:him bæst/.

You will close = **خواهید بست** /kha:hid bæst/.

They will close = **خواهند بست** /kha:hænd bæst/.

All right,

Was it difficult? I hope not!

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To sit نشستن /neshæs tæn/.

To drink نوشیدن /nu:shidæn/.

Sun خورشید /khorshid/. Also آفتاب /a:fta:b/.

To shine درخشیدن /derækh shidæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I will go.
- 2- She will see.
- 3- They will say.
- 4- We will break.
- 5- He will kill.
- 6- My friend will make.
- 7- Mr. Jones will read.
- 8- These children will write.
- 9- That man will sit.
- 10- Helen will drink.
- 11- The cat will eat.
- 12- The dog will catch.
- 13- The sun will shine.

- ۱- خواهم رفت.
- ۲- خواهد دید.
- ۳- خواهند گفت.
- ۴- خواهیم شکست.
- ۵- خواهد کشت.
- ۶- دوستم خواهد ساخت.
- ۷- آقای جونز خواهد خواند.
- ۸- این بچه ها خواهند نوشت.
- ۹- آن مرد خواهد نشست.
- ۱۰- هنن خواهد نوشید.
- ۱۱- گربه خواهد خورد.
- ۱۲- سگ خواهد گرفت.
- ۱۳- آفتاب (خورشید) خواهد درخشید.

Week 38

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make eight sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since', and one in simple future tense).

To change
Medicine
Watch
Wallet
Parents

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

9 - 0 - 66 - 390 - 4986 - 99887 - 555631 - 5746152

All right,

Last week, we learned how to make sentences in simple future tense. I hope all of you could do that without difficulties. Today, we will try it a bit more to know this tense better.

We already know how to say this sentence in Persian: I will close.

It shouldn't be difficult for you if you have studied the previous lesson carefully. Anyway, we would put the auxiliary verb **خواهم** /kha:hæm/ before the main verb **بست** /bæst/. Here's how:

خواهم بست /kha:hæm bæst/. Is that correct? Great!

Today, we are going to say this sentence in Persian:

I will open.

As you remember, we should put the auxiliary verb **خواهم** /kha:hæm/ before the main verb **باز کرد** /ba:z kærd/. So, according to the rule, this should be our Persian sentence:

من خواهم باز کرد /mæn kha:hæm ba:z kærd/. Right?

Well, it's wrong! This sentence seems strange in Persian! Let me explain it:

As you see, the verb **باز کردن** /ba:z kærdæn/ is a compound verb, which is different from the single verbs such as **بستن** /bæstæn/.

Here, our verb **باز کردن** /ba:z kærdæn/ has two components: **باز** /ba:z/ + **کردن** /kærdæn/.

In this case, we should put the auxiliary verb (here, **خواهم** /kha:hæm/) between these two components. Therefore:

I will open = **باز خواهم کرد** /ba:z kha:hæm kærd/. As you see, **خواهم** /kha:hæm/ is sitting between **باز** /ba:z/ and **کردن** /kærdæn/.

Result:

In simple future tense, whenever our verb has two parts (like, **باز کردن** /ba:z kærdæn/) we should put the auxiliary verb between them.

Let's see some examples:

They will clean. **آنها تمیز خواهند کرد** /a:nha: tæmi:z kha:hænd kærd/.

We will turn off. **ما خاموش خواهیم کرد** /ma: kha:mu:sh kha:him kærd/.

My friend will repair/fix. **دوستم تعمیر خواهد کرد** /du:stæm tæmi:r kha:hæd kærd/.

And so on.

All right,

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To prefer = **ترجیح دادن** /tærji:h da:dæn/.

To choose = **انتخاب کردن** /entekha:b kærdæn/.

To celebrate = **جشن گرفتن** /jæshn gereftæn/.

New Year = **سال نو** /sa:l-e- no/.

To respect = احترام گذاشتن /ehtera:m goza:shtæn/. To respect somebody =

به ... احترام گذاشتن /beh somebody ehtera:m goza:shtæn/.

To pray = دعا کردن /doa: kærdæn/. To pray for somebody = برای ... دعا کردن /bæra: ye somebody doa: kærdæn/.

To make somebody cry = ... را به گریه انداختن /somebody ra: beh geryeh ænda:khtæn/.

To make somebody laugh = ... را به خنده انداختن /somebody ra: beh khændeh ænda:khtæn/.

To marry = ازدواج کردن /ezdeva:j kærdæn/.

To become = شدن /shodæn/.

Sad = غمگین /ghæm gin/.

Happy = خوشحال /khosh ha:l/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I will prefer this country.
- 2- My friend will choose that car.
- 3- They will celebrate the New Year.
- 4- We will respect our teachers.
- 5- I will pray for you.
- 6- She will make me cry.
- 7- I will make her laugh.
- 8- They will marry in 2003.
- 9- He will become sad.
- 10- She will become happy.

- ۱- من این کشور را ترجیح خواهم داد.
- ۲- دوستم آن ماشین را انتخاب خواهد کرد.
- ۳- آنها سال نو را جشن خواهند گرفت.
- ۴- ما به معلم هایمان احترام خواهیم گذاشت.
- ۵- من برایت دعا خواهم کرد.
- ۶- او مرا به گریه خواهد انداخت.
- ۷- من او را به خنده خواهم انداخت.
- ۸- آنها در (سال) ۲۰۰۳ ازدواج خواهند کرد.
- ۹- او غمگین خواهد شد.
- ۱۰- او خوشحال خواهد شد.

Week 39

Hello everyone, how are you?

Today, we don't have a new lesson. Instead, we'll have some more words to practice in single future tense. Please do the quiz first and then go to useful drills page for further work.

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make eight sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense,

negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since', and one in simple future tense).

To rent

Room

Electricity

To stop

To obey

Fish

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

14 - 4 - 44 - 16 - 67 - 103 - 131 - 19 - 0 -

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Referee = **داور** /da:vær/.

To count = **شمردن** /shemordæn/.

To count on somebody or something = **روی ... حساب کردن** /ru: ye somebody or something hesa:b kærdæn/.

Bird = **پرنده** /pærændeh/.

Birds = **پرندگان** /pærændega:n/.

To migrate = **مهاجرت کردن** /moha:jeræt kærdæn/.

To = **به** /beh/.

South = **جنوب** /jonu:b/.

Autumn = **پاییز** /pa: i:z/.

To improve = **بهبود بخشیدن** /behbu:d bækh shidæn/.

To imprison = **زندانی کردن** /zenda:ni kærdæn/.

Government = **دولت** /dolæt/.

To react = **واکنش نشان دادن** /va:konesh nesha:n da:dæn/.

To follow = **دنبال کردن** /donba:l kærdæn/.

Lesson = **درس** /dærs/.

To forget = **فراموش کردن** /færa:mu:sh kærdæn/.

To leave = **ترک کردن** /tærk kærdæn/.

To see = **دیدن** /didæn/.

Passport = **پاسپورت** /pa:s port/.

Airport = **فرودگاه** /foru:d ga:h/.

To send = **فرستادن** /feresta:dæn/.

To tell somebody = **به ... گفتن** /beh somebody goftæn/.

From = **از** /æz/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

1- The referee will count from one to ten.

- 2- I will count on you.
- 3- The birds will migrate to south in autumn.
- 4- I will improve my Persian.
- 5- They will imprison your friends.
- 6- The government will react.
- 7- We will follow your lessons.
- 8- My friends will forget me.
- 9- I will leave this country.
- 10- The police will see your passport in the airport.
- 11- I will send you a letter.
- 12- I will tell her.

- ۱- داور از یک تا ده خواهد شمرد.
- ۲- من روی تو (شما) حساب خواهم کرد.
- ۳- پرنندگان در پاییز به جنوب مهاجرت خواهند کرد.
- ۴- من فارسی ام را بهبود خواهم بخشید.
- ۵- آنها دوستانت را زندانی خواهند کرد.
- ۶- دولت واکنش نشان خواهد داد.
- ۷- ما درسهایت (درسهایتان) را دنبال خواهیم کرد.
- ۸- دوستانم مرا فراموش خواهند کرد.
- ۹- من این کشور را ترک خواهم کرد.
- ۱۰- پلیس پاسپورتت را در فرودگاه خواهد دید.
- ۱۱- من برایت نامه ای خواهم فرستاد.
- ۱۲- من به او خواهم گفتم.

Week 40

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make eight sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since', and one in simple future tense).

To sell

To buy

To lose

To kill

To migrate

To improve

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

11 - 901 - 3003 - 2002 - 1999 - 2000

All right,

I hope you don't have problems with our previous lessons.

Today, we are going to see the negative form of sentences in simple future tense. No objections? Great!

Do you still remember the magic ن /nu:n/ with /næ/ sound, which makes verbs negative? Wonderful!

As you remember, we would put ن /nu:n/ with /næ/ sound in the beginning of a verb to make it negative.

Let's see an example:

I went = **من رفتم** /mæn ræftəm/.

I didn't go = **من نرفتم** /mæn næræftəm/. (næ + ræftəm)

Here in simple future tense, we will follow the same rule. However, there is a small difference. Guess what!

Here, instead of attaching /næ/ to the main verb (like what you see above), we should attach /næ/ to our auxiliary verbs. Here's how:

I will go = **من خواهم رفت** /mæn kha:hæm ræft/.

I will not go = **من نخواهم رفت** /mæn nækha:hæm ræft/.

As you see, the main verb (ræft) remains unchanged.

Did you get the point? Good!

Let's see some more examples:

She will write = **او خواهد نوشت** /u: kha:hæd nevesht/.

She will not write = **او نخواهد نوشت** /u: nækha:hæd nevesht/.

They will open = **آنها باز خواهند کرد** /a:nha: ba:z kha:hænd kærd/.

They will not open = **آنها باز نخواهند کرد** /a:nha: ba:z nækha:hænd kærd/.

We will clean = **ما تمیز خواهیم کرد** /ma: tæmi:z kha:him kærd/.

We will not clean = **آنها باز نخواهند کرد** /ma: tæmi:z nækha:him kærd/.

And so on. Hopefully, it's not difficult.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Referee = **داور** /da:vær/.

To count = **شمردن** /shemordæn/.

To count on somebody or something = **روی ... حساب کردن** /ru: ye somebody or something hesa:b kærdæn/.

Bird = **پرنده** /pærændeh/.

Birds = **پرندگان** /pærændega:n/.

To migrate = **مهاجرت کردن** /moha:jeræt kærdæn/.

To = **به** /beh/.

South = **جنوب** /jonu:b/.

Autumn = **پاییز** /pa: i:z/.

To improve = **بهبود بخشیدن** /behbu:d bækh shidæn/.

To imprison = **زندانی کردن** /zenda:ni kærdæn/.

Government = **دولت** /dolæt/.

To react = **واکنش نشان دادن** /va:konesh neshan da:dæn/.

To follow = **دنبال کردن** /donba:l kærdæn/.

Lesson = **درس** /dærs/.

To forget = فراموش کردن /færa:mu:sh kærdæn/.

To leave = ترک کردن /tærk kærdæn/.

To see = دیدن /didæn/.

Passport = پاسپورت /pa:s port/.

Airport = فرودگاه /foru:d ga:h/.

To send = فرستادن /feresta:dæn/.

To tell somebody = به ... گفتن /beh somebody goftæn/.

From = از /æz/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- The referee **will not** count from one to ten.
- 2- I **will not** count on you.
- 3- The birds **will not** migrate to south in autumn.
- 4- I **will not** improve my Persian.
- 5- They **will not** imprison your friends.
- 6- The government **will not** react.
- 7- We **will not** follow your lessons.
- 8- My friends **will not** forget me.
- 9- I **will not** leave this country.
- 10- The police **will not** see your passport in the airport.
- 11- I **will not** send you a letter.
- 12- I **will not** tell her.

- ۱- داور از یک تا ده نخواهد شمرد.
- ۲- من روی تو (شما) حساب نخواهم کرد.
- ۳- پرندگان در پاییز به جنوب مهاجرت خواهند کرد.
- ۴- من فارسی ام را بهبود نخواهم بخشید.
- ۵- آنها دوستانت را زندانی خواهند کرد.
- ۶- دولت واکنش نشان خواهد داد.
- ۷- ما درسهایت (درسهایتان) را دنبال خواهیم کرد.
- ۸- دوستانم مرا فراموش خواهند کرد.
- ۹- من این کشور را ترک نخواهم کرد.
- ۱۰- پلیس پاسپورتت را در فرودگاه نخواهد دید.
- ۱۱- من برایت نامه ای نخواهم فرستاد.
- ۱۲- من به او نخواهم گفت.

Week 41

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a

paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make nine sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since', one in simple future tense, and negative in simple future tense).

New

To play

To call

Children

Sister

To go

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

17 - 97 - 303 - 716 - 1001 - 3030

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Any = هیچ /hich/.

To come = آمدن /a:mædæn/.

Tomorrow = فردا /færda:/.

Next (plus time) = آینده /a:yændeh/.

To learn = یاد گرفتن /ya:d gereftæn/.

Language = زبان /zæba:n/.

To call = تلفن کردن /telefon kærdæn/.

Office = دفتر /dæftær/.

To forgive = بخشیدن /bækh shidæn/.

To forget = فراموش کردن /færa:mu:sh kærdæn/.

Manager = مدیر /modi:r/.

To cancel = لغو کردن /læghv kærdæn/.

Project = پروژه /poru:zheh/.

Lady = خانم /kha:nom/.

To marry = ازدواج کردن /ezdeva:j kærdæn/. To marry somebody = با ... ازدواج کردن /ba: somebody ezdeva:j kærdæn/.

To cooperate = همکاری کردن /hæm ka:ri kærdæn/. To cooperate with somebody = با ... همکاری کردن /ba: somebody hæm ka:ri kærdæn/.

To change = تغییر دادن /tæghi:r da:dæn/.

Plan = برنامه /bærna:meh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- She will not come tomorrow.
- 2- You will not see me next week.
- 3- I will not learn this language.
- 4- They will not call me today.

- 5- This office will not issue any tickets this week.
- 6- I will not forgive you.
- 7- They will not forget me.
- 8- The manager will not cancel that project.
- 9- This young lady will not marry you.
- 10- I will not cooperate with you.
- 11- We will not change the plan.

- ۱- او فردا نخواهد آمد.
- ۲- تو (شما) هفته آینده مرا نخواهی (نخواهید) دید.
- ۳- من این زبان را یاد نخواهم گرفت.
- ۴- آنها امروز به من تلفن نخواهند کرد.
- ۵- این دفتر این هفته هیچ بلیطی صادر نخواهد کرد.
- ۶- من ترا نخواهم بخشید.
- ۷- آنها مرا فراموش نخواهند کرد.
- ۸- مدیر آن پروژه را لغو خواهد کرد.
- ۹- این خانم جوان با تو ازدواج خواهد کرد.
- ۱۰- من با تو (شما) همکاری نخواهم کرد.
- ۱۱- ما برنامه را تغییر نخواهیم داد.

Week 42

Hello everyone, how are you?

Before we start today, let me answer to one of your questions first.

Question:

In drills for week 15 under section A: my brother sold

How do I translate this?

I'm asking because if I translate this to 'bara:daram foru:khtan' and translate it back I get 'My brother to sell'. On the other hand if I translate this to 'bara:daram foru:khtam' I will get 'My brother I sold'.

Answer:

I am sure most of you know the answer. So, let's answer to his question together before he sells his poor brother!

Delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of infinitives to make a verb in simple past tense.

Here, delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of فروختن /foru:khtæn/ to have فروخت /foru:kht/, which is a verb in simple past tense.

As you know, each verb has a suffix that represents our subjects. For example, if we put م /mæ/ at the end of فروخت /foru:kht/ we will get فروختم /foru:khtæm/, which means من فروختم /mæn foru:khtæm/ = I sold.

If we put ند /ænd/ at the end of فروخت /foru:kht/ we will have فروختند /foru:khtænd/, which means آنها فروختند /a:nha: foru:khtænd/ = they sold.

And so on.

Now, suppose we want to say 'he sold'.

In Persian, verbs that come with third person singular subjects (he - she - it) do not accept any suffixes.

That is to say, by deleting ن /nu:n/ from the end of infinitives, we have automatically got a verb in

simple past tense whose subject is either he or she and, sometimes, it.

As a result, **فروخت** /foru:kht/ means he or she sold.

نوشت /nevesht/ means he or she wrote.

خورد /khord/ means he or she ate.

رفت /ræft/ means he or she went.

Surely, we know that

My brother = he

My sister = she

Paul = he

Helen = she

So,

My brother sold = he sold

My sister sold = she sold

In short, my brother sold = **برادرم فروخت** /bæra:dæræm (u:) foru:kht/. Not my brother I sold!!

I hope the explanation is clear.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make nine sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since', one in simple future tense, and negative in simple future tense).

To receive

Award

Driver

To break

To say

To leave

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

12000 - 3123 - 701 - 351 - 6013 - 900

All right,

Today, we are going to learn the question form of sentences in simple future tense. Here's how:

As we did with two other tenses (simple past and present perfect tense), we need to put the word **آیا** /a:ya:/ at the beginning of our sentences. That's it!

Let's see some examples and then go to useful drills page.

Will he come? **آیا (او) خواهد آمد؟** /a:ya: (u:) kha:hæd a:mæd/?

Will they write? **آیا (آنها) خواهند نوشت؟** /a:ya: (a:nha:) kha:hænd nevesht/?

Will my brother sell? **آیا برادرم (او) خواهد فروخت؟** /a:ya: bæra:dæræm (u:) kha:hæd foru:kht/?

Will your father make? **آیا پدرت (او) خواهد ساخت؟** /a:ya: pedæræt (u:) kha:hæd sa:kht/?

And so on. Hope it is not difficult.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Summer = **تابستان** /ta:besta:n/.

Next summer = **تابستان آینده** /ta:besta:n-e- a:yændeh/.

Composition = **انشا** /ensha:/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Note: the following structure is different from the request form of sentences such as "will you open the door, please?"

- 1 - Will you buy?
- 2 - Will you buy a bicycle?
- 3 - Will you buy a bicycle next summer?
- 4 - Will the students write?
- 5 - Will the students write a composition?
- 6 - Will the students write a composition next week?
- 7 - Will your mother clean?
- 8 - Will your mother clean the room?
- 9 - Will your mother clean the room tomorrow?
- 10 - Will he fix?
- 11 - Will he fix the car?
- 12 - Will he fix the car this afternoon?

- ۱- آیا خواهی خرید؟
- ۲- آیا دوچرخه ای خواهی خرید؟
- ۳- آیا تابستان آینده دوچرخه ای خواهی خرید؟
- ۴- آیا دانش آموزان خواهند نوشت؟
- ۵- آیا دانش آموزان انشایی خواهند نوشت؟
- ۶- آیا دانش آموزان هفته آینده انشایی خواهند نوشت؟
- ۷- آیا مادرت تمیز خواهد کرد؟
- ۸- آیا مادرت اتاق را تمیز خواهد کرد؟
- ۹- آیا مادرت فردا اتاق را تمیز خواهد کرد؟
- ۱۰- آیا او تعمیر خواهد کرد؟
- ۱۱- آیا او ماشین را تعمیر خواهد کرد؟
- ۱۲- آیا او امروز بعد از ظهر ماشین را تعمیر خواهد کرد؟

Week 43

Hello everyone, how are you?

Before we start, we have one question to answer:

Question:

I just got done memorizing the alphabet dictated on your site, and before I proceed any further I'd like to know how much Persian differs from Arabic. I've glanced at the Arabic alphabet before and with that alone there seems to be only little difference. Is Persian similar enough to Arabic to be called a dialect of it?

And if I decide to follow through and learn the Persian on your site, would that make learning Arabic later much easier?

Answer:

Persian and Arabic are built on similar letters, yet different to some extent. As we know, there are 32 letters in Persian. However, I think, Arabic has 28 letters. The following Persian letters do not exist in

Arabic: گ - چ - پ - ژ . So, don't forget to ask for Bebsi if you need to drink Pepsi in Arab countries!!

Besides, the way we pronounce the letters in Persian is a bit different from their Arabic pronunciation.

These two "languages" are completely different from each other in spite of the similarity in their letters. Persian people do not understand Arabic and vice versa. However, some words, basically the Arabic ones, are common and understandable to both Iranians and the Arab people.

I am not sure if you will be able to understand Arabic through Persian. Personally, I have studied Arabic for seven years at school, yet not able to say one correct sentence in Arabic!!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make nine sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since', one in simple future tense, and negative in simple future tense).

To count

Autumn

To imprison

South

To react

To follow

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

15 - 51 - 13 - 2113 - 30010 - 10000000

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To save = نجات دادن /neja:t da:dæn/.

To get used to = عادت کردن /a:dæt kærdæn/.

To get used to something = به ... عادت کردن /beh something a:dæt kærdæn/.

To come back = برگشتن /bær gæshtæn/.

To ask = پرسیدن /porsidæn/.

Name = اسم /esm/. Also نام /na:m/.

Shirt = پیراهن /pira:hæn/.

Flight ticket = بلیط هواپیما /beli:t-e- hæva: peima:/.

To take = گرفتن /gereftæn/.

Revenge = انتقام /entegha:m/.

To take revenge = انتقام گرفتن /entegha:m gereftæn/.

To look after = مراقبت کردن /mora:ghebæt kærdæn/.

To look after somebody or something = از ... مراقبت کردن /æz somebody or something mora:ghebæt kærdæn/.

To look for somebody or something = دنبال ... گشتن /donba:l-e- somebody or something gæshtæn/.

Job = شغل /shoghl/.

Old = پیر /pi:r/.

Old man = پیر مرد /pi:r mærd/.

To water = آب دادن /a:b da:dæn/.

To water something = به ... آب دادن /beh something a:b da:dæn/.

Flower = گل /gol/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Note: the following structure is different from the request form of sentences such as "will you open the door, please?"

- 1- He saved his friend.
- 2- I haven't got used to this country.
- 3- She hasn't come back.
- 4- Have you forgiven him?
- 5- My parents didn't ask his name.
- 6- Did your sister buy that shirt?
- 7- They will buy 10 flight tickets next week.
- 8- I will take revenge.
- 9- My mother will look after my child.
- 10- She has looked for a new job since 2000.
- 11- This old man will not water the flowers.

- ۱- او دوستش را نجات داد.
- ۲- من به این کشور عادت نکرده ام.
- ۳- او بر نگشته است.
- ۴- آیا او را بخشیده ای؟
- ۵- والدینم اسمش را نپرسیدند.
- ۶- آیا خواهرت آن پیراهن را خرید؟
- ۷- آنها هفته آینده ده بلیط هواپیما خواهند خرید.
- ۸- من انتقام خواهم گرفت.
- ۹- مادرم از بچه ام مراقبت خواهد کرد.
- ۱۰- او از سال دو هزار دنیال شغل جدیدی گشته است.
- ۱۱- این پیر مرد به گل ها آب نخواهد داد.

Week 44

Hello everyone, how are you?

I hope all of you are doing well with the lessons and have made good progress.

Unfortunately, due to some reasons, I had to close the Persian samples page from this week. I am totally aware that this page has been one of your favorite pages since the very beginning. Please understand my situation and don't get angry with me!

I have just added a link to my Links page, which has some great poems including 'Fairies' of Ahmad Shamlu in English. I am sure you will like it. You may find it on Links page this week.

All right,

As always for many weeks, let's do the quiz first.

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make nine sentences with each of them (one in

simple past tense, negative in simple past, interrogative in simple past, one in present perfect tense, negative in present perfect tense, one using 'for', and one with 'since', one in simple future tense, and negative in simple future tense).

To ask

To look after

To come back

To get used to

Shirt

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

21 - 16 - 421 - 214 - 2014 - 300

Ok. Are you ready to take one more steps in learning Persian?

Today, we are going to learn one more tense. Guess what?

No, it's not simple present tense!

Today, we are going to learn past perfect tense. After this tense is done successfully, we'll be ready to deal with simple present tense.

Ready?

Do you remember what 'To be' is in Persian? Great! It means **بودن** /bu:dæn/. And, this is all we need in past perfect tense.

Suppose that we want to say this:

I had gone.

As you see, this structure is very similar to what we have in present perfect tense (I have gone).

So, let's take a very quick review of present perfect tense first.

I have gone (present perfect tense) = **رفته** /ræfteh/ + **ام** /æm/ = **رفته ام** /ræfteh æm/. Do you remember that? Wonderful!

Now, delete the suffix (here: **ام** /æm/) and you'll have **رفته** /ræfteh/. Keep the word **رفته** /ræfteh/ for a rainy day!

Is the explanation clear? Good!

Now, let's see **بودن** /bu:dæn/ again.

We already know how to say this:

I was = **من بودم** /mæn bu:dæm/.

You were = **تو بودی** /to bu:di/.

She/ he was = **او بود** /u: bu:d/.

We were = **ما بودیم** /ma: bu:dim/.

You were = **شما بودید** /shoma: bu:did/.

They were = **آنها بودند** /a:nha: bu:dænd/.

Easy? Great!

Now, put the Persian word **رفته** /ræfteh/ between **من** /mæn/ and **بودم** /bu:dæm/. And you'll have **من رفته بودم** /mæn ræfteh bu:dæm/, which means " I had gone".

Is it clear?

In short:

I had gone = **من رفته بودم** /mæn ræfteh bu:dæm/.

You had gone = **تو رفته بودی** /to ræfteh bu:di/.

She/ he had gone = **او رفته بود** /u: ræfteh bu:d/.

We had gone = **ما رفته بودیم** /ma: ræfteh bu:dim/.

You had gone = شما رفته بودید /shoma: ræfteh bu:did/.

They had gone = آنها رفته بودند /a:nha: ræfteh bu:dænd/.

Great job!

So, all we need to do is this:

1- Delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of an infinitive to make a verb in simple past tense (like: رفت /ræft/).

2- Add ه /he/ to this verb (here: we'll have رفته /ræfteh/).

3- Say the newly made verb with بودن /bu:dæn/, which serves as an auxiliary verb.

Note: all verbs follow the same rule here. That is to say, we don't need to change our main verbs. Rather,

it's the verb بودن /bu:dæn/ that changes with subjects.

Let's see some more examples:

I had seen = من دیده بودم /mæn dideh bu:dæm/.

You had seen = تو دیده بودی /to dideh bu:di/.

She/ he had seen = او دیده بود /u: dideh bu:d/.

We had seen = ما دیده بودیم /ma: dideh bu:dim/.

You had seen = شما دیده بودید /shoma: dideh bu:did/.

They had seen = آنها دیده بودند /a:nha: dideh bu:dænd/.

I had written = من نوشته بودم /mæn neveshteh bu:dæm/.

You had written = تو نوشته بودی /to neveshteh bu:di/.

She/ he had written = او نوشته بود /u: neveshteh bu:d/.

We had written = ما نوشته بودیم /ma: neveshteh bu:dim/.

You had written = شما نوشته بودید /shoma: neveshteh bu:did/.

They had written = آنها نوشته بودند /a:nha: neveshteh bu:dænd/.

Was it difficult? I hope not!

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Boyfriend = دوست پسر /du:st pesær/.

Girlfriend = دوست دختر /du:st dokhtær/.

To start = شروع کردن /shoru: kærdæn/.

To finish = تمام کردن /tæma:m kærdæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

1- He had broken.

2- She had washed.

3- My parents had asked.

4- The teacher had said.

5- They had cleaned.

6- We had repaired.

7- Her boyfriend had gone.

- 8- His girlfriend had come.
- 9- We had started.
- 10- They had finished.
- 11- This man had turned on.
- 12- That child had turned off.

- ۱- او شکسته بود.
- ۲- او شسته بود.
- ۳- والدینم پرسیده بودند.
- ۴- معلم گفته بود.
- ۵- آنها تمیز کرده بودند.
- ۶- ما تعمیر کرده بودیم.
- ۷- دوست پسرش رفته بود.
- ۸- دوست دخترش آمده بود.
- ۹- ما شروع کرده بودیم.
- ۱۰- آنها تمام کرده بودند.
- ۱۱- این مرد روشن کرده بود.
- ۱۲- آن بچه خاموش کرده بود.

Week 45

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To start

To finish

Job

To water

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

63 - 48 - 2222 - 1090 - 565402 - 67067

Week 45

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To come back = برگشتن /bær gæshtæn/.

To take = برداشتن /bær da:shtæn/.

Dishes = ظرف ها /zærf ha:/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I had told you.
- 2- She had called me.
- 3- We had eaten lunch.
- 4- They had come back.
- 5- My friend had found her dog.
- 6- This man had repaired my car.
- 7- That boy had taken my watch.
- 8- Your child had broken that balloon.
- 9- Your father had seen me.
- 10- My mother had cooked dinner.
- 11- I had washed the dishes.

- ۱- من به شما (تو) گفته بودم.
- ۲- او به من تلفن کرده بود.
- ۳- ما ناهار خورده بودیم.
- ۴- آنها برگشته بودند.
- ۵- دوستم سگش را پیدا کرده بود.
- ۶- این مرد ماشینم را تعمیر کرده بود.
- ۷- آن پسر ساعت را برداشته بود.
- ۸- پسرت آن بادکنک را ترکانده بود.
- ۹- پدرت مرا دیده بود.
- ۱۰- مادرم شام پخته بود.
- ۱۱- من ظرف ها را شسته بودم.

Week 46

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To come back

To take

Dishes

- 3- Say these numbers in Persian:

0 - 22 - 102 - 201 - 1010 - 411

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

Very = خیلی /kheili/.

Late = دیر /di:r/.

Guest = مهمان /mehma:n/.

Early = زود /zu:d/.

Lots of = زیادی /zi ya:di/.

People = مردم /mærdom/.

To gather (intransitive) = جمع شدن /jæm shodæn/.

Behind = پشت /posht/.

Gate = دروازه /dær va:zeh/.

Behind the gate = پشت دروازه /posht _e_ dær va:zeh/.

Some (if followed by a countable noun) = تعدادی /teda:di/.

Some of = از تعدادی /teda:di æz/.

Some (if followed by an uncountable noun) = مقداری /megh da:ri/.

Some of = از مقداری /megh da:ri æz/.

Party = جشن /jæshn/.

Sugar = شکر /shekær/.

Pen = قلم /ghælæm/.

And = و /væ/.

To thank = تشکر کردن /tæshækor kærdæn/.

To thank somebody = از تشکر کردن /æz somebody tæshækor kærdæn/.

To spend (here) = خرج کردن /khærj kærdæn/.

A lot of = lots of = زیادی /zi ya:di/.

Money = پول /pu:l/.

To promise = قول دادن /ghol da:dæn/.

To promise somebody = به قول دادن /beh somebody ghol da:dæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

1- I had found her very late.

2- The guests had come very early.

3- Lots of people had gathered behind the gate.

4- Some of my friends had come to the party.

5- We had bought some meat, some milk, some sugar, some books, and some pens.

6- I had thanked him.

7- My friend had spent a lot of money.

8- They had lost their wallet.

- 9- I had read several books.
10- She had promised me.

- ۱- من او را خیلی دیر پیدا کرده بودم.
۲- مهمان ها خیلی زود آمده بودند.
۳- مردم زیادی پشت دروازه جمع شده بودند.
۴- تعدادی از دوستانم به جشن آمده بودند.
۵- ما مقداری گوشت، مقداری شیر، مقداری شکر،
تعدادی کتاب، و تعدادی قلم خریده بودیم.
۶- من از او تشکر کرده بودم.
۷- دوستم پول زیادی خرج کرده بود.
۸- آنها کیف پولشان را گم کرده بودند.
۹- من چندین کتاب خوانده بودم.
۱۰- او به من قول داده بود.

Week 47

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Guest

Lots of
People

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

29 - 32 - 93 - 92 - 109 - 103 - 200

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Dinner <= /sha:m/ <== ش + ا + م =

Ugly <= /zesht/ <== ز + ش + ت =

Bird <= /pærændeħ/ <== پ + ر + ن + د + ه =

Wall <= /di:va:r/ <== د + ی + و + ا + ر =

Teacher <= /mo æl. lem/ <== م + ع + ل + ل + م =

Do you remember what I told you about **Tashdid**? The above word (teacher) follows that rule.

Room <= /ota:gh/ <== ا + ت + ا + ق =

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New words:

To forget = فراموش کردن /færa: mu:sh kærdæn/.

To forget something or somebody = /something or somebody **ra:** færa: mu:sh kærdæn/.

To decide = تصمیم گرفتن /tæsmim gereftæn/.

To stop = متوقف کردن /motevæghef kærdæn/.

Embassy = سفارت /sefa:ræt/.

Visa = ویزا /viza:/.

To lose = گم کردن /gom kærdæn/.

Passport = پاسپورت /pa:s port/.

To cross = از ... گذشتن /æz ... gozæsh tæñ/.

Border = مرز /mærz/.

New = جدید /jædid/. Also تازه /ta:zeh/.

Place = جا /ja:/.

To arrive = رسیدن /residæn/.

To face / to encounter = روبرو شدن /ru: beru: shodæn/. Listen! To face something = /**ba:** something ru: beru: shodæn/.

Problem = مشکل /mosh kel/.

To solve = حل کردن /hæl kærdæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- You had forgotten me.
- 2- I had decided last month.
- 3- They had stopped my car.
- 4- The embassy had issued my visa.
- 5- My friend had lost her passport.
- 6- We had crossed the border.
- 7- She had found a new place.
- 8- The bus had arrived very late.
- 9- I had faced (encountered) a problem.
- 10- They had solved my problem.

- ۱- مرا (من را) فراموش کرده بودی.
- ۲- من ماه پیش تصمیم گرفته بودم.
- ۳- آنها ماشینم را متوقف کرده بودند.
- ۴- سفارت ویزایم را صادر کرده بود.
- ۵- دوستم پاسپورتش را گم کرده بود.
- ۶- ما از مرز گذشته بودیم.
- ۷- او جای جدیدی (تازه ای) پیدا کرده بود.
- ۸- اتوبوس خیلی دیر رسیده بود.
- ۹- من با مشکلی روبرو شده بودم.
- ۱۰- آنها مشکلکم را حل کرده بودند.

Week 48

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Embassy

New

To arrive

To decide

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

33220 - 56001 - 13003 - 90009 - 85008

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Mr. <= /a:gha:/ <== آ + ق + ا =

Carpet <= /færsh/ <== ف + ر + ش =

Computer <= /ka:mpyu:ter/ <== ک + ا + م + پ + ی + و + ت + ر =

Country <= /keshvær/ <== ک + ش + و + ر =

Car <= /ma:shin/ <== م + ا + ش + ی + ن =

Bridge <= /pol/ <== پ + ل =

All right,

Today, we are going to learn the name of some countries in Persian. No objections? Great!

Germany = آلمان /a:lma:n/.

England = انگلستان /engelesta:n/. Also انگلیس /engeli:s/.

America = آمریکا /a:mrika:/.

Canada = کانادا /ka:na:da:/.

Switzerland = سوییس /suis/. (the same pronunciation as Swiss).

Brazil = برزیل /berezil/.

Netherlands = Holland = هلند /holænd/.

Australia = استرالیا /ostra:liya:/.

Norway = نروژ /norvezh/.

Spain = اسپانیا /espa:niya:/.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

As you see, our 'Useful drills' today is a bit different. Today, we are going to learn how to call the people or things of a country.

Example:

He was German.

This car was German.

His language was German.

We already know how to say Germany in Persian. To convey all the above meanings, simply put ی with /i:/ sound at the end of the country name in Persian.

Result:

For German, we will have آلمانی /a:lma:ni:/. Is that clear? Good!

Note:

For countries ending with /a:/ sound in Persian, such as /a:mrika:/, we should put this یی /i:/ at the end of the Persian word.

Do you know why? No?

Ok, I'll tell you why. But, not now! It's already midnight and I am terribly tired! So, you'll have to wait until next week. Of course, you could give it a try to find the reason.

Try this for the countries we have studied today. That is to say, say these in Persian:

German

English

American

Canadian

Swiss

Brazilian

Dutch

Australian

Norwegian

Spanish

Week 49

Hello everyone, how are you?

Before we start today, I want to take your time for just a couple of minutes.

As you know, easypersian.com will be one year old by October 19, 2002. During this time, I have been trying hard to fulfill my mission of love, as described by many of you, by introducing the easiest method in teaching Persian to you. I have been staying up late in the middle of the nights to write the lessons for you. I have done all this just because I love it. Like each of you, I love my language, my nation, and the

memories I have from my motherland with me. No matter how cloudy her sky is, no matter where we are, and how bitter the memories have been, we belong to the home with which we have love and pain in common.

On such a long journey, I have had your support everyday, which filled me with encouragement and optimism. It was you who supported my labor of love since the very beginning. And it was you who, through your kind messages and wonderful suggestions, let me handle the job successfully.

I would like to appreciate each and every one of you for being so loyal companions through sharing thoughts, ideas, and encouragement. Many thanks to all of you.

All right, now let's begin.

As far as I remember, I raised a question for you last week. I hope you have found the answer by now. Here's the question:

For countries (words) ending with /a:/ sound in Persian, such as آمریکا /a:mrika:/, we should put this

بی /i:/ at the end of the Persian word. Why?

Answer:

In Persian, it is not possible to have /a:/ and /i:/ together in one single word. That is to say, we cannot

pronounce ی as long /i:/ when it comes after long /a:/.

It seems logical! Look at your mouth in the mirror when you are saying /a:/, and try it again when you are saying /i:/! You will see two different positions of your mouth at the time of pronouncing these two sounds. It seems impossible for us to produce these two sounds simultaneously. To solve this problem, we

have to attach another letter to ی to create long /i:/. Since any other letter may produce a different

combination, and as a result a different word, we have to add another ی to ی to pull our up-going

mouth down! (Long /i:/ = بی)

Hopefully, you got the answer. If not, look at yourself in the mirror again and again patiently!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Place

Problem

To encounter

To forget something or somebody

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

19 - 44 - 66 - 303 - 977 - 6000 - 6006

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Telephone <= /telefon/ <== = ت + ل + ف + ن

New <= /ta:zeh/ <== = ت + ه + ز + ا

Year <= /sa:l/ <== = س + ا + ل

This <= /in/ <== = ن + ی + ا

Child <= /bæch.cheh/ < == = ه + چ + چ + ب
(Remember Tashdid? Look at the child!)

All right,

Today, we are going to learn the name of some more countries in Persian. This is the second and the last part of country names. If the country you want is not listed here, please send it to me through e-mail and find its Persian equivalent on *this page* later. I mean, in lesson 49.

Saudi Arabia عربستان سعودی /æɾæbesta:n _e_ sæu:di/.

Hungary مجارستان /mæja:resta:n/.

Russia روسیه /ru:si yeh/. Also, شوروی /shorævi/.

Denmark دانمارک /da:n ma:rk/.

Belgium بلژیک /bel zhik/.

Japan ژاپن /zha: pon/.

Turkey ترکیه /torki yeh/.

Mexico مکزیک /mek zik/.

India هند /hend/.

Sweden سوئد /su: ed/. Note: the strange letter you see here is pronounced as /e/ of /alef/. Since, using /alef/ will create another word here, we use this strange letter for this specific situation to avoid confusion.

China چین /chin/.

Poland لهستان /læhesta:n/.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

Try to call the people or things of a country!

Example:

He was German.

This car was German.

His language was German.

We already know how to say Germany in Persian. To convey all the above meanings, simply put ی with /i:/ sound at the end of the country name in Persian.

Result:

For German, we will have آلمانی /a:lma:ni/. Is that clear? Good!

Note 1: For countries ending with /a:/ sound in Persian, such as آمریکا /a:mrika:/, we should put this ی /i:/ at the end of the Persian word. You already know why.

Note 2: For Russian, Just delete /he/ from the end of the Persian word روسیه and you will have /ru: si:/, not /ru:si yeh i:/.

Note 3: For Turkish, you may apply the same rule as we did with Russian. And you will have /torki/.

Now, say these in Persian:

Saudi Arabian

Hungarian

Russian

Danish /Dane

Belgian

Japanese
Turkish
Mexican
Indian
Chinese

Week 50

Hello everyone, how are you?

Today, we are going to learn the negative form of sentences in past perfect tense. Hopefully, we will finish the past perfect tense in two weeks. Then, we will start the simple present tense.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Denmark
Japan
Hungary
China

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

0 - 41 - 600 - 6000 - 60000 - 6003

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To take <= /bær da:shtæn/ <== = ب + ر + د + ا + ش + ت + ن

To return <= /bær gæshtæn/ <== = ب + ر + گ + ش + ت + ن

Girl <= /dokhtær/ <== = د + خ + ت + ر

Boy <= /pesær/ <== = پ + س + ر

Dishes <= /zærf ha:/ <== = ظ + ر + ف + ه + ا

OK,

Now, let's see the negative form of the past perfect tense.

Actually, there is nothing new here. You already know the negative form of sentences in simple past tense as well as in other tenses. You may apply the same rule here.

Put ن /nu:n/ with /næ/ sound in the beginning of verbs to make them negative.

Example:

I had seen = من دیده بودم /mæn didəh bu:dæm/.

I hadn't seen = من ندیده بودم /mæn nədidəh bu:dæm/.

They had said = آنها گفته بودند /a:nha: gofteh bu:dænd/.

They hadn't said = آنها نگفته بودند /a:nha: nægofteh bu:dænd/.

My friend had called me = دوستم به من تلفن کرده بود /du:stæm beh mæn telefon kærdeh bu:d/.

My friend hadn't called me = دوستم به من تلفن نکرده بود /du:stæm beh mæn telefon nækærdeh bu:d/.

And so on.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

Please translate from English to Persian:

- 1- I had not found her very late.
- 2- The guests had not come very early.
- 3- Lots of people had not gathered behind the gate.
- 4- Some of my friends had not come to the party.
- 5- I had not thanked him / her.
- 6- My friend had not spent a lot of money.
- 7- They had not lost their wallet.
- 8- I had not read several books.
- 9- She had not promised me.

- ۱- من او را خیلی دیر پیدا نکرده بودم.
- ۲- مهمان ها خیلی زود نیامده بودند.
- ۳- مردم زیادی پشت دروازه جمع نشده بودند.
- ۴- تعدادی از دوستانم به جشن نیامده بودند.
- ۵- من از او تشکر نکرده بودم.
- ۶- دوستم پول زیادی خرج نکرده بود.
- ۷- آنها کیف پولشان را گم نکرده بودند.
- ۸- من چندین کتاب نخوانده بودم.
- ۹- او به من قول نداده بود.

Week 51

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).
To face something
To stop
To marry
Some (if followed by a countable noun)

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

14 - 19 - 17 - 13 - 15 - 24 - 23 - 27

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ < == دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ < == کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Late <= /di:r/ < == = د + ی + ر

Pen <= /ghælæm/ < == = ق + ل + م

Very <= /kheili/ < == = خ + ی + ل + ی

People <= /mærdom/ < == = م + ر + د + م

Behind <= /posht/ < == = پ + ش + ت

Lots of <= /ziya:di/ < == = ز + ی + ا + د + ی

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

Please translate from English to Persian:

- 1- You had not forgotten me.
- 2- I had not decided last month.
- 3- They had not stopped my car.
- 4- The embassy had not issued my visa.
- 5- My friend had not lost her passport.
- 6- We had not crossed the border.
- 7- She had not found a new place.
- 8- The bus had not arrived very late.
- 9- I had not faced (encountered) a problem.
- 10- They had not solved my problem.

- ۱- مرا (من را) فراموش نکرده بودی.
- ۲- من ماه پیش تصمیم نگرفته بودم.
- ۳- آنها ماشینم را متوقف نکرده بودند.
- ۴- سفارت ویزایم را صادر نکرده بود.
- ۵- دوستم پاسپورتش را گم نکرده بود.
- ۶- ما از مرز نگذشته بودیم.
- ۷- او جای جدیدی (تازه ای) پیدا نکرده بود.
- ۸- اتوبوس خیلی دیر نرسیده بود.
- ۹- من با مشکلی روبرو نشده بودم.
- ۱۰- آنها مشکلم را حل نکرده بودند.

Please translate from Persian to English:

- ۱- آیا مادرت فردا اتاق را تمیز خواهد کرد؟
- ۲- آیا دانش آموزان انشایی خواهند نوشت؟
- ۳- آیا او امروز بعدازظهر ماشین را تعمیر خواهد کرد؟

Week 52

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To turn on

To turn off

Award

To resign

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

16 - 898 - 3223 - 6116 - 7011 - 10111 - 69009

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Anything <= /chizi:/ <== = چ + ی + ز + ی

Award <= /ja:yezeh/ <== = ج + ا + ی + ز + ه

Driver <= /ra:nændeħ/ <== = ر + ا + ن + ن + د + ه

Taxi <= /ta:ksi/ <== = ت + ا + ک + س + ی

To break <= /shekæstæn/ <== = ش + ک + س + ت + ن

To say <= /goftæn/ <== = گ + ف + ت + ن

All right,

Today, we are going to learn the last part of past perfect tense, which is the interrogative form of this tense. Ready?

As I reminded you during the first lessons, we won't have much problems if we have learned the previous lessons patiently. I remember I told you once that a building would remain strong if it has got strong foundation. I also remember that I told you we might have no time to go back to the early lessons on and on since I assume we have already spent a lot of time on the first lessons. We did that to become as fluent as possible with the very basics. Although teachers play important roles in teaching, ultimately, it's the students who should work enough to make teacher teach more. Good listeners encourage the speaker to do something beyond what he is supposed to.

I have received a couple of suggestions with almost a same request. Some of you have asked me to make

another page in which the 32 Persian alphabets are gathered, giving their pronunciation. They have explained that sometimes they forget the letters! To solve this problem, they prefer to have access to a page with all letters together, as their resource page.

Now, I am asking you. Is it a good solution?

A driver is supposed to know how to turn on the lights or how to use the brakes. We are now driving, which means we already know the basics of driving.

How can we translate the sentences(and later on, the texts) when we don't remember the letters?

So, please take my advice and try to become fluent with the basics first before dealing with the next steps. This course is not a one-way one. You are supposed to take parts of the responsibility by doing what you are asked. Please be kind enough to not put all the work on my shoulders! I have already worked hard in the very beginning to make my job easier in the future! (Like what you see below!)

Anyway,

Now, let's see the interrogative form of the sentences in past perfect tense.

Do you remember what we did in simple past tense as well as in other tenses? Great! There is nothing more here!

Put the word **آیا** /a:ya:/ in the beginning of your sentences. You will have the interrogative form. It's that easy! (My job, I mean!!)

Let's see some examples:

I had seen him. **من او را دیده بودم.** /mæn u: ra: dideh bu:dæm/.

Had I seen him? **آیا من او را دیده بودم؟** /a:ya: mæn u: ra: dideh bu:dæm/?

She had called me. **او به من تلفن کرده بود.** /u: beh mæn telefon kærdeh bu:d/.

Had she called me? **آیا او به من تلفن کرده بود؟** /a:ya: u: beh mæn telefon kærdeh bu:d/?

And so on.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

Please translate the following sentences from English to Persian:

- 1- Had he broken?
- 2- Had she washed?
- 3- Had your parents asked?
- 4- Had the teacher said?
- 5- Had they cleaned?
- 6- Had you repaired?
- 7- Had her boyfriend gone?
- 8- Had his girlfriend come?
- 9- Had you started?
- 10- Had they finished?
- 11- Had this man turned on?
- 12- Had that child turned off?

- ۱- آیا او شکسته بود؟
- ۲- آیا او شسته بود؟
- ۳- آیا والدینت پرسیده بودند؟
- ۴- آیا معلم گفته بود؟
- ۵- آیا آنها تمیز کرده بودند؟
- ۶- آیا تعمیر کرده بودید؟
- ۷- آیا دوست پسرش رفته بود؟
- ۸- آیا دوست دخترش آمده بود؟
- ۹- آیا شروع کرده بودید؟
- ۱۰- آیا تمام کرده بودند؟
- ۱۱- آیا این مرد روشن کرده بود؟
- ۱۲- آیا آن بچه خاموش کرده بود؟

Please translate the following sentences from Persian to English:

- ۱- مدتهاست که دوستم را ندیده ام.
- ۲- چهار هفته است که همکلاسی ام به مدرسه نرفته است.
- ۳- چندین روز است که این مرد غذا نخورده است.
- ۴- سه هفته است که لباسم را نشسته ام.

Week 53

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To catch

My younger brother

Kite

Jack's friend

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

22 - 34 - 90 - 108 - 5000 - 5005 - 61111

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Kite <= /Ba:d ba:dæk/ <==	= ک + د + + ب + د + + ب
Plate <= /Bosh gha:b/ <==	= ب + + ق + ش + ب
Cat <= /Gorbeh/ <==	= ه + ب + ر + گ
Mouse <= /Mu:sh/ <==	= ش + و + م
White <= /Sefid/ <==	= د + ی + ف + س
Ball <= /Tu:p/ <==	= پ + و + ت

As you know, we are going to start simple present tense today. I guess we will have to spend some time on this tense. Please read today's lesson very carefully and patiently. Before we start, let me remind you again that this tense is **irregular**. So, don't expect me to tell you how the verbs change here. I will have one answer to such questions: I don't know!!

Let's see an example in English:

Look at this verb: To Take

How do you say this verb in different tenses?

I take (present simple tense)

I took (simple past tense)

I have taken (present perfect tense)

As you see, this verb has three different forms in three different tenses. You have done me a great favor if you kindly tell me why!

This verb is **irregular**. I have no more explanation to add to this.

The same is true in Persian. **All verbs in simple present tense are irregular**. I am emphasizing on this to save time both for you and me in future! In Persian, we have something like a proverb that says: "The war we have in the beginning is better than the peace we might have in the end!" To be frank, I am not sure if this is right! Whatever it is, it saves me now! In short, please don't spend time to write and ask me to explain how the verbs change like this in this tense. This is the war in the beginning!

What I can tell you now is that I will do my best to make it as understandable as possible. Do not be afraid! We will make it easier together. Ready?

Each Persian verb has an **imperative base or root**. To find this imperative base is the most important job we have got to do here.

In the beginning, you as **beginners** are **not able** to find this root. I believe it is better for you to learn the root at this stage just as I give them to you. That is to say, a parrot-like repetition based on comparison. How?

1- I give you a verb.

2- I give you the imperative base or root of the verb.

3- You should learn this imperative root.

4- You should compare this root with the verb.

5- After some time (it depends on your ability) you will be able to guess the imperative root of verbs.

Result: You have overcome this tense successfully!

Let me explain in brief the imperative form of verbs to those who may not be familiar with this.

Look at the following phrases:

Sit down!

Stand up!

Close the door!

Please open the window!

Please do not speak!

Do not speak!

And thousands of similar examples. Whenever, you put **verbs** in the **beginning** of your sentences, you are either requesting or ordering somebody to do or not to do something. In short, this is an **imperative** sentence. I hope I have explained it correctly. If not, please correct my definition before it is too late!

Now, let's go back to our Persian lesson.

Note: If you find the following explanation difficult to follow, just follow the examples given below (although this is not recommended). In this way, you will learn how to say each verb with different

subjective pronouns without having to explore the rule in the very beginning. Then, you may find the following explanations easier.

In this tense, I will try to work with the familiar verbs to avoid further confusion.

Look at this verb:

To go = رفتن /ræftæn/.

Go! (Imperative) = رو /ro/! Or برو /boro/!

Currently, we have **nothing** to do with the **second option** برو (boro). So, just concentrate on the first option, which is رو /ro/.

As a general rule, put می /mi/ before رو /ro/, and you will have می رو /miro/. Is it clear? Good!

Now, suppose that we want to say the followings:

I go

You go

He/she/it goes

We go

You go

They go

Wow! Don't tell anybody that the teacher himself is afraid now!

Here, we need the help of some suffixes. We are already familiar with almost all of them. Let's take a look at these suffixes:

م /æm/

ی /i:/

د /æd/

یم /im/

ید /id/

ند /ænd/

Try to repeat these suffixes for a couple of time.

Now, we want to say: I go

Try this way:

/miro æm/ می رو م <== م /æm/ + می رو /miro/

As you see, it is a bit difficult to pronounce. What is the solution? The best way is to modify the

pronunciation a bit. So, instead of saying می رو م /miro æm/, we'd better say: می رو م /mirævæm/ (Spelling is not changed).

In short,

I go = می رو م /mirævæm/.

You go = می روی /mirævi/.

He/she/it goes = می رود /mirævæd/.

We go = می رویم /mirævim/.

You go = می روید /mirævid/.

They go = می روند /mirævænd/.

Was it difficult?

Now, let's see another example:

To eat = خوردن /khordæn/.

Eat! (imperative) = خور /khor/! Or بخور /bokhor/!

Just work on the **first option** only.

Put می /mi/ before خور /khor/, and you'll have می خور /mikhor/.
Add suffixes to this.

I eat = می خورم /mikhoræm/.

You eat = می خوری /mikhori/.

He/she/it eats = می خورد /mikhoræd/.

We eat = می خوریم /mikhorim/.

You eat = می خورید /mikhorid/.

They eat = می خورند /mikhorænd/.

Note: In this example, we don't need to modify the pronunciation since we don't have any other redundant sound like /o/ in رو /ro/.

Now, let's see another example:

To write = نوشتن /neveshtæn/.

Write! (imperative) = نویس /nevis/! Or بنویس /benevis/!

Just concentrate on the first option.

I write = می نویسم /minevisæm/.

You write = می نویسی /minevisi/.

He/she/it writes = می نویسد /minevisæd/.

We write = می نویسیم /minevisim/.

You write = می نویسید /minevisid/.

They write = می نویسند /minevisænd/.

Ok. That's it for today. I hope you have enjoyed this lesson. Don't be frustrated if you find this lesson a bit difficult on the very first day. This is all I want you to do.

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

Follow the examples and say the verbs with all subjective pronouns:

Note: You should say **both imperative roots** one after another. But, use the first option only. Like what you see (hear) below:

To sit = نشستن /neshestæn/.

Sit! (imperative) = نشین /neshin/. Or بنشین /beneshin/.

I sit = می نشینم /mineshinæm/.

You sit = می نشینی /mineshini/ ...

[Follow this example for all verbs.](#)

Now continue!

To make = ساختن /sa:khtæn/.

Make! (imperative) = ساز /sa:z/. Or بساز /besa:z/.

I make = می سازم /misa:zæm/.

You make = می سازی /misa:zi/.

Now continue!

To send = فرستادن /feresta:dæn/.

Send! (imperative) = فرست /ferest/. Or بفرست /beferest/.

I send = می فرستم /miferestæm/.

You send = می فرستی /miferesti/.

Now continue!

To kill = کشتن /koshtæn/.

Kill! (imperative) = کش /kosh/. Or بکش /bokosh/.

I kill = می کشم /mikoshæm/.

You kill = می کنشی /mikoshi/.

Now continue!

Week 54

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Street

Head

Tonight

To push

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

17 - 909 - 3366 - 55488 - 799887 - 4 -

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To steal <= /dozdidæn/ <== = د + ز + د + ی + د + ن

Last <= /gozæshteh/ <== = گ + ز + ش + ت + ه

Week <= /hæfteh/ <== = ه + ف + ت + ه

Young <= /jæva:n/ <== = ج + و + ا + ن

Lady <= /kha:nom/ <== = خ + ا + ن + م

Ago <= /pish/ <== = پ + ی + ش

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

Follow the examples and say the verbs with all subjective pronouns:

Note: You should say **both imperative roots** one after another. But, use the first option only.

To beat = **زدن** /zædæn/.

Beat! (imperative) = **زن** /zæn/. Or **بزن** /bezæn/.

I beat = **می زنم** /mizænæm/.

You beat = **می زنی** /mizæni/ ...

Now continue!

To become = **شدن** /shodæn/.

Become! (imperative) = **شو** /sho/. Or **بشو** /besho/.

I become = **می شوم** /mishævæm/.

You become = **می شوی** /mishævi/.

Now continue!

To break = **شکستن** /shekæstæn/.

Break! (imperative) = **شکن** /shekæn/. Or **بشکن** /beshekæn/.

I break = **می شکنم** /mishekænæm/.

You break = **می شکنی** /mishekæni/.

Now continue!

To bring = **آوردن** /a:vordæn/.

Bring! (imperative) = **آر** /a:r/. Or **بیار** /bi ya:r/.

I bring = **می آورم** /mi a:væræm/.

You bring = **می آوری** /mi a:væri/.

Now continue!

To buy = **خریدن** /khæridæn/.

Buy! (imperative) = **خر** /khær/. Or **بخر** /bekhær/.

Secret Note!! Do not call anybody **خر** /khær/!! It is a taboo word. It means donkey in Persian. In saying, it refers to a person who is slow to understand.

I buy = **می خرم** /mi khæræm/.

You buy = **می خری** /mi khæri/.

Now continue!

Week 55

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a

paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To paint

New

Wall

Motorcycle

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

13 - 22 - 300 - 110 - 555 - 404 - 0 -

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Wall <= /diva:r/ <== دیوار = د + ی + و + ا + ر

Old <= /koh neh/ <== کهنه = ک + ه + ن + ه

Mechanic <= /meka:nik/ <== مکانیک = م + ک + ا + ن + ی + ک

Police <= /polis/ <== پلیس = پ + ل + ی + س

New <= /ta:zeh/ <== تازه = ت + ز + ا + ه

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

Follow the examples and say the verbs with all subjective pronouns:

Note: You should say **both imperative roots** one after another. But, use the first option only.

To catch = گرفتن /gereftæn/.

Catch! (imperative) = گیر /gir/. Or بگیر /begir/.

I catch = می گیرم /migiræm/.

You catch = می گیری /migiri/ ...

Now continue!

To choose = انتخاب کردن /entekha:b kærdæn/.

Note: in the case of compound verbs, the first part of the verb (here: entekha:b) does not change. Just follow the example.

Choose! (imperative) = انتخاب کن /entekha:b kon/.

I choose = می کنم /entekha:b mikonæm/.

You choose = می کنی /entekha:b mikoni/.

Now continue!

To come = آمدن /a:mædæn/.

Come! (imperative) = آ /a:/. Or بیا /bi ya:/.

I come = می آیم /mi a:yæm/.

You come = می آیی /mi a:i:/.

Now continue!

To cut = بریدن /boridæn/.

Cut! (imperative) = بر /bor/. Or ببر /bebor/.

I cut = می برم /mi boræm/.

You cut = می بری /mi bori/.

Now continue!

To dig = کندن /kændæn/.

Dig! (imperative) = کن /kæn/. Or بکن /bekæn/.

I dig = می کنم /mi kænæm/.

You dig = می کنی /mi kæni/.

Now continue!

Week 56

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Cloth

Month

Several

For a long time

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

8 - 118 - 801 - 811 - 810 - 108 - 808

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Name <= /esm/ <== = ا + س + م

To take <= /gereftæn/ <== = گ + ر + ف + ت + ن

Old <= /pir/ <== = پ + ی + ر

Shirt <= /pira:hæn/ <== = پ + ی + ر + ا + ه + ن

To ask <= /porsidæn/ <== = پ + ر + س + ی + د + ن

Job <= /shogh/ <== = ش + غ + ل

All right,

So far, we have almost learned how to make a verb in Simple Present Tense. From now on, we will start making sentences in this tense. There is no big change in the structure of the sentences here. We have to follow the same rule in the same way we did in previous tenses. Easy, isn't it?

Let me ask you one more time to please patiently do what you are told. We are not going to stay in these tenses forever. These are the basics we should know first. As I have told you before, learning about a language is different from learning a language. All we are doing now is learning about Persian language. After this stage is finished successfully, we will start learning the language. You think I am joking? Of course not! You may read one hundred thousands books about swimming. Will you be able to swim after you have read this much books successfully? I don't think so! The only way to learn swimming is to jump in the water! If you don't know the rules of swimming, you will have to quit breathing under the water!! The same is true with learning a new language. We learn the rules (learning about the language) to apply them practically (learning the language). We will get rid of these rules in near future. Then, we will start our real work. Soon, we will find ourselves translating texts and books from English to Persian. We will do it with the help of each other. I have tried hard to help you become fluent in learning the Persian alphabet as well as the structure of the sentences in different tenses. I did this because I want to feel relax later when translation starts. So, please help me reach my goal!

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New Words:

To write = نوشتن /neveshtæn/.

Write! (Imperative) = نویس! /nevis/. Or بنویس! /benevis/.

I write = می نویسم /mi nevisæm/.

Every = هر /hær/.

Every week = هر هفته /hær hæfteh/.

To read = خواندن /kha:ndæn/.

Read! (Imperative) = خوان! /kha:n/. Or بخوان! /bekha:n/.

I read = می خوانم /mi kha:næm/.

Month = ماه /ma:h/.

Please translate the following sentences from English to Persian:

Note: As a hint, You know that you should put subjects in the beginning and verbs in the end of your Persian sentences.

- 1- I write one lesson every week.
- 2- You write one lesson every week.
- 3- She/ he writes one lesson every week.
- 4- We write one lesson every week.
- 5- You write one lesson every week.
- 6- They write one lesson every week.
- 7- My teacher writes one lesson every week.
- 8- Your sister writes one lesson every week.
- 9- Their father writes one lesson every week.
- 10- Mr. Jones writes one lesson every week.
- 11- I read one book every month.
- 12- You read one book every month.
- 13- She/ he reads one book every month.
- 14- We read one book every month.

- 15- You read one book every month.
 16- They read one book every month.
 17- Mr. Jones reads one book every month.

- ۱- من هر هفته یک درس می نویسم .
- ۲- تو هر هفته یک درس می نویسی .
- ۳- او هر هفته یک درس می نویسد .
- ۴- ما هر هفته یک درس می نویسیم .
- ۵- شما هر هفته یک درس می نویسید .
- ۶- آنها هر هفته یک درس می نویسند .
- ۷- معلم هر هفته یک درس می نویسد .
- ۸- خواهرت هر هفته یک درس می نویسد .
- ۹- پدرشان هر هفته یک درس می نویسد .
- ۱۰- آقای جونز هر هفته یک درس می نویسد .
- ۱۱- من هر ماه یک کتاب می خوانم .
- ۱۲- تو هر ماه یک کتاب می خوانی .
- ۱۳- او هر ماه یک کتاب می خواند .
- ۱۴- ما هر ماه یک کتاب می خوانیم .
- ۱۵- شما هر ماه یک کتاب می خوانید .
- ۱۶- آنها هر ماه یک کتاب می خوانند .
- ۱۷- آقای جونز هر ماه یک کتاب می خواند .

Week 57

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Summer

Next summer

Composition

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

728 - 112 - 9009 - 3111 - 4056 - 10262

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To give <= /da:dæn/ <== د + ا + د + ن =

To steal <= /dozdidæn/ <== د + ز + د + ی + د + ن =

Lady <= /kha:nom/ < == = خ + ن + ا + م
 Light (Lamp) <= /la:mp/ < == = ل + ا + م + پ
 Pencil <= /meda:d/ < == = م + د + ا + د

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New Words:

To go = رفتن /ræftæn/.

Monday = دوشنبه /du:shænbeh/.

School = مدرسه /mædreseh/.

To see = دیدن /didæn/.

Sunday = یکشنبه /yek shænbeh/.

Every = هر /hær/.

Please translate the following sentences from English to Persian:

Note: As a hint, You know that you should put subjects in the beginning and verbs in the end of your Persian sentences.

- 1- I go to school every Monday.
- 2- You go to school every Monday.
- 3- He/she goes to school every Monday.
- 4- We go to school every Monday.
- 5- You go to school every Monday.
- 6- They go to school every Monday.
- 7- My son goes to school every Monday.
- 8- Her children go to school every Monday.
- 9- My friends go to school every Monday.
- 10- I see your friend every Sunday.
- 11- You see your friend every Sunday.
- 12- He/she sees your friend every Sunday.
- 13- We see your friend every Sunday.
- 14- You see your friend every Sunday.
- 15- They see your friend every Sunday.
- 16- John sees your friend every Sunday.
- 17- My brother sees your friend every Sunday.

- ۱- من هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می روم .
- ۲- تو هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می روی .
- ۳- او هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می رود .
- ۴- ما هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می رویم .
- ۵- شما هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می روید .
- ۶- آنها هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می روند .
- ۷- پسرم هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می رود .
- ۸- بچه های من هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می روند .
- ۹- دوستانم هر دوشنبه به مدرسه می روند .
- ۱۰- من هر یکشنبه دوستت را می بینم .
- ۱۱- تو هر یکشنبه دوستت را می بینی .
- ۱۲- او هر یکشنبه دوستت را می بیند .
- ۱۳- ما هر یکشنبه دوستت را می بینیم .
- ۱۴- شما هر یکشنبه دوستتان را می بینید .
- ۱۵- آنها هر یکشنبه دوستت را می بینند .
- ۱۶- جان هر یکشنبه دوستت را می بیند .
- ۱۷- برادرم هر یکشنبه دوستت را می بیند .

Week 58

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

I closed

He

To break

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

202 - 311 - 88 - 19 - 66996 - 480 - 27

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Referee <= /da:vær/ <== = د + ا + و + ر

South <= /jonu:b/ <== = ج + ن + و + ب

Autumn <= /pa: i:z/ <== = پ + ا + ی + ی + ز

Bird <= /pærændeh/ <== = پ + ر + ن + د + ه

To count <= /shemordæn/ <==

= ش + م + ر + د + ن

Practice makes perfect!

Note: Before doing these homeworks, make sure you have learned the previous words fluently.

New Words:

To wash = شستن /shostæn/.

Friday = جمعه /jomeh/.

To take = گرفتن /gereftæn/.

Every morning = هر (روز) صبح /hær (ru:z) sobh/.

Please translate the following sentences from English to Persian:

Note: As a hint, You know that you should put subjects in the beginning and verbs in the end of your Persian sentences.

- 1- I wash my car every Friday.
- 2- You wash your car every Friday.
- 3- He/she washes his/her car every Friday.
- 4- We wash our car every Friday.
- 5- You wash your car every Friday.
- 6- They wash their car every Friday.
- 7- This man washes his car every Friday.
- 8- My son washes his car every Friday.
- 9- I take a taxi every morning.
- 10- You take a taxi every morning.
- 11- He/she takes a taxi every morning.
- 12- We take a taxi every morning.
- 13- You take a taxi every morning.
- 14- They take a taxi every morning.
- 15- My friend takes a taxi every morning.

- ۱- من هر جمعه ماشینم را می شویم .
- ۲- تو هر جمعه ماشینت را می شویی .
- ۳- او هر جمعه ماشینش را می شوید .
- ۴- ما هر جمعه ماشینمان را می شویم .
- ۵- شما هر جمعه ماشینتان را می شوید .
- ۶- آنها هر جمعه ماشینشان را می شویند .
- ۷- این مرد هر جمعه ماشینش را می شوید .
- ۸- پسرم هر جمعه ماشینش را می شوید .
- ۹- من هر (روز) صبح تاکسی می گیرم .
- ۱۰- تو هر (روز) صبح تاکسی می گیری .
- ۱۱- او هر (روز) صبح تاکسی می گیرد .
- ۱۲- ما هر (روز) صبح تاکسی می گیریم .
- ۱۳- شما هر (روز) صبح تاکسی می گیرید .
- ۱۴- آنها هر (روز) صبح تاکسی می گیرند .
- ۱۵- دوستم هر (روز) صبح تاکسی می گیرد .

Week 59

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To beat

Young lady

To push

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

125 - 901 - 3030 - 81111 - 2003 - 1381

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <=/du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <=/keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Night <=/shæb/ <== = ش + ب

Teacher <=/mo æl.lem/ <== = م + ع + ل + م

Street <=/khiya:ba:n/ <== = خ + ی + ا + ب + ا + ن

Young <=/jæva:n/ <== = ج + و + ا + ن

Morning <=/sobh/ <== = ص + ب + ح

You are invited to download and enjoy Persian music now!

Do you usually sing in shower?!! What a question!

Today, I am going to change the mood a bit. Frankly, I didn't expect this much work for this today. So, I don't think you will see this kind of "changing mood" very often! What we are going to do today is this: instead of doing your usual homework, I want to invite you to listen to a Persian MP3 song to improve your listening ability. I have chosen an easy song whose structure is not very strange to you. This Persian music will give you an opportunity to identify the words and see how words are used in daily conversation or in songs. You are not asked to do much work on this. Just sit back, listen to this music, and enjoy! You will find some minor differences in the way we use words during our routine class. Do not focus on these differences very much at this stage. Try to learn the song and sing it by yourself (if you are not sure your voice is ok, just whisper it in shower!!)

I have written the song in Persian. Under each Persian sentence, you will find its phonetic pronunciation. The English equivalent is next to each Persian sentence. You may also refer to "New words" below to learn the words if you wish. Please note that words are written and translated according to what is sung. As you probably know, songs are generally oral based, which is a bit different from the written form. I know I could do it better than this. However, I didn't really find time to spend more time on it. Please accept it as it is! (Repeated lines are not written).

Are you ready to enjoy a lovely Persian music now? Please right-click on the link below and choose "Save Target As" to download this song. Have fun!

New Words:

هوا /hæva:/ = air

گریه /geryeh/ = cry - weep

دارم /da:ræm/ = I have

هوای گریه دارم /hæva: ye geryeh da:ræm/ = an expression that means I have the feeling of crying - I want to cry. This expression is not very common in normal speech. It is mostly used in songs and poems.

تو /tu:/ = در /dær/ = in (in oral speech, we use تو /tu:/ for در /dær/.)

بی پناه /bi pæna:h/ = without support

دنبال تو می گردم /donba:l _e_ to migærdæm/ = I am looking for you

تکیه گاه /tekyeh ga:h/ = something or somebody to be dependant on / support

اون /u:n/ = آن /a:n/ = that (in oral form we use اون /u:n/ for آن /a:n/.)

دل /del/ = heart

اون دلی که /u:n deli keh/ = a (the) heart that

تنهایی /tænha: i:/ = loneliness

تنهایی مرا /tænha: i: mo/ = تنهایی مرا /tænha: i: ye mæra:/ = my loneliness

بشناسه /besh na:seh/ = (here) knows

دستا /dæsta:/ = دست ها /dæst ha:/ = hands

عاشق /a:shæg/ = in love = lover

لبریز /læbriz/ = پر /por/ = full / filled

التماس /eltema:s/ = supplication / entreaty

هزار و یک شب /heza:r _o_ yek shæb/ = one thousands and one night

صدا /seda:/ = voice

فقط /fæghæt/ = just / only

برای /bæra: ye/ = for

سکوت /soku:t/ = silence

شیشه ای /shisheh i:/ = of (like) glass

سکوت شیشه ای /soku:t _e_ shisheh i:/ = glass-like silence = a fragile silence (a rare and uncommon expression used in some songs and poems)

سکوت شیشه ای مو /soku:t _e_ shisheh i: mo/ = (see "تنهایی مو" tænhā: i: mo" above)

آسمون /a:semu:n/ = آسمان /a:sema:n/ = sky

شعر /sher/ = poem

پر می زنه /pær mizæneh/ = moves wings = flies

سیاه /siya:h/ = black (here, darkened seems better)

رنگ /ræng/ = color

بغض /boghz/ = a sad feeling in your throat (close to cry) that prevents you from speaking (I'll appreciate if you send me the exact equivalent!!)

I feel crying = هوای گریه دارم

/Hæva: ye geryeh daræm /

In this supportless night = تو این شب بی پناه

/Tu: in shæb _e_ bi pænah /

Looking for you = دنبال تو می گردم

/Donba:l _to_ migærdæm /

Looking for a support = دنبال یک تکیه گاه

/Donba:l _e_ yek tekyeh gah /

Looking for a heart = دنبال اون دلی که

/Donba:l _e_ un deli keh /

That knows my loneliness = تنهایی مو بشناسه

/tænhā: imo beshna:seh /

My hands in love = دستای عاشق من

/Dæsta: ye a:shagh _e_ mæn /

Are filled with supplication = لبریز التماسه

/læbriz _e_ eltema:seh /

My one thousands and one night = هزار و یک شب من

/Hezar _o_ yek shæbh _e_ mæn /

Were filled with your voice = پر از صدای تو بود =
 /por æz seda: ye to bu:d/
 My every-night- crying = گریه هر شب من
 /geryeh ye hær shæb _e_ mæn/
 Was just for you = فقط برای تو بود
 /fæghæt bæra: ye to bu:d/
 My fragile silence = سکوت شیشه ای مو
 /Sokut _e_ shisheh i mo/
 Your voice breaks = صدای تو میشکند
 /Seda: ye to mish kæneh/
 In my love sky = تو آسمون عشقم
 /To a:semuneh esh ghæm/
 The poem of "You" flies = شعر تو پر می زنه
 /Sher _e_ to pær mizæneh/
 With you my darkened heart = با تو دل سیاهم
 /Ba: to del _e_ siya:hæm/
 Turns into the color of sky = به رنگ آسمونه
 /Beh ræng _e_ a:semuneh/
 My sad silence breaks = تو بغض من میشکنن
 /To boghz _e_ mæn mish kænæn/
 Into love songs = /Shera: ye a:sheghuneh/ شعرای عاشقونه

Week 60

Salam! Khosh amadid!

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

This boy

This week

To do homework

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

1 - 414 - 25 - 309 - 1060 - 45103

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To be <= /bu:dæn/ <== = ب + و + د + ن

Boy <= /pesær/ <== = پ + س + ر

Last night <= /di shæb/ <== = د + ی + ش + ب

This <= /in/ <== = ا + ی + ن

Letter <= /na:meh/ <== = ن + ا + م + ه

Practice makes perfect!

New Words

Ten years old = ده سانه /dæh sa:leh/.

He is ten years old = او ده ساله است. /u: dæh sa:leh æst/. Also او ده سال دارد. /u: dæh sa:l da:ræd/.

To work = کار کردن /ka:r kærðæn/.

He works = او کار می کند. /u: ka:r mikonæd/.

Market = بازار /ba:za:r/.

Uncle (father's brother) = عمو /æmu:/.

Doctor = دکتر /doctor/.

Aunt (father's sister) = عمه /æm.meh/.

Both of them = هر دوی آنها /hær do ye a:nha:/.

Housewives = housewife = خانه دار /kha:neh da:r/.

Grandmother = مادر بزرگ /ma:dær bozorg/.

Grandfather = پدر بزرگ /pedær bozorg/.

Old = پیر /pir/.

To go = رفتن /ræftæn/.

They go = می روند /mirævænd/.

To go to work = به سر کار رفتن /beh sær _e_ ka:r ræftæn/.

I go to work = من به سر کار می روم /mæn beh sær _e_ ka:r mirævæm/.

To have = داشتن /da:sh tæh/.

I have = من دارم /mæn da:ræm/.

Good = خوب /khu:b/.

Family = خانواده /kha:n _e_ va:deh/. Listen!

A good family = خانواده خوبی /kha:n _e_ va:deh ye khu:bi/.

Please translate the following text into Persian.

Mr. Jones, Helen's father, is fifty-five years old. He works in market. Helen's mother is fifty years old.

Helen's mother is a teacher. Helen is twenty years old. Helen's brother, Peter, is sixteen years old.

Helen's uncle is a doctor. Helen has two aunts. Both of them are housewives. Helen's grandmother and grandfather are old. They go to work every day. They love Helen and Peter. Helen and Peter go to their house every Sunday. Helen and Peter have a good family.

آقای جونز ، پدر هُنن ، پنجاه و پنج ساله است. او در بازار کار می کند.
 مادر هُنن پنجاه سال دارد. مادر هُنن معلم است. هُنن بیست سال دارد.
 برادر هُنن ، پیتر ، شانزده ساله است.
 عموی هُنن دکتر است. هُنن دو عمه دارد. هر دوی آنها خانه دار هستند.
 پدر بزرگ و مادر بزرگ هُنن پیر هستند. آنها هر روز به سر کار می روند.
 آنها هُنن و پیتر را دوست دارند. هُنن و پیتر هر یکشنبه به خانه پدر
 بزرگشان می روند. هُنن و پیتر خانواده خوبی دارند.

Week 61

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Saudi Arabian

Hungarian

Russian

Danish /Dane

Belgian

Japanese

Turkish

Mexican

Indian

Chinese

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

0 - 16 - 2003 - 25 - 205 - 250 - 2500 - 2055

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

I closed <= /bæstæm/ <== = ب + س + ت + م

You saw <= /didi/ <== = د + ی + د + ی

To break <= /shekæstæn/ <== = ش + ک + س + ت + ن

They broke <= /shekæstænd/ <== = ش + ک + س + ت + ن + د

Practice makes perfect!

New Words

Usually = معمولاً /mæmu:læn/.

To prefer = ترجیح دادن /tærjih da:dæn/.

I prefer = من ترجیح می دهم /mæn tærjih midæhæm/. Note: mostly, this combination accepts (ra:)

را in Persian, as you see in the following examples.

To come = آمدن /a:mædæn/. To come to some place = به ... آمدن /beh some place a:mædæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I come to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 2- You come to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 3- She/he comes to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 4- We come to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 5- You come to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 6- They come to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 7- My friend comes to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 8- Your daughter comes to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 9- His sister comes to Mr. Smith's house every month.
- 10- I usually prefer green color.
- 11- You usually prefer green color.
- 12- She/he usually prefers green color.
- 13- We usually prefer green color.
- 14- You usually prefer green color.
- 15- They usually prefer green color.
- 16- Marco usually prefers green color.
- 17- Nathalie usually prefers green color.

- ۱- من هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آیم.
- ۲- تو هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آیی.
- ۳- او هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آید.
- ۴- ما هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آییم.
- ۵- شما هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آیید.
- ۶- آنها هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آیند.
- ۷- دوستم هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آید.
- ۸- دخترت هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آید.
- ۹- خواهرش هر ماه به خانه آقای اسمیت می آید.
- ۱۰- من معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهم.
- ۱۱- تو معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهی.
- ۱۲- او معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهد.
- ۱۳- ما معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهیم.
- ۱۴- شما معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهید.
- ۱۵- آنها معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهند.
- ۱۶- مارکو معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهد.
- ۱۷- ناتالی معمولاً رنگ سبز را ترجیح می دهد.

Week 62

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Electricity

To rent

Room

Country

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

13 - 323 - 1003 - 900 - 1555 - 1010

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To sell <= /foru:khtæn/ <== = ف + ر + و + خ + ت + ن

Sister <= /kha:hær/ <== = خ + و + ا + ه + ر

House <= /kha:neh/ <== = خ + ا + ن + ه

Car <= /ma:shin/ <== = م + ا + ش + ی + ن

Father <= /pedær/<== = پ + د + ر

All right,

Before we start today, let me wish all of you a very blessed Christmas and a wonderful New Year.

Today, we are going to see the negative form of sentences in simple present tense.

Actually, we don't have much to do now. I am sure, all of you remember the ن /nu:n/ that we have learned long ago. We would put ن /nu:n/ in the beginning of the verbs to make them negative. Try the same rule here. The only difference is this: we should put ن /nu:n/ with /ne/ sound in the beginning of the verbs, instead of /næ/ sound. I don't think this is very confusing. It demands a little bit practice only. Let's see a couple of examples:

I go = من می روم /mæn mirævæm/.

I don't go = من نمی روم /mæn nemirævæm/.

He buys = او می خرد /u: mikhæræd/.

He doesn't buy = او نمی خرد /u: nemikhæræd/.

That's it!

This page is a good place for you to improve your Farsi translation ability.

New Words

To take = گرفتن /gereftæn/.

I take = من می گیرم /mæn migiræm/.

I don't take = من نمی گیرم /mæn nemigiræm/.

Taxi = تاکسی /ta:ksi/.

I take a taxi = من تاکسی می گیرم /mæn ta:ksi migiræm/.

Manager = مدیر /modir/.

Park = پارک /pa:rk/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I don't take a taxi every day.
- 2- You don't take a taxi every day.
- 3- He/she doesn't take a taxi every day.
- 4- We don't take a taxi every day.
- 5- You don't take a taxi every day.
- 6- They don't take a taxi every day.
- 7- My friend doesn't take a taxi every day.
- 8- His manager doesn't take a taxi every day.
- 9- Students don't take a taxi every day.
- 10- I don't go to park every Sunday.
- 11- You don't go to park every Sunday.
- 12- He/she doesn't go to park every Sunday.
- 13- We don't go to park every Sunday.
- 14- You don't go to park every Sunday.
- 15- They don't go to park every Sunday.

- ۱- من هر روز تاکسی نمی گیرم.
- ۲- تو هر روز تاکسی نمی گیری.
- ۳- او هر روز تاکسی نمی گیرد.
- ۴- ما هر روز تاکسی نمی گیریم.
- ۵- شما هر روز تاکسی نمی گیرید.
- ۶- آنها هر روز تاکسی نمی گیرند.
- ۷- دوستم هر روز تاکسی نمی گیرد.
- ۸- مدیرش هر روز تاکسی نمی گیرد.
- ۹- دانش آموزان هر روز تاکسی نمی گیرند.
- ۱۰- من هر یکشنبه به پارک نمی روم.
- ۱۱- تو هر یکشنبه به پارک نمی روی.
- ۱۲- او هر یکشنبه به پارک نمی رود.
- ۱۳- ما هر یکشنبه به پارک نمی رویم.
- ۱۴- شما هر یکشنبه به پارک نمی روید.
- ۱۵- آنها هر یکشنبه به پارک نمی روند.

Week 63

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

I beat

I become

He beats

They become

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

15 - 17 - 117 - 711 - 515 - 115 - 111

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Ticket <= /belit/ <== = ب + ل + ی + ط

To kiss <= /bu:sidæn/ <== = ب + و + س + ی + د + ن

To have <= /da:shtæn/ <== = د + ا + ش + ت + ن

To write <= /neveshtæn/ <== = ن + و + ش + ت + ن

To break <= /tæreka:ndæn/ <== = ت + ر + ک + ا + ن + د + ن

This page is a good place for you to improve your Farsi translation ability.

New Words

To use = استفاده کردن /estefa:deh kærdæn/.

I use = من استفاده می کنم /mæn estefa:deh mikonæm/.

I don't use = من استفاده نمی کنم /mæn estefa:deh nemikonæm/.

To use something = از ... استفاده کردن /æz something estefa:deh kærdæn/.

Can = توانستن /tæva:nestæn/.

I can = من می توانم /mæn mitæva:næm/.

I cannot = من نمی توانم /mæn nemitæva:næm/.

To accept = قبول کردن /ghæbu:l kærdæn/.

I accept = من قبول می کنم /mæn ghæbu:l mikonæm/.

I don't accept = من قبول نمی کنم /mæn ghæbu:l nemikonæm/.

I cannot accept = من نمی توانم قبول کنم /mæn nemitæva:næm ghæbu:l konæm/.

To accept something = ... را قبول کردن /something ra: ghæbu:l kærdæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I don't use the telephone.
- 2- You don't use the telephone.
- 3- He/she doesn't use the telephone.
- 4- We don't use the telephone.
- 5- You don't use the telephone.
- 6- They don't use the telephone.
- 7- My sister doesn't use the telephone.
- 8- My son doesn't use the telephone.
- 9- Your friend doesn't use the telephone.
- 10- I cannot accept it.
- 11- You cannot accept it.
- 12- He/she cannot accept it.
- 13- We cannot accept it.
- 14- You cannot accept it.
- 15- They cannot accept it.
- 16- His brother cannot accept it.

- ۱- من از تلفن استفاده نمی کنم.
- ۲- تو از تلفن استفاده نمی کنی.
- ۳- او از تلفن استفاده نمی کند.
- ۴- ما از تلفن استفاده نمی کنیم.
- ۵- شما از تلفن استفاده نمی کنید.
- ۶- آنها از تلفن استفاده نمی کنند.
- ۷- خواهرم از تلفن استفاده نمی کند.
- ۸- پسرم از تلفن استفاده نمی کند.
- ۹- دوستت از تلفن استفاده نمی کند.
- ۱۰- من نمی توانم آن را قبول کنم.
- ۱۱- تو نمی توانی آن را قبول کنی.
- ۱۲- او نمی تواند آن را قبول کند.
- ۱۳- ما نمی توانیم آن را قبول کنیم.
- ۱۴- شما نمی توانید آن را قبول کنید.
- ۱۵- آنها نمی توانند آن را قبول کنند.
- ۱۶- برادرش نمی تواند آن را قبول کند.

Week 64

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Country

To eat

To break

To catch

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

8 - 88 - 808 - 818 - 118 - 108 - 811

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Plate <= /bosh gha:b/ <== ب + ش + ق + ا + ب = بشقاب

Mouse <= /mu:sh/ <== م + و + ش = موش

Room <= /ota:gh/ <== ا + ت + ا + ق = اتاق

White <= /sefid/ <== س + ف + ی + د = سفید

Ball <= /tu:p/ <== ت + و + پ = توپ

This page is a good place for you to improve your Farsi translation ability.

So far, we have learned how to listen to single words or sentences. Today, I am going to give you more work! To improve your listening ability, this is necessary. Today, I am going to read you a text. This text is very simple and we have already worked on it. Therefore, you don't need to worry about it. Please do not waste your time looking for this text in our previous lessons! No cheating! Do you remember that? All I want you to do is this: listen to the audio file once or twice (even more if you think is necessary). Then, suppose that the desktop of your computer is one of your friends. Try to narrate this simple text to your friend in Persian. You are allowed to use different Persian words to tell this story to your friend. Do not whisper the words; try to pronounce them a bit louder!

When you are done, suppose that your friend has problems understanding some of the Persian words. At this stage, on behalf of your friend ask yourself some words and try to translate those words into English for your friend. For example, your friend may raise this question (your friend speaks in English): what does (this Persian word) mean? Or, who did this (referring to some part of the story)? Or, something like that. I cannot raise good questions clearly now because I do not want to write the story to you! The above questions are simple hints to let you know what to do.

If possible, please right-click on the link below to download this audio file. Have fun!

Week 65

Hello everyone, how are you?

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To celebrate

To respect

To pray

To marry

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

17 - 177 - 711 - 117 - 171 - 771 - 777 - 170

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ < == د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ < == ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To become <= /shodæn/ < == ش + د + ن =

Sad <= /ghæmgin/ < == غ + م + گ + ی + ن =

Happy <= /khosh ha:l/ < == خ + و + ش + ح + ا + ل =

New <= /ta:zeh/ < == ت + ز + ه =

Old <= /koh neh/ < == ک + ه + ن + ه =

This page is a good place for you to improve your Farsi translation ability.

Do you want to enjoy another Persian mp3 this week? Lots of you seem looking for changing the mood again! During the past weeks, I have received several messages from your friends who have been asking for another Persian mp3 to enjoy! To respect you, I have made another Persian music ready for you today. You have already experienced one. So, you know how to enjoy it! Listen to the song, look at the phonetic writings to follow the song properly, and try to sing along when you feel comfortable. ADVICE: In the case of unbearable voice, do not forget the shower!! (Just a joke!) This song is from Houshmand -e- Aghili. Please right-click and choose 'Save Target As' to download the song.

New Words:

امشب /emshæb/ = tonight

دلم /delæm/ = my heart

دلم می خواد /delæm mikha:d/ = my heart wants

Note: in Persian, people in daily conversation usually replace "I want" with "my heart wants". That is to say, they use "my heart wants a cold drink" for "I want a cold drink". This is a kind of saying. So, it is oral based.

تا /ta:/ = a word that shows an area of time or place. Maybe "from - to" or "from - till" can be a good English equivalent for this word. For example, consider these two phrases: 1- from here to your house. 2- from that day till (until) the next morning.

می /mei/ = wine

بنوشم /benu:shæm/ = I drink (you will learn this kind of verbs later)

زیبا /ziba:/ = beautiful

زیباترین /ziba: tærin/ = most beautiful

جامه ها /ja:meh ha:/ = لباس ها /leba:s ha:/ = Cloths (جامه ها /ja:meh ha:/ is almost an out of date word - obsolete)

بپوشم /bepu:shæm/ = I put on (see /benu:shæm/ above/.

با /ba:/ = with

شوق /shogh/ = joy = happiness

بی حد /bi hæd/ = limitless = endless

باغچه /ba:gh cheh/ = a small garden usually around the house

باغچه هامان /ba:gh cheh ha: ma:n/ = our little gardens

صفا دادم /sæfa: da:dæm/ = (here) I pruned = I put (them) in order = I cleaned them

امشب که می شد /emshæb keh mishod/ = when tonight was coming (a very rare and unusual saying. Probably, the rhyme of the poem has pushed the poet!)

گل /gol/ = flower

توی /tu: ye/ = inside = in

گلدون /goldu:n/ = vase (a conversational way of saying)

که /keh/ = this word has many meanings and functions in different sentences. Sometimes, it means "that". Example, he said that.

Sometimes, this word means "who". Example, the one who...

Sometimes, it sits in the place of all relative clauses. I mean, who, when, where, and so on.

Here in this poem, the poet has chosen a very rare but interesting meaning of this word. This word, here, means "a lot of". This structure is mostly used in conversational side of Persian language. For example, consider the following sentence: it was money that he was making! Here, we mean "he was making a lot of money". This structure is sometimes used in Persian to put the main emphasis on the most important

word of the sentence (here the word is: flower). The poet means he has put a lot of flowers in the vase. So, he says "it was flowers that I was putting in the vase."

جا دادم /ja: da:dæm/ = I put

بعد از /bæd æz/ = after

جدایی ها /joda: i: ha:/ = separations

بی وفایی ها /bi væfa: i: ha:/ = disloyalties

تو می آیی /to miya: i:/ = you come (here it means: you will come. The use of present for future, which is quite normal in Persian daily talks.)

از /æz/ = from

خونه /khu:neh/ = a conversational form of /kha:neh/ = house (see also "vase")

ناامیدی /na: omidi/ = disappointment = frustration

سفر کرده /sæfær kærdeh/ = has traveled away

گویا /gu: ya:/ = maybe

دعا /do a:/ = prayer

خسته /khæsteh/ = tired

اثر کرده /æsær kærdeh/ = has worked

لحظه ها /læhzeh ha:/ = moments

می شمارم /mishoma:ræm/ = I count (here, I count down)

تا رسد فردا /ta: resæd færda:/ = till tomorrow arrives

خوب /khu:b/ = good

در آغوشت کشیدن ها /dær a:ghu:shæt keshidæn ha:/ = to embrace you repeatedly (this is rather a literary style than a daily one in Persian. However, to improve your friendship you are allowed to use it!! It may make others laugh a bit, but is certainly positive!)

امشب دلم می خواد تا فردا می بنوشم من

/emshæb delæm mikha:d ta: færda: mei benu:shæm mæn/

Tonight, I want to drink wine till tomorrow

زیباترین جامه هایم را بپوشم من

/ziba: tærin - e - ja:meh ha: yæm ra: bepυ:shæm mæn/

(and) To put on my most beautiful cloths

با شوق بی حد باغچه هامان را صفا دادم

/ba: shogh - e - bi hæd ba:gh cheh ha:ma:n ra: sæfa: da:dæm/

With limitless joy, I have pruned our little gardens

امشب که می شد گل توی گلدون که جا دادم

/emshæb keh mishod gol tu: ye goldu:n keh ja: da:dæm/

When 'tonight' was coming, it was flowers that I put in vase

بعد از جدایی ها
/bæd æz joda: i: ha:/
After separations

آن بی وفایی ها
/a:n bi væfa: i: ha:/
(and) Those disloyalties

فردا تو می آیی
/færda: to miya: i:/
Tomorrow, you will come

فردا تو می آیی
/færda: to miya: i:/
Tomorrow, you will come

از خونه ما ناامیدی ها سفر کرده
/æz khu:neh ye ma: na: omidi sæfær kærdeh/
From our home, disappointment has traveled away

گویا دعاهای من خسته اثر کرده
/gu: ya: doa: ha: ye mæn - e - khæsteh æsær kærdeh/
Maybe, the prayers of a tired person has worked

من لحظه ها را می شمارم تا رسد فردا
/mæn læzeh ha: ra: mishoma:ræm ta: resæd færda:/
I count down the moments till 'tomorrow' arrives

آن لحظه خوب در آغوشت کشیدن ها
/a:n læhzeh ye khu:b -e- dær a:ghu:shæt keshidæn ha:/
(and) Those moments of embracing you

بعد از جدایی ها
/bæd æz joda: i: ha:/
After separations

آن بی وفایی ها
/a:n bi væfa: i: ha:/
(and) Those disloyalties

فردا تو می آیی
/færda: to miya: i:/
Tomorrow, you will come

فردا تو می آیی
/færda: to miya: i:/
Tomorrow, you will come

Week 66

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To paint

Old computer

Motorcycle

Mechanic

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

10 - 110 - 101 - 1110 - 1010 - 1012

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Husband <= /shohær/ <== ش + و + ه + ر = شوهر

Hour <= /sa: æt/ <== س + ا + ع + ت = ساعت

Light <= /la:mp/ <== ل + ا + م + پ = لامپ

Woman <= /zæn/ <== ز + ن = زن

Small <= /ku:chæk/ <== ک + و + چ + ک = کوچک

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the file. You may find the English translation of this Persian poem below.

New Words:

سالها = /sa:l ha:/ = years / for years

دل = /del/ = heart

طلب کردن = /tælbæb kærdæn/ = to demand / to beg

جام = /ja:m/ = cup (here, like world cup, not a tea cup)

جام جم = /ja:m -e - jæm/ = this is the name of a kind of cup explained above. In our Persian literature, this cup is believed to be a kind of cup in which one can see the past or the future events. It is believed that one of the kings in thousands of years ago had such a thing. Whatever it is, this expression is used symbolically in our Persian literature for "Recognition" or "Enlightenment". Hafez is the master of using such kind of expressions in our classical poetry.

آنچه = /a:n cheh/ = what (example, what you say is ...)

خود = /khod/ = self / himself

داشت = /da:sht/ = (he) had

بیگانه = /biga:neh/ = stranger

ز بیگانه = /ze biga:neh/ = from a stranger

تمنا کردن = /tæmæna: kærdæn/ = to beg / to request

گوهر = /gohær/ = pearl

صدف = /sædæf/ = shell (the place of pearl under the sea)

کون و مکان = /konu: mæka:n/ = time and place

بیرون است = /biru:n æst/ = is out

گم شدگان = /gom shodega:n/ = the lost / those who are lost

نب = /læb/ = (here) beach / the outer part of the sea

نب دریا = /læb -e - dærya:/ = seashore

بی دل = /bidel/ = heartless

در همه احوال = /dær hæmeh æhva:l/ = in all moments

خدا = /Khoda:/ = God

با = /ba:/ = with

نمی دیدش او را = /nemididæsh/ = he wouldn't see him

و = /væ/ = and

/væ/ is pronounced as /væ/ in most cases. However, in literature and daily conversation it is normally replaced with /o/ sound. For example: /hæsæn -o -ali/ for /hæsæn væ ali/.

از دور = /æz du:r/ = from distant

خدایا = /Khoda: ya:/ = O God!

خدایا می کرد = /Khoda: ya: mikærd/ = he was calling God on and on.

مشکل = /moshkel/ = problem / difficulty

خویش = /khish/ = self / oneself

بر = /bær -e-/ = here, to - close to

پیر = /pir/ = old

پیر مغان = /pir -e- mogha:n/ = master / rabbi

Note: it is not very easy to translate Hafez. His word is full of ambiguity, allusion and many different words that have been remained ambiguous to us until now. Many writers have written hundreds of pages

for just one word he has used marvelously interesting. Still, no one knows the exact meaning of this very word. Fortunately, This particular word /rend/ is not used in this poem! This man had a different ability in using words and structures that, after more than eight hundred years, are still fresh in our culture. He has mosque for tavern and vice versa. Four different people might interpret his works in four different ways, and all of them seem right. Yet, the fifth person may introduce a different interpretation that is true too! His work is unbelievably flexible.

Unlike Rumi who had a very well known master, Hafez has never introduced a person as his master. He has called rabbi or master for many times. However, if you explore his words more deeply, you will see that his master is not a person. In the above expression /pir _e_ mogha:n/, he refers to his master (pir) who lives in /deir _e_ mogh:an). This place rather seems a spiritual place than a physical building. Therefore, the master who lives in a spiritual place that is not made of construction materials (like stone or wood) should be a non-human master. Therefore, the place of this master is in your heart, and the master is the recognition or spiritually awareness. In short, /pir _e_ mogha:n/ is the spirit of truth that resides in your heart (deir_e_ mogha:n/.

بردم = /bordæm/ = (here) I carried

دوش = /du:sh/ = the literary form of the word /dishæb/, which means last night.

کاه او = /ku:/ = who (in a clause-based pattern)

بتایید نظر = /betæ i:d_e_ næzær/ = with one look

حل کردن = /hæl kærdæn/ = to solve / to remove (a problem)

معما = /moæm. ma:/ = puzzle

را دیدم او را = /didæmæsh/ = I saw him

خرم = /khoræm/ = joyful / happy

خندان = /khænda:n/ = laughing

قدح = /ghædæh/ = cup (of wine)

باده = /ba:deh/ = wine

به دست = /beh dæst/ = in (one's) hand

آن و اندر آن = /vændæra:n/ = and inside it

در = اندر = /ændær/ = /dær/ = in / inside

آنهمه = /a:n hæmeh/ = that much

شعبده = /shobædeh/ = magical tricks

عقل = /æghl/ = brain / mind

آنجا = /a:n ja:/ = there

ساحری = /sa:heri/ = to do magic tricks

پیش = /pish/ = before / in presence

عصا = /æsa:/ = rod / stick (here, it refers to the Rod of Moses.

ید بیضا = /yæd_e_ beiza:/ = white hand - there is an allusion here. It refers to the story of Moses who turned the Rod into a big snake.

گفت = /goft/ = he said

یار = /ya:r/ = very close friend / beloved

که از او = کزو = /kæzu:/ = /keh æz u:/ = because of him

گشت بلند = /gæst bolænd/ = was lifted

سر = /sær/ = head

سر دار = /sær _e_ da:r/ = the head or the top of gallows

جرم = /jorm/ = crime

این بود = /in bu:d/ = was this

اسرار = /æsra:r/ = secrets

هویدا کردن = /hoveida: kærdæn/ = to disclose / to unveil

آن که = آنکه = /a:n keh/ = the one who

چون = /chu:n/ = like / such as

غنچه = /ghoncheh/ = blossom

راز = /ra:z/ = secret

حقیقت = /hæghighæt/ = truth

بنهفت = /benæhoft/ = (he) hid

ورق = /væra:gh/ = sheet (of paper or flowers)

خاطر = /kha:ter/ = favor (of somebody or something) - /beh kha:ter _e _ to/ means just for you, just in favor of you - also: remembering - remembrance

نکته = /nokteh/ = point

محشا کردن = /mohæsha: kærdæn/ => I think it's the old form of حاشا کردن /ha:sha: kærdæn/ = to deny

فیض = /feiz/ = mercy = generosity

روح القدس = /ru:hol ghodos/ = the holy spirit

اگر = ار = /ær/ = /ægær/ = if

باز = /ba:z/ = (here) again / once more

مدد فرماید = mædæd fæma:yæd/ = (if) he helps - this word is a very polite form of the following word.

مدد کردن = /mædæd kærdæn/ = to help

دیگران = /digæra:n/ = others

هم = /hæm/ = too / also

مسیحا = /mæsiha:/ = Jesus

گفتم = / goftæm/ = I said

جام جهان بین = ja:m _e_ jæha:n bin/ = (see /ja:m _e_ jæm above)

کی = /kei/ = when?

حکیم = /hækim/ = in old Persian /hækim/ means doctor. In this poem, it means God

گنبد مینا = /gonbæd _e _ mina:/ = refers to "Sky"

می کرد = /mikærd/ = می ساخت /misa:kht/ = he was making

به او گفتم = / goftæmæsh/ = I told him

سلسله = /selseh/ = like chain - Hafez refers to the woven hair of beautiful girls as chains that imprison the lover!

زلف = /zolf/ = hair

بت = /bot/ = idol

از پی = / æz pei ye/ = for what

از پی چیست؟ = /æz pei ye chist/ = for what reason?

گله = /geleh/ = complain

گله کردن = /geleh kærdæn/ = to complain

شیدا = /sheida:/ = eager / in love

سالها دل طلب جام جم از ما می کرد

/sa:l ha: del tælæb _e_ ja:m _e_ jæm æz ma: mikærd/

For years, hearts had been demanding recognition from us

آنچه خود داشت ز بیگانه تمنا می کرد

/a:n cheh khod da:sht ze biga:neh tæmæna: mikærd/

He had been begging the strangers for what he had in himself

Explanation: recognition comes from within you. But, you do not know it and are busy looking for it among those who, themselves, are strangers to it.

گوهری کز صدف کون و مکان بیرون است

/gohæri kæz sædæf _e_ kon u: mæka:n biru:n æst/

The pearl that is beyond the shell of time and place

طلب از گم شدگان لب دریا می کرد

/tælæb æz gom shodega:n _e_ læb _e_ dærya: mikærd/

He had been asking from those who are lost on the beach

Explanation: the heart had been asking those who are lost at the seashore about the pearl that should be found deep in the water

بی دلی در همه احوال خدا با او بود

/bi deli dær hæmeh æhva:l khoda: ba: u: bu:d/

A heartless one with whom God was in each and every moment

او نمی دیدش و از دور خدایا می کرد

/u: nemididæsh o æz dur: khoda: ya: mikærd/

could not see God and was calling Him as if God was very far from him

Explanation: the person who is looking for God in outside world rather than In himself is the one who lacks a God – knowing heart

مشکل خویش بر پیر مغان بردم دوش

/moshkel _e_ khish bæ_r _e_ pir _e_ mogha:n bordæm du:sh/

Last night, I took my question to the Master

کاو بتایید نظر حل معما می کرد

/ku: be tæi:d _e_ næzær hæ_l _e_ moæm.ma: mikærd/

Who would solve any puzzles with a hint of eyes

Explanation: last night, I raised my question to my all-knowing Master who Could answer everything very easily

دیدمش خرم و خندان قدح باده به دست

/didæmæsh khoræm o khænda:n ghædæh _e_ ba:deh bedæst/

I found Him happy and laughing, with the cup of wine in His hand

وندر آن آینه صد گونه تماشا می کرد

/vændæra:n a:yeneh sæd gu:neh tæma:sha: mikærd/

And in that mirror, He could see in one hundred different ways

Explanation: in Persian literature, wine is the symbol of an enlightening

Power that brings you awareness and recognition. Here, in this line, Hafez describes the

wine as pure and clear as a mirror. There is also an allusion in this line. As a tradition in

Iran, some people are believed to be able of seeing events in the mirror. For example, you may go to this kind of persons and tell them that some of your belongings is stolen.

That person looks in the mirror and gives you a shadow-like picture, which helps you identify the thief. In nowadays, it is a kind of money-making activities!!

Here, Hafez has gone to his Master who knows everything. The master has a cup of wine which is as pure as mirror. The master can see lots of different ways in the mirror.

Probably, he is trying to tell us that firstly Master has deeper vision than us. Secondly, in the mirror you can see yourself. The master is looking in the mirror. The master sees himself in different ways that all refer to Him. It means that the maser is not limited to our own understanding. We see only one way to Him, but He is breaking this barrier. All ways lead to Rome!

آنهمه شعبده ها عقل که می کرد؛ آنجا

/a:n hæmeh shobædeh ha: æghl keh mikærd, a:nja:/

My mind that would do lots of magic things

ساحری پیش عصا و ید بیضا می کرد

/sa:heri pish _e_ æsa: vo yæd _e_ beiza: mikærd/

In His presence, was like the magicians who challenged Moses

Explanation: it refers to the story of Moses with his Rod. It says, those magicians who were the top people of their time in this field could do

nothing to defeat Moses since he was receiving the instructions from

a stronger source (God). Hafez is telling us that the knowledge of God is too strong to be defeated by human.

گفت آن یار کزو گشت سر دار بلند

/goft a:n yar: kæzu: gæst sær _e_ dar: bolænd/

He (the master) said, the friend the gallows were lifted high because of him

جرمش این بود که اسرار هویدا می کرد

/jormæsh in bu:d keh æsra:r hoveida: mikærd/

Had this crime: he unveiled the secrets

Explanation: this line refers to the story of a man called Mansour Hallaj who lived before Hafez. Mansour had known God so deeply that said 'I am the truth'. The then religious leaders asked him not to say this any more. He did not withdraw from his position. Finally, they cut his tongue first and then hung him on the gallows.

آنکه چون غنچه دلش راز حقیقت بنهفت

/a:n keh chu:n ghoncheh delæsh ra:z _e_ hæghighæt benæhoft/

The person who would ,like a blossom, hide the secret of truth in his heart

ورق خاطر ازین نکته محشا می کرد

/væ:rægh _e_ kha:ter æz in نکته mohæsha: mikærd/

Ignored this in his page of remembrance

Explanation: in Persian literature, blossom symbolizes the act of hiding secrets in ones heart. Here, probably the master is speaking to Hafez, it says that the person (Mansour) who would hide the secret of the truth in his heart first,opened his heart to unveil what he had found, when he became mature, like a grown up flower.

To him, the truth was too big now to be kept hidden.

فیض روح القدوس ار باز مدد فرماید

/feiz _e_ ru:hol ghodos ær ba:z mædæd fæрма:yæd/

If the Holy Spirit shows His mercy once again

دیگران هم بکنند آنچه مسیحا می کرد

/digæra:n hæm bokonænd a:n cheh mæsiha: mikærd/

Others, too, would do what Jesus did

Explanation: in this line, the master is still speaking to Hafez.

گفتم این جام جهان بین به تو کی داد حکیم ؟

/goft m in ja:m _e_ j ha:n bin beh to kei da:d h kim/?

I said, when God gave you this all-knowing cup?

گفت آن روز که این گنبد مینا می کرد

/goft a:n ru:z keh in gonb d _e_ mina: mik rd/

He said, the day when He was making the sky (the universe)

Explanation: Hafez is asking a question from his master. Apparently, the master is not God. Also, his master is not a person. It can be concluded that his master is living inside him, telling him everything. The trace of the spirit of truth can be found in Hafez.

گفتمش سلسله زلف بتان از پی چیست ؟

/goftæmæsh selseleh ye zolf _e_ bota:n æz pei ye chist/?

I said, what is the chain of the idols hair for?

گفت حافظ گله ای از دل شیدا می کرد

/goft ha:fæz geleh i: æz del _e_ sheida: mikærd/

He said, Hafez was complaining about the eager hearts!

Explanation: idols are man-made gods. In Persian literature, beautiful beloveds are known as idols. The woven hair symbolizes chain for lovers.

The word /selseleh/ also refers to the tree diagram of one family, usually the kings. It shows a unity in the source from where different members of one family are generated. Here, Hafez is asking his master the reason upon which these members who are unified in the source have been diverted. His question shows a kind of complaining or protest. His all-knowing master knows more than him, and answers in a very clever way to Hafez. His master says Hafez is complaining about the hearts who are in love with one source, yet have diverted their ways. He means that peoples' love, in the absence of recognition, will put them against each other.

Week 67

Hello, welcome everybody!

For several months, I have promised many of you to do something. Thank you for being patient with me. You are my patience teacher!

What I am going to do refers to a kind of multilateral communication. Just be cool, the word is bigger than the job!

Many of you have been interested in having direct contacts with other visitors of this site. Probably, I have been disappointing in replying to you on time! To solve this problem, I am going to put a message board on this site, which will give you an opportunity to share views and ideas with other visitors directly, without having to wait for my delayed replies. You may leave a message or a contact address in that message board to receive reply from other friends. Optimistically, they will reply faster than I do! This message board is also a good place to find some native Persians as your pen pals or something. Please stick to the non-violence policy while enjoying such a direct tool!

Although I am, to much extent, anti censorship (in many cases!), I will do my best to be absolutely honest in deleting useless messages whenever necessary! This will save you time in reviewing different messages!. (OR, Simply copy this address and paste it in your address bar =>

<http://www.easypersian.com/messageboard/>

All right, let's get back to our routine class.

I guess we have been considerably far from our normal classes for several weeks. Generally, students (not you!) like and welcome such opportunities (to escape from a class)!!

Today, we are going to learn the last section in Present Simple Tense, which is interrogative.

This is not something strange. You already know the word آيا /a:ya:/. Put this word in the beginning of your sentences to ask others something!

Let's see an example:

He goes = او می رود /u: mirævæd/

Does he go? = آيا او می رود؟ /a:ya: u: mirævæd/?

Note: you may simply delete the subject in your Persian sentence.

Was it difficult? Of course not!

Please do the Quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To respect somebody

To pray

To make somebody laugh

To marry

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۴۰ - ۳۰۳ - ۱۱۲ - ۱۰۱ - ۶۶ - ۹۱ - ۱۴

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To give <= /da:dæn/ <== = د + ا + د + ن

To steal <= /dozdidæn/ <== = د + ز + د + ی + د + ن

Pencil <= /meda:d/ <== = م + د + ا + د

To hurt <= /zækh mi kærdæn/ <== = ز + خ + م + ی + ک + ر + د + ن

New Words:

To sleep = خوابیدن /kha:bidæn/

Early = زود /zu:d/

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

1- Do I go to school?

2- Do you go to school?

3- Does he/she go to school?

4- Do we go to school?

5- Do you go to school?

6- Do they go to school?

7- Do your children go to school?

8- Do your brothers go to school?

9- Does your sister go to school?

10- Do I sleep early?

11- Do you sleep early?

12- Does he/she sleep early?

13- Do we sleep early?

14- Do you sleep early?

15- Do they sleep early?

- ۱- آیا من به مدرسه می روم؟
- ۲- آیا تو به مدرسه می روی؟
- ۳- آیا او به مدرسه می رود؟
- ۴- آیا ما به مدرسه می رویم؟
- ۵- آیا شما به مدرسه می روید؟
- ۶- آیا آنها به مدرسه می روند؟
- ۷- آیا بچه هایتان به مدرسه می روند؟
- ۸- آیا برادرهایتان به مدرسه می روند؟
- ۹- آیا خواهرت به مدرسه می رود؟
- ۱۰- آیا من زود می خوابم؟
- ۱۱- آیا تو زود می خوابی؟
- ۱۲- آیا او زود می خوابد؟
- ۱۳- آیا ما زود می خوابیم؟
- ۱۴- آیا شما زود می خوابید؟
- ۱۵- آیا آنها زود می خوابند؟

Week 68

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Bag

Tree

To plant

Kitchen

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۹۱۰ - ۱۰۹ - ۹۰۹ - ۹۹۰ - ۱۰۱ - ۲۰۲ - ۲۰ - ۰

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To cut <= /boridæn/ <== = ب + ر + ی + د + ن

Bus <= /otobu:s/ <== = ا + ت + و + ب + و + س

Tree <= /derækht/ <== = د + ر + خ + ت

Box <= /jæbeh/ <== = ج + ع + ب + ه

Curtain <= /pærdeh/ = پ + ر + د + ه

New Words:

Please "Read" the following Persian Sentences aloud. You already know all the sentences. So, don't worry and don't complain about this drill! First Read and then Translate each sentence into English. Have Fun!!

- ۱- آنها ماشین را شسته اند.
- ۲- من کشورتان را دیده ام .
- ۳- پسرم کامپیوترم را خراب کرده است .
- ۴- دوستم آقای جونز را امروز صبح ندید.
- ۵- برادر کوچکش چهار بادبادک را امروز صبح پرواز داد.
- ۶- آن پسر پنجره را دیروز شکست .
- ۷- دوستم دیروز غایب بود.
- ۸- او دیروز با دوستش صحبت نکرد.
- ۹- سگ زشتت گربه قشنگم را دیروز زخمی کرد.
- ۱۰- من به آن تلویزیون دست نزدم .
- ۱۱- آن مرد این پل را پنجاه سال پیش ساخت .

Week 69

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

To receive

To turn on

To turn off

To resign

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۵۳۱ - ۳۱۳ - ۵۰۵ - ۱۰۵ - ۵۰۳ - ۵۳ - ۱۳

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

The last day of winter ends in the first day of spring! This day is called New Day or Norouz (Norooz) in Iran when the New Year starts. You may find more about Norouz [here](#).

I would like to take advantage of the opportunity to simply wish all of you a very prosperous Persian New Year. سال نو مبارک ! /Sa:l e no Moba:ræk/!

Or, عید شما مبارک ! /i:d e shoma: moba:ræk/!

Both of them mean: Happy New Year to you!

All right, please do the quiz first, then go to Useful Drills page to have more practice on our previous lesson.

See you next week!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Newspaper

To go to work

To shop (to go shopping)

To watch

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

13 - 31 - 113 - 311 - 313 - 131 - 113 - 311 - 331

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Room <== = ق + ا + ت + ا

Clean <== = ز + ی + م + ت

Dirty <== = ک + ث + ی + ف

Fat <== = ق + ا + چ

Warm <= = م + ر + گ

Cold <= = د + ر + س

New Words:

To know (something) = دانستن /da:nestæn/.

To kiss = بوسیدن /bu:sidæn/.

To invite = دعوت کردن /dævæt kærdæn/.

Note: You should add می /mi/ and the suffixes to the second parts of your Compound Verbs. Example:

I should have cleaned = باید تمیز می کردم /ba:yæd tæmiz mi kærdæm/.

They should have called = باید زنگ می زدند /ba:yæd zæng mi zædænd/.

1. I must have known (it).
2. You must have known (it).
3. She/he must have known (it).
4. We must have known (it).
5. You must have known (it).
6. They must have known (it).
7. Farshid must have known (it).
8. Maryam must have known (it).
9. I must have kissed her.
10. You must have kissed her.
11. She/he must have kissed him/her.

12. We must have kissed her.
13. You must have kissed her.
14. They must have kissed her.
15. Farshid must have kissed Maryam.
16. Maryam must have kissed Farshid.
17. I must have invited her.
18. You must have invited her.
19. She/he must have invited her.
20. We must have invited her.
21. You must have invited her.
22. They must have invited her.

- ۱- باید (آن را) می دانستم .
- ۲- باید (آن را) می دانستی .
- ۳- باید (آن را) می دانست .
- ۴- باید (آن را) می دانستیم .
- ۵- باید (آن را) می دانستید .
- ۶- باید (آن را) می دانستند .
- ۷- فرشید باید (آن را) می دانست .
- ۸- مریم باید (آن را) می دانست .
- ۹- باید او را می بوسیدم .
- ۱۰- باید او را می بوسیدی .
- ۱۱- باید او را می بوسید .
- ۱۲- باید او را می بوسیدیم .
- ۱۳- باید او را می بوسیدید .
- ۱۴- باید او را می بوسیدند .
- ۱۵- فرشید باید مریم (= او) را می بوسید .
- ۱۶- مریم باید فرشید (= او) را می بوسید .
- ۱۷- باید او را دعوت می کردم .
- ۱۸- باید او را دعوت می کردی .
- ۱۹- باید او را دعوت می کرد .
- ۲۰- باید او را دعوت می کردیم .
- ۲۱- باید او را دعوت می کردید .
- ۲۲- باید او را دعوت می کردند .

Week 70

Hello everyone,

How was the previous lesson? Was it easy? Praise the Lord!

Today, I am going to share something with you. I hope you will not rise against me!!

Recently, I received two messages that, to me, are of good interest. The first one is a message that has been brought to you seemingly with the aim of introducing peace and friendship among the people of different religions and backgrounds. Personally, I, and probably the majority of you, have already, yet unconsciously, believed in this way. However, this message seems to give everyone a deeper understanding to awaken and gather them around one light. Probably, people of the world must have gone astray a bit!

You may find this message at this address: If the above link doesn't work, please click [HERE](#) to download the complete message in Microsoft Word format. Please send your comments to the web master not to Easypersian website.

I enjoyed it a lot and, hopefully, you will enjoy it too!

The second message, which I received later this week, is about someone's ideas, which seems deep. I do not know why people should send such messages to this educational site! However, I appreciate their putting trust in me! I wanted to share the complete message with you. However, I changed my mind at the very last moments when I was going to upload this page. Therefore, I have just copied a couple of sentences from that message. It says: " ... WE USED TO HATE PEOPLE - NOW WE JUST MAKE FUN OF THEM - IT'S MORE EFFECTIVE THAT WAY - WE DON'T LIVE - WE JUST SCRATCH ON DAY TO DAY WITH NOTHING BUT MATCHBOOKS AND SARCASM IN OUR POCKETS - AND ALL WE ARE WAITING FOR IS FOR SOMETHING WORTH WAITING FOR ..." "... LET'S STOP SAYING "DON'T QUOTE ME" - BECAUSE IF NO ONE QUOTES YOU YOU PROBABLY HAVEN'T SAID A THING WORTH SAYING - WE NEED SOMETHING TO KILL THE PAIN OF ALL - THAT NOTHING INSIDE ..."

" ... WE'RE NOT BROKE - WE'RE BROKEN - WE'RE SO POOR WE CAN'T EVEN PAY ATTENTION - SO WHAT DO YOU WANT - YOU WANT TO BE FAMOUS AND RICH AND HAPPY - BUT YOU'RE TERRIFIED -YOU HAVE NOTHING TO OFFER THIS WORLD - THING TO SAY AND NO WAY TO SAY IT..." "... LET'S STOP PRAYING FOR SOMEONE TO SAVE US AND START SAVING OURSELVES - LET'S STOP THIS AND START OVER - LET'S GO OUT- LET'S KEEP GOING - THIS IS YOUR LIFE..." Let's be optimistic that you will not consider it as wasting your time! As you know, sometimes, it is not very bad to change the mood of routine classes, which lazy students (not you!!) welcome it!

In the meantime, let me request you to please post your future articles on the message board, which will keep us all safer!!

All right, now let's do the quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

Poems

Birthday party

Girlfriend

To experience

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۱۰۴ - ۴۴۱ - ۴۱۴ - ۴۱۱ - ۱۱۴ - ۴۱ - ۱۴

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Children <= /bæch.che ha:/ <== = ب + چ + چ + ه + ه + ا

To play <= /ba:zi kærðæn/ <== = ب + ا + ز + ی + ک + ر + د + ن

Radio <= /ra:dió/ <== = ر + ا + د + ی + و

New <= /ta:zeh/ <== = ت + ا + ز + ه

Telephone <= /telefon/ <== = ت + ل + ف + ن

Please do the following drills patiently to improve your Farsi translation skills.

New Words:

To clean = تمیز کردن /tæmiz kærdæn/.

I clean = تمیز می کنم /tæmiz mikonæm/.

To eat = خوردن /khordæn/.

I eat = می خورم /mikhoræm/.

Food = غذا /ghæza:/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Note: As you see in numbers 7 and 14, subjects, when are not pronouns, generally come in the beginning of the sentences.

- 1- I am cleaning my room.
- 2- You are cleaning your room.
- 3- She/he is cleaning her/his room.
- 4- We are cleaning our room.
- 5- You are cleaning your room.
- 6- They are cleaning their room.
- 7- My mother is cleaning the room.
- 8- I am eating food.
- 9- You are eating food.
- 10- She/he is eating food.
- 11- We are eating food.
- 12- You are eating food.
- 13- They are eating food.
- 14- My friend is eating food.

- ۱- دارم اتاقم را تمیز می کنم .
- ۲- داری اتاق را تمیز می کنی .
- ۳- دارد اتاقش را تمیز می کند .
- ۴- داریم اتاقمان را تمیز می کنیم .
- ۵- دارید اتاقتان را تمیز می کنید .
- ۶- دارند اتاقشان را تمیز می کنند .
- ۷- مادرم دارد اتاق را تمیز می کند .
- ۸- دارم غذا می خورم .
- ۹- داری غذا می خوری .
- ۱۰- دارد غذا می خورد .
- ۱۱- داریم غذا می خوریم .
- ۱۲- دارید غذا می خورید .
- ۱۳- دارند غذا می خورند .
- ۱۴- دوستم دارد غذا می خورد .

Week 71

!

What is Norouz?

Hello everyone, happy Persian New Year (Norouz) to all of you!

As you probably know, we are approaching the Persian New Year, which is called Norouz. Etymologically speaking, "no" means "new" in Persian, and "rouz" or "ruz" means "day".

So, "Norouz" means "new day". The Iranians refer to the first day of spring as their "new day of the new year" or simply Norouz. In Persian calendar, each year starts with the first day of spring and ends with the last day of winter.

For a couple of thousands of years, the Iranians have been celebrating this period with different kinds of celebrations and festivals.

The old year ends with a fire festival on the last Wednesday of the year. The last Wednesday of each year is called Chahaar Shanbeh Suri when people build fire all around the country and start singing, dancing around the fire, and jumping over the fire in different happy groups. One of the most common chants during this fire game is singing to the fire while jumping over it. People in groups sing, "May my yellowness go to you, and your redness come to me!!". This ceremony has a religious background that goes back to Zoroaster who introduced fire as a cleansing and purifying element on the globe, which removes all kind of uncleanness from the earth. So, fire is regarded as Holy. Through this ceremony, people, symbolically, burn their old year's weaknesses, sins, bad habits, and even their misfortunes with the hope of starting a new and fresh life in the coming New Year.

Then, people start painting their house, washing all their cloths as well as their carpets and whatsoever they use at home to keep them clean for the New Year. They, also, put some wheat on a plate and grow it green for some two weeks.

Then, it is the first day of spring or Norouz. On this day, people start the day with visiting their older parents, relatives, neighbors, and friends. In each house, you will find special garment known as Sofreh on which are a small red fish in a jar, different kinds of chocolates, seasonal snacks, and seven traditional things that start with "S". Generally, people serve fish on this day.

For two weeks, people enjoy visiting relatives and traveling to different cities to have fun. On the evening of 13th day, the New Year holiday finishes with another ceremony. This day is called "Sizdah Bedar" when almost everybody should spend their time outside their house in a barbeque, in parks, mountains, or even in cinema! At the end of the day, they take the wheat in a plate, which is grown up and green by now, to a river or simply to some water if river is not accessible. Then, they throw the green wheat in water and pick up 13 small stones. They throw the stones one after another into the water, sing another song, and wish to end this year and start next year more successfully and happily.

I hope you enjoyed this brief explanation of our Persian new year.

Once more, wish you all a very happy Norouz and a wonderful Persian new year!

All right, now let's do the quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the English equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

درخت

بریدن

آشپز خانه

چاقو

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۸۱۱ - ۱۸۱ - ۱۱۸ - ۸۱۸ - ۸۱ - ۱۸

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To eat <= /khordæn/ <== خ + و + ر + د + ن = خوردن

To kill <= /koshtæn/ < == = ک + ش + ت + ن
 To plant <= /ka:shtæn/ < == = ک + ا + ش + ت + ن
 Curtain <= /pærdeh/ < == = پ + ر + د + ه

Please translate the following drills patiently to improve your Farsi translation skills.

New Words:

To talk = حرف زدن /hærf zædæn/. Also /sohbæt kærdæn/.

To talk to somebody = با کسی حرف زدن /ba: somebody hærf zædæn/.

To cook = آشپزی کردن /a:sh pæzi kærdæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Note: As you see in numbers 7 and 14, subjects, when are not pronouns, generally come in the beginning of the sentences.

- 1- I am talking with my friend.
- 2- You are talking with your friend.
- 3- She/he is talking with her/his friend.
- 4- We are talking with our friend.
- 5- You are talking with your friend.
- 6- They are talking with their friend.
- 7- Ali is talking with his friend.
- 8- I am cooking.
- 9- You are cooking.
- 10- She/he is cooking.
- 11- We are cooking.
- 12- You are cooking.
- 13- They are cooking.
- 14- My mother is cooking.

- ۱- دارم با دوستم حرف می زنم .
- ۲- داری با دوستت حرف می زنی .
- ۳- دارد با دوستش حرف می زند .
- ۴- داریم با دوستان حرف می زنیم .
- ۵- دارید با دوستان حرف می زنید .
- ۶- دارند با دوستشان حرف می زنند .
- ۷- علی دارد با دوستش حرف می زند .
- ۸- دارم آشپزی می کنم .
- ۹- داری آشپزی می کنی .
- ۱۰- دارد آشپزی می کند .
- ۱۱- داریم آشپزی می کنیم .
- ۱۲- دارید آشپزی می کنید .
- ۱۳- دارند آشپزی می کنند .
- ۱۴- مادرم دارد آشپزی می کند .

Week 72

Today, we have got some questions to answer. Let's try these questions together first.

Question: In lesson 20 when i was doing [useful drills](#) i encountered a problem ie .

He jumped on his bicycle --the translation is not thru previous rule .Here verb is just after pronoun. can u plz explain it to me the reason....??

Answer: You are right. The rule is a bit, and not too much, broken! Remember, in translation, we should always keep an eye on the context. It is the context that tells us which style, for example, we should use. We cannot and should not translate a comedy into a formal speech format. That's true with Oral and Written form of the text. This is very important, especially in Persian, to differentiate these two kinds of speech in our translations. In lesson 20, the scenario is rather Oral-based. In Persian, verbs **usually** appear in sentences as you see in this lesson when the text is conversational. Even the conversational stories that appear in English without any major changes in their style, should be translated into Oral - based speech not into a book-style method in Persian. In this lesson, I just tried to use a different text to make your mind familiar with such structures. I just hoped you would follow the structure to get acquainted to it without facing problems! Anyway, that text is oral based.

Question: I understand the idea in [lesson 14](#) of using plural 'you' instead of singular to show more respect. I sort of get using 3rd person plural instead of 3rd singular for 'he' or 'she.' I just need to make sure that I'm supposed to use the 3rd plural verb ending when the subject of the sentence is 'my brother,' or 'my friend.' Is that correct?

Answer: I cannot issue a general rule for this. It mostly depends on the sentence. However, you are allowed to use both plural and singular verbs in your sentences when you have a sentence with a 'third person' subject.

Example:

Mr. X can = /a:gha: ye X mitæva:**nænd**/ in formal or written form. OR /a:gha: ye X mitæva:**næd**/ , which can be used in the same way as the above one. OR /a:gha: ye X mitu:**næn**/, which is polite and plural but conversational. OR /a:gha: ye X mitu:**neh**/, which is less polite and rather friendly style, conversational and singular verb.

I hope you are not confused! (You asked for it!!).

Question: I am unsure of which verbs you use with the subject+time+object+verb order. You mentioned in one lesson that /beh...dast zaedaen/ uses it, but then it seems in some of the useful drills that other verbs use this construction as well. I would be grateful if you could confirm that the following verbs (accompanied by the useful drills in which I found them) use this construction:

/neveshtaen/ (Useful Drills 18 #4-6)

/beh...raeftaen/ (Useful Drills 19, #1 & #2)

/beh...dast zaedaen/ (Useful Drills 19 #10)

Answer: Well, another trouble seeker and maker!! Frankly, I myself, don't know the exact number of such verbs! (Don't tell anybody!). This is not necessary. Do you still remember my English grammar teacher? I don't want to be like that!! We just use words in contexts; and whenever we face a different word, I will tell you. I think this seems better than memorizing lots of words without knowing how to use them.

Currently the above mentioned verbs are confirmed!

Question: This is a question about writing. First of all, when you use /ha:/ to make a word plural, is /ha:/ a separate word or part of the word you are making plural? For instance, is /baech:cheh ha:/ one or two words? Also, In the [useful drills](#) section of Lesson 20, you have written /tu:pha:/ with the /pe/ and the /he/ connected, but you have written /ba:dkonaek ha:/ with the /ka:f/ and the /he/ not connected. Why is that?

Answer: Good question! /ha:/ is a plural maker (not a trouble maker!! just a joke!) like "s" in English. Book ==> Books. You may consider it a suffix. In writing, you may either attach or separate it from the main word. The reason I have not separated /tu:p/ and /ha:/ in /tu:pha:/ is that this combination is not confusing when you want to read it. However, in /ba:dkonæk ha:/, I have purposely separated them because the combination of /k/ and /h/ produces /kh/ sound as in Spanish **Jose**. To avoid this, I have separated them. You know, there are many students who, due to some reasons, are not able to listen to the sound files. So, I have to keep them in my mind as well.

Thank you very much for all your attention and questions. I hope you have found your answers now. All right, now let's do the quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the English equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in past perfect tense).

ميز
تميز کردن

روشن کردن
خاموش کردن

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۱۶۱ - ۱۱۶ - ۶۱۱ - ۶۱ - ۱۶

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To cut <= /boridæn/ <== = ب + ر + ی + د + ن

Every <= /hær/ <== = ر + ه

To plant <= /ka:shtæn/ <== = ک + ا + ش + ت + ن

Month - Moon <= /ma:h/ <== = م + ا + ه

To write <= /neveshtæn/ <== = ن + و + ش + ت + ن

Those of you who have been with our lessons have already experienced learning Persian through music. Persian music, when comes with English translation, gives you a better chance to learn this language better. And of course, it will be of great fun!

The music I have chosen for this week is from Dariush whom many of you know.

This Persian music is called "Saal _e_ do hezaar" or "The year 2000", performed by Dariush.

Please click on the link below to download this Persian music in MP3 format. You may also find the translation of this song in English below.

داریوش - سال دو هزار

- سال سقوط /sa:l_e_soghu:t/ - The year of collapse
سال فرار /sa:l_e_færa:r/ - The year of escape (fleeing)
سال گریز و انتظار /sa:l_e_gori:z o enteza:r/ - The year of fleeing and wait
فصل شکفتن فلز /sa:l_e_shekoftæn_e_felez/ - The year of metal blossoming
سال سیاه دو هزار /sa:l_e_siya:h_e_do heza:r/ - The black year 2000
سال سقوط عاطفه /sa:l_e_soghu:t_e_a:təfeh/ - The year of collapsing love
تا بی نهایت زیر صفر /ta: bi nəha:yæt zir_e_sefr/ - Untill it is endlessly destroyed
نهایت معراج ذهن /nəha:yæt_e_mera:j_e_zehn/ - (When) The ultimate growth of brains
/ændishe ye tæfsir_e_sefr/ - Is to interpret naughts
/to zehn_e_ma:shin ha: ye særd/ - And in brain of cold machines
/mæna:ye eshgh o ehtiya:j/ - The meaning of love and necessity
/ru: ye nəvâ:r_e_ha:fezeh/ - (On the tape of their records)
یعنی به درد بی علاج /yəni ye dærd_e_bi ələ:j/ - Is but an irrecoverable disease
/sa:l_e_bəh bon bæst residæn/ - The year of reaching deadlocks
/pænəh beh diva:r keshidæn/ - (The year of) scratching the walls
/æz mænəviyæt gom shodæn/ - (The year of) losing moralities
/tæn beh ghærizeh bækh shidæn/ - (The year of) obeying instincts
/ghæbileh yəni yeh nəfær/ - (When) the entire tribe means one power
/hæm khu:ni mæna: nəda:reh/ - (And) same-bloodedness is absurd
/hæm bæstegi kha:bi ye keh/ - (When) unity is a dream
/təbir_e_færda: nəda:reh/ - That will not come true
سال سقوط /sa:l_e_soghu:t/ The year of collapse
سال فرار /sa:l_e_færa:r/ - The of fleeing
سال گریز و انتظار /sa:l_e_gori:z o enteza:r/ - The year of eascape and wait
/pa: i:z_e_tækh_o_bi bæha:r/ - The springless bitter Fall
سال سیاه دو هزار /sa:l_e_siya:h_e_do heza:r/ - The black year 2000
/sa:li keh khu:n to rægha: nis/ - The year when no blood is in vessels
/ghælb_e_felezi to sinæs/ - And metal hearts are in chests
/væghti keh tæsvir_e_zəma:n/ - When the picture of Century
/shekæstegi ye a:yənæs/ - Is the mirror broken
/ghæbileh yəni yeh nəfær/ - The entire tribe means one power
/hæm khu:ni mæna: nəda:reh/ - And same-bloodedness is absurd
/hæm bæstegi kha:bi ye keh/ - (When) unity is a dream
/təbir_e_færda; nəda:reh/ - That will not come true

tu: u:n ru:za: i: keh miya:d/-On those days that will come
 /kesi beh fekr_e_ kesi nis/-Nobody will care for others
 /hær ki beh fekr_e_ khodesh_e_/-Everyone will think of himself
 /beh fekr_e_ færya:d ræsi nis/-No one will think of a Saviour
 /hæmeh beh hæm bi etena:/-No one will pay attention to others
 /hæt.ta: beh mærg_e_ hæm digeh/-Even to each other's death
 /kesi ægeh komæk bekha:d/-If one called for help
 /ki midu:neh u:n chi migeht/-Who would know what he called for!
 /tu: ye keta:ba: ye loghæt/- In books of words
 /sefideh bærga: hæmishesh/- Pages will remain white for good
 /næh dosh mæni næh du:sti/- Neither animosity nor friendship
 /hich chi neveshteh nemishesh/- Nothing will be written in them
 /in na:gozi:r_e_ va:seh ma:/- This is inevitable for us
 /seir_e_ so u:di ta: soghu:t/- Such upward move and then collapse
 /hæmishesh ghes.seh ye seda:/- The story of voice always
 /tæmu:meh ba: hærf_e_ soku:t/- Ends in silence's "S" (OR) Ends in
 the word "silence"
 /væghti keh a: i:neh ye eshgh/- When the mirror of Love
 /siya:h besheh zir_e_ ghoba:r/- Is darkend in dust
 /væght_e_ tolu:_e_ fa:jeæs/- Catastrophe will rise
 /mireseh sa:l_e_ do heza:r/- (And) The year 2000 will arrive

Week 73

Hello every one, I hope you had a great Norouz!

Today, we are going to learn the negative form of sentences in Present Continuous Tense.

As a short review, let's try this one first:

I am writing.

We already know how to say this in Persian. Do you remember it? Wonderful!

I am writing means **من دارم می نویسم** /mæn da:ræm minevisæm/. Am I right? Good!

Do you still remember that magic **ن** /nu:n/? I hope you do. We use the same **ن** /nu:n/ to make our sentences negative in present continuous tense. You try it first! You have only 10 seconds to make the above sentence negative!

Did it? Great job!

Now let me answer.

I am not writing = **من ندارم می نویسم** /mæn næda:ræm minevisæm/. Am I right? Yes?

Of course not!! Was your answer the same as mine? If yes, please give yourself a very big and round Zero!!

Don't know why? Let me tell you.

We should add **ن** /nu:n/ to the main verb of our sentence. Is **دارم** /da:ræm/ the main verb in present continuous tense? No!

دارم /da:ræm/ is the auxiliary verb in this tense when we do have another verb such as 'writing'.

Therefore, I am not writing means **من دارم نمی نویسم** /mæn da:ræm neminevisæm/.

A very important note:

The above structure is 100 percent correct as far as Persian grammar is concerned. However, this structure is not very common (not incorrect) in Persian in both written and oral form. In Persian, we would better

use the negative form in Simple Present Tense for the negative form in Present continuous tense. That is to say, I am not writing means /mæn neminevisæm/. Is that clear? Good!

Second note: in doing drills, you are allowed to use both forms to learn it better. However, do not forget the first note.

All right, now let's do the quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the English equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

گرفتن

هر روز صبح

جمعه

شستون

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۱۰۲ - ۲۰۰۲ - ۲۰۲ - ۱۱۰ - ۱۰۱ - ۱۰ - ۰

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Cook <== = آ + ش + پ + ز

Cake <== = ک + ی + ک

Knives <== = چ + ا + ق + و + ه + ا

Fish <== = م + ا + ه + ی

To send <== = ف + ر + س + ت + ا + د + ن

Improve your translation ability through the following simple drills. Please start with lesson one if you are new to Farsi translation.

New Words:

To sleep = خوابیدن /kha:bidæn/

To clean = تمیز کردن /tæmi:z kærdæn/

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

1- I am not sleeping.

2- You are not sleeping.

3- He/she is not sleeping.

4- We are not sleeping.

5- You are not sleeping.

6- They are not sleeping.

7- My brother is not sleeping.

8- My mother is not sleeping.

- 9- I am not cleaning.
- 10- You are not cleaning.
- 11- He/she is not cleaning.
- 12- We are not cleaning.
- 13- You are not cleaning.
- 14- They are not cleaning.
- 15- Your friend is not cleaning.

- ۱- من دارم نمی خوابم = من نمی خوابم
- ۲- تو داری نمی خوابی = تو نمی خوابی
- ۳- او دارد نمی خوابد = او نمی خوابد
- ۴- ما داریم نمی خوابیم = ما نمی خوابیم
- ۵- شما دارید نمی خوابید = شما نمی خوابید
- ۶- آنها دارند نمی خوابند = آنها نمی خوابند
- ۷- برادرم دارد نمی خوابد = برادرم نمی خوابد
- ۸- مادرم دارد نمی خوابد = مادرم نمی خوابد
- ۹- من دارم تمیز نمی کنم. من تمیز نمی کنم.
- ۱۰- تو داری تمیز نمی کنی. تو تمیز نمی کنی.
- ۱۱- او دارد تمیز نمی کند. او تمیز نمی کند.
- ۱۲- ما داریم تمیز نمی کنیم. ما تمیز نمی کنیم.
- ۱۳- شما دارید تمیز نمی کنید. شما تمیز نمی کنید.
- ۱۴- آنها دارند تمیز نمی کنند. آنها تمیز نمی کنند.
- ۱۵- دوستت دارد تمیز نمی کند. دوستت تمیز نمی کند.

Week 74

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the English equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

کمر بند

مغازه

مغازه دار

شلوار

- 3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۶ - ۶۰ - ۱۶ - ۱۰۶ - ۶۱۰ - ۶۰۱

- 4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Gate < == = ه + ز + ا + و + ر + د
 Trousers < == = ر + ا + و + ل + ش
 Coat < == = ت + ک
 Pencil < == = د + ا + د + م

Improve your translation ability through the following simple drills. Please start with lesson one if you are new to Farsi translation.

New Words:

To study = مطالعه کردن /mota:le _e_ kærdæn/. Also, درس خواندن /dærs kha:ndæn/.

To watch = تماشا کردن /tæma:sha: kærdæn/. Also (more common), نگاه کردن /nega:h kærdæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I am not studying.
- 2- You are not studying.
- 3- He/she is not studying.
- 4- We are not studying.
- 5- You are not studying.
- 6- They are not studying.
- 7- Helen is not studying.
- 8- My brother is not studying.
- 9- I am not watching TV.
- 10- You are not watching TV.
- 11- He/she is not watching TV.
- 12- We are not watching TV.
- 13- You are not watching TV.
- 14- They are not watching TV.
- 15- The children are not watching TV.

- ۱- من دارم درس نمی خوانم = من درس نمی خوانم.
- ۲- تو داری درس نمی خوانی = تو درس نمی خوانی.
- ۳- او دارد درس نمی خواند = او درس نمی خواند.
- ۴- ما داریم درس نمی خوانیم = ما درس نمی خوانیم.
- ۵- شما دارید درس نمی خوانید = شما درس نمی خوانید.
- ۶- آنها دارند درس نمی خوانند = آنها درس نمی خوانند.
- ۷- هُنن دارد درس نمی خواند = هُنن درس نمی خواند.
- ۸- برادرم دارد درس نمی خواند = برادرم درس نمی خواند.
- ۹- من دارم تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنم = من تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنم.
- ۱۰- تو داری تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنی = تو تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنی.
- ۱۱- او دارد تلویزیون نگاه نمی کند = او تلویزیون نگاه نمی کند.
- ۱۲- ما داریم تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنیم = ما تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنیم.
- ۱۳- شما دارید تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنید = شما تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنید.
- ۱۴- آنها دارند تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنند = آنها تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنند.
- ۱۵- بچه ها دارند تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنند = بچه ها تلویزیون نگاه نمی کنند.

Week 75

Today, we are going to learn something a bit different and that is the Persian calendar.

Today, we are going to learn the name of the seasons and the months in Persian. Probably, you will find the words a little bit difficult to remember since they are new words. But, don't be afraid! You can do it!

Let's start with the seasons first.

As it is the case in most other places, we have four seasons in Iran. The year starts with spring and ends with winter.

Spring starts on March 20. So, winter ends one day before it!!

So far so good? Good!!

The four seasons are as follows:

Spring = بهار /bəha:r/.

Summer = تابستان /ta:besta:n/.

Autumn = پاییز /pa: i:z/.

Winter = زمستان /zemesta:n/.

Each season has three months.

The months of spring or بهار /bəha:r/ are:

فروردین /færværdin/.

اردیبهشت /ordibehesht/.

خرداد /khorda:d/.

The months of summer or تابستان /ta:besta:n/ are:

تیر /tir/.

مرداد /morda:d/.

شهریور /shæhrivær/.

The months of autumn or پاییز /pa: i:z/ are:

مهر /mehr/.

آبان /a:ba:n/.

آذر /a:zæɾ/.

The months of winter or زمستان /zemesta:n/ are:

دی /dei/.

بهمن /bæhmæn/.

اسفند /esfænd/.

I am sure you will learn them fluently if you review them from time to time.

There is one more thing I need to tell you and that is about the days in each month.

Unlike in western countries, the days of each month in Persian calendar are more easier to remember (at least I think so!).

The first six months (spring and summer) have 31 days.

The next five months have 30 days.

And finally, the last month has 29 days.

I hope it was not difficult!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the English equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

جریمه کردن

پرداخت کردن

پارک کردن

بیرون

دفتر

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

۸۰۸ - ۱۸۰ - ۱۰۸ - ۸۰۱ - ۱۸ - ۸

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Dinner <== = ش + ا + م

Breakfast <== = ه + ن + ا + ح + ب + ص

Lunch <== = ر + ا + ه + ا + ن

Method <== = ر + و + ش

This week drills are devoted to the Persian calendar. Please try them patiently.

Please answer the following questions: (no cheating!!)

1- How many seasons are there in Persian calendar?

- 2- How many months are there in each season?
- 3- Say the months of بهار /bæha:r/ aloud.
- 4- Say the months of تابستان /ta:besta:n/ aloud.
- 5- Say the months of پاییز /pa: i:z/ aloud.
- 6- Say the months of زمستان /zemesta:n/ aloud.
- 7- What is the sixth month in Persian calendar?
- 8- What is the first month in Persian calendar?
- 9- What is the last month in Persian calendar?
- 10- How many days are in اسفند /esfænd/?
- 11- How many days are in شهریور /shæhrivær/?
- 12- What is the 8th month in Persian calendar?
- 13- Explain the Persian calendar briefly to the desktop of your computer as it is one of your friends.

Week 76

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Did you have good time during the Persian seasons?! (I mean lesson 75). Please do not blame me if the words were a bit difficult to learn. For sure, I would have chosen easier names if they had given me the authority to make the Persian calendar!! (Just a joke, don't take it serious!).

Instead, we are going to learn something more interesting today. I guess we cannot finish it in one session. So, hopefully the next lesson will be much easier and interesting than what we are going to learn today. Stay tuned!!

So far, we have learned many things. Do you remember all of them? Yes or No? You are praised if the answer is 'Yes'. And you know the advice if the answer is 'No'! (Review the previous lessons more patiently!!)

Whatever the case is, I am sure all of you know a lot about the tenses in Persian. I am also sure that your grammatical knowledge (as far as tenses are concerned) is much deeper than many of the native speakers now!

From today, I am going to start a different part of the Persian language since the tenses we have learned are good enough for us to take another step. To take further steps, we needed to go through all these things. I deeply hope you are not disappointed by the tenses and the time we have spent on this topic. I am a driver of a remote control bus that has wide variety of passengers in it. Some are shouting 'Faster! Faster!' Some are crying 'Slower! Slower!' And some are vomiting on the back seats!

As you know, this is an internet course and it is very difficult to gather all levels together to make them happy. During these lessons, however, I have given the priority to those who are 'crying' as well as those who are changing the color of the back seats of our bus (!!) since the faster ones can have access to different vehicles now. The main problem for them was the start point, which they have taken strongly by now.

Anyway,

Today, we are going to learn some simple adjectives. Then we will expand them in comparative and superlative forms. Take my advice and don't be afraid of these strange words! This is not the calendar I could not help you with! Here, I will make them as simple as possible for you to enjoy.

Note: I suppose you already know the tenses.

Ready?

The first step is to learn a few words (adjectives). Good!

The first word is 'GOOD'.

'Good' means خوب /khu:b/.

Repeat it for a couple of times. Fluent? Good!

Now, I give you a sentence to translate. Use all your knowledge!

Parastou is good. (Simple present tense). You have only 10 seconds.

Finished? Wonderful! Now let me try.

Parastou means 'Swallow' - a kind of birds that appear in spring and migrate to warmer places in autumn. But, this word is a name for girls in Persian. So, you don't need to translate this word. Just use it as it is. Now the translation of this sentence.

پرستو خوب است /pæræstu: khu:b æst/.

Easy? Good!

Now, I change the name. Try this one. You have only 5 seconds now.

Parisa is good.

Finished? Now let me try.

Parisa means 'Fairy-faced' or 'like a fairy'. This is also a name for girls in Persian.

So, the translation is this: پریسا خوب است /pærisa: khu:b æst/.

Try to repeat the sentences for a couple of times.

Another adjective:

Beautiful = قشنگ /ghæshæng/.

Now, translate (only five seconds for each):

1- Parastou is beautiful.

2- Parisa is beautiful.

Finished? Good!

It's my turn now!

Parastou is beautiful = پرستو قشنگ است /pæræstu: ghæshæng æst/.

Parisa is beautiful = پریسا قشنگ است /pærisa: ghæshæng æst/.

For beautiful, we have also these words in Persian: زیبا /ziba:/ - خوشگل /khosh gel/. Now, say the above sentences with these two words. You would say:

Parastou is beautiful = پرستو زیبا است /pæræstu: ziba: æst/. Or پرستو خوشگل است /pæræstu: khosh gel æst/.

Parisa is beautiful = پریسا زیبا است /pærisa: ziba: æst/. Or پریسا خوشگل است /pærisa: khosh gel æst/.

Any problems? I hope not!

Please do the quiz first and then go to useful drills page to have more work to do!

That's it for today. See you next week!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

German

English

American

Canadian

Swiss

Brazilian

Dutch

Australian

Norwegian

Spanish

Week 77

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Before we start today, I need to talk some about the changes I have made on this site. First, don't be afraid! I am not closing this site as many of you have written to me! I am sorry if the site was unavailable for almost a day or so. I had to transfer the site to a new server because of the increasing number of visitors that needed extra monthly bandwidth. To meet your need, I had to withdraw from my contract with the previous Webhost while I, still, had some six more months to use it. I, therefore, bought new web space and started uploading the entire site once more to the new server, which took me some two days online! State of facing complete bankruptcy!!

As for the appearance of the site, the number of the lessons was increasing and I thought it would be difficult for you to keep track of the previous lessons. This was one of the main reasons that made me bring this much changes in the appearance of the site. I hope I have taken the right step! Please let me know your suggestions and please be patient with me if I am not really able to write back to many of you. My sincere apologies. You can bring a lot of change. I will also appreciate if you kindly let me know of any probable broken links that might have occurred because of these changes. On the homepage, I have put our regular weekly links on the same side and transferred the rest of the links to the right side of the page to make navigation easier. At the top of all pages, there is a link to the first 75 lessons. Thank you for your patience and thank you for still being with me.

All right, now let's continue our previous discussions.

The last lesson was about Adjectives in Persian. Today, we will expand it a bit more. Ready?

You already know how to say this: Parastou is beautiful. Please try it again (you may use any of the Persian words for 'beautiful').

Did it? Great!

Now, we want to say this: Parastou is more beautiful.

Got the idea? Wonderful!

Today, we are going to learn Comparative Adjectives in Persian. Don't worry! It's very easy!

As you know, 'Beautiful' means خوشگل /khosh gel/.

Now, look at this word: تر /tær/.

Put تر /tær/ after the adjectives (here: خوشگل /khosh gel/), and you will have خوشگل تر /khosh gel tær/. Any problems? Good!

Now, let's use this newly made adjective in our first sentence (Parastou is beautiful). We will have:

پرستو خوشگل تر است. /pæræstu: khosh gel tær æst/, which means 'Parastou is more beautiful' (sentence **NO 1** - remember this sentence).

Still with me? Good!

In short, تر /tær/ means 'more' (in this structure). From now on, just put تر /tær/ after your adjectives and you will have 'More + Adjective'.

Very easy, isn't it? Persian is sugar!!

Now that we know how to say 'More + Adjective' in Persian, I want to take one more step if you have no objections!

How do you say this: Parastou is **more** beautiful **than** Parisa (is).

Who is more beautiful? پرستو Parastou.

Put 'Parastou' in the beginning and look at this word: از /æz/.

Put از /æz/ after پرستو Parastou.

Put the second name (پریسا Parisa) after از /æz/. Currently, we have پرستو از پریسا /pæræstu: æz pærisa:/ (sentence **NO 2** - remember this sentence).

Now, put sentence **NO 1** above (without subject) after sentence **NO 2** and we will have

پرستو از پریسا خوشگل تر است. /pæræstu: æz pærisa: khosh gel tær æst/.

In short: از /æz/ means 'Than' in this structure.

Is Persian still sugar? No? Try the following examples to change your mind!

Example:

Parastou is younger than Paris (is).

Young = جوان /jæva:n/.

More young = جوان تر /jæva:n tær/.

Than = از /æz/.

پرستو از پریسا جوان تر است. /pæræstu: æz pærisa: jæva:n tær æst/.

Difficult? Of course not!!

Example:

Parastou is taller than Parisa (is).

Tall = بلند /bolænd/.

Taller = بلند تر /boland tær/.

Than = از /æz/.

پرستو از پریسا بلند تر است. /pæræstu: æz pærisa: bolænd tær æst/.

Example:

Parastou is shorter than Parisa (is).

Short = کوتاه /ku:ta:h/. Also, قد کوتاه /ghæd ku:ta:h/.

Shorter = کوتاه تر /ku:ta:h tær/.

Than = از /æz/.

پرستو از پریسا کوتاه تر است. /pæræstu: æz pærisa: ku:ta:h tær æst/.

Did you change your mind? Well done!

Please do the quiz first and then go to useful drills page to have more work to do!

That's it for today. See you next week!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

To prefer

To choose

To celebrate

New Year

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

14 - 41 - 411 - 114 - 141 - 401 - 410 - 104

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To come <== = ن + د + م + آ
 I come <== = م + ی + ا + ی + م
 To cut <== = ن + د + ی + ر + ب
 I cut <== = م + ر + ب + ی + م
 To dig <== = ن + د + ن + ک

New Words:

City = شهر /shæhr/.

Helen = هلن /Helen/.

Sarah = سارا /sa.ra:/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1- This city is small.
- 2- That city is small.
- 3- This city is smaller than that city.
- 4- This car is big.
- 5- That car is big.
- 6- This car is bigger than that car.
- 7- Helen is young.
- 8- Sarah is young.
- 9- Helen is younger than Sarah.
- 10- John is old.
- 11- Martin is old.
- 12- John is older than Martin.
- 13- This car is ugly.
- 14- That car is ugly.
- 15- This car is uglier than that car.
- 16- This child is lovely.
- 17- That child is lovely.
- 18- This child is lovelier than that child.
- 19- This man is strong.
- 20- That man is strong.
- 21- This man is stronger than that man.
- 22- Leili is weak.
- 23- Nathalie is weak.
- 24- Leili is weaker than Nathalie.

- ۱ - این شهر کوچک است .
- ۲ - آن شهر کوچک است .
- ۳ - این شهر از آن شهر کوچک تر است .
- ۴ - این ماشین بزرگ است .
- ۵ - آن ماشین بزرگ است .
- ۶ - این ماشین از آن ماشین بزرگ تر است .
- ۷ - هلن جوان است .
- ۸ - سارا جوان است .
- ۹ - هلن از سارا جوان تر است .
- ۱۰ - جان پیر است .
- ۱۱ - مارتین پیر است .
- ۱۲ - جان از مارتین پیر تر است .
- ۱۳ - این ماشین زشت است .
- ۱۴ - آن ماشین زشت است .
- ۱۵ - این ماشین از آن ماشین زشت تر است .
- ۱۶ - این بچه دوست داشتنی است .
- ۱۷ - آن بچه دوست داشتنی است .
- ۱۸ - آیین بچه از آن بچه دوست داشتنی تر است .
- ۱۹ - این مرد قوی است .
- ۲۰ - آن مرد قوی است .
- ۲۱ - این مرد از آن مرد قوی تر است .
- ۲۲ - لیلی ضعیف است .
- ۲۳ - ناتالی ضعیف است .
- ۲۴ - لیلی از ناتالی ضعیف تر است .

Week 78

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

To buy

He bought

To say

They said

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

21 - 0 - 201 - 210 - 102 - 120 -

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Earthquake <== زلزله = ز + ل + ز + ل + ه

To send <== فرستادن = ف + ر + س + ت + ا + د + ن

Watermelon <== هندوانه = ه + ن + د + و + ا + ن + ه

To eat <== خوردن = خ + و + ر + د + ن

New Words:

Persian = فارسی /fa:rsi/.

Easy = آسان /a:sa:n/.

Russian = روسی /ru:si/.

Difficult = سخت /sækht/. Also = مشکل /mosh kel/.

India = هند /hend/.

Iran = ایران /ira:n/.

Expensive = گران /gera:n/.

Shirt = پیراهن /pira:hæn/.

Cheap = ارزان /ærza:n/.

Canada = کانادا /ka:na:da:/.

Big = بزرگ /bozorg/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1- Persian is easy.
- 2- Russian is easy.
- 3- Persian is easier than Russian (is).
- 4- Persian is difficult.
- 5- Russian is difficult.
- 6- Persian is more difficult than Russian is.
- 7- India is beautiful.
- 8- Iran is beautiful.
- 9- India is more beautiful than Iran is.
- 10- This computer is expensive.
- 11- That TV is expensive.

- 12- This computer is more expensive than that TV is.
- 13- This shirt is cheap.
- 14- That shirt is cheap.
- 15- This shirt is cheaper than that shirt is.
- 16- Canada is big.
- 17- Iran is big.
- 18- Canada is bigger than Iran is.

- ۱ - فارسی آسان است .
- ۲ - روسی آسان است .
- ۳ - فارسی از روسی آسان تر است .
- ۴ - فارسی سخت است .
- ۵ - روسی سخت است .
- ۶ - فارسی از روسی سخت تر است .
- ۷ - هند قشنگ است .
- ۸ - ایران قشنگ است .
- ۹ - هند از ایران قشنگ تر است .
- ۱۰ - این کامپیوتر گران است .
- ۱۱ - آن تلویزیون گران است .
- ۱۲ - این کامپیوتر از آن تلویزیون گران تر است .
- ۱۳ - این پیراهن ارزان است .
- ۱۴ - آن پیراهن ارزان است .
- ۱۵ - این پیراهن از آن پیراهن ارزان تر است .
- ۱۶ - کانادا بزرگ است .
- ۱۷ - ایران بزرگ است .
- ۱۸ - کانادا از ایران بزرگ تر است .

Week 79

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen) One (A poem by Forough Farrokhzad - You may find the written Persian of this poem in Persian Samples 32)

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

To write

Every week

Month

I write

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

44 - 404 - 455 - 545 - 405 - 504 - 540

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Last night <== = د + ی + ش + ب

Absent <== = غ + ا + ی + ب

Homework <== = م + ش + ق

Letter <== = ن + ا + م + ه

Last year = = پ + ا + ر + س + ا + ل

New Words:

Room = اتاق /ota:gh/.

Clean = تمیز /tæmiz/.

Dirty = کثیف /kæsif/.

Fat = چاق /cha:gh/.

Happy = خوشحال /khosh ha:l/.

Cold = سرد /særd/.

Warm = گرم /gærm/.

Norway = نروژ /norvezh/.

Please translate the following comparative adjective sentences into Persian:

- 1- This room is clean.
- 2- That room is clean.
- 3- This room is cleaner than that room.
- 4- This car is dirty.
- 5- That car is dirty.
- 6- This car is dirtier than that car.
- 7- My teacher is tall.
- 8- Your teacher is tall.
- 9- My teacher is taller than your teacher is.
- 10- This girl is fat.
- 11- That girl is fat.
- 12- This girl is fatter than that girl is.
- 13- You are happy.
- 14- I am happy.
- 15- You are happier than I am.
- 16- Norway is cold.
- 17- Iran is cold.
- 18- Norway is colder than Iran.
- 19- My country is warm.
- 20- Your country is warm.
- 21- My country is warmer than your country.

- ۱ - این اتاق تمیز است .
- ۲ - آن اتاق تمیز است .
- ۳ - این اتاق از آن اتاق تمیز تر است .
- ۴ - این ماشین کثیف است .
- ۵ - آن ماشین کثیف است .
- ۶ - این ماشین از آن ماشین کثیف تر است .
- ۷ - معلم بلند است .
- ۸ - معلم بلند است .
- ۹ - معلم از معلم بلند تر است .
- ۱۰ - این دختر چاق است .
- ۱۱ - آن دختر چاق است .
- ۱۲ - این دختر از آن دختر چاق تر است .
- ۱۳ - تو خوشحالی . (تو خوشحال هستی)
- ۱۴ - من خوشحالم . (من خوشحال هستم)
- ۱۵ - تو از من خوشحال تری . (خوشحال تر هستی)
- ۱۶ - نروژ سرد است .
- ۱۷ - ایران سرد است .
- ۱۸ - نروژ از ایران سرد تر است .
- ۱۹ - کشورم گرم است .
- ۲۰ - کشورت گرم است .
- ۲۱ - کشورم از کشورت گرم تر است .

Week 80

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

Office

To cancel

Language

To learn

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

32 - 23 - 503 - 305 - 335 - 553 - 530 - 555

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Manager <== = م + د + ی + ر =

Project <== = پ + ر + و + ز + ه =

Office <== = د + ف + ت + ر =

Plan <== = ب + ر + ن + ا + م + ه =

Tomorrow = = ف + ر + د + ا =

Since many of you have been asking for more Persian MP3 with English translation, I have decided to invite you all to enjoy a song by Ebi this week. This song is called Peechak (Pichak) OR Ivy. The song is in MP3 format. Please right-click on the link below and choose "Save Target As" to download it to your computer. This is a gift for those who, due to some reasons, are not able to have the Easy Persian Music CD. Please accept and enjoy it!

Have fun!

New Words:

Ivy BY: Ebi اوی بیچک

حالا /ha:la:/ = now

دیگر (the oral form of) /digər/ = then - any more

تو /to/ = you

رو = object indicator (words before it are object) this is the oral form of

داشتن /da:shtən/ = to have

خیال است /khiya:leh/ = it's imagination - it's dream - (oral form of)

دل /del/ = heart

اسیر /æsi:r/ = chained - stuck

آرزو /ærezo:/ = wish = dream

محال است /maħa:leh/ = it's impossible = impossible (oral form of)

غبار /ghoba:r/ = dust

پشت /posht/ = behind = back

شیشه /shi:shəh/ = glass = (here) window

می گوید /mi:gojd/ = it says = he/she says (oral form of)

رفتی /ræfti/ = you went = you are going = you are gone

ولی /væli/ = but

هنوز /hænu:z/ = still

دلم /deləm/ = my heart

باور ندارد /ba:vær næda:reh/ = doesn't believe (oral form of)

راه /ra:h/ = way = path

دور است /du:reh/ = it's far (oral form of)

دل من /del_e_mæn/ = my heart

چه /chəh/ = what - how

صبور است /səbu:reh/ = is patient (oral form of)

کاشکی /ka:shki/ = i wish

بودی /bu:di/ = you were

و /va:v/ = and - in combination it pronounces as /v/

می دیدی /mididi/ = you would see = you were seeing

زندگی ام /zændəgim/ = my life (oral form of)

سوت و کور /sot_o_kureh/ = silent and lonely (without happiness)

آسمان /a:səmu:n/ = sky = heavens (oral form of)

از /æz/ = from = of = because of

غم /ghæm/ = grief = sadness

دوری /du:ri/ = separation = distance

روز /ru:z/ = day

شب /shəb/ = night

می بارد /miba:reh/ = it is raining (oral form of)

تو /tu/ = in - inside

ذهن /zəhən/ = mind = memory

خیابان /khiya:bu:n/ = street (oral form of)

من را /mæn:/ = (oral form of)

تنها /tənha:/ = Lonely = alone

جا می گذارد /ja:miza:reh/ = it leaves... = it forgets (oral form of)

خاطر /kha:ter/ = remembrance = memory

مثل /mesl/ = like = similar

یک /ye/ = one (oral form of)

پیچک /pi:shək/ = ivy

می پیچد /mipichəh/ = it turns = it swirls (oral form of)

رو /ru:/ = on - over

تن /tæn/ = body

خسته /kha:stəh/ = tired

حرف /ħærf/ = word = milk

ندارم /næda:rəm/ = i don't have

خلوت /kha:lva:t/ = loneliness = quiet time

Ivy – BY: Ebi پیچک - ابی

حالاً دیگه تو رو داشتن خیاله /ha:la: digeh to ro da:sh-tæn khiya:leh/ Now it's all dream to have you

دل اسیر آرزوهای محاله /del æsi:r _e_ a:rezu: ha: ye mæha:leh/ The heart is chained in impossible dreams

غبار پشت شیشه می گه رفتی /ghoba:r _e_ posht _e_ shi:shah mige'h ræfti/ The dust behind the window says "you are gone"

ولی هنوز دلم باور نداره /væli hænu:z delæm ba:vær næda:reh/ Yet, still, my heart doesn't believe it

حالاً راه تو دوره /ha:la: ra:h _e_ to du:reh/ How far you are from me now!

دل من چه صبوره /del _e_ mæn cheh sæbu:reh/ How patient my heart is though.

کاشکی بودی و می دیدی /ka:shki bu:di yo mididi/ I wish you were here to see

زندگیم چه سوت و کوره /zendegim cheh su:t _o_ ku:reh/ how silent and dark my life is.

حالاً راه تو دوره /ha:la: ra:h _e_ to du:reh/ How far you are from me now!

دل من چه صبوره /del _e_ mæn cheh sæbu:reh/ How patient my heart is though.

کاشکی بودی و می دیدی /ka:shki bu:di yo mididi/ I wish you were here to see

زندگیم چه سوت و کوره /zendegim cheh su:t _o_ ku:reh/ how silent and dark my life is.

آسمون از غم دوری /a:semu:n æz ghæm _e_ du:ri/ The sky, over such grief in separation,

حالاً روز و شب می باره /ha:la: ru:z _o_ shæb miba:reh/ is pouring now day and night.

دیگه تو ذهن خیابون /dige'h tu: zeh'n _e_ khiya:bu:n/ In the middle of our street now

منو تنها جا می ذاره /mænu: tæha: ja: miza:reh/ I am left all alone.

خاطرت مثل یه پیچک /kha:teret mesl _e_ ye pichæk/ Your memories, like an ivy,

می پیچه رو تن خسته ام /mipicheh ru: tæ'n khæstæm/ swirls around my tired being.

دیگه حرفی که ندارم /dige'h hærfi keh næda:ræm/ I have no more words,

دل به خلوت تو بسته ام /del beh khælvæt _e_ to bæstæm/ I have fallen in love with such loneliness.

دل به خلوت تو بسته ام /del beh khælvæt _e_ to bæstæm/ I have fallen in love with such loneliness.

(The song starts over)

Week 81

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Examination, A word that scares everybody!

Surprised?

Yes, today is the day of judgment! I didn't announce it before because good students are always ready!

Personally, I wanted to take this exam a couple of weeks later. Yet, the number of the students who are asking for the exam is increasing. So, I decided to prepare a test for you. You have asked for it!!

Trust me and don't be afraid of the exam. You will learn much more when you are tested. I believe this exam will help you more than you expected. Try it and you will ask for more!!

According to the educational system in Iran, the top mark in each exam is 20, not 100. So, the maximum

mark (score) you can get in this exam is 20. I have mentioned time and marks next to each question. This will help you know how good you are!

This exam is mostly focused on what we have learned before to let you review things. The next exams may be different!

Please cool down and start your job. You may spend less or more time on each question, but your given time must not exceed the total 77 minutes. No cheating!!

Have fun!

Part 1:

- 1- Say and write the Persian alphabet (small and big letters). (4 minutes - Marks: 1)
- 2- Write down the complete structure of a sentence in simple past tense (subject +...). (1 minutes - Marks: 0.5).
- 3- Suppose that we have the infinitive "To forgive" = /bækh shidæn/. In a very simple language (either in English, Persian or in your own language), explain the structure of infinitives in Persian (what do infinitives look like in Persian) and the way we can change the infinitives to have a verb in simple past tense. Then, generalize the rule by giving two more examples on your own. (2 minutes - Marks: 0.5)
- 4- Write down (in Persian) four complete sentences in simple past tense (Your sentences should have all possible elements such as place, time, object, and so on). (8 minutes - Marks: 1)
- 5- Find the objects in these sentences: (1 minute - Marks: 0.5)

- ۱- من هنوز او را ندیده ام .
- ۲- او چندین ساختمان ساخته است .
- ۳- دوستم را زدم .
- ۴- یک هفته است که آب نخورده ام .

6- Write (either in Latin alphabet or in Persian scripts) the following numbers: 0 - 1360 - 35 - 700 - 2003 - 32000 (2 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

7- Suppose that you are going to teach somebody how to read 53225 in Persian. Explain it in simple words so that he can understand the general rule. (2 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

8- Suppose that we have the infinitive 'To wash'. Explain in simple word (in any language) how we can change it into present perfect tense verb. Then say the verb with all subjective pronouns. (2 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

9- How should we translate 'For' and 'Since' in present perfect tense? Explain it. (4 minutes - Marks: 1)

10- How do you know such and such word is an object in your Persian sentences? (What is your object indicator?). Explain when you should and should not use this object indicator in your sentences (give examples). (4 minutes - - Marks: 1)

11- Write down the days of a week in Persian scripts. (2 minute - Marks: 0.5)

12- How do you make simple future tense? Give an example using all subjective pronouns. (3 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

13- How are compound verbs used in simple future tense? Give an example. (2 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

14- Explain (in any language) the negative form of compound verbs in simple future tense, giving an example in a sentence. (2 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

15- Explain (in any language) past perfect tense and give an example in complete sentence. (3 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

16- Explain how we can change an infinitive into a verb in simple present tense. Give an example. (3 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

17- Explain present continuous tense in Persian. Give an example. (3 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

18- What are the four seasons in Persian? What are the months of summer and autumn? (2 minutes - Marks: 0.5)

19- How can we make comparative adjectives in Persian? Explain it using an example. (1 minute - Marks: 0.5)

Part 2 (Listening ability):

- 1- Listen to the audio file and write down 10 words. (5 minutes - Marks: 2)
- 2- Listen to the audio file and repeat the same sentence (tongue twister). (5 minutes - Marks: 1)
- 3- Listen to the audio file and write down the name of 8 countries. (5 minutes - Marks: 1)
- 4- In the above audio file, who is he talking about? (2 minute - Marks: 1)

Part 3 (Translation ability):

1- Translate the following text into Persian.(10 minutes- Marks: 3.5)

Bob is in his classroom. His friends are sitting on the chairs. Some have big books. Some have small bags. And some have blue pens. Bob is reading a book. Alice is writing. Michael is opening his bag. Helen is speaking. Suddenly, somebody opens the door. The children see the teacher. They stand up. The teacher has several papers. He gives the papers to the students. They are sad. The students have exam.

Suddenly = ناگهان /na:gæha:n/.

To stand up = بلند شدن /bolænd shodæn/.

Paper = کاغذ /ka:ghæz/

Sad = غمگین /ghæmgin/

Exam = امتحان /emteha:n/

Part 4 (optional):

How would you teach Persian to a foreigner if you were a Persian teacher? Which part of the language would you focus on more? What would you add to or deduct from our weekly lessons if you were the teacher of this online course? How would you take the exam? (4 minutes) (Feel free to send me your answers to this optional question)

Answers!!

Part 1:

1- Say and write the Persian alphabet (small and big letters). A: See lesson 1 - 10

2- Write down the complete structure of a sentence in simple past tense (subject +...). A: See lesson 17

3- Suppose that we have the infinitive "To forgive" = /bækh shidæn/. In a very simple language (either in English, Persian or in your own language), explain the structure of infinitives in Persian (what do infinitives look like in Persian) and the way we can change the infinitives to have a verb in simple past tense. Then, generalize the rule by giving two more examples on your own. A: See lesson 11

4- Write down (in Persian) four complete sentences in simple past tense (Your sentences should have all possible elements such as place, time, object, and so on). A: See lesson 17

5- Find the objects in these sentences:

- ۱- من هنوز او را ندیده ام .
- ۲- او چندین ساختمان ساخته است .
- ۳- دوستم را زدم .
- ۴- یک هفته است که آب نخورده ام .

6- Write (either in Latin alphabet or in Persian scripts) the following numbers: 0 - 1360 - 35 - 700 - 2003 - 32000 A: See lessons 18- 25

7- Suppose that you are going to teach somebody how to read 53225 in Persian. Explain it in simple words so that he can understand the general rule. A: See lesson 28

8- Suppose that we have the infinitive 'To wash'. Explain in simple word (in any language) how we can change it into present perfect tense verb. Then say the verb with all subjective pronouns. A: See lesson 28

9- How should we translate 'For' and 'Since' in present perfect tense? Explain it. A: See lesson 32- 33

10- How do you know such and such word is an object in your Persian sentences? (What is your object indicator?). Explain when you should and should not use this object indicator in your sentences (give examples). A: See lesson 22- 34

11- Write down the days of a week in Persian scripts. A: See lesson 36

12- How do you make simple future tense? Give an example using all subjective pronouns. A: See lesson 37

13- How are compound verbs used in simple future tense? Give an example. A: See lesson 38

14- Explain (in any language) the negative form of compound verbs in simple future tense, giving an example in a sentence. A: See lesson 40

15- Explain (in any language) past perfect tense and give an example in complete sentence. A: See lesson

16- Explain how we can change an infinitive into a verb in simple present tense. Give an example. A: See lesson 53

17- Explain present continuous tense in Persian. Give an example. A: See lesson 69

18- What are the four seasons in Persian? What are the months of summer and autumn? A: See lesson 75

19- How can we make comparative adjectives in Persian? Explain it using an example. A: See lesson 77

Part 2 (Listening ability):

1- Listen to the audio file and write down 10 words. A: /ba:/ - /sæla:m/ - /in/ - hæfteh/ - /a:mrika:/ - /chæha:r/ - /ja:yezeh/ - /yek shænbeh/ - /gozæshteh/ - /chæshm/ - ...

2- Listen to the audio file and repeat the same sentence (tongue twister).

A: /emshæb shæb _e_ seh shænbas. færda: shæbæm seh shænbas. seh shæb digeæm seh shænbas. in seh seh shæb, u:n seh seh shæb, hæz seh seh shæb seh shænbas/!

3- Listen to the audio file and write down the name of 8 countries. A: Australia - Newzealand - Germany - France - Norway - Sweden - Denmark - Finland

4- In the above audio file, who is he talking about? A: He is talking about his friend who travels a lot.

Part 3 (Translation ability):

1- Translate the following text into Persian.(10 minutes- Marks: 3.5)

Bob was in his classroom. His friends were sitting on the chairs. Some had big books. Some had small bags. And some had blue pens. Bob was reading a book. Alice was writing. Michael was opening his bag. Helen was speaking. Suddenly, somebody opened the door. The children saw the teacher. They stood up. The teacher had several papers. He gave the papers to the students. They were sad. The students had exam.

باب در کلاسش بود. دوستانش روی صندلی هایشان نشسته بودند.
تعدادی کتاب های بزرگی داشتند. تعدادی کیف های کوچکی داشتند.
و تعدادی قلم های آبی داشتند. باب داشت کتاب می خواند. آلیس
داشت می نوشت. مایکل داشت کیفش را باز می کرد. هلن داشت
صحبت می کرد. ناگهان یکی در را باز کرد. بچه ها معلم را دیدند.
آنها بلند شدند. معلم چندین کاغذ داشت. او کاغذها را به دانش
آموزان داد. دانش آموزان غمگین بودند. آنها امتحان داشتند!

Suddenly = ناگهان /na:gæha:n/.

To stand up = بلند شدن /bolænd shodæn/.

Paper = کاغذ /ka:ghæz/

Sad = غمگین /ghæmgin/

Exam = امتحان /emteha:n/

Part 4 (optional):

How would you teach Persian to a foreigner if you were a Persian teacher? Which part of the language would you focus on more? What would you add to or deduct from our weekly lessons if you were the teacher of this online course? How would you take the exam? (Feel free to send me your answers to this optional question)

Week 82

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

Behind the gate
Some of
Party
To thank

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

666 - 161 - 616 - 8395 - 90000 - 7004 - 3001

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Pen <== = ق + ل + م

Money <== = پ + و + ل

Gate <== = د + ر + و + ا + ز + ه

People <== = م + ر + د + م

Guest = = م + ه + ا + ن

All right, how was the exam? I hope it helped you review what you had learned before.

Today, we are going to continue our adjective related lessons.

We know that we have comparative adjective in Persian if we add **تر** /tær/ to an adjective. In short:

more + adjective (in English) = adjective + **تر** /tær/ (in Persian)

Today, we want to see how we can say this one in Persian: most beautiful

Look at this word: **ترین** /tærin/

Add **ترین** /tærin/ to the end of your adjectives in Persian and you will have superlative adjective.

In short: most beautiful = **خوشگل ترین** /khosh gel tærin/.

Some more examples:

Most difficult = **مشکل ترین** /mosh kel tærin/

Most comprehensive = **کامل ترین** /ka:mel tærin/

Easiest = **آسان ترین** /a:sa:n tærin/

Best = **بهترین** /beh tærin/ (this one is irregular)

Cleanest = **تمیز ترین** /tæmiz tærin/

Ugliest = **زشت ترین** /zesht tærin/

And so on.

Change the following adjectives into superlative form and make one sentence with each of them.

Dirty = **کثیف** /kæsif/

Near = **نزدیک** /næzdik/

Far = distant = **دور** /du:r/

Lonely = alone = **تنها** /tæn ha:/

Happy = خوشحال /khosh ha:l/

Sad = غمگین /ghæm gin/

Week 83

!

Hello everyone, welcome back!

Recently, I have received a few messages with more or less similar themes.

Probably, many of you have Persian friends and, sometimes, may want to show off your Persian knowledge to them! As far as I know, in most cases, your Persian friends may adore you for knowing this much of their language. However, in several cases, they have shown to be a little bit inexperienced.

Some of your Persian friends have told you that the way you write is not Iranian Persian!

Some have said that, for example, the word 'heart' is not what your teacher has told you. Your teacher has given 'liver' for 'heart'! And, a few other words that they have chosen offensively to either look down on your knowledge or to show off their own vocabulary ability!

As a Persian language teacher, let me solve your problem now.

Not all English-speaking people are English language teachers. The same is true in any language. It is true that your Persian friends enjoy Persian language as their mother tongue. However, not all of them are teachers.

As you know, many words have wide variety of meanings. To give a couple of examples, I would mention 'to get', 'to know' (as I know this - or I know him), surprised, and even 'heart', (as in the heart of darkness). A good teacher does not and should not teach all possible meanings of one word to beginners. If he does, the students will be totally confused and will run away from him.

I never told you that the given word has only such and such meaning in Persian. Do not believe me if I tell you that such and such word has the only meaning I have given you (except in some exceptional cases). Language is an ocean and each word has the potential to move flexibly from one function or meaning to the next.

We are still in the beginning of our Persian studies. I should not give you all possible meaning of one word. You will find them later in different contexts when you are comfortably fluent. But, this does not mean that the certain word I have taught you is wrong.

So, please take my advice and do not argue with them. Ask experts if you want to be sure. Show your handwritings to different Iranians to see if it is readable or not. Each language can be written in different fonts and style. However, beginners are always advised to start with the most common and comfortable ones that are written in normal books. Primary school students should write in a book-style method. Later when they are more comfortable with writing, they can use as many styles as possible and no one will stand against them.

Please take it easy and keep on studying. Remember that I am not going to teach you something wrong. Minor mistakes are ignorable.

Please do the quiz and go to Useful drills page.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

Since 2001

To telephone

To play

To go

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

111 - 222 - 333 - 444 - 555 - 323 - 432 - 234

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Computer <== = ک + ا + م + پ + ی + و + ت + ر

Old <== = ک + ه + ن + ه

New <== = ت + ا + ز + ه

School <== = م + د + ر + س + ه

Market = = ب + ا + ز + ا + ر

Change the following adjectives into superlative form and make one sentence with each of them.

Lazy = تنبل /tænbæl/

Stupid = احمق /æh mægh/.

Clever = با هوش /ba: hu:sh/.

Fast = سریع /særi:/.

Slow = کند /kond/.

Bright = روشن /roshæn/.

Dark = تاریک /ta:rik/. Also تیره /ti:reh/.

Complicated = پیچیده /pichideh/.

Long = بلند /bolænd/. - also دراز /dera:z/.

Short = کوتاه /ku:ta:h/.

Weak = ضعیف /zæ i:f/.

Strong = قوی /ghævi/.

Week 84

Are you now fluent with the comparative and superlative adjectives in Persian? If yes, let's start a new lesson.

Let's see some sentences in English first. Ready?

- 1- The man who is walking is my friend.
- 2- The man whom you saw is my friend.
- 3- The chair that (which) you broke is mine.

Do you know these kinds of sentences? Do you know what 'who', 'whom', 'which', and 'that' are? These are called Relative Pronouns in English. No, I am not teaching you English! But, to learn Persian we need to know these things first.

Don't worry! Wait and you will see that Persian is much easier than English!! Let's try them if you don't believe me!

In sentence number 1 above, what we have is:

Let's break sentence number 1:

The man is walking.

The man is my friend.

As you see, 'the man' is subject in both sentences. To join these two sentences, we need to delete the words that are repeated. Now tell me what is repeated in both sentences? Wonderful!! 'The man' is repeated.

So let's delete one of them, and we will have this:

The man is walking.

Is my friend.

Now, let's put these two together. We will have: The man is walking is my friend.

So far so good? Great!

But, what we need is one complete sentence. So, we have to join these two sentences. But something is missing. Guess what? This sentence has no 'joint'. The best 'joint' here is 'who'. Why? Because 'the man' is subject in both sentences (The man is walking.

The man is my friend.)

Now in our new sentence (The man is walking is my friend), put 'who' after the subject (The man). Then you will have: The man who is walking is my friend.

Was it difficult?

Now you try this one (you have ten seconds!):

The girl is playing.

The girl is my daughter.

Did it? Good!

The answer should be this:

The girl who is playing is my daughter.

Now try this one:

The woman left.

The woman was my wife.

The answer should be this: The woman who left was my wife.

Is everything clear? Good!

Now answer to this question:

What is before and after 'who' in above sentences?

Great job!

We have 'Noun' as subject before 'who'. We have 'Verb' after 'who'.

So this is the grammar in English. Did you enjoy it?

Now let's see the second sentence above (The man whom you saw is my friend).

Let's break it together:

The man is my friend.

You saw the man (him).

In the first sentence, 'the man' is Subject (at least we can accept it as our subject).

In the second sentence, 'the man' is Object.

What is repeated in these two sentences? Good guess! 'The man' is repeated twice. To join these two sentences, we need to delete one of them. Which one should be deleted? Delete the Object.

So, we will have:

The man is my friend.

You saw.

Easy, isn't it?

As you can guess now, to join these two sentences we need a 'joint'. What is the best 'joint' here?

Wonderful! The best 'joint' is 'whom'. Why? Because 'the man' is the subject of one sentence, and the object of the second.

Where should we put 'whom'?

Put it after 'the man', and you will have:

The man whom is my friend.

Now, put the second sentence (you saw) after 'whom', and you will have:

The man whom you saw is my friend.

Good job! Wasn't it?!

Now it's your turn to try! Combine them.

The girl is my girlfriend. (The girl = subject)

You met the girl yesterday. (the girl = object)

The answer should be:

The girl whom you met yesterday is my girlfriend.

I hope it was not difficult.

Now answer to this question:

What is before and after 'whom'?

Good job!

We have 'Noun' before 'whom'. We have 'Subject' after 'whom'.

The same is true with 'which' and 'that'. The difference is that 'which' can be both 'subject' and 'object'. So, you can follow the above rules to join your sentences when 'which' is needed. The other difference is that 'which' refers to 'things' or animals rather than 'persons'.

Wow, too much grammar!

Now, let's go back to our Persian class.

In Persian, we don't need to go through this much rules!

Look at this word: که /keh/.

All you need to do in Persian is this:

Replace 'who', 'whom', 'which', and 'that' with که /keh/. That's it!! Isn't Farsi sugar?!!

Now let's translate some of the sentences into Persian together. Afraid? Of course not!!

1- The man who is walking is my friend.

Man = مرد /mærd/

Who = که /keh/

To walk = قدم زدن /ghædæm zædæn/

Is walking = دارد قدم می زند /da:ræd ghædæm mi zænæd/. (present continuous tense)

Is = است /æst/

My friend = دوستم /du:stæm/ = دوست من /du:st e mæn/

You know them all already. If not, please review the previous lessons again.

The only change we need to make in our Persian sentence is that we should put /i:/ sound or simply the

letter ی at the end of the 'Noun' (mærd). So, instead of saying مرد که /mærd keh/, we should say مردی که /mærdi keh/. This rule is applicable to all kinds of relative pronouns.

So, the translation of the above sentence in Persian is as follows:

مردی که دارد قدم می زند دوست من است. /mærdi keh da:ræd ghædæm mi zænæd du:st e mæn æst/.

Was it difficult?

Now try this one:

The man who is sitting in the chair is my father.

Man = مرد /mærd/

Who = که /keh/

Is sitting = نشسته است /neshæsteh æst/. NOTE: In such sentences, although 'is sitting' is in present continuous tense it should be translated as 'Present Perfect Tense'.

In = on = روی /ru: ye/

Chair = صندلی /sændæli/

Is = است /æst/

My father = پدرم /pedæræm/ = پدر من /pedær e mæn/.

So, it's Persian translation is as follows:

مردی که روی صندلی نشسته است پدر من است. /mærdi keh ru: ye sændæli neshæsteh æst pedær e mæn æst/.

One more example:

The man whom you saw is my friend.

Man = مرد /mærd/

Whom = که /keh/

You = تو /to/

Saw (simple past tense) = دیدی /didi/

Is = است /æst/

My friend = دوستم /du:stæm/ = دوست من /du:st e mæn/

NOTE: Although we cannot issue a general rule here, we'd better put را /ra:/ before که /keh/ whenever we are to use 'whom'. Why? Because 'whom' refers to an object, and 'the man' is the object. We already know that را /ra:/ is an object indicator.

Translation: مردی را که تو دیدی دوست من است. /mærdi ra: keh to didi du:st e mæn æst/.

I hope you enjoyed this lesson.

Please go to useful drills page to practice more.

Have a good week!

New Words:

To die = مردن /mordæn/

(He) died = مرد /mord/

To take away = بردن /bordæn/

(You) took away = بردی /bordi/

To kill = کشتن /koshtæn/

(You) killed = کشتی /koshti/

To play = بازی کردن /ba:zi kærdæn/

(They) are playing = دارند بازی می کنند /da:rænd ba:zi mi konænd/

Please translate the following sentences into persian:

- 1- The boy who broke your window is my boy (son).
- 2- The boy whom you saw is my boy (son).
- 3- The man whom you saw last week was my teacher.
- 4- The man who died last week was my teacher. (not me!!!)
- 5- The book which (that) you took away was my book.
- 6- The cat which (that) you killed was my cat.
- 7- The children who are playing are student.

- ۱- پسری که پنجره ات را شکست پسر من است.
- ۲- پسری را که تو دیدی پسر من است.
- ۳- مردی را که هفته پیش دیدی معلم من بود.
- ۴- مردی که هفته پیش مرد معلم من بود.
- ۵- کتابی را که تو بردی کتاب من بود.
- ۶- گربه ای را که تو کشتی گربه من بود.
- ۷- بچه هایی که دارند بازی می کنند دانش آموزند.

NOTE: In sentence number 6 above, we have **ای** for **ی** to produce /i:/ sound. As a general rule, whenever a noun ends with **ه ه** /he/ (like **گربه** /gorbeh/), put **ای** at the end of it to produce /i:/ sound.

NOTE: In sentence number 7 above, we have **یی** for **ی** to produce /i:/ sound. As a general rule, whenever a noun ends with **ا** /a:/ (like **بچه ها** /bæch.cheh ha:/), put **یی** at the end of it to produce /i:/ sound.

Week 85

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

Prime minister

To express hope

To leave

To resign

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

17 - 711 - 117 - 171 - 717 - 7007

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== **دوست** = **د + و + س + ت**

Book <= /keta:b/ <== **کتاب** = **ک + ت + ا + ب**

To say <== **گفتن** = **گ + ف + ت + ن**

Taxi <== **تاکسی** = **ت + ا + ک + س + ی**

Award <== **جایزه** = **ج + ا + ی + ز + ه**

To break <== **شکستن** = **ش + ک + س + ت + ن**

Driver = **راننده** = **ر + ا + ن + ن + د + ه**

New Words:

To speak = **صحبت کردن** /soh bæ't kærdæn/. Also **حرف زدن** /hærf zædæn/.

To fix = to repair = **تعمیر کردن** /tæmir kærdæn/.

To teach (here) = **درس دادن** /dærs da:dæn/.

To meet = **ملاقات کردن** /mola:gha:t kærdæn/. Listen! Also **دیدن** /didæn/.

To talk to somebody = **با ... حرف زدن** /ba: somebody hærf zædæn/.

I talked to him = **من با او حرف زدم** /mæn ba: u: hærf zædæm/.

To introduce = **معرفی کردن** /moærefi kærdæn/.

On TV = **در تلویزیون** /dær televiziyu:n/.

To arrest = **دستگیر کردن** /dæst gir kærdæn/.

Watch = ساعت /sa:æt/.

To steal = دزدیدن /dozdidæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into persian:

- 1- The man who is speaking is my brother.
- 2- The man who sold this car was my brother.
- 3- The man who has sold this car is my brother.
- 4- The man who will sell this car is my brother.
- 5- The man who had fixed your car was my brother.
- 6- The man who teaches English is my brother.
- 7- The man whom you met last week was my brother.
- 8- The man whom you talked to (with) was my brother.
- 9- The man whom you will see is my brother.
- 10- The man whom you are talking to is my brother.
- 11- The girl who wrote this book is French.
- 12- The girl who will write this book is Iranian.
- 13- The girl who has written this book is German.
- 14- The girl whom they introduced is Italian.
- 15- The girl whom you saw on TV was Norwegian.
- 16- The girl whom they arrested was Canadian.
- 17- The watch which (that) you broke was mine.
- 18- The watch which (that) he stole was mine.
- 19- The watch which (that) you fixed is mine.

- ۱- مردی که دارد صحبت می کند برادر من است.
- ۲- مردی که این ماشین را فروخت برادر من بود.
- ۳- مردی که این ماشین را فروخته است برادر من است.
- ۴- مردی که این ماشین را خواهد فروخت برادر من است.
- ۵- مردی که ماشین شما را تعمیر کرده بود برادر من بود.
- ۶- مردی که انگلیسی درس می دهد برادر من است.
- ۷- مردی را که هفته پیش دیدی برادر من بود.
- ۸- مردی را که با او صحبت کردی برادر من بود.
- ۹- مردی را که خواهی دید برادر من است.
- ۱۰- مردی را که داری با او صحبت می کنی برادر من است.
- ۱۱- دختری که این کتاب را نوشت فرانسوی است.
- ۱۲- دختری که این کتاب را خواهد نوشت ایرانی است.
- ۱۳- دختری که این کتاب را نوشته است آلمانی است.
- ۱۴- دختری را که آنها معرفی کردند ایتالیایی است.
- ۱۵- دختری را که در تلویزیون دیدی نروژی بود.
- ۱۶- دختری را که آنها دستگیر کردند کانادایی بود.
- ۱۷- ساعتی را که تو شکستی مال من بود.
- ۱۸- ساعتی را که او دزدید مال من بود.
- ۱۹- ساعتی را که تو تعمیر کردی مال من است.

Week 86

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a

paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

To sleep

I sleep

We sleep

My child sleeps

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

22 - 202 - 220 - 112 - 211 - 121 - 221 - 212

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Monday <== = د + و + ش + ن + ب + ه

Friday <== = ج + م + ع + ه

Tuesday <== = س + ه + ش + ن + ب + ه

Thursday <== = پ + ن + ج + ش + ن + ب + ه

Wednesday = = چ + ه + ا + ر + ش + ن + ب + ه

This week, we have another Persian music in MP3 format and it is called 'beh bachehamoon' or 'beh bacheh hamoon' /beh bæcheh ha:mu:n/ = To Our Children, dedicated to the Iranians abroad. You may find the Persian script, the phonetics of the Persian words, and the translation of this music below.

داریوش /dɑ:ri:ʃ/ - به بچه هامون /beh bacheh ha:mu:n/
/To our children/ - BY: /dɑ:ri:ʃ/

به بچه های تو و من /beh bacheh ha: ye to vo man/

To the children of yours and mine

وقتی به روز بزرگ شدن /vaghti ye ru:z bozorg shodan/

when, one day, they are grown up,

فردا که میخوان بدونن /farda: keh mi kha:n bedu:nan/

tomorrow, when they want to know

کجا بدنیا اومدن /koja: beh donya: u:madan/

where they were born,

بگو جوابمون چیه /begu: java:bemu:n chi ye/

say what our response is,

حرف حسابمون چیه /harf e hesa:bemu:n chi ye/

(tell them) what is that we have looked for.

تکلیف اون خونه ای که /taklif e un khu:neh i: keh/

(Tell them) What will happen to that home which

شده خرابمون چیه /shodeh khara:bemu:n chi ye/

is ruined by us.

تکلیف اون خونه ای که /taklif e un khu:neh i: keh/

(Tell them) What will happen to that home which

شده خرابمون چیه /shodeh khara:bemu:n chi ye/

is ruined by us.

گناه هرچی که گذشت /gonah e har chi keh gozasht/

The whatsoever mistakes of the past

به گردن ما بود و هست /beh gardan e ma: bu:d o hast/

remained and remains on our own shoulders.

از ما اگر بتی شکست /az ma: agar boti shekast/

One idol if we broke

بت های تازه جاش نشست /bot ha: ye tazeh ja:sh neshast/

new idols were raised afresh.

هیچکس به غیر از خود ما /hich kas beh gheir az khod e ma:/

Nobody except we, ourselves,

از خود ما فریب نخورد /az khod e ma: farib nakhord/

was cheated by his own self.

هیچکس به غیر از خود ما /hich kas beh gheir az khod e ma:/

Nobody except we, ourselves,

ما رو به بیراهه نبرد /ma: ro beh bira:heh nabord/

did take us off the right path.

به بچه های تو و من /beh bacheh ha: ye to vo man/

To the children of yours and mine

وقتی به روز بزرگ شدن /vaghti ye ru:z bozorg shodan/

when, one day, they are grown up,

فردا که میخوان بدونن /farda: keh mi kha:n bedu:nan/

tomorrow, when they want to know

کجا بدنیا اومدن /koja: beh donya: u:madan/

where they were born,

بگو جوابمون چیه /begu: java:bemu:n chi ye/

say what our response is,

حرف حسابمون چیه /harf e hesa:bemu:n chi ye/

(tell them) what is that we have looked for.

تکلیف اون خونه ای که /taklif e un khu:neh i: keh/

Week 87

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

I have

Family

A good family

I go to work

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

70 - 701 - 707 - 107 - 770 - 77 - 710

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Market <== بازار = ب + ا + ز + ا + ر

Aunt <== عمه = ع + م + ه

Uncle <== عم = ع + م + و

Doctor <== دکتر = د + ک + ت + ر

Housewife = خانم = خ + ا + ن + م + ه + ر

Before we continue with our new lessons today, I need to apologize to you for something. Unfortunately, I have missed one lesson in Tenses while in the examination (Lesson 81) we had a question on this missing tense. This tense is Past Continuous Tense.

So, today, we are going to cover this tense. Sorry for the forgetfulness!!

Past Continuous Tense

Do you remember how we made Present Continuous Tense? Today's lesson is much easier than that.

If you remember, we use the infinitive 'to have' to make our Persian sentences in present continuous tense.

In this new lesson, we use the same infinitive yet in a very easy way.

To have = داشتن /da:shtæn/.

Delete ن /nu:n/ from the end of our infinitive and you will have داشت /da:sht/, which is in simple past tense (I hope you still remember this rule).

Now, try to use داشت /da:sht/ with all subjective pronouns in Simple Past Tense:

I had = من داشتم /mæn da:shtæm/.

You had = تو داشتی /to da:shti/.

He/she/it had = او داشت /u: da:sht/.

We had = ما داشتیم /ma: da:shtim/.

You had = شما داشتید /shoma: da:shtid/.

They had = آنها داشتند /a:nha: da:shtænd/.

Still with me? Good!

Now, suppose that we have the following sentence:

I was writing.

What is the main verb here? Good guess!

'writing' is the main verb.

We already know that 'to write' = نوشتن /neveshtæn/.

Delete ن /nu:n/, and you will have نوشت /nevesht/, which is in Simple Past Tense.

I wrote = من نوشتم /mæn neveshtæm/

You wrote = تو نوشتی /to neveshti/

He/she/it wrote = او نوشت /u: nevesht/

We wrote = ما نوشتیم /ma: neveshtim/

You wrote = شما نوشتید /shoma: neveshtid/

They wrote = آنها نوشتند /a:nha: neveshtænd/

Now, we want to translate 'I was writing' into Persian.

Just remember that in this tense 'I was (in English) = I had (in Persian)'.

So far,

I was writing = من داشتم من نوشتم /mæn da:shtæm mæn neveshtæm/. A very odd sentence!

Delete the subjects in your Persian sentences, and you will have: داشتم نوشتم /da:shtæm neveshtæm/.

Now, put می /mi/ before the main verb in our Persian sentence (here: نوشتم neveshtæm/.

Result:

I was writing = داشتم می نوشتم /da:shtæm mi neveshtæm/. That's it!

Now, let's apply this rule to our sentences:

You were writing = داشتی می نوشتی /da:shti mi neveshti/.

He/she/it was writing = داشت می نوشت /da:sht mi nevesht/.

We were writing = داشتیم می نوشتیم /da:shtim mi neveshtim/.

You were writing = داشتید می نوشتید /da:shtid mi neveshtid/

They were writing = داشتند می نوشتند /da:shtænd mi neveshtænd/.

Was it difficult?

Now, let's see some more examples:

I was closing.

'to close' = بستن /bæstæn/.

I was closing = داشتم می بستم /da:shtæm mi bæstæm/.

You were closing = داشتی می بستی /da:shti mi bæsti/.

He/she/it was closing = داشت می بست /da:sht mi bæst/.

We were closing = داشتیم می بستیم /da:shtim mi bæstim/.

You were closing = داشتید می بستید /da:shtid mi bæstid/.

They were closing = داشتند می بستند /da:shtænd mi bæstænd/.

Now, let's see this one:

I was breaking.

To break = شکستن /shekæstæn/.

I was breaking = داشتم می شکستم /da:shtæm mi shekæstæm/.

You were breaking = داشتی می شکستی /da:shti mi shekæsti/.

He/she/it was breaking = داشت می شکست /da:sht mi shekæst/.

We were breaking = داشتیم می شکستیم /da:shtim mi shekæstim/.

You were breaking = داشتید می شکستید /da:shtid mi shekæstid/.

They were breaking = داشتند می شکستند /da:shtænd mi shekæstænd/.

All right, I hope it was not a difficult lesson for you. Please go to Useful Drills page to practice more.

You continue:

I was going = /da:shtæm mi ræftæm/.

You were going =

He/she/it was going =

We were going =

You were going =

They were going =

I was coming = /da:shtæm mi a:mædæm/.

You were coming =

He/she/it was coming =

We were coming =

You were coming =

They were coming =

I was sleeping = /da:shtæm mi kha:bidæm/.

You were sleeping =

He/she/it was sleeping =

We were sleeping =

You were sleeping =

They were sleeping =

I was reading = /da:shtæm mi kha:ndæm/.

You were reading =

He/she/it was reading =

We were reading =

You were reading =

They were reading =

I was washing = /da:shtæm mi shostæm/.

You were washing =

He/she/it was washing =

We were washing =

You were washing =

They were washing =

I was going

داشتم می رفتم
داشتم می رفتی
داشت می رفت
داشتم می رفتیم
داشتم می رفتید
داشتند می رفتند

I was coming

داشتم می آمدم
داشتم می آمدی
داشت می آمد
داشتم می آمدیم
داشتم می آمدید
داشتند می آمدند

I was sleeping

داشتم می خوابیدم
داشتم می خوابیدی
داشت می خوابید
داشتم می خوابیدیم
داشتم می خوابیدید
داشتند می خوابیدند

I was reading

داشتم می خواندم
داشتم می خواندی
داشت می خواند
داشتم می خواندیم
داشتم می خواندید
داشتند می خواندند

I was washing

داشتم می شستم
داشتم می شستی
داشت می شست
داشتم می شستیم
داشتم می شستید
داشتند می شستند

Week 88

Hello everyone, how are you?

Recently, I have received a couple of poems from a lady called Taraneh who wants to share it with everybody on this site. I do appreciate her work and thank her for her idea of sending them to me. You may find her here.

Please do the quiz and go to useful drills for more practice on Past Continuous Tense.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

To sit

To drink

Sun

To shine

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

50 - 505 - 550 - 305 - 503 - 5005 - 5000 - 1050

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Carpet <== = ف + ر + ش

Outside <== = ب + ی + ر + و + ن

Ticket <== = ب + ل + ی + ط

Method <== = ر + و + ش

Breakfast = = ص + ب + ح + ا + ن + ه

New Words:

Newspaper = روزنامه /ru:z na:meh/.

To go to work = به سرکار رفتن /beh sər e ka:r ræftæn/.

To shop = خرید کردن /khærid kærdæn/.

To watch = نگاه کردن /nega:h kærdæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Note: You are allowed to write your Persian sentences **with or without** subjects. I have deleted subjects from my Persian sentences.

1- I was reading a newspaper.

2- You were reading a newspaper.

3- He/she was reading a newspaper.

4- We were reading a newspaper.

5- You were reading a newspaper.

6- They were reading a newspaper.

7- I was cleaning my room.

8- You were cleaning your room.

9- He/she was cleaning his/her room.

10- We were cleaning our room.

11- You were cleaning your room.

12- They were cleaning their room.

13- I was going to work.

- 14- You were going to work.
- 15- He/she was going to work.
- 16- We were going to work.
- 17- You were going to work.
- 18- They were going to work.
- 19- I was shopping.
- 20- You were shopping.
- 21- He/she was shopping.
- 22- We were shopping.
- 23- You were shopping.
- 24- They were shopping.
- 25- I was watching TV.
- 26- You were watching TV.
- 27- He/she was watching TV.
- 28- We were watching TV.
- 29- You were watching TV.
- 30- They were watching TV.

- ۱- داشتم روزنامه می خواندم .
- ۲- داشتی روزنامه می خواندی .
- ۳- داشت روزنامه می خواند .
- ۴- داشتیم روزنامه می خواندیم .
- ۵- داشتید روزنامه می خواندید .
- ۶- داشتند روزنامه می خواندند .
- ۷- داشتم اتاقم را تمیز می کردم .
- ۸- داشتی اتاق را تمیز می کردی .
- ۹- داشت اتاقش را تمیز می کرد .
- ۱۰- داشتیم اتاقمان را تمیز می کردیم .
- ۱۱- داشتید اتاقتان را تمیز می کردید .
- ۱۲- داشتند اتاقشان را تمیز می کردند .
- ۱۳- داشتم به سرکار می رفتم .
- ۱۴- داشتی به سرکار می رفتی .
- ۱۵- داشت به سرکار می رفت .
- ۱۶- داشتیم به سرکار می رفتیم .
- ۱۷- داشتید به سرکار می رفتید .
- ۱۸- داشتند به سرکار می رفتند .
- ۱۹- داشتم خرید می کردم .
- ۲۰- داشتی خرید می کردی .
- ۲۱- داشت خرید می کرد .
- ۲۲- داشتیم خرید می کردیم .
- ۲۳- داشتید خرید می کردید .
- ۲۴- داشتند خرید می کردند .
- ۲۵- داشتم تلویزیون نگاه می کردم .
- ۲۶- داشتی تلویزیون نگاه می کردی .
- ۲۷- داشت تلویزیون نگاه می کرد .
- ۲۸- داشتیم تلویزیون نگاه می کردیم .
- ۲۹- داشتید تلویزیون نگاه می کردید .
- ۳۰- داشتند تلویزیون نگاه می کردند .

Week 89

Hello everyone, how are you?

Before we start today, let me wish you all a very Happy Christmas followed by a very successful and prosperous New Year. Let's hope that the coming year will be a year of friendship and peace throughout the world. Merry Christmas!

Many of you have been asking for a Chat Room on this site to have real time conversation with their friends who are learning Persian. Today, your dream has come true! I have just set up a Chat Room for you to enjoy. Frankly speaking, I do not know if it works good! Please let me know if there is any problem. As always, I will appreciate your suggestions and ideas. You may find the chat room either here or on the Home page.

NOTE: Please do not abuse of this learning tool for some so called immoral purposes. Thanks to all of you.

OK. As you remember, we have studied past continuous tense for the past couple of weeks. There is one more thing about this tense that is good to know. Today, we are going to learn the following structure:

Example:

I was eating lunch when he called.

As you noticed, the main discussion is on 'WHEN'. In past continuous tense, we can use 'WHEN' between two tenses. That is to say, we have 'WHEN' plus two other tenses. As you see in the above example, we have past continuous tense at one side and simple past tense at the other. Is that clear? I hope yes!

We can translate this kind of sentences into Persian in a couple of ways. The easiest one (at least I think it's the easiest!) is what we are going to learn now.

Here's how:

1- Translate the past continuous tense first.

2- Use /keh/ for 'WHEN'.

3- Translate the simple past tense.

Was it difficult? Of course not!

Let me try first:

To call = /telefon kærdæn/. Also (more conversational) /zæŋg zædæn/.

I was eating lunch when he called = /da:shtæm na:ha:r mi khordæm keh u: zæŋg zæd/. Easy, isn't it?

Now let's see another example:

I was watching TV when the electricity went.

/da:shtæm televiziyu:n nega:h mi kærdæm keh bærgħ ræft/.

Another example:

She was going when I saw her. /da:sht mi ræft keh u: ra: didæm/.

NOTE: The same rule is applicable for 'WHILE'.

Please go to useful drills page for more work. Have a nice week!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

Cloth

Month

For a long time

Several

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

66 - 606 - 6006 - 660 - 6600 - 6060

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Cloth <== = ل + ب + ا + س

Month / Moon <== = م + ا + ه

To eat <== = خ + و + ر + د + ن

Food / Meal <== = غ + ذ + ا

Several = = چ + ن + د + ی + ن

New Words:

To arrive = رسیدن /residæn/.

To sleep = خوابیدن /kha:bidæn/.

To study = درس خواندن /dærs kha:ndæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- I was sleeping when my father arrived.
- 2- You were sleeping when your father arrived.
- 3- She/he was sleeping when her/his father arrived.
- 4- We were sleeping when our father arrived.
- 5- You were sleeping when your father arrived.
- 6- They were sleeping when their father arrived.
- 7- Ali was sleeping when his father arrived.
- 8- Maryam /mæryæm/ (girl's name) was sleeping when her father arrived.
- 9- I was studying when my friend called.
- 10- You were studying when your friend called.
- 11- She/he was studying when her/his friend called.
- 12- We were studying when our friend called.
- 13- You were studying when your friend called.
- 14- They were studying when their friend called.
- 15- Ali was studying when his friend called.
- 16- Maryam was studying when her friend called.

- ۱- داشتم می خوابیدم که پدرم رسید.
- ۲- داشتی می خوابیدی که پدرت رسید.
- ۳- داشت می خوابید که پدرش رسید.
- ۴- داشتیم می خوابیدیم که پدرمان رسید.
- ۵- داشتید می خوابیدید که پدرتان رسید.
- ۶- داشتند می خوابیدند که پدرشان رسید.
- ۷- علی داشت می خوابید که پدرش رسید.
- ۸- مریم داشت می خوابید که پدرش رسید.
- ۹- داشتم درس می خواندم که دوستم زنگ زد.
- ۱۰- داشتی درس می خواندی که دوستت زنگ زد.
- ۱۱- داشت درس می خواند که دوستش زنگ زد.
- ۱۲- داشتیم درس می خواندیم که دوستان زنگ زد.
- ۱۳- داشتید درس می خواندید که دوستان زنگ زد.
- ۱۴- داشتند درس می خواندند که دوستان زنگ زد.
- ۱۵- علی داشت درس می خواند که دوستش زنگ زد.
- ۱۶- مریم داشت درس می خواند که دوستش زنگ زد.

Week 90

Salam Bacheh ha! Haletun chetoreh?

/sæla:m bæcheh ha:!/ /ha:letu:n chetoreh/?

Hi everyone, how are you? I hope you are doing good with your daily life as well as your Persian lessons. Who can tell me why I have written 'Salam Bacheh ha' in the beginning?

As you know, Bacheh = child

And, 'Bacheh ha' = children

No, don't get angry! I don't mean you are children! Actually, this is a friendly way for greeting close friends. You may simply use this when you meet close friends or get into a place where some of your friends are. You can use this for 'hello boys' - 'hello girls' - 'hello kids' - or even 'hello everybody' if they are close friends. But, don't use the singular form of this phrase (hello child! = Salam bacheh!!). The singular form is not accepted! (A piece of culture!!)

All right,

Before we continue, let me simply thank all of you for your kind messages and suggestions. Please keep in touch for sometimes I forget what I am supposed to do!!

Also, thank you very much for your kind notes regarding the Christmas message I have posted on the Homepage: (Don't you know that you yourselves are God's temple and that God's spirit lives in you? If anyone destroys God's temple, God will destroy him; for God's temple is sacred and you are that temple. Holy Bible 1 Corinthians 3:16-17 => May this Christmas bring peace, love, friendship, and mutual understanding to the peoples of all ideas. Amen! => Happy Christmas!)

I deeply hope the human being will respect each other instead of destroying one another.

Ok,

Today, we will do some more drills on Useful Drills page to close Past Continuous Tense chapter. Hopefully, this tense was not difficult for you. Please do the Quiz first and then go to Useful Drills. Have a wonderful Christmas time and a pleasant New Year!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

Monday

Wednesday

Friday

Tuesday

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

89 - 98 - 809 - 890 - 980 - 908 - 909 - 99

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Sunday <== = ی + ک + ش + ن + پ + ه

Tuesday <== = س + ه + ش + ن + پ + ه

Thursday <== = پ + ن + چ + ش + ن + پ + ه

Wednesday <== = چ + ه + ا + ر + ش + ن + پ + ه

Saturday = = ش + ن + پ + ه

New Words:

To fix = تعمیر کردن /tæmir kærdæn/.

To break = شکستن /shekæstæn/. **NOTE:** In English we say: 'I broke my hand', while in Persian we say: 'My hand broke'.

Finger = انگشت /ængosht/.

To brush (one's teeth) = مسواک کردن /mesva:k kærdæn/.

Tooth = دندان /dænda:n/.

Teeth = دندان ها /dænda:n ha:/.

Water = آب /a:b/.

To go = رفتن /ræftæn/.

Water went = آب رفت /a:b ræft/.

Bank = بانک /ba:nk/.

To see = To meet = دیدن /didæn/.

Landlord = صاحب خانه /sa:heb kha:neh/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

1- I was fixing my car when I broke my finger.

2- You were fixing your car when you broke your finger.

3- He/she was fixing his/her car when he/she broke his/her finger.

4- We were fixing our car when we broke our finger.

5- You were fixing you car when you broke your finger.

6- They were fixing their car when they broke their car.

7- Farshid was fixing his car when he broke his finger.

8- I was brushing my teeth when water went!

9- You were brushing your teeth when water went.

- 10- He/she was brushing his/her teeth when water went.
- 11- We were brushing our teeth when water went.
- 12- You were brushing your teeth when water went.
- 13- They were brushing their teeth when water went.
- 14- Leila was brushing her teeth when water went.
- 15- I was talking to Parviz /pærviz/ when I saw Pari /pæri/.
- 16- You were talking to Parviz when you saw Pari.
- 17- He/she was talking to Parviz when he/she saw Pari.
- 18- We were talking to Parviz when we saw Pari.
- 19- You were talking to Parviz when you saw Pari.
- 20- They were talking to Parviz when they saw Pari.
- 21- Ahmad was talking to Parviz when he saw Pari.
- 22- I was going to bank when I met the landlord.
- 23- You were going to bank when you met the landlord.
- 24- He/she was going to bank when he/she met the landlord.
- 25- We were going to bank when we met the landlord.
- 26- You were going to bank when you met the landlord.
- 27- They were going to bank when they met the landlord.
- 28- My brother was going to bank when he met the landlord.

- ۱- داشتم ماشینم را تعمیر می کردم که انگشتم شکست.
- ۲- داشتی ماشینت را تعمیر می کردی که انگشتت شکست.
- ۳- داشت ماشینش را تعمیر می کرد که انگشتش شکست.
- ۴- داشتیم ماشینمان را تعمیر می کردیم که انگشتمان شکست.
- ۵- داشتید ماشینتان را تعمیر می کردید که انگشتتان شکست.
- ۶- داشتند ماشینشان را تعمیر می کردند که انگشتشان شکست.
- ۷- فرشید داشت ماشینش را تعمیر می کرد که انگشتش شکست.
- ۸- داشتم دندان هایم را مسواک می کردم که آب رفت.
- ۹- داشتی دندان هایت را مسواک می کردی که آب رفت.
- ۱۰- داشت دندان هایش را مسواک می کرد که آب رفت.
- ۱۱- داشتیم دندان هایمان را مسواک می کردیم که آب رفت.
- ۱۲- داشتید دندان هایتان را مسواک می کردید که آب رفت.
- ۱۳- داشتند دندان هایشان را مسواک می کردند که آب رفت.
- ۱۴- لایلا داشت دندان هایش را مسواک می کرد که آب رفت.

- ۱۵- داشتم با پرویز حرف می زدم که پری را دیدم .
- ۱۶- داشتی با پرویز حرف می زدی که پری را دیدی .
- ۱۷- داشت با پرویز حرف می زد که پری را دید .
- ۱۸- داشتیم با پرویز حرف می زدیم که پری را دیدیم .
- ۱۹- داشتید با پرویز حرف می زدید که پری را دیدید .
- ۲۰- داشتند با پرویز حرف می زدند که پری را دیدند .
- ۲۱- احمد داشت با پرویز حرف می زد که پری را دید .
- ۲۲- داشتم به بانک می رفتم که صاحب خانه را دیدم .
- ۲۳- داشتی به بانک می رفتی که صاحب خانه را دیدی .
- ۲۴- داشت به بانک می رفت که صاحب خانه را دید .
- ۲۵- داشتیم به بانک می رفتیم که صاحب خانه را دیدیم .
- ۲۶- داشتید به بانک می رفتید که صاحب خانه را دیدید .
- ۲۷- داشتند به بانک می رفتند که صاحب خانه را دیدند .
- ۲۸- برادرم داشت به بانک می رفت که صاحب خانه را دید .

Week 91

Salam bacheh ha! Cheh khabar?! /cheh khæbær/.

If you pay more attention to your Iranian friends when talking to each other, you will notice that they use several sentences for the same meaning!

Whenever I call my relatives or friends (which I don't do very often!) I spend several minutes asking and answering the questions that convey the same message!! It's not my fault! This is also a piece of culture!! Different nations use different way for greetings. Most probably our Iranian ancestors had no idea how expensive the telephone fees would be in future!! And more important, they didn't know, for sure, that many of their offspring would have to call them from abroad! That's why they have created lots of phrases for a simple greeting! One of them is what you see above (Cheh khabar?), which means: What's the news OR What's new.

You will find yourself exploring your mind to find fresh news and talking for several minutes (if you are lucky!). If not, you will have to keep on speaking until somebody stops you! Don't laugh! That's true! And you know what? When you finish your stories, they may say: 'Khob, digeh cheh khabar?!' which means 'what else then?!' OR 'what more fresh news do you have?!' They could use this second phrase each time you finish your story and make you speak more!! In this way, they don't need to talk since all they have to do is listening!

Actually, this is not a question at all. This is just an opening phrase to start conversation; like 'good weather, isn't it?' or something like this.

Fortunately, this phrase (Cheh khabar?) has a very short answer. To avoid speaking, all you need to say is Salamati /sæla:mæti/. In a broad meaning, Salamati means 'everything is ok'.

Sometimes, you could say Salamati ye shoma, which means 'my good news is that you are safe and sound!' Don't worry if the person is in a hospital bed!! This one is more polite than the first one. Just use it!

Khob, Digehe che khabar?!!!

OK,

If you remember, we talked about Relative Pronouns in lessons 84 and 85. To review those lessons and to make sure that you have not forgotten what you learned, I give you some more drills today to enjoy! Then, let me see what we can do next week!

Have a great time and Khoda Hafez!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (one in simple past tense, one in present perfect tense using 'for', one in simple future tense, and one in present continuous tense).

To change

To lose

Parents

Job

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

13 - 303 - 301 - 103 - 131 - 311 - 113 - 130

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Parents <== = و + ا + ل + د + ی + ن

Bag <== = ک + ی + ف

Anyone <== = ک + س + ی

Medicine <== = د + ا + ر + و

Job = = ش + غ + ل

New Words:

To work = کار کردن /ka:r kærda:n/.

Embassy = سفارت /sefa:ræ:t/.

Canada = کانادا /ka:na:da:/.

Canadian = کانادایی /ka:na:da: i:/. NOTE: In Persian, Canadian embassy = Canada embassy. It means that we should use the country name (Canada) for (Canadian). This rule is applicable when we have a name after a nationality. Example: Canadian people/team/flag/ - German people/team/flag/ - Iranian people/team/flag/ - and so on.

President = رئیس جمهور /ræi:s e jomhu:r/.

Prime minister = نخست وزیر /nækhost væzi:r/.

Mayor = شهردار /shæhr da:r/.

Leader = رهبر /ræh bær/.

Governor = فرماندار /færma:n da:r/.

Person = شخص /shækhs/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

1- The man whom I saw yesterday works in the Canadian embassy.

2- The man whom you saw yesterday works in the Canadian embassy.

- 3- The man whom he/she saw yesterday works in the Canadian embassy.
- 4- The man whom we saw yesterday works in the Canadian embassy.
- 5- The man whom you saw yesterday works in the Canadian embassy.
- 6- The man whom they saw yesterday works in the Canadian embassy.
- 7- The man whom Ali saw yesterday works in the Canadian embassy.
- 8- The person who is speaking on TV is the president.
- 9- The person who is speaking on TV is the prime minister.
- 10- The person who is speaking on TV is the mayor.
- 11- The person who is speaking on TV is the leader.
- 12- The person who is speaking on TV is Gandhi.
- 13- The person who is speaking on TV is Nelson Mandela.
- 14- The person who is speaking on TV is the governor.
- 15- The person who is speaking on TV is my brother.
- 16- The person who is speaking on TV is me.

- ۱- مردی را که دیروز دیدم در سفارت کانادا کار می کند.
- ۲- مردی را که دیروز دیدی در سفارت کانادا کار می کند.
- ۳- مردی را که دیروز دید در سفارت کانادا کار می کند.
- ۴- مردی را که دیروز دیدیم در سفارت کانادا کار می کند.
- ۵- مردی را که دیروز دیدید در سفارت کانادا کار می کند.
- ۶- مردی را که دیروز دیدند در سفارت کانادا کار می کند.
- ۷- مردی را که علی دیروز دید در سفارت کانادا کار می کند.
- ۸- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند رئیس جمهور است.
- ۹- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند نخست وزیر است .
- ۱۰- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند شهردار است .
- ۱۱- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند رهبر است .
- ۱۲- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند گاندری است .
- ۱۳- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند نلسون ماندلا است
- ۱۴- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند فرماندار است .
- ۱۵- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند برادر من است .
- ۱۶- شخصی که دارد در تلویزیون صحبت می کند من هستم .

Week 92

Salam bach.cheh ha, haletun chetoreh? Khub hastin?

Before we start today, let me thank you for your message of condolences and sympathy on Bam earthquake. I am grateful to all of you.

How is your Farsi now? Have you made any progress? Can you see any difference in you before and after taking this online course? Do you like this course? I hope you do!

So far, we have learned many things. Please review the lessons to keep them fresh in your mind.

Today, we are going to learn a very simple structure. Let's face it together!

There is a book on the table.

There are two books on the table.

Yes, 'There is' and 'There are' are what we are going to learn today. Probably, you find these phrases very simple. Believe me or not, lots of English language teachers and students in Iran still have problems translating them into Farsi. I know I will be criticized for this by some language hardliners! Don't worry, somebody must tell them!

Most of language teachers and students in Iran use the verb 'To Exist' for 'There is' and 'There are'. It doesn't sound wrong, yet it is odd. Today, I am asking you to use 'To Be' in this structure not 'To Exist'. Try to learn it now before you get used to Exist (!) and before you stand against me as a hardliner!

Ok,

There is = There are = است /æst/.

Was it difficult? For sure not!! Can you imagine such an easy word has been a hot topic for discussion for years?!

Now, let's translate our Persian sentences into English. Ready?

There is a book on the table.

There is = است /æst/

A book = کتابی /keta:bi/ => You could say یک کتاب /yek keta:b/ for 'A book'. We have studied it before. But here, use NOUN + /i:/ sound. This one is much better. Example: کتابی /keta:bi/ -

درختی /derakhti/ - میزی /mi:zi/.

On = روی /ru: ye/

The table = میز /mi:z/

So, we should have the following sentence in Persian:

. کتابی روی میز است /keta:bi ru: ye mi:z æst/.

NOTE: in such sentences, 'A Book' or whatsoever that sits in this place, is taken as the subject. Don't complain! I know it is a bit different from our normal subjects. But, it works as our subject. Ok?

All right,

As I just told you,

There is = There are = است /æst/.

I hope you have got the point. We do not need to change our Persian verb in this structure. No matter if there is only one book or one million books on the table. Just use /æst/ as your verb.

Example:

There are two books on the table. . دو کتاب روی میز است /do keta:b ru: ye mi:z æst/.

Example:

There are ten books on the table. . ده کتاب روی میز است /dæh keta:b ru: ye mi:z æst/.

Example:

There are 25 books on the table. . بیست و پنج کتاب روی میز است /bist o pænj keta:b ru: ye mi:z æst/.

I hope this lesson was very easy for you.

Please go to Useful Drills page to do your share! دستتون درد نکنه !! /dæstetu:n dærd nækoneh/ !!. I will tell you about this phrase next week.

Khoda Hafez.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Electricity

To rent

To go

To come

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

19 - 91 - 919 - 991 - 119 - 911

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Radio <== = ر + ا + د + ی + و

Telephone <== = ت + ل + ف + ن

Room <== = ر + ا + ت + ق

Car <== = م + ا + ش + ی + ن

House = = خ + ا + ن + ه

New Words:

Drawer = کشو /kesho/.

In = در /dær/.

Room = اتاق /ota:gh/.

Mirror = آینه /a:yeneh/.

Sofa = مبل /mobl/.

Tree = درخت /derækht/.

Garden = باغ /ba:gh/.

Picture = عکس /æks/.

Wall = دیوار /diva:r/.

Parking = پارکینگ /pa:rking/. => we use the same word (parking) in Persian.

Chair = صندلی /sændæli/.

Under = زیر /zi:r/.

Under something = /zi:r e something/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- There is a book in the drawer.
- 2- There are five books in the drawer.
- 3- There is a TV in the room.
- 4- There are two TVs in the room.
- 5- There is a mirror on the sofa.
- 6- There are two mirrors on the sofa.
- 7- There is a tree in the garden.
- 8- There are ten trees in the garden.
- 9- There is a picture on the wall.
- 10- There are three pictures on the wall.
- 11- There is a car in the parking.
- 12- There are four cars in the parking.
- 13- There is a telephone under the chair.

14- There are two telephones under the chair.

- ۱- کتابی در کتو است .
- ۲- پنج کتاب در کتو است .
- ۳- تلویزیونی در اتاق است .
- ۴- دو تلویزیون در اتاق است .
- ۵- آینه ای روی مبل است .
- ۶- دو آینه روی مبل است .
- ۷- درختی در باغ است .
- ۸- ده درخت در باغ است .
- ۹- عکسی روی دیوار است .
- ۱۰- سه عکس روی دیوار است .
- ۱۱- ماشینی در پارکینگ است .
- ۱۲- چهار ماشین در پارکینگ است .
- ۱۳- تلفنی زیر صندلی است .
- ۱۴- دو تلفن زیر صندلی است .

Week 93

Salam bach.cheh ha, haletun chetoreh? Khub hastin?

Before we start, let me thank you again for all your kind and encouraging notes and suggestions. I would also like to offer my special appreciation to Christine and Alicja (from Poland) whose warm messages I cannot reply on time. I am confident that they will forgive me!

دستتون درد نكنه !! /dæstetu:n dærd nækoneh/!! Do you have any idea about this phrase?

In word for word translation, it means something like this: I hope your hands are not paining! OR, May your hands be in no pains!! But, this phrase does not refer to hands! It simply means 'Thank you'.

What are you supposed to say in reply? Good question?!

In reply, you should say a phrase that means something like this: I hope your head is not paining! OR,

سرتون درد نكنه ! /særetu:n dærd nækoneh/!
May your head be in no pains!! The Persian phrase is this:

Where to use these phrases? Another good question?!!

Anywhere, just anywhere. To mention a few examples: when you eat at somebody's home and you want to thank, when somebody gives you a phone call and you want to thank them for calling, when somebody comes to visit you and you want to thank them for coming, and in any other situations. Just say

دستتون درد نكنه !! /dæstetu:n dærd nækoneh/!!

It is the exact equivalent for 'Thank you'

In response to all kinds of the above mentioned 'Thank you', you could simply say سرتون درد نكنه ! /særetu:n dærd nækoneh/, which means 'You are Welcome'. All right,

Do you remember our last week's lesson? Good! It was about 'There is' and 'There are'. Did you notice something in the examples? I guess not!!

All the names (or nouns) we had in our examples were 'Things or Animals'. There was no human in our examples. Right?

I did it on purpose to avoid confusion.

Now look at the following example:

1- There is one boy in the class.

2- There are two boys in the class. You already know the rule. Just apply the same rule here. However, there is a very small difference here. Since 'boy' is human, he has some priorities over animals!! So, in this case, we may grant this human two choices! What are those?

We can use both the singular and the plural form of our Persian verbs. Both of them seem correct in Persian.

In short, if the subject is human in this structure:

There is = است /æst/

There are = است /æst/

There are = هستند /hæstænd/. So, the above examples should be translated as follows:

1- There is one boy in the class = پسری در کلاس است /pesæri dær kela:s æst/.

2- There are two boys in the class = دو پسر در کلاس است /do pesær dær kela:s æst/ = OR =
دو پسر در کلاس هستند /do pesær dær kela:s hæstænd/.

Was it difficult? Hopefully not!

Please do the Quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page to do your share. /dæstetu:n dærd nækoneh/!!
See you next week!

Khoda Hafez.

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To beat

They broke

He brought

To bring

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

17 - 71 - 710 - 701 - 107 - 170 - 117 - 1070

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To bring <== آ + و + ر + د + ن =

To buy <== خ + ر + ی + د + ن =

To beat <== ز + د + ن =

To break <== ش + ک + س + ت + ن =

To become = ش + د + ن =

New Words:

People = مردم /mærdom/ - here in such contexts, it means نفر /næfær/.

Hospital = بیمارستان /bima:resta:n/.

Lady = خانم /kha:nom/.
Street = خیابان /khiya:ba:n/.
Store = مغازه /mægha:zeh/.
Glass = لیوان /li:va:n/.
Kitchen = آشپزخانه /a:shpæz kha:neh/.
Knife = چاقو /cha:ghu:/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

- 1- There are ten people in the bus.
- 2- There is one man in the taxi.
- 3- There are four girls in the hospital.
- 4- There are six teachers in our school.
- 5- There are two men in the park.
- 6- There is one lady in the street.
- 7- There are three children in the supermarket.
- 8- There are nine TVs in this store.
- 9- There are seven glasses in the kitchen.
- 10- There are eight knives under the table.

NOTE: As suggested by some students, we do not have the Persian writings for the above sentences today. Instead, I have recorded the Persian translation of the above sentences in MP3 format. You may click on the links below to correct your translation through listening. This gives you another opportunity to improve your listening ability as well. Please do the translation first without clicking on the sound files. No cheating!!

Thanks to Suzanne for her suggestion.

Please kindly note that this site has a monthly bandwidth limit. It also has the disk space limit. The more sound files I put on this site, the less disk space I have on my server, which in time, will push me to pay more to the Web Hosts to get a bigger space. So, please understand me if I cannot post too many sound files every week. You know that I am teaching for free and, honestly, it is not possible for me to spend more money on this site. Please accept my apologies.

Translations of the above sentences:

- Sentence 1
- Sentence 2
- Sentence 3
- Sentence 4
- Sentence 5
- Sentence 6
- Sentence 7
- Sentence 8
- Sentence 9
- Sentence 10

Week 94

پدرم در اومد!! /pedæræm dær u:mæd/!!

Hello everyone, I hope all of you are fine and doing good.

To start with, let me say 'SORRY' to all of you for my considerably long absence, both in the class and in my mailbox! I know a lot of you sent me messages and expected quick reply but your dream did not come true! However, I was busy writing back to many of you during the past two days and several dozens,

finally, received a reply from me yesterday and today. Don't believe me? Go ask them!!
The main reason for such absence was this Persian Traditional Music on CD that was a very big challenge for me and I worked days and nights on it to do it as perfect as possible. This CD **پدرمو در آورد!!** /pedæræm o dær a:vord/!! And I hope you will like it.

All right,

Something that gives you too many troubles and makes you really exhausted, has a very funny and common equivalent in Persian. Suppose you are working on something for almost a long time and then somebody arrives. You need to say something to that person to show how tough time you had with that

job (here, I have chosen this CD as my example). I said: **این سی دی پدرمو در آورد!!** /in si: di pedæræm o dær a:vord/.

In word for word translation, it means: This CD took my father out! But it says something like this: This CD almost killed me (I worked a lot on it).

In similar situation, you could also say: **پدرم در اومد!!** /pedæræm dær u:mæd/!! In a word for word translation, this phrase means: My father came out!! But, it means almost the same as the first Persian sentence. It says: I am really exhausted - OR - I am terribly tired (because of such and such job).

Ok, it was another piece of our Iranian culture for this week!

Today, our lesson seems a bit funny! However, in reality it is not.

This is our lesson today:

We have the sample pages of ten traditional music tracks on the Traditional Music Main Page. All you need to do today (and for the rest of the week) is to go to those sample pages and study the available words as well as the translation of the lyrics on those pages. You may also listen to the parts of the tracks that are available on the same pages. It seems fun, but it is a lot of work for you to do. Study them carefully and get ready for our next lesson. Please take it serious because I have something to do with you next week! You will know about it next week.

As for the Let's Write page today, I have written the name of those traditional singers for you. Believe me that it is very difficult to write on the screen of your computer! That is why my handwritings on Let's Write Page is not very good! Believe me or not, my Persian handwriting with a pen on paper is acceptably wonderful! (A little boasting is ok!!)

All right,

Have a very nice and busy week with your big homework!

See you then and Khoda Hafez!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

President

Anything

To resign

To leave

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

12 - 21 - 212 - 221 - 112 - 121 - 211

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Driver <== ر + ا + ن + ن + د + ه =

Prime Minister < == = ر + ی + ز + و + ت + س + خ + ن
 President < == = ر + و + ه + م + ج + س + ی + ی + ر
 To say < == = ن + ت + ف + گ
 Anything = = ی + ز + ی + چ

New Words:

Please visit the Traditional Music Main Page to see the new words. (As advised in Lesson 94)

Please translate the following sentences into Persian.

Please visit the Traditional Music Main Page to learn the translation work. (As advised in Lesson 94)

Week 95

یه دیوونه یه سنگو تو چاه میندازه صد تا عاقلم نمی تونن درش بیارن !
 ye divu:neh ye sæng o tu: cha:h minda:zeh, sæd ta: a:ghelæm nemitu:næn dæresh biya:ræn!/. (A Persian proverb)
 Hello everybody, how are you? I hope all of you are fine and enjoying your life.

Four years ago, computer was a very strange creature for me! I had never worked nor played with this modern tool in my life. Don't laugh at me! This is true. I had never the opportunity to know this machine which is a very big part of my life now.

One day in around mid 2000, I met one of my friends on the way to shopping. He was going to buy a computer. I don't know why, but I asked him to wait for me. All of a sudden, I had decided to buy a computer without any background or knowledge of it. The next day, we found ourselves on the way back home with two new computers! One for him and one was mine. We took my computer to my home and my friend set it up for me, turned it on and left. I started clicking on some icons on the desktop with special care and fear. Any sound of the computer would scare me very much. I thought I would never learn about this new creature. After a couple of hours, it was time to turn it off. But how? My friend had not told me how to shut down the computer! What was the best way then? I unplugged (disconnected) the wire from the main electricity line. That's it! The computer went off!

Next time when I connected the computer wire back again to the electricity line, the computer turned on! Then, a message said, "The scan disk is now checking for errors! To avoid seeing this message shut down your computer by clicking on Start" Wow, this machine knew how I had turned it off last time! It took me hours to find the Start menu and learn how to shut it down properly!

After a couple of months, I met Paul whom you almost know. He said he had a website teaching guitar online. It was a wonderful news. I talked to him about my interest in teaching Persian. He encouraged me to write a couple of lessons so that he could help me build a website. At that time, I could hardly write on Microsoft Word. It would take me hours to write one page. But, I did my best. After I wrote a lesson or two, I contacted Paul to give me a hand with the website. The day when he came was one of my happiest day and the same day when he left became one of my busiest days! At first, I thought my lessons would go online in a couple of hours. Do you know what happened?

He had brought one CD with him. He installed a program on my computer. He opened that program and said, "This is DreamWeaver. Here are the help menu and the Tutorials. Read the DreamWeaver Tutorial and start making a page based on what the tutorial says. Once you made the pages, put your lessons on them. Next time when I come, I will upload the lessons for you!"

Almost four months passed! I had spent days and nights to make the pages. There was one more problem now. How could I write Persian on my English Windows? This time, I had to look for a Persian software. But I had no idea about such tools. To make the long story short, I finally managed all these things by October 2001. The site was ready eventually. Those pages I had made were my masterpieces! Yet still, Paul did not like them very much! He was encouraging me to make the pages afresh. Who would listen to him though? Who could go through those Tutorials again? I insisted and he finally accepted to upload those pages for me. But, to where? I asked him to just put the lessons somewhere on the internet! He laughed at me and said it was not possible. We had to buy a space and a domain name for the website. We went through all those processes and finally I became a webmaster!!

Now after some four years, I find new mistakes on the site from time to time. Two weeks ago, I was reviewing the previous lessons when I remembered what Paul had asked me to do long ago. So, I made all those pages afresh! I hope the new design look much better than the former ones. But still, I am not fully satisfied.

In Persian, when somebody does something that is not based on wisdom and logics - when he doesn't listen to others - when he makes troubles due to lack of knowledge or experience and faces the consequences (or makes other people face the consequences of his work) is described as a stupid person who has dropped a stone in a well in such a way that one hundred wise persons cannot take that stone out! (cannot solve the problem)

We say, **یه دیوونه یه سنگو تو چاه میندازه صد تا عاقلم نمی تونن درش بیارن!** /ye divu:neh ye sæng o tu: cha:h minda:zeh, sæd ta: a:ghelæm nemitu:næn dæresh biya:ræn!/.!! And that person was Hassan H. who is still facing the consequences of what he did a few years ago!

In spite of the fact that I am still facing the consequences of my poor job in making the pages in the beginning, I have learned some big lessons. Some of them are:

- 1- When there is a will, there is a way.
- 2- Don't worry if you do not have experience about a job that you are going to start. You can always get experience on the way.
- 3- Don't feel bad when people criticize you or your work. Those who criticize you even in a harsh language are better friends than those who just give you false praise.
- 4- Our works are subject to expiration. Whatever we do that looks perfect today is imperfect or even boring in future. Those who introduce Works, Writings, Messages or whatever that remain fresh throughout the history and do not get expired must be highly respected for they have experienced and introduced something that others could not.

All right,

I don't know the reason, but I thought I needed to just speak today! I hope I haven't wasted your time. Please go to Useful Drills page to do your homework. You have a lot to do today!

Take care and Khoda Hafez!

P.S. Please let me know of any broken or wrong links. Thank you.

Quiz:

- 1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)
- 2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Far

Near

Dirty

Lonely

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

14 - 41 - 441 - 414 - 441 - 114 - 141

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Dirty <== = ک + ث + ی + ف

Sad <== = غ + م + گ + ی + ن

Happy <== = خ + و + ش + ح + ا + ل

Near <== = ن + ز + د + ی + ک

Far = = د + و + ر

As I told you before, our Useful Drills page is a bit different this week. If you remember, I told you last time to go through the Persian Traditional Music page and get ready for this week. Did you do that? Yes? Ok, let's see!

We have a very easy Quiz for today. Please take the Quiz first. You may check your answers later by going through the related pages on Persian Traditional Music page.

Ready?

1- Say these words in English:

جام /ja:m/ =

طوفان /tu:fa:n/ =

شکسته /shekæsteh/ =

تار /ta:r/ =

ابر /æbr/ =

خو کردن /khu: kærdæn/ =

عشاق /osh.sha:gh/ =

پاک /pa:k/ =

فهم /fæhm/ =

طبیعت /tæbi æt/ =

سیمین /simin/ =

پیمانه /peima:neh/ =

سر نهادن /sær næha:dæn/ =

رخ /rokh/ =

2- Say these words in Persian:

If =

Ruler =

Tulip =

Dawn =

Huntsman (hunter) =

Cruelty =

Description =

Unique =

Busy =

Blood =

Thorn =

Plea =

Failed (unsuccessful) =

3- Explain these words either in Persian, English or in your native language:

ساقی /sa:ghi/ =

ماه /ma:h/ =

مهار /mæha:r/ =

نی /ney/ =

وصال /vesa:l/ =

داغ /da:gh/ =

سوسن /su:sæn/ =

دامن از کسی کشیدن /da:mæn æz kesi keshidæn/ =

سرو /særv/ =

درویش /dærvish/ =

صنم /sænæm/ =

4- Translate these lines into English:

A- ساغرم شکست ای ساقی رفته ام زدست ای ساقی /sa:ghæræm shekæst ey sa:ghi/
/ræfteh æm zedæst ey sa:ghi/

B- داد و بیداد از این روزگار ماهو دادن به شب های تار /da:d o bida:d æz in ru:zega:r/
/ma:h o da:dæn beh shæb ha: ye ta:r/

C- جان روز و جان شب ای جان تو انتظارم انتظارم روز و شب /ja:n e ru:z o ja:n e
shæb ey ja:n e to/ /enteza:ræm, enteza:ræm ru:z o shæb/

D- اینجاست یار گم شده گرد جهان مگرد /inja:st ya:r e gom shodeh gerd e jæha:n mægærd/

E- جمعی به تو مشغول و تو غایب زمیانه /jæm i: beh to mæshghu:l o to gha:yeb ze miya:neh/

F- همه توحید تو گویند که به توحید سزایی /hæmeh tohi:d e to gu:yænd keh beh tohi:d seza: i:/

G- ساقی بده پیمانہ ای زان می که بی خویشم کند /sa:ghi bedeh peima:neh i: za:n mey keh
bi khishæm konæd/

5- Introduce these persons either in Persian, English, or in your native language:

A- Marzieh

B- Shajarian

C- Ya Hagi

6- Persian classical poetry is musical by itself. It has rhythm that can be easily identified. I have chosen some lines of five poems to let you notice the rhythm (the easier ones). Please listen to the sound files below first. Then try this method with tracks 3 - 5- 6- 9 - 10

Here are the samples:

Sample 1 (track 3)

Sample 2- (track 5)

Sample 3 (track 6)

Sample 4 (track 9)

Sample 5 (track 10)

All right,

I hope you enjoyed the Quiz. Have a nice time and Khoda Hafez!

Week 96

Hello everyone,

I wanted to start a new section from this week that covers Passive sentences. However, I feel many of you are not ready to take that step since it seems a bit (not very!) difficult. So, I have just put it off to some other weeks. In the meantime, I would like to ask you to please review all tenses to warm up yourselves. Do you still remember what I told you during our first lessons? Foundation is very important. Do your best to be fluent with the essentials.

All right,

Today we are going to learn a very simple pattern in Persian. See the following examples:

A- I should have known it.

B- You should have known it.

C- He should have told you.

And similar patterns.

In Persian, we have a very simple pattern for this structure. Let's do it step by step.

1- Find the main verb in your sentence. (In the above sentences, Know and Tell are main verbs).

2- Change the main verb into Simple Past tense (EX: To know [something] = دانستن /da:nestæn/. Delete ن /nu:n/, and you will have دانست /da:nest/, which is in simple past tense). Or, (To Tell = گفتن /goftæn/. Delete ن /nu:n/, and you will have گفت /goft/, which is in simple past tense).

3- Put می /mi/ before this simple past tense. (Ex: می دانست /mi da:nest/ - OR می گفت /mi goft/).

4- Look at the Subject, and put the appropriate suffix at the end of your verb. (Ex: If the subject is 'I', put ام /mim/ at the end of your verb. If the subject is 'You', put ی /i:/ at the end of your verb. If the subject is 'He', put nothing at the end of your verb). As for the above examples: می دانستم /mi da:nestæm/ - می گفتی /mi gofti/.

5- Put the word باید /ba:yæd/ before your verb.

That's it. Finished!

A- I should have known it. باید می دانستم /ba:yæd mi da:nestæm/.

B- You should have known it. باید می دانستی /ba:yæd mi da:nesti/.

C- He should have told you. باید به شما می گفت /ba:yæd beh shoma: mi goft/.

NOTE: In sentence C above, you already know that Objects come before verbs in Persian since verbs come at the end of your sentences. Right?

Ok, please go to Useful Drills page to practice more.

See you next week!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To talk to somebody

To introduce

To arrest

On TV

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

91 - 19 - 119 - 911 - 919 - 991 - 109 - 190 - 910

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To speak <== = ص + ح + ب + ت + ک + ر + د + ن

To repair <== = ت + ع + م + ی + ر + ک + ر + د + ن

To meet <== = م + ل + ا + ق + ا + ت + ک + ر + د + ن

To teach <== = د + ر + س + د + ا + د + ن

To speak = = ح + ر + ف + ز + د + ن

New Words:

To call = زنگ زدن /zæng zædæn/.

To clean = تمیز کردن /tæmiz kærdæn/.

To go = رفتن /ræftæn/.

To buy = خریدن /khæridæn/.

Note: You should add می /mi/ and the suffixes to the second parts of your Compound Verbs. Example:

I should have cleaned = باید تمیز می کردم /ba:yæd tæmiz mi kærdæm/.

They should have called = باید زنگ می زدند /ba:yæd zæng mi zædænd/.

1- I should have called.

2- You should have called.

3- He/she should have called.

4- We should have called.

5- You should have called.

6- They should have called.

7- I should have cleaned.

8- You should have cleaned.

9- He/she should have cleaned.

10- We should have cleaned.

11- You should have cleaned.

12- They should have cleaned.

13- I should have gone.

14- You should have gone.

15- He/she should have gone.

16- We should have gone.

17- You should have gone.

18- They should have gone.

19- I should have bought.

20- You should have bought.

21- He/she should have bought.

22- We should have bought.

23- You should have bought.

24- They should have bought.

- ۱- باید زنگ می زدم .
- ۲- باید زنگ می زدی .
- ۳- باید زنگ می زد .
- ۴- باید زنگ می زدیم .
- ۵- باید زنگ می زدید .
- ۶- باید زنگ می زدند .
- ۷- باید تمیز می کردم .
- ۸- باید تمیز می کردی .
- ۹- باید تمیز می کرد .
- ۱۰- باید تمیز می کردیم .
- ۱۱- باید تمیز می کردید .
- ۱۲- باید تمیز می کردند .
- ۱۳- باید می رفتم .
- ۱۴- باید می رفتی .
- ۱۵- باید می رفت .
- ۱۶- باید می رفتیم .
- ۱۷- باید می رفتید .
- ۱۸- باید می رفتند .
- ۱۹- باید می خریدم .
- ۲۰- باید می خریدی .
- ۲۱- باید می خرید .
- ۲۲- باید می خریدیم .
- ۲۳- باید می خریدید .
- ۲۴- باید می خریدند .

Week 97

Hello everyone,

"No happiness can be yours if the spirit of Falsehood directs your lives. Cast off from your selves the bonds that chain you to Untruth." Zoroaster.

As you probably know, we are approaching March 20!

The last day of winter ends in the first day of spring! This day is called New Day or Norouz (Norooz) in Iran when the New Year starts. You may find more about Norouz here.

I would like to take advantage of the opportunity to simply wish all of you a very prosperous Persian New Year. سال نو مبارک ! /Sa:l e no Moba:ræk/!

Or, عید شما مبارک ! /i:d e shoma: moba:ræk/!

Both of them mean: Happy New Year to you!

All right, please do the quiz first, then go to Useful Drills page to have more practice on our previous lesson.

See you next week!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Newspaper

To go to work

To shop (to go shopping)

To watch

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

13 - 31 - 113 - 311 - 313 - 131 - 113 - 311 - 331

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Room <== = ق + ا + ت + ا

Clean <== = ز + ی + م + ت

Dirty <== = ک + ت + ی + ف

Fat <== = ق + ا + چ

Warm <= = گ + ر + م

Cold <= = د + ر + س

New Words:

To know (something) = دانستن /da:nestæn/.

To kiss = بوسیدن /bu:sidæn/.

To invite = دعوت کردن /dævæt kærdæn/.

Note: You should add می /mi/ and the suffixes to the second parts of your Compound Verbs. Example:

I should have cleaned = باید تمیز می کردم /ba:yæd tæmiz mi kærdæm/.

They should have called = باید زنگ می زدند /ba:yæd zæng mi zædænd/.

23. I must have known (it).
24. You must have known (it).
25. She/he must have known (it).
26. We must have known (it).
27. You must have known (it).
28. They must have known (it).
29. Farshid must have known (it).
30. Maryam must have known (it).
31. I must have kissed her.
32. You must have kissed her.
33. She/he must have kissed him/her.
34. We must have kissed her.
35. You must have kissed her.
36. They must have kissed her.
37. Farshid must have kissed Maryam.
38. Maryam must have kissed Farshid.
39. I must have invited her.

40. You must have invited her.
41. She/he must have invited her.
42. We must have invited her.
43. You must have invited her.
44. They must have invited her.

- ۱- باید (آن را) می دانستم .
- ۲- باید (آن را) می دانستی .
- ۳- باید (آن را) می دانست .
- ۴- باید (آن را) می دانستیم .
- ۵- باید (آن را) می دانستید .
- ۶- باید (آن را) می دانستند .
- ۷- فرشید باید (آن را) می دانست .
- ۸- مریم باید (آن را) می دانست .
- ۹- باید او را می بوسیدم .
- ۱۰- باید او را می بوسیدی .
- ۱۱- باید او را می بوسید .
- ۱۲- باید او را می بوسیدیم .
- ۱۳- باید او را می بوسیدید .
- ۱۴- باید او را می بوسیدند .
- ۱۵- فرشید باید مریم (= او) را می بوسید .
- ۱۶- مریم باید فرشید (= او) را می بوسید .
- ۱۷- باید او را دعوت می کردم .
- ۱۸- باید او را دعوت می کردی .
- ۱۹- باید او را دعوت می کرد .
- ۲۰- باید او را دعوت می کردیم .
- ۲۱- باید او را دعوت می کردید .
- ۲۲- باید او را دعوت می کردند .

Week 98

Hello everyone,

First of all, I would like to thank those who sent their New Year wishes to me on the eve of our Persian New Year. Thank you and Happy New Year to all of you!

Before we start today, I would like to share something with you.

It is somehow a response to those who do not believe there is still love in this commercial world. Don't misunderstand me, I am not preaching you! And I don't like people preach me either!

Let me ask you a question. How much are you ready to give away for your friends?

Nothing? As much as you can? Let me see who is that person? It depends? You have not thought of it? (Me too!!)

But somebody has! A nice lady from southern California sent me a message last week that impressed me a lot. They are in touch with a Persian family. Her granddaughter **is going to** be the bride of this Iranian family.

How much would you care for the husband of your future finance's sister if you were that girl? Probably not that much! In these days, people hardly love their own fiancé!!

But you know what? This girl is going to donate one of her kidneys to the brother-in-law of her future husband. What is this if not love? She is living among you, at this age, and in this commercial world.

The next are two of the messages I received from this lady as well as her contact address. Feel free to contact her and express your feeling to her family. For sure, they need your spiritual support and prayer during such moments. Do not let them feel lonely if you can. They are in my prayers.

Message 1

Hello Hassan, from Southern California ,

I enjoyed your website.

I have been invited for the first time, to celebrate the New Year with Persian friends, at their home. Could you please advise me, on what would be an appropriate hostess gift? I thought about preparing a special dish to add to their table, but I have no idea what it would be, I am open to your suggestions. I often take flowers, or a special wine, or candy to a hostess. But, I want my gift to be appropriate for this happy occasion.

Thank you for your time,

Happy New Year!

Sincerely,

Jeanne

Message 2

Dear Hassan,

Thank you ever so much for your prompt response. My granddaughter (age 30) will be marrying into a lovely Persian family. The family has invited us to share their New Years, as we had included them in our family New Years, January 1.

I love the idea of cloth for the mother of the family. The party will be held at the mother of the groom-to-be home. Also in attendance will be her mother, a beautiful woman who speaks little English. I think I'll choose something for her, and the hostess.

A note about my granddaughter. She will be donating a kidney next month to the husband of her fiancée's sister. Needless to say, I am very proud of her, and a bit worried. It is all in God's hands.

You have been most kind with your suggestions. Thank you for your interest and time.

And, a special Happy New Year to you and yours,

Fondly,

Jeanne

You may reach Jeanne at: jeannemoody1@mac.com

All right, now let us see what we have today.

Many of you have been asking for a Persian song (like a Persian lullaby) to sleep with!! I wish you had asked for some awakening song!!

Actually and honestly, they have not asked a song for themselves! They want such a song for their little kids.

I could not find such a song on internet. I surfed my intranet then! I mean my brain! Luckily, I found a song in there. I remember I listened to this song long ago and dreamed that one day I would sing this song for my children to sleep!! Sometimes, dreams come true!

The only problem is that I am just feeling sorry for you! Since I don't have this song recorded, I have performed it by myself!! So, this is a home-made art work! I am sorry, for you have to listen to what I murmur!! Believe me, there was no other way!

Watch out carefully when you ask your children to listen to it! They may faint instead of going to sleep! But, I have done my best; they will not get harmed seriously!!

Please do the Quiz first. Then, go to Useful Drills page to enjoy my masterpiece! I wish you all great patience and pray that God will give you good rewards in heavens for your sufferings here on this site!!

Once again, thank you for your messages and Happy New Year to all of you.

And please do not forget Jeanne.

See you next week (if you survive my voice!).

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Carpet

Outside

To pay

To introduce

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

19 - 91 - 119 - 911 - 991 - 219 - 229 - 922 - 912 - 299

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Debt <== = ب + د + ه + ک + ا + ر + ی

Ticket <== = ب + ل + ی + ط

Office <== = د + ف + ت + ر

Breakfast <== = ص + ب + ح + ا + ن + ه

Lunch <= = ن + ا + ه + ا + ر

Dinner (Supper) <= = ش + ا + م

Persian Lullaby for children

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Targer As' to download this Persian song into your computer.

Persian Lullaby in mp3 - Home Edition!!

New Words:

لالایی /la: la: i:/ = Lullaby

لالا /la: la:/ = A childish word for 'sleep'.

لالاکن ! /la: la: kon/ = A childish word for 'go to sleep'.

گنجشک /gonjeshk/ = Sparrow

گنجیشک /gonjishk/ = Sparrow (This one is used more often in songs and in spoken language)

آفتاب /a:fta:b/ = Sunlight - Sun (In this song, it refers to Sun)

آمد /a:mæd/ = He/she/it came (Simple past tense)

دوباره /doba:reh/ = Again - Once more

مهتاب /mæhta:b/ = Moonlight - Moon (In this song, it refers to Moon)

بالا /ba:la:/ = Up - High (in the sky)

گل /gol/ = Flower

زود /zu:d/ = Early - Soon

خوابید /kha:bid/ = He/she/it went to sleep (Simple past tense)

مثل همیشه /mesl e hæmisheh/ = As always
قورباغه /ghu:rba:ghéh/ = Frog
ساکت /sa:ket/ = Silent - Be silent/quiet
خوابیده /kha:bideh/ = He/she/it is sleeping
بیشه /bisheh/ = Pond

لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
گنجیشک لا لا /gonji:shk la: la: la:/ = Sparrow is sleeping
آفتاب لا /a:fta:b la: la:/ = The sun is sleeping
آمد دوباره /a:mæd doba:reh/ = Once again, came (appeared)
مهتاب بالا /mæhta:b ba:la:/ = the moon on high (in the sky)
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
گل زود خوابید /gol zu:d kha:bid/ = The flower went to sleep early
مثل همیشه /mesl e hæmisheh/ = as always.
قورباغه ساکت /ghurba:ghéh sa:ket/ = Frog silence!
خوابیده بیشه /kha:bi:deh bi:she/ = the pond is sleeping!
گل زود خوابید /gol zu:d kha:bid/ = The flower went to sleep early
مثل همیشه /mesl e hæmisheh/ = as always.
قورباغه ساکت /ghurba:ghéh sa:ket/ = Frog silence!
خوابیده بیشه /kha:bi:deh bi:she/ = the pond is sleeping!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!
لا لا لا لا لا لا /la: la: la: la: i:/ = Lullaby, lullaby!

Week 99

سلام به همگی! /Sala:m beh hæmegi/!! (Hello everyone!)

Did you survive my lullaby song? خدا را شکر! /Khoda ra: shokr/! (Thanks God!)

Actually, I want to thank you for your compliments on this song. I didn't know your taste is so bad!

Anyway, thank you very much for all your praise. Be honest with me, did you really mean it or you just wanted to make me happy?!! (A close friend told me compliments do not need to be always true!!)

Before we start today, I have got something to share with you. I appreciate your efforts. I am happy that many of you have found this site a suitable place to express themselves.

As you probably know, Hafez, our greatest Persian poet, lived some eight hundred years ago. Fortunately, his work and idea are still alive among people of different nations. Hafez has touched a nice guy from

New Zealand. He has sent me the following message. I hope such works will be your inspiration for your creativity.

Here is the message:

Dear Hussan,

I went to read Hafez, and do like the wisdom/insights, I read in Nahmeh, although not the way translation, seeking English meter (rhyme) seemed to render clumsily, some of his sentiments. (But I can only read basic Farsi so perhaps I speak as the "be saved"? right word for ignorant persons. Certainly I am not well learned anyway! :)

So here is what Hafez said, "One for his work, may pick up the sword, another's business only deals with the word" from this inspiration, I constructed this poem...

One in search of freedom wields a sword,
Which so unkindly flings the bearer forward;
To certain death in fields of tears and blood,
There to drown, yet thirst within the flood.

Another labors to produce a word,
to bring to mind what war would leave unheard,
yet kings may choose to leave these texts unread,
Scorning missives history begs are said.

Then when the bearer's song fades in the dark,
like petulant children they cry, come back lark!
Come back and bring the summer: take this night!
So we can bask again in innocent Light.

Oh Hussan do you like it at all? It is all my own work except Hafiz inspired it with one line of his! I suppose he did not have enough time to say everything that could be said.

I do not know which is the summer bird of Iran though, so I made an alternative ending, in case parastou is more correct to herald summer for Iran? It is.

Then when the bearer's song fades in the night,
Like petulant children we all crave the Light,
Everyone, though stumbling, tries to follow,
Crying, Come back Spring and come back joyful little Swallow.

I do not know much about birds? Ornithology, so perhaps a Swallow is a lark? But anyway I hope I keep this good sentiment of Hafez alive, by giving birth to it in a new way.

I hope you are well and prosper in good spirits! I leave you in peace. Khoda Hafez, your grateful student, Debby.

You may reach Debby at meymunbint@hotmail.com

All right,

Today we have one more structure on what we learned during the past couple of lessons. I still remember we had an English teacher who almost killed himself to teach us concepts such as 'possibilities' in English; and of course in vain! Until now, I am not sure which 'possible' is more 'possible' than the other possible!! Or which possibilities are less possible than other possibilities!! I am telling you this because of two reasons:

1- To show the native English the difficulties we have gone through to learn their language! Now, it is your turn to experience some of them! (You know that I have made your job much easier because **A:** I love you all; **B:** I don't like my teacher's system although I love and respect him a lot)

2- What seems easy in your local language maybe very difficult to other people. Conclusion: look at everything you have (in this case, your language) from a different person's point of view.

My poor teacher! “No, you have made the same mistake!” he would tell us this sentence almost every week, “‘Might’ shows a weaker possibility than ‘May’”. Apparently, he was not very happy with us. Today, it's my turn to follow my teacher! But for sure, I am not going through the tough time my teacher had with us! You and I are both lucky! I cannot see you and you cannot reach me! (Have you seen this cartoon: The Tortoise and the Hare? So, You'll never touch me!!)

Let me give you some examples:

1- I might have told you.

2- you might have seen her.

3- they might have gone.

That's right! This is the structure we want to learn today.

Let me simplify your job.

For all kinds of possibilities in English, use شاید /sha:yæd/ in Persian. Of course, we have some other words. But, this is the easiest and the most common one. You may use it under your invisible teacher's guarantee!

As you see in this structure, we have a kind of Present Perfect Tense (Have told – Have seen – Have gone)

All you need to do with the Present Perfect Tense in **this structure** is to follow the pattern below:

I have told = گفته باشم /gofteh ba:shæm/

You have told = گفته باشی /gofteh ba:shi/

She/he/it has told = گفته باشد /gofteh ba:shæd/

We have told = گفته باشیم /gofteh ba:shim/

You have told = گفته باشید /gofteh ba:shid/

They have told = گفته باشند /gofteh ba:shænd/

Did you get it? The first part of the main verb is unchanged (گفته gofteh).

The same is true with other verbs.

You have 40 seconds to try these two in the same way: Have seen – Have gone

Finished? Not sure? Let me help you.

I have seen = دیده باشم /dideh ba:shæm/

You have seen = دیده باشی /dideh ba:shi/

She/he/it has seen = دیده باشد /dideh ba:shæd/

(You continue)

I have gone = رفته باشم /ræfteh ba:shæm/

You have gone = رفته باشی /ræfteh ba:shi/

She/he/it has gone = رفته باشد /ræfteh ba:shæd/

(You continue)

BIG NOTE: In this structure we translate Present Perfect Tense like this.

Was it really difficult? Of course it was! (I mean for me to teach!)

All right, the job is done!

Put the word شاید /sha:yæd/ in the beginning of the above phrases. Finished! (That's why this site is called **Easy Persian**!!)

Result:

1- I might have told you = شاید به شما گفته باشم /sha:yæd beh shoma: gofteh ba:shæm/.

2- you might have seen her = شاید او را دیده باشی /sha:yæd u: ra: dideh ba:shi/.

3- they might have gone = شاید رفته باشند /sha:yæd ræfteh ba:shænd/.

All right,

Please do the quiz first. Then go to Useful Drills page to do your homework.

Khoda Hafez!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Spring

Summer

Autumn

Winter

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

11 - 111 - 211 - 112 - 191 - 119 - 141 - 411 - 114

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Farvardin = ف + ر + و + ر + د + ی + ن

Khordad = خ + ر + د + ا + د

Aban = آ + ب + ا + ن

Mehr = م + ه + ر

Esfand = ا + س + ف + ن + د

Week 99

New Words:

Behrouz /behru:za/ بهروز = A name for men

Laleh /la:leh/ لاله = A name for women

Boyfriend دوست پسر = /du:st pesær/

Girlfriend دوست دختر = /du:st dokhtær/

Guest مهمان = /mehma:n/

Please translate the followings into Persian:

1- I might have read this book.

2- you might have read this book.

3- she/he might have read this book.

4- we might have read this book.

5- you might have read this book.

6- they might have read this book.

7- Behrouz might have read this book.

8- Laleh might have read this book.

9- my friends might have read this book.

10- I might have seen this park.

11- you might have seen this park.

12- she/he might have seen this park.

13- we might have seen this park.

14- you might have seen this park.

- 15- they might have seen this park.
- 16- my boyfriend might have seen this park.
- 17- your girlfriend might have seen this park.
- 18- His friends might have seen this park.
- 19- your guest might have seen this park.

- ۱- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشم .
- ۲- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشی .
- ۳- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشد .
- ۴- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشیم .
- ۵- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشید .
- ۶- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشند .
- ۷- بهروز شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشد .
- ۸- لاله شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشد .
- ۹- دوستانم شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشند .
- ۱۰- شاید این پارک را دیده باشم .
- ۱۱- شاید این پارک را دیده باشی .
- ۱۲- شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .
- ۱۳- شاید این پارک را دیده باشیم .
- ۱۴- شاید این پارک را دیده باشید .
- ۱۵- شاید این پارک را دیده باشند .
- ۱۶- دوست پسر من شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .
- ۱۷- دوست دخترم شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .
- ۱۸- دوستانش شاید این پارک را دیده باشند .
- ۱۹- مهمانت شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .

Week 100

Before we start today, I want to introduce a new link to you. I have just set up a new Persian message board for you to enjoy. It can be used in both Persian and English. To use this message board, you need to take a couple of steps:

1- I guess you need to have a Persian software installed on your computer so that you can write Persian. You may download and install this free Persian Word. The installation instructions are available on that site. Please read it carefully. It is not a difficult job. You may contact this Persian Word webmaster (not me) in the case of troubles. He is a nice guy and I am sure he will be helpful.

2- Once you load the message board, you have to register your name. Like our English message board, the registration is completely free. After registration, you need to click on Profile. Then scroll down a bit and you will find Board Language. Choose Farsi in the drop down list and click Submit. That's it.

Any suggestions to improve this message board will be warmly appreciated.

You may find this message board here (<http://www.easypersian.com/forum/index.php>).

Today, we are going to learn something different. It is just because of changing the mood a bit.

We are going to learn some expressions, or slang, or whatever you may call it. These are some phrases that the Iranians (mostly men) use very often. They do not follow a special grammatical rule. Therefore, feel free to just memorize them!

Some of them might not be very formal if used by a native speaker. They seem sweet, however, if you as a foreigner use them. So, watch out if you are young (and preferably beautiful!!) and saying these phrases to native Persians! You may attract their attention and they may like to spend more time with you!!

To teach you what these phrases mean, I am going to explain each phrase a bit to put you in the picture. Then, you will be able to find their closest equivalents in either English or in your native language, if not satisfied with my explanations.

NOTE 1: I will also appreciate if you send me your suggestions on their English equivalents.

NOTE 2: Please let me know if you like such phrases. I will try to post more phrases of this kind if your answer is 'YES'!

All right, here are some of them.

1- **دس خوش!** /dæs khosh/! In word for word translation, it means 'hand is happy/good!'

Interpretation: when somebody does a great job and you want to offer your compliments or praise. It means something like 'Great job!' or 'Well-done!'

You may also use this phrase when somebody does a job that disappoints you. For example, you do not expect such and such person do such a bad job. You have paid too much attention to your child, for instance, but he/she has failed in the exam. In this case, you may also say 'Great job' to your child. However, it is used here ironically.

2- **ای واللہ!** /ei vael.la:h/! In word for word translation, it means 'O God!' – Or 'Swear to God'.

Interpretation: It is used almost exactly in the same way as number 1 above.

Note: You may use the combination of both as well. You may say, **ای واللہ، دس خوش!** /ei vael.la:h, dæs khosh/!

3- **خیلی مخلصیم!** /kheili mokhlesim/! In word for word translation, it means 'We are very pure! (For you)' – or 'We are very honest! (With you)'.

Interpretation: As I have probably told you before, sometimes we use plural form of a verb for a singular subject. Numbers 3-6 are good examples for this. You could say the same phrase in this way:

خیلی مخلصم! /kheili mokhlesæm/! (With singular subject), which means 'I am very pure/honest with you'.

This phrase can be used in a couple of ways.

A- In response to somebody who is thanking you. Here, it means 'you are welcome'. In this case, a better phrase to use is **مخلصتم!** /mokhlesetæm/.

B- To start a conversation with your close friend who seems silent.

C- To just break the silence and make your friends smile.

D- To tell your friends that you are not that kind of official or formal person and that you welcome funny talks.

E- In response to somebody's greetings.

4- **خیلی چاکریم!** /kheili cha:kerim/! In word for word translation, it means 'we are very servant/obedient to you'!

Interpretation: see number 3 above.

Note: For 'A' above (In response to somebody who is thanking you), you may better use **چاکرتم!** /cha:keretæm/!

5- **خیلی کوچیکیم!** /kheili ku:chikim/! In word for word translation, it means 'We are very small!' OR 'We are younger than you are and, therefore, obedient to you'!

Interpretation: See 3 above.

Note: For 'A' above (In response to somebody who is thanking you), you may better use **کوچیکتم!** /ku:chiketæm/!

6- **ما بیشتر!** /ma: bish tær/! In word for word translation, it means 'We are more (than you are)! OR 'We too' – 'Me too'!

Interpretation: again using plural for singular. We usually say 'we too' for 'me too' in Persian. This is a phrase that comes in response to numbers 3- 4- 5 above. So, in response to each sentence above, you may say **ما بیشتر!** /ma: bish tær/! (Which means 'me too').

7- خیلی باحالی! /kheili ba: ha:li!/ In word for word translation, it means 'You are very nice/cool/interesting/gorgeous and so on.

Interpretation:

A- You may use this phrase to praise somebody when he/she does something interesting (or is interesting).

B- You may use this phrase to criticize somebody in a very friendly and funny way. Example: Your friend is saying or doing something that is not interesting at all. But, he/she tries to give more feeling to his/her words or action to convince you that it was interesting while, in reality, it is not. You may watch or listen to your friend patiently (if you have time!!) and use this phrase at the end to convey an ironical message.

Note: You cannot use ما بیشتر! /ma: bish tær/ as a response to خیلی باحالی! /kheili ba: ha:li/. If you do, people may take it as just a joke and will laugh.

All right,

I hope you enjoyed today's lesson.

Please do the Quiz first. Then **do not** go to Useful Drills page! We have no drills for today!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Landlord

Teeth

Finger

To brush (one's teeth)

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

66 - 616 - 661 - 606 - 660 - 6006 - 6600 - 60

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Tooth = د + ن + ا + د + ن

Finger = ا + ن + گ + ش + ت

Landlord = ص + ا + ح + ب + خ + ا + ن + ه

To brush (teeth) = م + س + و + ا + ک + ک + ر + د + ن

Week 100

New Words:

Behrouz /behru:za/ بهروز = A name for men

Laleh /la:leh/ لاله = A name for women

Boyfriend دوست پسر = /du:st pesær/

Girlfriend دوست دختر = /du:st dokhtær/

Guest مهمان = /mehma:n/

Please translate the followings into Persian:

1- I might have read this book.

- 2- You might have read this book.
- 3- She/he might have read this book.
- 4- We might have read this book.
- 5- You might have read this book.
- 6- They might have read this book.
- 7- Behrouz might have read this book.
- 8- Laleh might have read this book.
- 9- My friends might have read this book.
- 10- I might have seen this park.
- 11- You might have seen this park.
- 12- She/he might have seen this park.
- 13- We might have seen this park.
- 14- You might have seen this park.
- 15- They might have seen this park.
- 16- My boyfriend might have seen this park.
- 17- Your girlfriend might have seen this park.
- 18- His friends might have seen this park.
- 19- Your guest might have seen this park.

- ۱- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشم .
- ۲- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشی .
- ۳- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشد .
- ۴- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشیم .
- ۵- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشید .
- ۶- شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشند .
- ۷- بهروز شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشد .
- ۸- لاله شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشد .
- ۹- دوستانم شاید این کتاب را خوانده باشند .
- ۱۰- شاید این پارک را دیده باشم .
- ۱۱- شاید این پارک را دیده باشی .
- ۱۲- شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .
- ۱۳- شاید این پارک را دیده باشیم .
- ۱۴- شاید این پارک را دیده باشید .
- ۱۵- شاید این پارک را دیده باشند .
- ۱۶- دوست پسر من شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .
- ۱۷- دوست دخترم شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .
- ۱۸- دوستانش شاید این پارک را دیده باشند .
- ۱۹- مهمان من شاید این پارک را دیده باشد .

Week 101

Hello everyone, how are you?

Before we start our new lesson today, I have a few things to share with you:

A- I apologize for my considerably long absence. I know I have kept all of you waiting for a few weeks. This was not on purpose. Unfortunately, I spent several days in hospital and went through a surgery. The operation was almost ok but according to doctors, I might (just might!) see the operation room one more time in future. I just hope that scaring future will never come!! I am recovering from this operation now. I pray none of you will have to spend time in hospital beds. My sincere apologies.

B- Do you remember Jeanne in lesson 98? The next is one of her messages after her granddaughter operation. I wanted to keep you updated and to let you join in their happiness.

Dear Hassan,

My granddaughter and Edward had surgery on Friday. It was quite involved, and took several hours. Edward is recovering more quickly than Amanda. His new kidney started functioning perfectly. He will take medication to prevent rejection. The evening of surgery, he was sitting up in bed!

My granddaughter Amanda is in much more pain. She is still on a liquid diet, while Edward had regular food last evening. We are so please that things are going so well.

You might find this interesting. While we were waiting for the surgeries to be completed, we became acquainted with a lovely woman and her 2 daughters, who were waiting for a loved one to come out of surgery. This was a miracle.

They are Persian!!! They shared in our joy when the new came of the successful operations. We have made new friends!

The hospital is in Los Angeles , Beverly Hills . They live in Beverly Hills . We live in the next County.... Orange County ..

It's a small world...

Thank you for your kindness, and prayers,

Fondly,

Jeanne

According to Jeanne's last message to me, her granddaughter is recovering now.

You may reach Jeanne at jeannemoody1@mac.com

C- Many of you have been eager to know about other visitors of this site and the country they come from. I don't know if it is interesting to all of you or not. However, I am writing the name of some countries below as a short answer to many of you.

Currently, there are a little more than 40 thousands students from 104 countries. The top 20 countries in April 2004 were as follows:

1- United States of America **2-** Italy **3-** The Netherlands (Holland) **4-** Canada **5-** Switzerland **6-** Belgium **7-** United Kingdom **8-** Australia **9-** France **10-** Germany **11-** Sweden **12-** Brazil **13-** Greece **14-** Japan **15-** Turkey **16-** Norway **17-** New Zealand **18-** Hungary **19-** Israel **20-** Denmark

I hope you will find this short information interesting. I still remember when I had less than 20 students per month!

D- I have introduced a few new websites on our Links page today. I think they are interesting pages and you may like them. You may find the new links at the bottom of our Links page. From among them, there is a Persian story called Yahyaa (a Persian boy's name).

Don't say it is impossible to learn Persian!! François has not only learned Persian but also translated this Persian story into English. He has done a nice job. I want all of you to go through the story for some preparation. I am going to discuss this translation during our next lessons in near future. So, we will have some translation lessons very soon. I am sure you will find the translation lessons interesting.

All right,

Now it's time to start our new lesson.

Look at the following sentences:

I am neither a politician nor a businessman.

He is either a politician or a businessman.

You are both a politician and a businessman.

He is not only a politician but also a businessman.

Neither Nor

Either Or

Both And

Not only But also

Today, we will work on the first one (Neither Nor)

I am going to start with the first sentence: (I am neither a politician nor a businessman.)

What I am going to do with this sentence is to break it first. I break it into two short sentences as follows:

I am not a politician.

I am not a businessman.

The English grammar works like this:

- 1- Both sentences are negative.
- 2- Since these two sentences are similar, we can combine them to make one short sentence.
- 3- Since both sentences are negative, the best JOINT is (Neither Nor)
- 4- To combine these two sentences, delete the **similar words** in one of these two sentences. Which words are similar or repeated? ' **I AM NOT** ' is repeated twice. Remember that ' **a** ', although repeated in both sentences, is an Indefinite article and **should not** be deleted.

5- After step 4 is taken, we have this:

I am not a politician.

a businessman.

NOTE: I have deleted the repeated words from the second sentence.

6- Find the two words that are **not repeated** (or, are different) in these two sentences. ' **Politician** ' and ' **Businessman** ' are the two **different** words.

7- Combine the two sentences in number 5 above as follows:

I am not a politician a businessman.

8- Put **NEITHER before** 'a politician'. Put **NOR after** 'a politician'. You will have:

I am not **Neither** a politician **Nor** a businessman.

As you know, both 'neither' and ' **not** ' are negative. Apparently, one is redundant. What is the solution then? Just delete ' **not** '.

So, the final work is:

I am neither a politician nor a businessman.

Was it difficult? I hope not!

Now, try to combine the following sentences according to the above explanations:

1- I am not a student. I am not a teacher.

2- I am not a lawyer. I am not a liar.

3- I am not tall. I am not short.

Please do your best first. Then see my answers below. You know **our** rule! No cheating!!

Answers:

1- I am neither a student nor a teacher.

2- I am neither a lawyer nor a liar.

3- I am neither tall nor short.

Very easy, isn't it?

All right,

Now we want to see how we can translate such sentences into Persian. Ready?

I want to translate this sentence:

I am neither a politician nor a businessman.

Politician = سیاستمدار /siya:sæt mæda:r/

Businessman = تاجر /ta:jer/

I am going to break this sentence into two:

I am not a politician.

I am not a businessman.

Now, let's translate the sentences one by one:

I am not a politician = من سیاستمدار نیستم /mæn siya:sæt mæda:r nistæm/.

I am not a businessman = من تاجر نیستم /mæn ta:jer nistæm/.

Neither Nor = نه نه /næh næh/

In sentence number 1 (I am not a politician = من سیاستمدار نیستم /mæn siya:sæt mæda:r nistæm/),

change the Persian **negative** sentence into a **normal** sentence. That is to say, replace **نیستم** /nistæm/

with **هستم** /hæstæm/. You will have:

من سیاستمدار هستم /mæn siya:sæt mæda:r hæstæm/ = I **am** a politician.

In sentence number 2 (I am not a businessman = من تاجر نیستم /mæn ta:jer nistæm/), **delete** all

other words **except** تاجر /ta:jer/ (businessman). You will have تاجر /ta:jer/ only. Put **نه** /næh/

before تاجر /ta:jer/ and you will have نه تاجر /næh ta:jer/.

In short, we will have this:

من سیاستمدار هستم /mæn siya:sæt mæda:r hæstæm/

نه تاجر /næh ta:jer/

We know that Neither Nor = نه نه /næh næh/.

We have already used one نه /næh/ before تاجر /ta:jer/.

One more نه /næh/ is left. Put this نه /næh/ before سیاستمدار /siya:sæt mæda:r/ in our normal sentence (من سیاستمدار هستم /mæn siya:sæt mæda:r hæstæm/).

We will have: من نه سیاستمدار هستم نه تاجر /mæn næh siya:sæt mæda:r hæstæm næh ta:jer/ = I am neither a politician nor a businessman.

Don't worry! It is not very difficult! Let me help you with a few more examples. I just give you the answers, you find the ways. Ready?

1- I am neither a student nor a teacher.

Student = دانش آموز /da:nesh a:mu:z/

Teacher = معلم /moæl.lem/

من نه دانش آموز هستم نه معلم /mæn næh da:nesh a:mu:z hæstæm næh moæl.lem/.

2- I am neither a lawyer nor a liar.

Lawyer = وکیل /vækil/

Liar = دروغگو /dorogh gu:/

من نه وکیل هستم نه دروغگو /mæn næh vækil hæstæm næh dorogh gu:/.

3- I am neither tall nor short.

Tall = قد بلند /ghæd bolænd/

Short = قد کوتاه /ghæd ku:ta:h/

من نه قد بلند هستم نه قد کوتاه /mæn næh ghæd bolænd hæstæm næh ghæd ku:ta:h/.

Was it difficult? Hopefully not!

NOTE: As you noticed, the subject of our sentences is ' I ' and the verb is ' am '. As a result, the subject of our Persian sentences is من /mæn/ and the verb is هستم /hæstæm/.

Got the point?

The verbs **should change** with our subjects.

Here is how:

I am = هستم /hæstæm/

You are = هستی /hæsti/

He/she/it is = هست /hæst/

We are = هستیم /hæstim/

You are = هستید /hæstid/

They are = هستند /hæstænd/

I give you one more example:

They are neither student nor teacher.

آنها نه دانش آموز هستند نه معلم /a:nha: næh da:nesh a:mu:z hæstænd næh moæl.lem/.

Ok,

I talked too much today! Doctors are better have their operation on my tongue in my scaring future!!

Please do the **Quiz** first and then go to **Useful Drills** page for more work.

Take care and Khoda Hafez!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Governor

Mayor

To work

Leader

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

90 - 901 - 910 - 990 - 109 - 119 - 190 - 991

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Prime minister = ن + خ + س + ت + و + ز + ی + ر

Governor = ف + ر + م + ا + ن + د + ا + ر

Leader = ر + ه + ب + ر

Embassy = س + ف + ا + ر + ت

Mayor = ش + ه + ر + د + ا + ر

Week 101

New Words:

Enemy = دشمن /doshmæn/

Friend = دوست /du:st/

Iranian = ایرانی /ira:ni/

German = آلمانی /a:lma:ni/

American = آمریکایی /a:mrika: i:/

Canadian = کانادایی /ka:na:da: i:/

Here = اینجا /inja:/

There = آنجا /a:nja:/

Ambassador = سفیر /sæfi:r/

President = رئیس جمهور /ræi:s jomhu:r/

Rich = پول دار /pu:l da:r/ - also ثروتمند /servæt mænd/

Poor = فقیر /fæghi:r/

Young = جوان /jæva:n/

Old = پیر /pi:r/

Fat = چاق /cha:gh/

Short = قد کوتاه /ghæd ku:ta:h/
 Happy = خوشحال /khosh ha:l/ - also شاد /sha:d/
 Sad = غمگین /ghæmgin/ - also ناراحت /na:ra:hæt/
 Reporter = گزارشگر /goza:resh gær/
 Correspondent = خبرنگار /khæbær nega:r/
 Artist = هنرمند /honær mænd/
 Writer = نویسنده /nevisændeh/
 Painter = نقاش /nægh.gha:sh/. Listen!
 Poet = شاعر /sha:er/. Listen!

Please translate the followings into Persian:

- 1- They are neither enemy nor friend.
- 2- She is neither Iranian nor German.
- 3- I am neither American nor Canadian.
- 4- We are neither here nor there.
- 5- He is neither an ambassador nor a president.
- 6- They are neither rich nor poor.
- 7- She is neither young nor old.
- 8- Ali is neither fat nor short.
- 9- Homa (a girl's name) is neither happy nor sad.
- 10- My friend is neither a reporter nor a correspondent.
- 11- Your friend is neither an artist nor a writer.
- 12- I am neither a painter nor a poet.

- ۱- آنها نه دشمن هستند نه دوست .
- ۲- او نه ایرانی است نه آلمانی .
- ۳- من نه آمریکایی هستم نه کانادایی .
- ۴- ما نه اینجا هستیم نه آنجا .
- ۵- او نه سفیر است نه رئیس جمهور .
- ۶- آنها نه پولدار هستند نه فقیر .
- ۷- او نه جوان است نه پیر .
- ۸- علی نه چاق است نه قد کوتاه .
- ۹- هما نه خوشحال است نه غمگین .
- ۱۰- دوست من نه گزارشگر است نه خبرنگار .
- ۱۱- دوست شما نه هنرمند است نه نویسنده .
- ۱۲- من نه نقاش هستم نه شاعر .

Week 102

Hello everyone

First of all, thank you for your warm messages during the past week.

Today, we are going to continue the previous lesson. We won't have too much to do if you have learned lesson 101. Have you?

Good!

In this lesson, we are going to learn the following structure:

He is either Iranian or Canadian.

Ready?

Either or = یا یا /ya: ya:/

All we have to do here is to follow the rules we learned in lesson 101. There is only one small difference here. Do you know the difference? I guess not!!

In this structure, we **don't need** to change our sentence into **negative** form. This makes our job much easier.

Now, let's try it as before:

He is Iranian.

He is Canadian.

Let's translate each sentence separately:

He is Iranian = او ایرانی است /u: ira:ni æst/.

He is Canadian = او کانادایی است /u: ka:na:da: i: æst/.

Very easy, isn't it?

Now we want to say:

He is either Iranian or Canadian = او یا ایرانی است یا کانادایی. /u: ya: ira:ni æst ya: ka:na:da: i: /.

As you notice, the verb in our Persian sentence comes before the second **یا**. So, we don't have verb in the end.

This should be very easy. So, I don't explain it more to avoid any confusion. Let's see some more examples:

1- He is either fat or short = او یا چاق است یا قدکوتاه /u: ya: cha:gh æst ya: ghæd ku:ta:h/.

2- She is either good or bad = او یا خوب است یا بد /u: ya: khu:b æst ya: bæd/.

3- I am either here or there = من یا اینجا هستم یا آنجا /mæn ya:inja: hæstæm ya: a:nja: /.

Note: As you know, verbs should change according to our subjects.

4- My room is either clean or dirty = اتاقم یا تمیز است یا کثیف /ota:ghæm ya: tæmiz æst ya: kæsif/.

I hope you have no problems.

So, that's it for today.

Please do the Quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page to practice more.

Khoda Hafez!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To know (something)

To kiss

To invite

Friend

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

20 - 112 - 120 - 210 - 201 - 220 - 122 - 102 - 12

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ < == د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ < == ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Finger = ا + ن + گ + ش + ت

Teeth = ا + ن + د + ا + ن + ه + ا

Landlord = ه + ن + ا + خ + ب + ح + ا + ص

Bank = ب + ا + ن + ک

To brush (one's teeth) = م + س + و + ا + ک + ک + ر + د + ن

Week 102

New Words:

Near = نزدیک /næzdik/

Far = دور /du:r/

Home = خانه /kha:neh/

They are home = آنها در خانه هستند /a:nha: kha:neh hæstænd/ = آنها در خانه هستند /a:nha: dær kha:neh hæstand/

Outside = بیرون /biru:n/

On = روشن /roshæn/

Off = خاموش /kha:mu:sh/

Red = قرمز /ghermez/

Green = سبز /sæbz/

Hot = داغ /da:gh/

Cold = سرد /særd/

New = تازه /ta:zeh/

Old = کهنه /kohneh/

Big = بزرگ /bozorg/

Small = کوچک /ku:chæk/

Shirt = پیراهن /pira:hæn/

Wet = خیس /khis/

Dry = خشک /khoshk/

White = سفید /sefid/

Black = سیاه /siya:h/

River = رودخانه /ru:d kha:neh/

Deep = عمیق /æmi:gh/

Shallow = کم عمق /kæm omgh/. Listen!

Angry = عصبانی /æsæba:ni/

Wise = عاقل /a:ghel/. Listen!

Crazy = stupid = احمق /æhmægh/. Listen!

Please translate the followings into Persian:

- 1- He is either a doctor or a teacher.
- 2- I am either near or far.
- 3- They are either home or outside.
- 4- The TV is either on or off.
- 5- The light is either red or green.
- 6- The soup is either hot or cold.
- 7- My car is either new or old.
- 8- Your country is either big or small.
- 9- Her shirt is either wet or dry.
- 10- Their dog is either white or black.
- 11- The river is either deep or shallow.
- 12- Malia (girl's name) is either angry or crazy!
- 13- This man is either wise or stupid!

- ۱- او یا دکتر است یا معلم .
- ۲- من یا نزدیک هستم یا دور.
- ۳- آنها یا (در) خانه هستند یا بیرون .
- ۴- تلویزیون یا روشن است یا خاموش .
- ۵- چراغ یا قرمز است یا سبز.
- ۶- سوپ یا داغ است یا سرد .
- ۷- ماشینم یا تازه است یا کهنه .
- ۸- کشورتان یا بزرگ است یا کوچک .
- ۹- پیراهنش یا خیس است یا خشک .
- ۱۰- سگشان یا سفید است یا سیاه .
- ۱۱- رودخانه یا عمیق است یا کم عمق .
- ۱۲- مالیا یا عصبانی است یا احمق !
- ۱۳- این مرد یا عاقل است یا احمق !

Week 103

Hello everyone, how are you?

I hope you had no problems with lessons 101 and 102.

Today, we are going to learn one more under this category. Before doing that, I'd like to encourage all of you to get involved in Chat and Message Boards more actively. Frankly speaking, I am not very happy with you since many of you seem just onlookers to those pages and have no interest in participating in those pages. I can see that many of you just visit the pages without getting involved in discussions. I have made those pages for you to use. For example, you could arrange a time to have chat at certain time together in different groups and so on.

Unfortunately, one of the biggest problems we have is just to expect others to do something for us. We never ask ourselves what we can do for others.

Please get involved. This is good for all of you.

All right, now let's start the new lesson.

Look at this example:

I am both sad and angry!

Both And = /hæm hæm/.

The rule here is exactly the same as what we had had in 'either or'. All you need to do is to replace 'either ...or' with 'both ...and'. That's it!

Here's how:

Sad = /ghæm gin/

Angry = /æsəba:ni/

من هم غمگین هستم هم عصبانی /mæn hæm ghæm gin hæstæm hæm æsaba:ni/.

Another example:

They are both lazy and indifferent.

Lazy = تنبل /tænbæl/

Indifferent = بی تفاوت /bi tæfa:vot/

آنها هم تنبل هستند هم بی تفاوت /a:nha: hæm tænbæl hæstænd hæm bi tæfa:vot/.

Ok,

I hope this was easy. For the Useful drills today, we have all sentences already used in Useful Drills 101 and 102.

Please do the Quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page.

Thank you and Khoda Hafez!

Quiz:

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To talk to somebody

I talked to him

To introduce

To teach

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

17 - 71 - 711 - 117 - 171 - 710 - 170 - 107

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To speak = ص + ح + ب + ت + ک + ر + د + ن

To meet = م + ل + ا + ق + ا + ت + ک + ر + د + ن

To arrest = د + س + ت + گ + ی + ر + ک + ر + د + ن

Watch = س + ا + ع + ت

To steal = د + ز + د + ی + د + ن

New Words:

Please translate the followings into Persian:

1. They are both enemy and friend.
2. She is both Iranian and German.
3. I am both American and Canadian.
4. We are both here and there.
5. He is both an ambassador and a president.
6. They are both rich and poor.
7. She is both young and old.
8. Ali is both fat and short.
9. Homa (a girl's name) is both happy and sad.
10. My friend is both a reporter and a correspondent.
11. Your friend is both an artist and a writer.
12. I am both a painter and a poet.
13. He is both a doctor and a teacher.
14. I am both near and far.
15. They are both home and outside.
16. The TV is both on and off.
17. The light is both red and green.
18. The soup is both hot and cold.
19. My car is both new and old.
20. Your country is both big and small.
21. Her shirt is both wet and dry.
22. Their dog is both white and black.
23. The river is both deep and shallow.
24. Malia (girl's name) is both angry and crazy!
25. This man is both wise and stupid!

No answers in Persian today! You know the rule: Just replace 'either ... or' with 'both ... and'. Nothing else changes. Have fun!

Week 104

Hello again!

How is everybody? Hopefully, all of you are doing good in your studies.

How was the previous lesson? Was it easy or difficult? I think it should be easy! Actually, I think our recent lessons are as easy as drinking a glass of water!! Aren't they?

As easy as drinking a glass of water = like drinking a glass of water = a piece of cake

Example: That lesson was a piece of cake.

In Persian, we say: آن درس مثل آب خوردن بود! /a:n dərs mesl e a:b khordæn bu:d/. Listen!

A good one, isn't it?!

Ok,

Today, we are going to learn one more under the same category. From next lesson, we will have some discussions on the translation of Yahyaa. Please review that story and get ready. We may work on that story for a couple of weeks. Then, we will expand lessons 101 – 104 in more details. No objections?

Wonderful!!

Not only But also

He is not only short but also fat.

This maybe a little difficult! Don't worry! I am still with you!

Not only ... but also = نه تنها ... بلکه ... هم /næh tænhɑ: bælkeh hæm/

Seems confusing? Maybe? Let's see!

Let's translate this sentence with 'both...and' first. Ready?

او هم قدکوتاه است هم چاق /u: hæm ghæd ku:tɑ:h æst hæm cha:gh/. Do you remember this?

Great!

Now, replace 'both...and' with 'not only...but... also'.

We will have: او نه تنها قدکوتاه است بلکه چاق هم است . /u: næh tænhɑ: ghæd ku:tɑ:h æst bælkeh cha:gh hæm æst/.

When we look at this sentence carefully, we see that the second word چاق (cha:gh = fat) comes between بلکه /bælkeh/ and هم /hæm/.

So, I guess you got the point.

Put the second word between /bælkeh/ /hæm/. That's it!

Let's see some examples:

1- She is not only sad but also angry.

او نه تنها غمگین است بلکه عصبانی هم است . /u: næh tænhɑ: ghæmgin æst bælkeh æsæba:ni hæm hæst/.

Is it difficult? Please say no!!

That's why we say فارسی شکر است! /fa:rsi shekær æst/!!

2- I am not only young but also strong!

Young = جوان /jæva:n/

Strong = قوی /ghævi/

من نه تنها جوان هستم بلکه قوی هم هستم /mæn næh tænhɑ: jæva:n hæstæm bælkeh ghævi hæm hæstæm/.

3- They are not only friends but also brothers.

آنها نه تنها دوست هستند بلکه برادر هم هستند /ɑ:nhɑ: næh tænhɑ: du:st hæstænd bælkeh bæra:dær hæm hæstænd/.

All right,

Please do the following examples by yourself now. You may find the answers down the page. You already know our rule: NO CHEATING!!

1- She is not only a student but also a teacher.

2- He is not only a player but also a coach.

3- They a

Week 104

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download this music esgh e man mano seda kon! (My love call me!) By: Moein (Moin) in MP3

The next are the lyrics and the translation of this song. Enjoy it!

عشق من /eshgh e mæn/ = My love

عشق من منو صدا کن /eshgh e mæn mæno seda: kon/ = My love, call me.
 منو از خودم رها کن /mæno æz khodæm ræha: kon/ = free me from myself
 تو اجاق مرده دل /tu: oja:gh e mordeh ye del/ = in the dead fireplace of my heart
 آتشی تازه بیا کن /a:tæshi ta:zeh bepa: kon/ = rekindle a flame.
 تو منو از نو بنا کن /to mæno æz no bæna: kon/ = You rebuild me
 عشق من منو صدا کن /eshgh e mæn mæno seda: kon/ = My love, call me.
 قصه مو بی انتها کن /ghes.sæmo bi enteha: kon/ = make my story endless
 روبروت آینه بگذار /ru:berut a: ineh bogza:r/ = put a mirror before you
 ابدیتی بنا کن /æbædiyæti bæna: kon/ = create eternity!
 عشق من منو صدا کن /eshgh e mæn mæno seda: kon/ = my love call me
 قصه نگفته ام من /ghes.seh ye nægofteh æm mæn/ = I am an untold story
 تو بیا روایت کن /to biya: reva:yætæm kon/ = you come and narrate me
 عشق من مرهم کن /eshgh e mæn mæmætæm kon/ = my love restore me!
 از عذابم راحتم کن /æz æza:bæm ra:hætæm kon/ = free me from my pain
 ای صدای تو نهایت /ei seda: ye to næha:yæt/ = O your voice my destination,
 راهی نهایت کن /ra:hi ye næha:yætæm kon/ = move me towards my goal.
 عشق من منو صدا کن /eshgh e mæn mæno seda: kon/ = my love call me
 تو منو از نو بنا کن /to mæno æz no bæna: kon/ = you rebuild me
 منو به داستانها کن /ræhsepa:r e ghes.seh ha: kon/ = take me into stories.
 تو به خاکستر نگاه کن /to beh khakestær nega:h kon/ = Look at the ash
 آتشی تازه بیا کن /a:tæshi ta:zeh bepa: kon/ = rekindle a flame.
 ای بهارم انتظارم /ei bæha:ræm enteza:ræm/ = You're my spring, I am in waiting
 من زمین بی بهارم /mæn zæmin e bi bæha:ræm/ = I am a land without spring
 شوره زار انتظارم /shu:reh za:r e enteza:ræm/ = I am a desert in waiting
 شوره زارم انتظارم /shu:reh za:ræm enteza:ræm/ = I am a desert, I am in waiting
 چهره شکسته دارم /chehreh ye shekæsteh da:ræm/ = I have got a wrinkled face
 روح و جسم خسته دارم /ru:h o jesm e khæsteh da:ræm/ = and a tired spirit and body
 به در ویرانه دل /beh dær e vira:neh ye del/ = on the door of my broken heart
 بغض گفتم بسته دارم /boghz e ghofl e bæsteh da:ræm/ = my throat is locked in a knot
 عشق من منو صدا کن /eshgh e mæn mæno seda: kon/ = my love call me
 منو از خودم رها کن /mæno æz khodæm ræha: kon/ = free me from myself
 تو اجاق مرده دل /tu: oja:gh e mordeh ye del/ = in the dead fireplace of my heart
 آتشی تازه بیا کن /a:tæshi ta:zeh bepa: kon/ = rekindle a flame.
 تو منو از نو بنا کن /to mæno æz no bæna: kon/ = You rebuild me
 عشق من منو صدا کن /eshgh e mæn mæno seda: kon/ = My love, call me.
 قصه مو بی انتها کن /ghes.sæmo bi enteha: kon/ = make my story endless
 روبروت آینه بگذار /ru:berut a: ineh bogza:r/ = put a mirror before you
 ابدیتی بنا کن /æbædiyæti bæna: kon/ = create eternity!
 عشق من منو صدا کن /eshgh e mæn mæno seda: kon/ = my love call me

The words of this song are translated separately below

عشق /eshgh/ = love
 من /mæn/ = my
 منو /mæno/ = oral form of مرا /mæra:/ = me
 صدا کن /seda: kon/ = call
 از /æz/ = from
 خودم /khodæm/ = myself
 رها کن /ræha: kon/ = free (as verb)
 تو /tu:/ = in - inside
 اجاق /oja:gh/ = fireplace
 مرده /mordeh/ = dead
 دل /del/ = heart
 آتش /a:tæsh/ = fire
 آتشی /a:tæshi/ = a fire - a flame
 تازه /ta:zeh/ = new - fresh
 بنا کن /bepa: kon/ = build - make - kindle
 از نو /æz no/ = again - once more
 بنا کن /bæna: kon/ = build - make
 قصه /ghes.seh/ = story - tale
 قصه ام /ghes.sæmo/ = oral form of قصه
 را = my story
 بی /bi/ = without - negative maker prefix
 انتها /enteha:/ = end - the last point
 روبرو /ru:beru:/ = face to face - in front - opposite
 روبرو /ru:beru:t/ = before you - in front of you
 آینه /a: i:neh/ = mirror
 بگذار /bogza:r/ = put
 ابدیت /æbædiyæt/ = eternity
 نگفته /nægofteh/ = untold
 قصه نگفته ام /ghes.seh ye nægofteh æm/ = I am an untold story
 بیا /biya:/ = come
 روایت کردن /reva:yæt kærdæn/ = to narrate - to tell
 روایتم کن /reva:yætæm kon/ = narrate me
 مرمت کردن /mææmæt kærdæn/ = to fix/repair/restore
 مرمتم کن /mææmætæm kon/ = restore me
 عذاب /æza:b/ = severe pain
 عذابم /æza:bæm/ = my pain
 راحت کردن /ra:hæt kærdæn/ = to free somebody (from a trouble) - to give comfort to somebody - to kill somebody
 صدا /seda:/ = voice

نهایت /næha:yæt/ = final point - destination
 راهی /ra:hi/ = to move to - to walk to
 راهسپار /ræhsepa:r/ = on the way to - to move to
 خاکستر /kha:kestær/ = ash
 نگاه کن /nega:h kon/ = look - see
 بهار /bæha:r/ = spring
 بهارم /bæha:ræm/ = my spring
 انتظار /enteza:r/ = wait - in waiting
 انتظارم /enteza:ræm/ = I am waiting
 زمین /zæmin/ = land
 شور و زار /shu:reh za:r/ = land covered with salt - infertile land - desert
 چهره /chehreh/ = face
 شکسته /shekæsteh/ = broken - wrinkled (as for face)
 دارم /da:ræm/ = I have
 روح /ru:h/ = spirit
 و /væ/ = and (pronounces /o/ when combines two words)
 جسم /jesm/ = body
 خسته /khæsteh/ = tired
 در /dær/ = door
 در به در /beh dær e/ = on the door of
 ویرانه /vira:neh/ = destroyed - ruined - broken
 دل /del/ = heart
 بغض /boghz/ = choke up - a knot in throat
 قفل /ghofl/ = lock
 بسته /bæsteh/ = closed - locked

Using Windows / Word 2000 with Farsi / Arabic language support

=====
 "While using Windows 2000, it is also necessary to either use MS Word 2000 or an "Arabic Enabled" version of MS Word 97 to do this. If using MS Word 2000, you need to go in the Microsoft Office Tools menu in the "start menu" and add Farsi in the "Language Settings". One you've done this, you should be able to change the font to Times New Roman or any other form within the Microsoft standard.

After doing this, to get the Arabic digits to display in Arabic, you need to change the following:

Go to Tools|Options|Right-to-Left and change the value for "Numerals" to "context"

This way, Latin numbers will remain in Latin while Farsi numbers will be in Farsi."

P.S., The zar font is available if you decide to use it as the font for the text, as it looks better for Farsi than most other fonts.

Week 105

New Words:

I go = می روم /mi rævæm/. Delete /mi/. You will have روم /rævæm/. Put به /be/ before it. You will have بروم /berævæm/.

I say = می گویم /mi gu:yæm/. Delete /mi/. You will have گویم /gu:yæm/. Put به /be/ before it. You will have بگویم /begu:yæm/.

I write = می نویسم /mi nevisæm/. Delete /mi/. You will have نویسم /nevisæm/. Put به /be/ before it. You will have بنویسم /benevisæm/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian:

- 1- I wanted to go.
- 2- You wanted to go.
- 3- He/she wanted to go.
- 4- We wanted to go.
- 5- You wanted to go.
- 6- They wanted to go.
- 7- I wanted to say.
- 8- You wanted to say.
- 9- He/she wanted to say.
- 10- We wanted to say.
- 11- You wanted to say.
- 12- They wanted to say.
- 13- I wanted to write.
- 14- You wanted to write.
- 15- He/she wanted to write.
- 16- We wanted to write.
- 17- You wanted to write.
- 18- They wanted to write.
- 19- Maria wanted to write.

- ۱- می خواستم بروم .
- ۲- می خواستی بروی .
- ۳- می خواست برود .
- ۴- می خواستیم برویم .
- ۵- می خواستید بروید .
- ۶- می خواستند بروند .
- ۷- می خواستم بگویم .
- ۸- می خواستی بگویی .
- ۹- می خواست بگوید .
- ۱۰- می خواستیم بگوییم .
- ۱۱- می خواستید بگویید .
- ۱۲- می خواستند بگویند .
- ۱۳- می خواستم بنویسم .
- ۱۴- می خواستی بنویسی .
- ۱۵- می خواست بنویسد .
- ۱۶- می خواستیم بنویسیم .
- ۱۷- می خواستید بنویسید .
- ۱۸- می خواستند بنویسند .
- ۱۹- ماریا می خواست بنویسد .

Week 105

Hello everybody! How are you? How was the last lesson? I hope you enjoyed it.

As I told you before, we are going to discuss the Persian story called Yahyaa today. Did you happen to go through it? I assume you did!

I am not going to repeat the vocabulary of that story here since François has already done it for us. I guess you agree with me that it is not very easy to have translation discussions in detail during this online course. However, we will try our best to be as fruitful as possible. Let's start if you have no questions!

All right,

Today, we are going to cover the first paragraph.

Before doing anything, we should be able to read the story in Persian. I give you two minutes to read the first paragraph. 1 2 !!

The time's up! Did you finish it? Good!

Now answer this question: What special thing did you notice in the first Persian paragraph?

Great guess!!

There is no punctuation in this paragraph! You don't know where the sentences end. Terrible!!

Now, let me read the first paragraph for you. Please click here to listen.

Did you find the end of each sentence? Hint: there was a 'comma' wherever I had a short pause. There was 'full stop' wherever I paused longer.

So, the first thing in translation is to read the original text as correctly as possible.

Now, let's see the first sentence:

Yahyaa was eleven years old and it was the very first day that he wanted to sell the "Daily News" newspaper.

In English we say, "He was 11 years old".

As you notice, the main verb is 'To be' = (was).

In Persian, we mainly use 'To have' as our main verb.

Now, I replace 'To be' with 'To have' in our English sentence.

Our English sentence would become like this: 'He had 11 years old'.

To have = داشتن /da:shtæn/.

He had = او داشت /u: da:sht/.

He had 11 years old = او یازده سال داشت /u: ya:zdæh sa:l da:sht/.

Yahyaa had 11 years old = یحیی یازده سال داشت /yæhya: ya:zdæh sa:l da:sht/.

In short:

Yahyaa was 11 years old = یحیی یازده سال داشت /yæhya: ya:zdæh sa:l da:sht/.

Any question?

Yes? Ok! Here is the answer!!

Of course we could also use 'To be' as our main verb in Persian. If we do, we should change the word

سال /sa:l/ a bit. We should put ه /he/ sound at the end of سال /sa:l/ to change it into سانه /sa:leh/.

Here's how:

To be = بودن /bu:dæn/.

He was = او بود /u: bu:d/.

Years old = سانه /sa:leh/.

Yahyaa was 11 years old = یحیی یازده سانه بود /yæhya: 11 sa:leh bu:d/.

Is it clear? Great!

It was the very first day that

This structure is very common in Persian.

First time

First day

First week

First visit

And so on.

Examples:

It was the first time I met her.

It was the first week I had started my work.

It was the first day I had arrived there.

And so on.

In such cases, we put ی /ye/ after 'Time' and که /keh/ after verb.

First = اولین /æv.vælin/

Day = روز /ru:z/

It was = بود /bu:d/

It was the first day that/when = اولین روزی بود که /æv.vælin ru:z i bu:d keh / (it's a clause).

It was the first time that = اولین باری بود که /æv.vælin ba:r i bu:d keh /.

And so on.

The word 'very' is for emphasis in our English sentence. We don't use it in Persian since we assume 'the first day' is 'the very first day'!! We don't have the second 'first day' in Persian!!!

He wanted to sell = می خواست بفروشد /mikha:st beforu:shæd/.

To want = خواستن /kha:stæn/.

To sell = فروختن /foru:khtæn/.

He wanted = او خواست /u: kha:st/. Or, او می خواست /u: mikha:st/.

As you know, we use 'to' after 'want' in English. Sometimes, we add 'ing' to the second verb in our English sentences.

Examples:

He wanted to speak.
He avoided speaking.

As a rule, we put ب /be/ before the second verb in Persian. How?

The first verb (here: He wanted) does not change in Persian. As you saw above, He wanted =

او خواست /u: kha:st/. Or, او می خواست /u: mikha:st/.

The second verb (here: To sell) should be changed a bit. Do you remember the Simple Present Tense? Yes or no? If no, please review the tenses once more!

He sells = او می فروشد /u: mi foru:shæd/. (Simple present tense)

Delete /u: mi/, and you will have فروشد /foru:shæd/.

Note: This happens in almost all cases.

Now, put ب /be/ in the beginning of فروشد /foru:shæd/, and you will have بفروشد /beforu:shæd/.
That's it!

He wanted to sell = می خواست بفروشد /mikha:st be foru:shæd/.

I wanted to sell = می خواستم بفروشم /mikha:stæm be foru:shæm/.

They wanted to sell = می خواستند بفروشند /mikha:stænd be foru:shænd/.

Was it easy? Good!

A few = چند تا /chænd ta:/

تا /ta:/. This is a very useful word in Persian! You could put تا /ta:/ after any countable noun.

Example:

A few trees = چند تا درخت /chænd ta: derækht/.

A few tables = چند تا میز /chænd ta: mi:z/.

A few dogs = چند تا سگ /chænd ta: sæg/.

Two trees = دو تا درخت /do ta: derækht/

Two tables = دو تا میز /do ta: mi:z/

Of course you could say the above phrases without تا /ta:/. تا /ta:/ makes your sentences more friendly or conversational.

Then, we have بچه /bæch.cheh/ in the Persian sentence. But, the English translation says, "a few boys".

Boy = پسر /pesær/.

Child = بچه /bæch.cheh/.

So, the translation seems wrong here. The Persian text reads, "a few children".

The word 'children' has an adjective: همسال /hæm sa:l/ = of the same age

In Persian, adjectives mostly come after noun. Example:

'Big house' is 'house big' in Persian.

'Red apple' is 'apple red' in Persian.

And so on.

Note: very rarely, adjectives come before nouns. In this case, the context is mostly 'literary'.

All right,

A few children

What did they (a few children) do?

They pronounced.

What did they pronounce?

They pronounced 'Daily News'.

For who?

For Yahyaa.
 As you see,
 The children are 'subject'.
 'Pronounced' is the verb.
 What did they pronounce?
 'Daily News'.
 So, 'Daily News' is the object.
 However, there is another 'clause' in this sentence. What's that?
 Who were those children?
 They were those who sold the newspaper.
 So, the children who sold the newspaper pronounced.
 What did they pronounce?
 'Daily News'.
 So, the children who sold the newspaper pronounced 'Daily News'.
 For who?
 For Yahyaa.
 So, the children who sold the newspaper pronounced 'Daily News' to/for Yahyaa.
 Where did it happen?
 In the office (adverb of place).
 So, the children who sold the newspaper pronounced 'Daily News' for Yahyaa in the office.
 Which office?
 In the newspaper office.
 So, the children who sold the newspaper pronounced 'Daily News' for Yahyaa in the newspaper office.
 Who else pronounced for Yahyaa?
 The person in charge of newspaper deliveries.
 So, The person in charge of newspaper deliveries and the children who sold the newspaper pronounced
 'Daily News' for Yahyaa in the newspaper office.
 How many times did they pronounce?
 Several times.
 The final work is: The person in charge of newspaper deliveries and the children who sold the newspaper
 pronounced 'Daily News' several times for Yahyaa in the newspaper office.
 Note: since this story is rather conversational, you could put 'place' in the beginning as well.

He also did this to learnt it well . او هم بخوبی آن را یاد گرفت /u: hæm bekhu:bi a:n ra: ya:d gereft/.

Who is او /u:/?

Yayaa.

What did he do?

He learned.

What did he learn?

He learned 'that' (آن را /a:n ra:/)

So, آن /a:n/ = 'that' (an object)

The English translation reads, " He also did this to learnt it well."

'Did' comes from the verb 'to do'. We don't have this verb in our Persian sentence. So, 'did this' is unnecessary. The Persian sentence says, "He too learned it well".

و به نظرش آن اسم به شکل یک دیزی آمد /væ beh næzæræsh a:n esm beh shekl e yek dizi a:mæd/.

As you see, we have (و /væ/ = and) in many places. Too many 'ands' in one short paragraph. It shouldn't be very strong. The writer could break these sentences very easily.

و به نظرش آن اسم به شکل یک دیزی آمد /beh næzæræsh a:n esm beh shekl e yek dizi a:mæd/.

The English translation reads, " That name seemed to him to have the form of dizi (a national dish).

It seems understandable. Yet, there is a very small thing to think about here. The translator has apparently looked up the word **شکل** /shekl/ in his dictionary. The Persian-English dictionary says: **شکل** /shekl/ = form

I am sorry to say that most of the available bilingual dictionaries are good enough for fireplaces only! Make sure to study them in winter!!!

Take my advice and use monolingual dictionaries as much as possible (Oxford Advanced Learner's and Longman are two good examples of this kind of dictionaries. I am afraid such dictionaries are not available in Persian or in other languages). Lots of equivalents in bilingual dictionaries (at least Persian->English dictionaries) have been created to put the poor students in eternal confusion!! You have lots of equivalents for one word but you don't know how to use them in a context. Eventually, you will translate, "Mr. President gave his address to the crowd" for "Mr. President addressed the crowd"!!! Most of them are good joke books though!!

To be like something = **به شکل چیزی بودن** /beh shekl e chizi bu:dæn/.
Example:

The earth is like a ball = **زمین به شکل توپ است** /zæmin beh shekl e tu:p æst/.

In this sentence (That name seemed to him to have the form of dizi (a national dish) , a dish cannot have the form of a newspaper unless it is a French cheese!! (Just joking! I know François has done a wonderful job). You see how confusing a bilingual dictionary could be.

This sentence simply means, "To him, that name (Daily News) was like Dizi".

Finally, the last sentence:

Correctly and without trouble, behind his head and also in front of him he said "'Daily News', 'Daily News', 'Daily News'" and he came out of the newspaper office.

In Persian sentence, we have **چند بار** /chænd ba:r/ = a few times – several times

صحیح /sæhih/ = correctly

بدون زحمت /bedu:n e zæhmæt/ = without trouble / difficulty

زحمت /zæhmæt/ = trouble

بدون /bedu:n e/ = a negative maker prefix in this combination = without

The translation says, "Correctly and without trouble".

Now, I ask you a question:

What is the best word for 'without trouble' or 'without difficulty' in English?

What is not difficult should be easy! So, instead of saying 'without trouble', you could simply say, "easily".

When you can say a word easily, you are fluent in that word. Although 'correctly' is absolutely correct, you could say 'fluently and easily' for "correctly and without trouble".

Then, we see another piece of dictionary jokes!! Poor François!!

According to our bilingual dictionary:

پشت /posht/ = behind

سر /sær/ = head

پیش /pish/ = front – in front

Normally, the translation of this sentence (**پشت سر هم پیش خودش** /posht e sær e hæm pish e khodesh/) should be this in English: behind his head and also in front of him !!

François is right. This is all the dictionary says. But be logical. What does 'behind his head and also in front of him' mean? Do you have any tongue behind your head?!! Personally, I am missing a tongue behind my head!!

پشت سر هم /posht e sær e hæm/ = on and on – repeatedly – continuously

پیش خودش /pish e khodæsh/ = to himself – a whisper to himself/herself

Example: "I shouldn't do that," she thought (she whispered to herself).

In Persian, we say, "**پیش خودش فکر کرد** /pish e khodæsh fekr kærð/."

So, the translation should be something like this:

A few times, he repeated 'Daily News! Daily News! Daily News!' easily and fluently to himself, and left the newspaper office.

All right,

You see how difficult and interesting translation is. I am sorry for speaking too much today. I just had to since this is an online course and everything should be explained to help you understand the concepts easier. I deeply hope this lesson was useful.

If the answer is 'yes', we will continue it next week!

Till then, have a great time and enjoy your life.

I love you all and wish you success.

See you next week.

Note on our weekly Quiz: Many of you have been complaining about this Quiz. Some don't like it and the majority are looking for the source to make sure if their answers are correct. As a result, I will give you the source from this week although I don't like to do so! I believe a good student should remember the previous lessons (a kind of unkind and cruel teacher!!).

Quiz: (Source: Useful Drills 88)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Newspaper

To go to work

To shop

To watch

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

30 - 36 - 63 - 306 - 603 - 360 - 630 (No source!)

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Newspaper = ه + م + ا + ن + ز + و + ر

To shop = ن + د + ر + ک + د + ی + ر + خ

To watch = ن + د + ر + ک + ه + ا + گ + ن

Week 106

Salam!

Today, we are going to continue our discussions on the translation of Yahyaa. How was the first part? Actually, not many of you sent me messages on this translation. I received a few messages though. Thanks God, the majority liked it! However, there were a couple persons who found this translation lesson a bit difficult. This is my fault. I should have told you before. This translation lesson **is not** for beginners. Of course, the beginners could enjoy it but it might be a bit difficult for them. So do not feel bad if you are a beginner and find such translation lessons confusing. It is natural.

As we did last time, we need to read the Persian text first. The second paragraph is a bit long. So, I don't think we can finish it today. Currently, let's read the first 3 lines.

You have one minute to read it.

Finished? Good!

Now, let me read it for you. Please click **here** to listen.

The first sentence reads **توی کوچه که رسید شروع بدویدن کرد.**

The translation says: In the lane in which he arrived he started to run.

/ku:cheh/ **کوچه** = alley

“Lane” is not the exact word for **کوچه** /ku:cheh/. Apparently, the office is not on the main street. He leaves the newspaper office (in the first paragraph). Then, the writer starts by **کوچه** /ku:cheh/.

I don't think the Persian dictionaries give “lane” for **کوچه** /ku:cheh/. So, I don't know why François has chosen “lane” here.

Then, we have **که** /keh/ in Persian.

The main meaning of /keh/ is “that” in Persian (as a clause). Examples:

I knew **that** he would be late.

She claims **that** she is a doctor.

You may also find this **که** /keh/ in all relative pronouns. Do you remember those lessons? Woe to you if the answer is negative!!!

So,

The man **who**

The book **which**

The lady **whom**

And so on.

There is only one word for all these English “**Bold**” words and that word is **که** /keh/.

However, **که** /keh/ has another meaning or function. One of those meanings is reflected in this Persian text **توی کوچه که رسید**.

Let me give you some examples to help you understand the concept:

منو که دید /mæno keh did/

پولو که گرفت /pu:lo keh gereft/

صدامو که شنید /seda:mo keh shenid/

And so on.

Please note that the three phrases above are oral Persian. So, this structure is mostly used in conversational situation not in formal book style texts. Here, I need to give you a very short background on Persian story. Before doing that, let me tell you something (maybe) interesting.

I had an old uncle. Whenever he wanted to speak on the phone, he talked in a very formal way as if he was talking to a very important person. We would laugh at him and, of course, he would get angry with us! We said, “the person on the other end of the phone is our neighbor or close friend. You don't need to be so formal.”

This would make him very angry. He said, “You are stupid! Telephone is not a joke! We need to be serious whenever we are using it!! This is not invented for cheap talks!

The same happened to our Persian literature. People thought texts on papers must be formal and different from oral conversation. So, if you looked at the Persian writings of some 100 years ago, you would notice that all of them are very formal and considerably difficult to understand. It was then, appeared some people such as Mohammad Ali Jamal zadeh, Sadegh e Hedayat, Sadegh e Choobak (Choubak), Jalal Al Ahmad, and many others who started writing in oral form.

Even our poetry was purely classical. It was a must for the poets to write in the same way as Hafez did 800 years ago. Then, suddenly, appeared a man called Nima who introduced a new version or era in the Persian poetry. When, for the first time, he recited his poems in an official meeting of the poets in Tehran, almost all the great poets of his time insulted him badly in the meeting. “This man must be crazy for calling such nonsense a poem!” they concluded.

You see, Iranians are hard to convince!!

All right,

So far we have come to know that this text is oral Persian. The examples I gave you are in oral form too.

In short,

منو که دید /mæno keh did/ = no sooner he/she saw me = as soon as he/she saw me = when he/she saw me

پولو که گرفت /pu:lo keh gereft/ = no sooner he/she got the money = as soon as he/she got the money = when he/she got the money

صدامو که شنید /seda:mo keh shenid/ = no sooner he/she heard me = as soon as he/she heard me = when he/she heard me

The Persian text says, “**توی کوچه که رسید**” = As soon as he reached / entered /walked into the alley.

شروع بدویدن کرد. /shoru: beh dævidæn kærd/.

شروع کردن /shoru: kærdæn/ = to start/begin

دویدن /dævidæn/ = to run

شروع بدویدن کرد. /shoru: beh dævidæn kærd/. = he started to run/running

فریاد زدن /færya:d zædæn/ = to shout

The translation of this sentence is good (He repeatedly shouted "Daily News! Daily News."). However, as much as the style in Persian text is concerned, 'repeatedly' could be in the beginning. So, Repeatedly, he shouted "Daily News! Daily News!"

Then, we have this sentence:

No one paid any attention.

The Persian sentence says **بهیچکس توجه نداشت.**

هیچکس /hich kæs/ = anybody

توجه داشتن /tævæj.joh da:shtæn/ = to pay attention

In Persian, we have **به** /be/ before /hich kæs/.

To pay attention to somebody/something = **به کسی یا به چیزی توجه داشتن** /beh kæsi or beh chizi tævæj.joh da:shtæn/.

To pay no attention to somebody/something = **به کسی یا به چیزی توجه نداشتن** /beh kæsi or beh chizi tævæj.joh næ da:shtæn/.

Example: he paid no attention to me = **او به من توجه نداشت** /u: beh mæn tævæj.joh næda:sht/.

The text reads, **بهیچکس توجه نداشت.**

The translation reads No one paid any attention.

Apparently, it is wrong.

This is the translation:

He paid no attention to anybody.

فقط سرگرم کار خودش بود. /fæghæt særgærm e ka:r e khodæsh bu:d/ = He was the only one busy with work.

فقط /fæghæt/ = only - just

سرگرم کاری بودن /særgærm kari bu:dæn/ = to be busy with a work.

خودش /khodæsh/ = himself/herself

فقط سرگرم کار خودش بود. /fæghæt særgærm e ka:r e khodæsh bu:d/ = He was busy with just his own work (he paid no attention to anybody).

هر قدر آن اسم را زیادتیر تکرار میکرد و مردم از او روزنامه میخریدند = However much more he repeated that name, the more people bought newspapers.

There are some points here.

There is no “however” in Persian sentence. So, the word “however” is redundant.

Do you know how to say such sentences in Persian?

The more I see you, the more I love you.

The more you practice, the better you will learn.

In Persian, we say هر چه بیشتر /hær cheh bish tær/ or هر قدر /hær ghædr/ for the first “the more”.

The more I see you = هر چه بیشتر می بینمت /hær cheh bish tær mi binæmet/

The more you practice = هر چه بیشتر تمرین کنی /hær cheh bish tær tæmrin koni/

Is it clear? Good!

The second “more” (or anything that replaces ‘more’) should be translated as follows:

بیشتر /bish tær/ + adjective or verb or anything you have in your second sentence.

The more I love you = بیشتر دوست دارم /bish tær du:set da:ræm/ => بیشتر /bish tær/ + verb (du:set da:shtæn/).

The better you will learn = بیشتر یاد می گیری /bish tær ya:d migiri/ =

بیشتر یاد خواهی گرفت /bish tær ya:d kha:hi gereft/. => بیشتر /bish tær/ + verb (ya:d gereftæn/).

NOTE :

Better = بهتر /behtær/.

You could replace بیشتر /bish tær/ with بهتر /beh tær/ => بهتر یاد خواهی گرفت /beh tær ya:d kha:hi gereft/.

Point : the second ‘more’ (in the second sentence) could be changed according to the comparative adjective).

Example: the more you waste your time, the harder the work will be.

In this sentence, the Persian structure of the second part (the harder the work will be) should be like this:

Adjective + تر /tær/

Hard = مشکل /mosh kel/ = سخت /sækht/

Harder = مشکل تر /mosh kel tær/ = سخت تر

Did you get the point? Great!

All right,

There is a comma in our English sentence (... he repeated that name, the more ...). In Persian, we have و /væ/ = and.

The sentence does not end with ‘newspapers’. So, ‘full stop’ is not needed after ‘newspapers’.

We could say, “the more he repeated that name and the more people bought the newspapers”

Then what?

بیشتر از خودش خوشش می آمد /bish tær æz khodæsh khoshæsh mi a:mæd/ = the more he became happy with himself = the more he felt satisfied

The sentence should end here. So, there should be ‘full stop’ after himself. (Poor punctuations in Persian sentence)

و تا چند شماره هم که فروخت هنوز آن اسم یادش بود. and for a few issues that he sold he still remembered that name.

‘And’ is not necessary.

Actually, this is not the translator's fault. There is و /væ/ in Persian sentence, which is unnecessary. So, we could delete it in our English sentence.

My translation professor once told me in university, “If the text says $2 + 2 = 5$, you should translate the same.”

I agree with him since translators are not responsible for the original text. But, sometimes when we are 100 percent sure, we could improve the original text if we **really know** what we are doing. Otherwise, just translate $2 + 2 = 5$!!

For a few issues that he sold he still remembered that name. This sentence is ok.

All right,

I hope you enjoyed this lesson. We will continue it next time.

Till then,

Khoda Hafez!

See you next week!

Please do the Quiz first. Then go to Useful drills page.

Quiz: (Source: Useful Drills 85)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To meet

I talked to him

On TV

To teach

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

13 - 31 - 310 - 103 - 103 - 3001 - 1003 - 3100 - 1300

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To introduce = م + ع + ر + ف + ی + ک + ر + د + ن

To arrest = د + س + ت + گ + ی + ر + ک + ر + د + ن

To steal = د + ز + د + ی + د + ن

To Speak = ح + ر + ف + ز + د + ن

To see = ن + د + ی + د

Week 106

Look at this sentence:

هنوز آن اسم یادش بود. /hænu:z a:n esm ya:dæsh bu:d/ = He still remembered that name. (This is the last sentence of today's lesson).

To remember something/somebody

What I want you to do today is to follow the above pattern and translate the following sentences. Have fun!

Note: Replace بود /bu:d/ with است /æst/ to make Present tense.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian:

1- I still remember her face.

2- They still remember their home.

3- We still remember our country.

4- You still remember your friend.

5- Paul still remembers Canada!

- ۱- هنوز آن صورت یادم است = هنوز به یاد آن صورتم .
- ۲- هنوز خانه شان یادشان است = هنوز به یاد خانه شان هستند .
- ۳- هنوز کشورمان یادمان است = هنوز به یاد کشورمان هستیم .
- ۴- هنوز دوستت یادت است = هنوز به یاد دوستت هستی .
- ۵- پل هنوز کانادا یادش است ! = پل هنوز به یاد کانادا است !

Welcom to Persian translation page

This page is yours! Send me your English sentences and find their Persian translation right here!

NOTE: All sentences and phrases you see on this page are sent by site visitors. These sentences do not have close relations and may not have been covered with our weekly lessons. They are mostly conversational - based sentences in Persian and are translated in a way to convey the message properly. So, don't think this is not Persian!!

NOTE: Since the number of the sentences are increasing every week, I have put the first 99 sentences on this page to make navigation easier for you. For more updated sentences, please go to HOME PAGE and click on Your Words button on the left.

1- I love you = دوست دارم ! /du:set da:ræm/. Listen!

NOTE: Like love itself, the above sentence is a bit complicated in Persian!! One of the meaning of "I love you", and the most common one, is what you see above. This phrase has another equivalent in Persian, which is not very common in daily conversations. Rather, it is used in certain situations, or in poetry,

music, and finally in some writings. We can say, عاشقتم ! /a:sheghetæm/ for /du:set da:ræm/. Or, any other phrase that uses the word عشق /eshgh/.

You may use /du:set da:ræm/ in the same way as we use "I love you" in English. That is to say, you may use it to express your love to your beloved (romantic moments!), to your children, to your parents, or even to your friends. But, عاشقتم ! /a:sheghetæm/ is better be used during the romantic moments only!!

2- I am interested in ... من به ... علاقه دارم /mæn beh ... ala:gheh da:ræm/. Listen!

3- I'll miss you! دلم برات تنگ میشه! /delæm bæra:t tæng misheh/. Listen!

4- I want to go home. میخوام برم خونه /mikha:m beræm khu:neh/. Listen!

5- How are you? حالتون چطوره؟ /ha:letu:n chetoreh?/. Listen!

6- May I come in? می تونم بیام تو؟ /mitu:næm biya:m tu:?. Listen!

7- I'll come to see you tomorrow. فردا میام ببینمت /færda: miya:m bebinæmet/. Listen!

8- Happy Birth Day to You! تولدت مبارک! /taval.lodet moba:ræk!/. Listen!

9- I love you more every day and I am always thinking of you. هر روز بیش از روز قبل دوستت دارم و هر لحظه بیادتم. /hær ru:z bish æz ru:z-e- ghæbl du:set da:ræm væ hær læhzeh beh ya:detæm/. Listen!!

10- Happy New Year! سال نو مبارک! /sa:l-e- no moba:ræk/. Listen!

11- Nice to meet you! از آشنایی تون خوشبختم /æz a:shna:i tu:n khosh bækh tæm/. Listen!

12- Salam pedar, it's me Adrian. I just wanted to say "Hi and I am missing you a lot". I hope to see you soon.

سلام بابا! منم، آدریان. می خواستم بهت سلام کنم
و بگم که خیلی دلم برات تنگ شده. امیدوارم که
بزودی ببینمت.

/sæla:m ba: ba:! mænæm,
a:driya:n. mikha:stæm behet sæla:m konæm væ begæm keh kheili delæm bæra:t tæng shod-e-
omidva:ræm bezu:di bebinæmet/. Listen!

13- I wish I could see you once more. **ایکاش یک بار دیگر می دیدمت** /ei ka:sh yek ba:r-e-
digær mididæmet/. Listen!

14- I will impatiently wait for you to come back. **بی صبرانه منتظرتم تا برگردی** /bi
sæbra:neh montæzeretæm ta: bærgærdi/. Listen!

15- You are so beautiful! **خیلی خوشگلی!** /kheili khosh geli:!/ Listen!

16- When will you come back? **کی بر می گردی؟** /kei bær migærdi/? Listen!

17- Grand father **پدر بزرگ** /pedær bozorg/. Listen! Also **بابا بزرگ** /ba: ba: bozorg/.

Grand mother **مادر بزرگ** /ma:dær bozorg/. Listen! Also **مامان بزرگ** /ma:ma:n bozorg/.

18- A red rose is like a hot kiss, and I am sending you a whole bunch of them!

هر گل سرخ بوسه داغیست و من حلقه ای سرشار از آن می فرستمت! /hær gol-e- sorkh
bu:seh ye da:ghist væ mæn hælgeh i: særsha:r æz a:n miferestæmæt!/ Listen!

19- I want **میخوام** /mikha:m/. Listen! See sentence number 4 above.

20- Please forgive me, I am still the same lover! **لطفا منو ببخش - من هنوز همون عاشقتم!**
/lotfæn mænu: bebækhsh, mæn hænu:z hæmu:n a:sheghetæm!/ Listen!

21- I speak a little Persian. **من کمی فارسی بلدم** /mæn kæmi fa:rsi bælədæm/. Listen!

22- You are big! **تو بزرگی** /to bozorgi!/ Listen!

23- It's very cool (Something very good and interesting). **خیلی با حاله!** /kheili ba: ha:leh:!/ Listen!

24- You are very cool (You are a good and very interesting person). **خیلی با حالی!** /kheili ba: ha:li:!/ Listen!

Note: Numbers 23 and 24 are very common in Persian, but they are very informal. You may use them as many times as you wish when talking to your friends, but try not to use them in formal or official situations.

25- I want to do with you what spring does to the Cherry trees.

می خواهم برایت همچون بهاری برای شکوفه های گیلاس باشم /mikha:hæm bæra: yæt
hæm chu:n bæha:ri bæra: ye sheku:f-e- ha: ye gi:la:s ba:shæm/. Listen!

26- Hey, my friend, Nice meeting you since the beginning of the year.

I don't remember we use the same composition in Persian for the above meaning. Instead, we use some other expressions to express our feeling to the person we haven't seen for a long time. So, the following Persian sentence is not the exact equivalent of the English one. It is translated based on the concept of the sentence, which is Persianized!

چطوری رفیق؟ رفتی حاجی حاجی مکه ها؟ /chetori ræfigh? Ræfti ha:ji ha:ji mækeh, ha:?

Listen!

Note: You may simply replace /ræfigh/ = /du:st/ with the person's name.

27- FIFA World Cup جام جهانی فوتبال /ja:m-e- jæha:ni ye fu:tba:l/. Listen!

28- In your eyes the flames of the twilight fought on.

در چشمانت شعله های شفق به ستیز شکفت /dær chæsh ma:næt sholeh ha: ye shæfægh beh seti:z shekoft/. Listen!

29- The light wraps you in its mortal flames. نور در هاله ای میرا مستورت می کند /nu:r dær ha:leh i: mi:ra: mæstu:ræt mikonæd/. Listen!

30- I'll pray for you. برات دعا می کنم /bæra:t doa: mikonæm/. Listen!

31- You are like the sun, when I think of you, you brighten up my day.

تو همانند خورشیدی ، هرگاه که به تو بیندیشم روزم منور است. /to hæma:nænd _e_khorshidi:, hærga:h keh beh to biændishæm ru:zæm monæv.vær æst/. Listen!

32- Monday is a special day in Dushanbe when there is no war.

دوشنبه در (شهر) دوشنبه روز خاصیت اگر جنگ نباشد /du:shænbeh dær (shæhr-e-) Du:shænbeh ru:z-e- kha:s.si:st ægær jæng næba:shæd/. Listen!

33- Much coin much care (pain)

Note: we know that this is a proverb not a normal sentence. We also know that, basically, we do not translate the proverbs and expressions. Rather, we find their equivalents in our target language. Therefore, the Persian equivalent for the above proverb is this:

The wider the roof, the bigger the snow.

هر که بامش بیش برفش بیشتر /hær keh ba:mæsh bi:sh, bærfæsh bi:shtær/. Listen!

34- Balance تعادل /tæa:dol/. Listen!

35- She lost her balance and fell off her bicycle.

او تعادلش را از دست داد و از روی دوچرخه اش افتاد. /u: tæa:dolæsh ra: æz dæst da:d væ æz ru: ye do chærkkeh æsh ofta:d/. Listen!

36- You have beautiful eyes! چشمای قشنگی داری! /chesha: ye ghæshængi da:ri/. Listen!

37- Happy anniversary! سالروز مبارک! /sa:l ru:z moba:ræk/. Listen!

38- Can I speak to Helen? (On the phone) میتونم با هلن صحبت کنم؟ /mitu:næm ba: Helen sohbæt konæm/? Listen!

39- During the past few weeks, I have received several messages from your friends who have been asking for a Persian song, or chant or something like this that is used in birthday parties. As far as I remember, the Iranian mostly use the following song during their birthday parties. What you see below is a part of the song (and the most important part of it). You already know its meaning, which is "Happy Birthday to you". To listen to this song, you'll have to forgive my terrible voice!!

تولد - تولد - تولد - تولدت مبارک! مبارک - مبارک - تولدت مبارک! /tavæ:l.lod - tavæ:l.lod - tavæ:l.lodet moba:ræk. Moba:ræk - moba:ræk - tavæ:l.lodet moba:ræk!/ Listen!

40- Little sister خواهر کوچولو /kha:hær ku:chu:lu:/. Listen!

41- Be honest without the thought of heaven or hell! بی اندیشه از دوزخ یا بهشت صادق باش /bi ændisheh æz du:zækh ya: behesht sa:degh ba:sh/. Listen!

42- Good night! شب بخیر! /shæb beh kheir!/ Listen!

43- I love talking to you. من از حرف زدن باهات لذت می برم. /mæn æz hærf zædæn ba:ha:t lezæt mi bæræm/. Listen!

44- Tit for tat! این به جای اون! /in beh ja: ye u:n!/ Listen! Also (more common in daily conversation): این به اون در! /in beh u:n dær!/ Listen! Also (in formal speech like news)

تلافی جویانہ /tæla:fi ju:ya:neh/. Listen! Example: A tit for tat (retaliatory) operation:

عملیات تلافی جویانہ /æmæli ya:t _e_ tæla:fi ju:ya:neh/. Listen!

45- Could you do me a favour please? همیشه یہ لطفی در حقم بکنی؟ /mish_e_ ye lotfi dær hæghæm bokoni/? Listen!

46- When will you call (telephon) me again? دوبارہ کی بہم زنگ می زنی؟ /du:ba:reh kei behem zæng mizæni/? Listen!

47- When will you write a letter to me? کی بہم نامہ می دی؟ /kei behem na:meh midi/? Listen!

48- What? چہ؟ /cheh/. Listen! Also in daily conversation چی؟ /chi/.

49- Where? کجا؟ /koja:/. Listen!

50- How? چطور؟ /chetor/. Listen!

51- When? کی؟ /kei/. Listen!

52- Who? کی؟ /ki/. Listen! Note: " When" and " Who" have the same spelling with different pronunciation.

53- Why? چرا؟ /chera:/. Listen!

Explanations: Numbers 54 - 55 - 56 - 57 - and 58 are used in Persian in a little bit different way than in English. For example, we use "uncle" for both our father's brother and mother's brother in English. We also use "aunt" for both our father's sister and mother's sister in English. However, each of the above-mentioned numbers has its own meaning in Persian.

54- Mother in law ==> The "mother in law" of a female is called مادر شوهر /ma:dær shohær/. Listen!

For example: When a woman is saying "my mother in law", she should say: مادر شوهرم /ma:dær shohæræm/.

The "mother in law" of a male is called مادر زن /ma:dær zæn/. Listen! For example: When a man is saying "my mother in law", he should say: مادر زنم /ma:dær zænæm/.

55- Father in law ==> The "father in law" of a female is called پدر شوهر /pedær shohær/. Listen! For example: When a woman is saying "my father in law", she should say: پدر شوهرم /pedær shohæræm/.

The "father in law" of a male is called پدر زن /pedær zæn/. Listen! For example" When a man is saying " my father in law", he should say: پدر زنم /pedær zænæm/.

56- Uncle ==> Father's brother is called: عمو /æmu:/. Listen! Mother's brother is called: دایی /da: i:/. Listen!

57 - Aunt ==> Father's sister is called: عمہ /æm.meh/. Listen! Mother's sister is called: خالہ /kha:leh/. Listen!

58- Cousin ==> Cousin has many equivalents in Persian!

A - Son of father's brother is called: پسر عمو /pesær æmu:/. Listen!

B - Son of father's sister is called: پسر عمہ /pesær æm.meh/.

C - Son of mother's brother is called: پسر دایی /pesær da: i:/. Listen!

D - Son of mother's sister is called: پسر خالہ /pesær kha:leh/.

E - Daughter of father's brother is called: دختر عمو /dokhtær æmu:/. Listen!

F - Daughter of father's sister is called: دختر عمہ /dokhtær æm.meh/.

G - Daughter of mother's brother is called: دختر دایی /dokhtær da: i:/.

H - Daughter of mother's sister is called: دختر خاله /dokhtær kha:leh/.

59 - Please, do not doubt my love for you. لطفا در عشقم به تو شک نکن ! /lotfæn, dær eshghæm beh to shæk nækon/. Listen!

60- I love you and miss you like the desert needs the rain.

همچون بیابان تشنه باران دوستت دارم و بی قرارتم /hæm chu:n biya:ba:n _e_ teshneh ye ba:ra:n du:stæt da:ræm væ bighæra:retæm/. Listen!

61- I hate them all! از همشون متنفرم ! /æz hæmæshu:n motenæferæm/. Listen!

62- Thank you! ممنونم! /mæm nu:næm/. Listen! Also: تشکر! /tæshækor/. Listen! And a couple of similar words with more or less the same.

63- You're welcome! خواهش می کنم! /kha:hesh mikonæm/. Listen! (In response to thank you)

64- Excuse me! ببخشید! /bebækh shid/. Listen!

65- Will you marry me? آیا باهام ازدواج می کنی؟ /a:ya: ba:ha:m ezdeva:j mikoni/? Listen!

66- Are you ignoring me? داری بی خیالم می شی؟ /da:ri bi khiya:læm mishi/. Listen! (The Persian sentence here is a kind of informal expression).

67- Don't worry about it! نگران نباش! /negæra:nesh næba:sh/. Listen!

68- I enjoyed our time at the river. کنار رودخونه خیلی بهم خوش گذشت ! /kena:r _e _ru:d khu:neh kheili behem khosh gozæst/. Listen!

69- Would you like have a coffee with me? مایلی یه فنجون قهوه با هم بخوریم؟ /ma:yeli yeh fenju:n ghæhveh ba: hæm bokhorim/? Listen!

70- As much a things change, they stay the same!

This proverb may have differenet meanings in Persian. It depends on the situation. One of it's Persian equivalent is as follows if this is the situation: A close friend expects to see some change in you, but you have not changed yet. OR, parents expect to see some changes in the behaviour of their children after they have given them enough advice, but the children are not changed. OR, a teacher expects changes in his students with no success (in either their progress or behaviour). However, it is not very polite to use it in a formal situation.

In Persian, we say: It is useless to make dogs' tails straight even if you try for 100 years!

دم سگ و اگه صد سالم تو غلاف ببندی بازم کجه ! /dom _e_ sæg o ægeh sæd sa:læm tu: ghæla:f bebændi, ba:zæm kæjeh!/ Listen!

71- Bonjour!

I think (not very sure) "Bonjour" means both "Hello" and "Good day". So, you may say either سلام

/sæla:m/ Listen! OR, روز بخیر /ru:z bekheir/. Listen! OR, even both!

72- Two captains sink the ship! (Proverb)

In Persian we say: two cooks will make the soup either too salty or soltless!

آشپز که دو تا شد آش یا شور می شود یا بی نمک ! /a:sh pæz keh do ta: shod, a:sh ya: shu:r mishævæd ya: bi næmæk/. Listen!

73- I adore my crazy boyfriend!! قربون دوست پسر دیوونم برم الهی !! /ghorbu:n _e_ du:st pesær _e_ divu:næm beræm, ela:hi!! Listen!

74- We have been through much together, it has made our love stronger.

خیلی با هم قاتی شدیم و این عشقمونو قویتر کرده. /kheili ba: hæm gha:ti shodim, væ in esh-ghemu:n o ghævitar kæرده/. Listen!

75- How is Dr. Hossein doing in Iran? آقای دکتر حسین تو ایران چطورن ؟ /a:gha: ye doktor Hussein tu: ira:n chetoræn/? Listen!

I wish we could get together for discussion and tea.

ایکاش می تونستیم یه چایی با هم بخوریم و گپی بزیم . /ei ka:sh mitu:nestim ye cha: i: ba: hæm bokhorim o gæpi bezænim/. Listen!

76- My name is William! اسمم ویلیامه ! /esmæm William _e_/. Listen!

77- You are the most beautiful girl on earth and I want to marry you!

تو خوشگلترین دختر روی زمینی و من میخوام باهات ازدواج کنم . /to khosh gel tærin dokhtær _e_ ru: ye zæmini væ mæn mikha:m ba:ha:t ezdeva:j konæm/. Listen!

78- I want you, I want you so bad, it's driving me mad!

میخوامت - بد جوری میخوامت - دارم دیوونه می شم . /mikha:met, bæd ju:ri mikha:met, da:ræm divu:neh mishæm/. Listen!

79- He who wants a rose must respect the thorns. (A proverb) => The following Persian equivalent of this proverb in word for word translation is this: If you eat somebody's bread, then eat his grief too!! Which means If you are with somebody during his good time (or when he is wealthy), then be with him during

his bad time. اگه نون کسی رو می خوری غمشم بخور /ægeh nu:n _e_ kesi ro mikhori, ghæmeshæm bokhor/. Listen!

80- You are bothering me! داری اذیت می کنی! /da:ri æziyæt mikoni/. Listen!

81- Kiss me! (In oral form) = ماچم کن ! /ma:chæm kon/! Listen! Or بوسم کن ! /bu:sæm kon/!

Listen! (Literary form) = مرا ببوس ! /mæra: bebu:s/! Listen!

82- My love and my heart have been lost in the depth of your meaningful look. Will you take them back to me? عشق من قلب من در عمق نگاه پر معنای تو گم شده. میاریش برام؟ /eshegh _e_ mæn,

ghælb _e_ mæn dær omgh _e_ nega:h _e_ por mæna:ye to gom shodeh. mia:rish bæra:m? Listen!

83- Dreaming is the real magic power. خواب دیدن قدرت جادویی واقعیت . /kha:b didæn ghodræt _e_ ja:du: i: ye va:gheh i:st/. Listen!

84- Can you speak a bit slower please ? همیشه لطفا یه کم آروم تر صحبت کنین ؟ /misheh lotfæn yeh kæm a:ru:m tær sohbæt konin/? Listen!

85- How do you say ... in Farsi ? ... به فارسی چی می شه ؟ /... beh Fa:rsi chi misheh/? Listen! (Note: put your word in the beginning.)

86- How long are you living in Belgium? چن وقته تو بلژیک زندگی می کنین ؟ /chæn væght e tu: Belzhik zendegi mikonin/? Listen!

87- Excuse me, my knowledge of Farsi is very limited but I'm learning.

ببخشید، دانش فارسیم خیلی محدوده ولی دارم یاد می گیرم . /bebækh shid, da:nesh e Fa:rsim kheili mæhdu:d e, væli da:ræm ya:d migiræm/. Listen!

88- Compassionatesness همدردی /hæm dærdi/. Listen!

89- Condolence تسلیت /tæs liyæt/. Listen!

90- Dependent وابسته /va:bæsteh/. Listen!

91- Proud افتخار /eftekha:r/. Listen! (EX: I am proud of you).

92- To check معاينه کردن /moa:yeneh kærdæn/ (In the case of visiting doctors). Listen!

93- Ali, since I met you, my world has become complete.

علی! از وقتی که دیدمت دنیا من کامل شده .
/æli, æz væghti keh didæmet donya:m ka:mel
shodeh/. Listen!

94- You are very kind (in response to somebody's help or favour ...).
لطف دارين ! /lotf da:rin/.
Listen!

95- The food is delicious. غذا خيلي خوشمزه س !
/ghæza: kheili khosh mæz.zæs/. Listen!

96- It is wonderful. عايله !
/a:li ye/. Listen!

97- I want to love you for the rest of my life.
می خوام باقی عمرم و عاشقت باشم !
/mikha:m ba:ghi ye omræmo a:sheghet ba:shæm/. Listen!

98- One day (today) is worth two tomorrows (proverb).
سيلى نقد به از حلوای نسيه س !
/sili ye næghd beh æz hælva: ye nesyæs/. Listen!

99- You can lead a horse to water but you can't make him drink. (I am trying to remember this proverb in Persian!! I will update this sentence as soon as I can. Sorry for the weak memory!!).

Week 107

Hello everyone! How was your last week? I hope it was great!

Before we start today, I would like to appreciate a wonderful person from Italy who, at the age of 62, is not only learning Persian but also has given us a big lesson. Long Live Italy!!

Cherrie Elmes has made a dictionary based on the words of this site. The vocabulary in the first 40 lessons are included in this dictionary. Cherrie says, " I have created my own alphabetical English-Persian 'dictionary' - a kind of reference resource into which I copy the new words from each lesson, so that when I need them I can find them easily."

On behalf of everybody on this website, let me say, "Thank you Cherrie!"

You may download this dictionary here.

You may also reach Cherrie at irina_ceri@yahoo.co.uk

All right,

Today, we will continue our discussions on Yahyaa. Hopefully, you enjoyed the first two parts.

If you happen to have access to such stories (Persian with English translation or English with Persian translation), please feel free to send them to me and I will try to share them with all of you here in our online class. Preferably, choose easy stories to make sure everybody will understand. Besides, this site is Easy Persian not Difficult Persian!!

All right,

Now let's try the second part of the second paragraph (through خریدند).

You have a little more than one minute to read this part!!

1.....

Did it? Wonderful!

Now, let me try.

As I told you before, the Persian text has a poor punctuation. Please note that there is a 'comma' whenever I have a short pause, and there is 'full stop' when I pause longer.

Please click here to listen.

اما همينکه بقيه پول خرد يك پنج ريالى تحويل يك آقاي داد

The translation reads, " But as soon as the remainder of the small change a five Rial delivery a gentleman gave"

The same teacher who told me $2 + 2 = 5$, also told me this: when you translate something into your mother tongue, read it for a couple of times. Then, be your own judge. How would you say the same sentence if it were not a translation? I mean, how would you say the same text in your original language?

Now, I ask you a question:

How would you say this sentence in English? (But as soon as the remainder of the small change a five Rial delivery a gentleman gave)

I know it is very difficult! François has done a poor job here. Apparently, he has not understood the sentence.

Let's help him:

اما همینکه بقیه پول خرد یک پنج ربالی تحویل یک آقای داد

اما /æm.ma:/ = but

همینکه /hæmin keh/ = as soon as

داد /da:d/ = gave => تحویل داد

Who gave?

François. Sorry, Yahyaa!!

What did he give?

the remainder of the small change a five Rial

So,

Yahyaa = subject

Gave = verb

the remainder of the small change a five Rial = object

To whom he gave?

یک آقای /yek a:gha: i:/ = a person / a gentleman / an unknown person

How much was the money in the beginning?

Five bucks (Rials)

What did Yahyaa do when he got Five Rials?

He was giving back the change.

To who?

To the unknown person.

So, the translation could be like this:

But, as soon as he gave back the change of the five Rials to a man

Then what happened?

و دهشاهی کسر آورد /væ dæh sha:hi kæsɾ a:vord/

The translation reads: and there was a shortfall of half a Rial

کسر آوردن /kæsɾ a:vordæn/ = to be in short of something

کسر آورد /kæsɾ a:vord/ = he was in short of

In short of what?

In short of half a Rial.

So, the final work should be easy now:

But, as soon as he gave back the change of the five Rials to a man and (noticed that) he was in short of half a Rial,

I have added (noticed that) to make the sentence more understandable.

Then what?

و آن آقا هم دهشاهی را باو بخشید و رفت /væ a:n a:gha: hæm dæh sha:hi ra: beh u: bækhshid væ ræft/.

The translation says: "That gentleman also forgave him half a Rial and left."

بخشیدن /bækhshidæn/ = to forgive (probably, this is what you find in your Persian dictionaries)

I am afraid, it does not mean 'to forgive' in this sentence although it could be understandable.

Have you ever let a waiter keep the change?!!

If yes, what do you say?

Normally, you would say, "keep the change". You do not say, "I forgive you the change". Am I right?

So, here you could say, "The man/gentleman let him keep the change and left."

So, this could be our final work:

But, as soon as he gave back the change of the five Rials to a man and (noticed that) he was in short of half a Rial, and the man let him keep the change and left;"

Wow, a long and boring sentence!!

Then, what happened?

هر چه فکر کرد اسم روزنامه یادش نیامد /hær cheh fekr kærð esm e ru:z na:meh ya:dæsh næya:mæd/.

The translation reads, “ Whatever he thought he could not remember the name of the newspaper.”

This sentence is ok. This is the exact equivalent of the Persian sentence.

Now, let's assemble these sentences! We will have:

But, as soon as he gave back the change of the five Rials to a man and (noticed that) he was in short of half a Rial, and the man let him keep the change and left; whatever he thought he could not remember the name of the newspaper.

Now that we have put all these breathtaking sentences together, we notice that the last part (Whatever he thought he could not remember the name of the newspaper) could be modified a bit.

Here's how:

But, as soon as he gave back the change of the five Rials to a man and (noticed that) he was in short of half a Rial, and the man let him keep the change and left; he could not remember the name of the newspaper anymore / he totally forgot the name of the newspaper.

As you see, I have simply replaced “ Whatever he thought ” with “anymore”.

Do you think I have done right? Yes? Or, No?

Explain the reason to support your answer. (Keep your answers for yourself!)

Then, we have this sentence:

آنها بکلی فراموش کرده بود. /a:n ra: beh kol.li færa:mu:sh kærdeh bu:d/.

François says, “ He had completely forgotten it” , which is correct.

Let's see the next sentence:

ترس ورش داشت /tærs væresh da:sht/.

François says, “ He was overcome by fear.” Correct. You could also say ‘he was filled with fear/ he was terribly scared’

This sentence ends here. So, you could put ‘full stop’ after ‘fear’.

The next sentence is:

لحظه ای ایستاد و خیره نگاه کرد بکف خیابان /læhzeh i: ista:d væ khireh nega:h kærð beh kæf e khiya:ba:n/.

François says, “ and he waited a moment staring at the floor of the street. ” Correct. Just delete ‘and’.

The next sentence is this:

دو مرتبه شروع بدویدن کرد /do mærebeh shoru: beh dævidæn kærð/.

François writes, “ Twice he started to run .”

Probably, he has fallen into dictionary traps again.

The word **دو مرتبه** /do mærebeh/ could be pronounced in two different ways that give two different meanings.

If you put the ‘stress’ on /do/, (like this) = twice – two times

If you put the ‘stress’ on ‘t’, (like this) = again – one more time – once more - Also: double storey (old Persian) => Ex: a double storey building = /yek sa:khtema:n e do mærtæbeh/.

Now, let's see the translation:

A- The sentence ends with ‘run’.

B- What do you mean by “ Twice he started to run ”?

If we replaced ‘ Twice ’ with ‘again’ or ‘once again’, the sentence would become as follows:

Once again, he began to run. And this is what the Persian text says.

All right,

So far so good?! Great!

Let's go to our last sentence today:

باز هم بدون آنکه صدا کند چند شماره ازش خریدند. /ba:z hæm bedu:n e a:n keh seda: konæd chænd shoma:reh æzæsh khæridænd/.

François says, “ despite not calling out, they bought a few issues. ”

The translation of this sentence is perfect.

All right,

I hope you enjoyed this lesson. We will continue it next week.

Till then,

Khoda Hafez and take care!

Please do the Quiz and then go to Useful Drills page.

Quiz: (Source: Useful Drills 90)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Finger

Water went

Landlord

To brush (one's teeth)

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

10 - 110 - 101 - 810 - 801 - 108 - 180 - 118 - 811 - 8110

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ < == د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ < == ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To fix / repair = ت + ع + م + ی + ر + ک + ر + د + ن

To go = ر + ف + ت + ن

To give = د + ن + ا + د + ن

To break = ش + ک + س + ت + ن

Week 107

The 'Useful Drills' is easy today! (Easy Persian!)

Please memorize the first 10 Persian sentences of Yahyaa!

Then, read them by heart. Do not whisper the sentences. Read them out loud. (Make sure nobody is around!!)

Week 108

Hello everyone!

There is a Persian poem that says, **چه خوش بی مهربانی هر دو سر بی !** /cheh khosh bi mehræba:ni hæ r do sæ r bi/. Listen! It means, 'How pleasant it could be if love was bilateral!'

I would like to encourage all of you to help this site survive. There are many ways to support Easy Persian. You could buy the CDs available on this site, you could donate, and you could participate in these free lessons by writing some lessons, articles or whatever you think is good. Let me see this site is important for you and my love is not wasted. How would you feel if you were me?

Please let me thank Christine and her husband in Switzerland for their continual love and support. Thank you Christine!

All right,

Today, we will continue part 4 of our discussions on Yahyaa. I hope the first three parts have been positive.

Let us start:

As our custom, we have to read the text before our discussions.

You have 30 seconds to read the rest of the second paragraph

Finished? Good!

Did you notice any special thing in this sentence?

There are two spelling mistakes.

The second word of this sentence should be **به دهان = بدهان** /be dæha:n/, not /be dæhom/.

دهان /dæha:n/ = mouth

The third word is also wrong. It should be **آنهايي که** = آنهاييکه /a:nha: i: keh/ = those who. Ok. Now, let me read this sentence for you. Please click **here** to listen.

يحيى به دهان آنهايي که ازش روزنامه مي خريدند نگاه مي کرد /yæhya: beh dæha:n e a:nha: i: keh æzæsh ru:zna:meh mi khæridænd nega:h mi kærd/.

François says, “**Yahyaa looked at the mouths of those buying newspapers off him,**”

It is ok. There is only one small point to mention.

In our Persian text, we have **آنهايي که** = آنهاييکه /a:nha: i: keh/ = those who

To be more loyal to the text, we would better translate this sentence as follows:

“Yahyaa looked at the mouths of those who bought newspapers off / from him,”

Why did Yahyaa do so?

تا شايد اسم روزنامه را از آنها بشنود /ta: sha:yæd esm e ru:z na:meh ra: æz a:nha: beshnævæd/.

The translation says, “**to chance hearing the name of the newspaper.**”

تا /ta:/ = 1: so that – 2: to (from one place or time to next). Example: from my home to yours = **از خانه من تا خانه شما** /æz kha:neh ye mæn ta: kha:neh ye shoma:/.

In this sentence, **تا** /ta:/ = so that

شايد /sha:yæd/ = maybe – possibly – may – might

So, the translation could be:

So that he might hear the name of the newspaper. (The sentence should end here)

All right.

Now, let's see the next sentence.

**اما آنها همه با قيافه هاي گرفته و جدی و بی آنکه به صورت او نگاه کنند
روزنامه را می گرفتند و می رفتند**

The translation says, “**But they all had a grave facial expression, seriously and without looking at his face they took the newspaper and left.**”

قيافه /ghiya:feh/ = gesture – appearance – body

گرفته /gerefteh/ = upset – without happiness / smile – thoughtful – cold (feeling) – joyless

Example: you seem (very) unhappy today = **امروز خيلي گرفته اي** /emru:z kheili gerefteh i:/.

جدی /jed.di/ = serious

بی آنکه /bi a:n keh/ = without

گرفتن /gereftæn/ = to take – to buy

One of the possible translations could be like this:

But they all, cold and serious and without looking at his face, bought the newspaper and left.

All right, now let's go to the third paragraph.

You have 30 seconds to read the first two lines (through **ندید** /nædid/).....

Finished? Great!

Now, let me read it for you. Please click **here** to listen.

بيچاره دستپاچه شده بود. /bicha:reh dæst pa:cheh shodeh bu:d/.

The translation reads, “**He became wretched and confused.**”

بيچاره /bicha:reh/ = poor – helpless

Example: Poor Hassan!! = **بيچاره حسن !** /bicha:reh Hassan!!!/

دستپاچه شدن /dəst pa:chɛh shodæn/ = to lose control (because of not knowing what to do) – to get confused in a hasty situation – (antonym => to stay calm down)

In this sentence, the writer has used adjective (بیچاره /bicha:reh/ = poor) for noun. This is almost common in Persian.

In English, we could put 'boy' or 'Yahyaa' to make it more understandable. Like this:
Poor Yahyaa did not know what to do.

به اطراف خودش نگاه می کرد /beh ætra:f e khodæsh nega:h mikærd/

The translation reads, “**He looked around him**”

اطراف /ætra:f/ = around – here and there

Although the translation is ok, we could also say:

He looked around. **OR**, He looked here and there

For what?

شاید یکی از بچه های همقطار خود را پیدا کند /sha:yæd yeki æz bæch.chɛh ha: ye hæm ghætɑ:r e khod ra: peida: konæd/.

François says, “**He looked around him in the chance that of finding one of the fellow worker boys**”

از یکی /yeki æz/ = one of

بچه /bæch.chɛh/ = child

In our Persian sentence, there could be تا /ta:/ before شاید /sha:yæd/. But the writer has purposely ignored this word to make the sentence either shorter or more conversational.

تا /ta:/ = so that

So, the translation could be:

So that he might find one of his fellow worker children

Why he needs to find one of them?

و اسم روزنامه را ازش بپرسد /væ esm e ru:z na:meh ra: æzæsh beporsæd/.

François says, “**to ask the name of the newspaper**”, which is correct.

And finally,

اما کسی را ندید /æm.mæa: kesi ra: nædid/.

اما /a:m.mæa:/ = but

کسی /kesi/ = anybody

François says, “**but there was no one.**”

The Persian sentence says, “but he did not see / find anybody”.

All right, I hope you enjoyed our lesson today.

Take care and have a nice week.

Quiz: (Source: Useful Drills 70)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To clean

I clean

To eat

They eat

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

9 - 19 - 901 - 990 - 910 - 190 - 109 - 119 - 911 - 191

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To clean = ت + م + ی + ز + ک + ر + د + ن

I eat = م + ی + خ + و + ر + م

They clean = ت + م + ی + ز + م + ی + ک + ن + ن + د

Food /Meal = غ + ذ + ا

We eat (food) = غ + ذ + ا + م + ی + خ + و + ر + ی + م

Week 108

No drills for today. Just look in the mirror!!

Hello again!

Long time no see!! = مشتاق دیدار! /moshta:gh e di:da:r/ Listen!

After my long absence, I am back here again with a new lesson. I hope all of you had great time during my absence!

We will cover one more part of Yahyaa today. Next week, we will finish our translation discussions. I deeply hope it was helpful.

Today's lesson is a bit different. All you have to do today is to take care of your ears!! Why? Because I am going to speak and you are going to listen! I am just testing this method today to see how it works.

Are you ready? Good!

We will try the third paragraph. I know the first sentence is already done. I am just explaining it one more time.

Please take a look at the new words below, then click on the sound file to listen to today's lesson. You may open the story of Yahyaa and look at the Farsi writings while listening to the audio file.

You could **right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As'** to download this file into your computer. Enjoy your lesson!

Listen to Lesson 109!

بیچاره /bicha:reh/ = poor => you could also use طفلی /teflæki/.

دستپاچه شدن /dæst pa:cheh shodæn/ = to lose control (because of not knowing what to do) – confusion while in a rush – (antonym => to stay calm down)

همقطار /hæm ghæta:r/ = of the same rank / level – coworker

ورجه ورجه کردن /værjeh vorjeh kærdæn/ = to bounce (restlessly)

پیاده رو /piya:deh ro/ = sidewalk – pavement

فوج /foj/ = large amount of something – multitude

متحرک /motehær.rek/ = unstable – shaky – trembling - mobile

مشق کردن /mæshgh kærdæn/ = to do something – here it means: to parade

مثل اینکه /mesl e inkeh/ = seemingly

یکی دو بار /yeki do ba:r/ = a couple of times

برق زدن /bærgh zædæn/ = to flash – to shine

Please do the Quiz and then go to Useful Drills page.
Take care and have a nice week.

Quiz: (Source: Useful Drills 85)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To steal

To introduce

To meet

I talked to him

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

0 - 10 - 110 - 101 - 201 - 210 - 102 - 120 - 202

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To speak = ص + ح + ب + ت + ک + ر + د + ن

To teach = د + ر + س + د + ا + د + ن

To introduce = م + ع + ر + ف + ی + ک + ر + د + ن

To steal = د + ز + د + ی + د + ن

To meet / visit = م + ل + ا + ق + ا + ت + ک + ر + د + ن

Week 109

Suppose that you are the teacher of your computer! Follow today's lesson and teach your computer the translation of Yahyaa (the first three parts) in the same way as I did today. You may use either English or your mother language to do this job. I am sure your computer will start speaking Persian by next week!!

Week 109

Hello again!

Long time no see!! = مشتاق دیدار! /moshta:gh e di:da:r/! [Listen!](#)

After my long absence, I am back here again with a new lesson. I hope all of you had great time during my absence!

We will cover one more part of [Yahyaa](#) today. Next week, we will finish our translation discussions. I deeply hope it was helpful.

Today's lesson is a bit different. All you have to do today is to take care of your ears!! Why? Because I am going to speak and you are going to listen! I am just testing this method today to see how it works.

Are you ready? Good!

We will try the third paragraph. I know the first sentence is already done. I am just explaining it one more time.

Please take a look at the new words below, then click on the sound file to listen to today's lesson. You may open the story of Yahyaa and look at the Farsi writings while listening to the audio file.

You could **right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As'** to download this file into your computer. Enjoy your lesson!

[Listen to Lesson 109!](#)

بیچاره /bicha:reh/ = poor => you could also use **طفلی** /teflæki/.

دستپاچه شدن /dæst pa:cheh shodæn/ = to lose control (because of not knowing what to do) – confusion while in a rush – (antonym => to stay calm down)

همقطار /hæm ghæta:r/ = of the same rank / level – coworker

ورجه ورجه کردن /væ:rjeh vorjeh kærdæn/ = to bounce (restlessly)

پیاده رو /piya:deh ro/ = sidewalk – pavement

فوج /foj/ = large amount of something – multitude

متحرک /motehær.rek/ = unstable – shaky – trembling - mobile

مشق کردن /mæshgh kærdæn/ = to do something – here it means: to parade

مثل اینکه /mesl e inkeh/ = seemingly

یکی دو بار /yeki do ba:r/ = a couple of times

برق زدن /bærg h zædæn/ = to flash – to shine

Please do the Quiz and then go to Useful Drills page.

Take care and have a nice week.

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 85](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

[One](#)

[Two](#)

[Three](#)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To steal

To introduce

To meet

I talked to him

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

0 - 10 - 110 - 101 - 201 - 210 - 102 - 120 - 202

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

To speak = ص + ح + ب + ت + ک + ر + د + ن

To teach = د + ر + س + د + ا + د + ن

To introduce = م + ع + ر + ف + ی + ک + ر + د + ن

To steal = د + ز + د + ی + د + ن

To meet / visit = م + ل + ا + ق + ا + ت + ك + ر + د + ن

Week 109

Suppose that you are the teacher of your computer! Follow today's lesson and teach your computer the translation of Yahyaa (the first three parts) in the same way as I did today. You may use either English or your mother language to do this job. I am sure your computer will start speaking Persian by next week!!

Week 110

Hello everyone! How are you?

Before we start today, I need to apologize to some of our friends for some misunderstanding.

Some of our Arab brothers and sisters have somehow accused me of attacking the Arab world throughout this site on different occasions.

I have never ever planned to attack any special person, nation or religion. I love and respect all and do not support the policy of taking revenge. I am not that kind of person to break somebody in order to gain others' support or favor. I have mentioned what I assume is true about the background of Iran-Arab relation in history as well as its effect on Persian language. I think to enter into somebody's home by force is called invasion, be it for the sake of religion, democracy or any other ideas. I never said we should kill all Arab people because they took Iran under their control long time ago. On the contrary, I have mentioned that we should learn to forgive and love others.

You the Arab people are my brothers and sisters and I love you all as I love other nations. Please accept my sincere apologies if there has been some misunderstanding and if you think I purposely attacked the Arab people to make others happy. I am your mirror. Do not break me!

All right,

As you know, we are approaching October 19. Does this day remind you of anything special? I hope it does!

October 19 is the day when I was born again, this time online!! Easypersian will become 3 years old on this day!

This year, I am going to give you a very unusual and rare gift! I don't know what you are going to give me in return!

What else a poor man like me has got to give away for friends if not his own properties?! And what property I have but my own website?!

No, don't get excited! I am not going to give away my website! But I have something on this web page for you. Guess what? Yes, you are right! My CDs!!

I am going to offer special discount for Easypersian Website on CD this year. This is a mutual cooperation and I hope you will accept it. I really wish I were able to give a free copy of this CD to each one of you. Unfortunately, this is not possible for me to give away 45000 CDs for free! What I can do for you is to break the price. I will never become a businessman!

For 15 days (**October 15 – October 30**), you may purchase the website CD for 29 dollars only. This is a help to those students who are studying Persian for the sake of their Persian ancestors!! Just remember, this offer will remain valid for **only 15 days!!** Don't miss this opportunity or you will regret it!

As for **music CDs** , I am going to change the price for the sake of the music enthusiasts who love music but cannot pay this much!

So far, I have mailed the music CDs to you with their translation. From October 15 on, the translation of the songs **will not be mailed** to you with the CDs.

This is how the process will work:

When you order any of the **music CDs** , you will have **immediate access** to all songs as well as to their translation!

How?

I will send you the songs (in MP3) and their translation (in PDF) through **internet** and you may download the songs and **print their translation by yourself** . So, you do not have to wait for some one week to receive the parcel.

What about the CD?

I will mail the CD immediately after I receive your order.

Result?

You will have immediate access to the songs and their translation. You will receive the CD in almost one week upon your order.

Satisfied?

Great!

What about the price?

Are you willing to pay me more for such a service?

Thanks for your generosity! I don't want more although I desperately need it!

Just on the contrary, I am going to cut the price down!

So, how much should you pay for each CD?

Only 17 dollars for each music CD! Nothing for shipping.

Could anyone say “dastet dard nakoneh, Hassan”?

Thank you. Saretun dard nakoneh!! Or I would better say, “Jeebetun dard nakoneh!!”

I deeply hope you will accept this as a gift on the third birth anniversary of our site.

All right, now let's get started.

Today, we will finish the last part of our translation discussions on [Yahyaa](#). I am really happy that you liked lesson 109. Thank you very much for all your warm messages.

Ok, ready?

Please go to [Yahyaa](#) now while listening to the sound file.

Have fun!

Please Right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to save the sound file into your computer.

[Yahyaa – part 6 \(the last translation lesson\)](#)

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 78](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Russian

Difficult

Shirt

Expensive

Cheap

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

9 - 99 - 19 - 91 - 910 - 901 - 990 - 109 - 190 - 9000 - 900 - 90

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Shirt = پ + ی + ر + ا + ه + ن

Difficult = م + ش + ک + ل

Iran = ا + ی + ر + ا + ن

Persian = ف + ا + ر + س + ی

Big = ب + ز + ر + گ

Week 110

No drills today.

Week 111

Hi everyone! How are you?

How was the translation lessons? Did you like them? I hope you did.

Well, after a long translation class, I think it is not a bad idea to have a very short break! Today, we are going to have fun! I am sure all of you will like it!

Please do the Quiz first. Then go to Useful Drills page to have fun!

Have a great time and Khoda Hafez.

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 84](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To die

To take away

To play

My friends are playing

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

2 - 20 - 320 - 230 - 120 - 210 - 201 - 321 - 312 - 113 - 133 - 122

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To kill = ک + ش + ت + ن

They killed = آ + ن + ه + ا + ک + ش + ت + ن + د

To take away / to win = ب + ر + د + ن

To die = م + ر + د + ن

He/ she died = م + ر + د

Week 111

Today, we have another piece of Persian music. This song is performed by Ebi and is called Shab e Mard e Tanha (The night of a lonely man). This song is in MP3.

Please right-click on the link below and choose Save Target As' to download this song.

[Shab e Mard e Tanha - Persian music in MP3 - By: Ebi](#)

You may find the lyrics and the translation of this song below. Have fun!

شب مرد تنها /shæb e mærd e tænhæ:/ = The night of a lonely man

شب با خیال تو همخونه شد دل /shæbi ba: khiya:l e to hæmkhu:neh shod del/ = One night, thinking of you, my heart became your roommate!

تو دي نديدي چه و پرونه شد دل /næbu:di nædidi cheh viru:neh shod del/ = you were not here to see how miserable my heart was

تو دي نديدي پريشوندمو /næbu:di nædidi pærishu:niya:mo/ = you were not here to see my agitation

فقط بلا و بارون شنيدن صداهمو /fæghæt ba:d o ba:ru:n shenidæn seda:mo/ = only wind and rain heard me

غم سرد و وحشي به و پرونه ميزد broken heart /ghæm e særd o væhshi beh viru:neh mizæd/ = the wild cold grief hit my

دل با تو خوشن بود و بيمونه ميزد /delæm ba: to khosh bu:d o peimu:neh mizæd/ = my heart, happy with thoughts of you, raising a glass

دل با تو خوشن بود و بيمونه ميزد /delæm ba: to khosh bu:d o peimu:neh mizæd/ = my heart, happy with thoughts of you, raising a glass

نه مرد قلندر نه آنتن پرسدم /næh mærd e ghælændær næh atesh pæræstæm/ = I am neither a dervish nor a fire worshiper

فقط با خیال شبامست مسدم /fæghæt ba: khiya:l e shæba: mæst e mæstæm/ = I am just drunk with my dreams at nights

الهي سحر پشت كوچها بميره /ela:hi sæhær posht e ku:h ha: bemireh/ = May dawn die behind the mountains!

خدا اين شيارو از عاشق نكيه /khoda: in shæba: ro æz a:shægh nægireh/ = May God not take such nights away from lovers!

نه يك شب كه هر شب /næh yek shæb keh hæ r shæb/ = not only one night, but every night

دل بي قراره /delæm bi ghæra:reh/ = my heart is restless

ميخواد مثل بارون بباره باره /mikha:d mesl e ba:ru:n bebareh bebareh/ = and wants to pour down like the rain

شب مرد تنها /shæb e mærd e tænhæ:/ = the night of the lonely man

پر از بلا باره /por æz ya:d e ya:reh/ = is full of his love's memory

پر از گريه تلخ /por æz geryeh ye tælk/ = is filled with bitter weeping

كه بي اختياره /keh bi ekhtiya:reh/ = uncontrollable!

شب مرد تنها /shæb e mærd e tænhæ:/ = the night of the lonely man

شب بي تو مردن /shæb e bi to mardæn/ = is the night of dying without you

شب غرابت و /shæb e ghorbæt o/ = is the night of loneliness and

دل به مستي سپردن /del beh mæsti sepærdæn/ = falling in love with drunkenness!

شباي جواني /shæba: ye jævu:ni/ = the nights of youth

چه بي اختياره /che bi eteba:reh/ = are such a waste!

هميش بي قراره /hæmæsh bi ghæra:ri/ = always restless!

هميش منتظره /hæmæsh enteza:reh/ = always waiting!

هميش بي قراره /hæmæsh bi ghæra:ri/ = always restless!

هميش منتظره /hæmæsh enteza:reh/ = always waiting!

نه مرد قلندر نه آنتن پرسدم /næh mærd e ghælændær næh atesh pæræstæm/ = I am neither a dervish nor a fire worshiper

فقط با خیال شبامست مسدم /fæghæt ba: khiya:l e shæba: mæst e mæstæm/ = I am just drunk with my dreams at nights

الهي سحر پشت كوچها بميره /ela:hi sæhær posht e ku:h ha: bemireh/ = May dawn die behind the mountains!

خدا اين شيارو از عاشق نكيه /khoda: in shæba: ro æz a:shægh nægireh/ = May God not take such nights away from lovers!

شب با خیال تو همخونه شد دل /shæbi ba: khiya:l e to hæmkhu:neh shod del/ = One night, thinking of you, my heart became your roommate!

تو دي نديدي چه و پرونه شد دل /næbu:di nædidi cheh viru:neh shod del/ = you were not here to see how miserable my heart was

تو دي نديدي پريشوندمو /næbu:di nædidi pærishu:niya:mo/ = you were not here to see my agitation

فقط بلا و بارون شنيدن صداهمو /fæghæt ba:d o ba:ru:n shenidæn seda:mo/ = only wind and rain heard me

غم سرد و وحشي به و پرونه ميزد broken heart /ghæm e særd o væhshi beh viru:neh mizæd/ = the wild cold grief hit my

دل با تو خوشن بود و بيمونه ميزد /delæm ba: to khosh bu:d o peimu:neh mizæd/ = my heart, happy with thoughts of you, raising a glass

دل با تو خوشن بود و بيمونه ميزد /delæm ba: to khosh bu:d o peimu:neh mizæd/ = my heart, happy with thoughts of you, raising a glass

نه مرد قلندر نه آنتن پرسدم /næh mærd e ghælændær næh atesh pæræstæm/ = I am neither a dervish nor a fire worshiper

فقط با خیال شبامست مسدم /fæghæt ba: khiya:l e shæba: mæst e mæstæm/ = I am just drunk with my dreams at nights

الهي سحر پشت كوچها بميره /ela:hi sæhær posht e ku:h ha: bemireh/ = May dawn die behind the mountains!

خدا اين شيارو از عاشق نكيه /khoda: in shæba: ro æz a:shægh nægireh/ = May God not take such nights away from lovers!

غم سرد و وحشي به و پرونه ميزد broken heart /ghæm e særd o væhshi beh viru:neh mizæd/ = the wild cold grief hit my

دل با تو خوشن بود و بيمونه ميزد /delæm ba: to khosh bu:d o peimu:neh mizæd/ = my heart, happy with thoughts of you, raising a glass

دل با تو خوشن بود و بيمونه ميزد /delæm ba: to khosh bu:d o peimu:neh mizæd/ = my heart, happy with thoughts of you, raising a glass

The vocabulary of the same song:

شب /shæb/ = night
 مرد /mærd/ = man
 تنها /tænha:/ = lonely
 شبی /shæbi/ = one night
 با /ba:/ = with
 خیال /khiya:l/ = dream – thinking of
 تو /to/ = you – your
 هم‌خانه /hæm khu:neh/ = oral form of هم خانه /hæm kha:neh/ = stay together in one house – roommate
 شد /shod/ = became
 دل /del/ = heart
 نبودی /næbu:di/ = you were not (here)
 ندیدی /nædidi/ = you didn't see
 چه /cheh/ = what - how
 ویرانه /viru:neh/ = oral form of ویرانه ruined – destroyed – miserable
 بریشانی /pærishu:ni/ = oral form of بریشانی
 /pærishani/ = agitation
 بریشانی‌ها /pærishu:niya:/ = oral form of بریشانی‌ها
 /pærishani ha:/ = agitations
 بریشانی‌ها /pærishu:niya:mo/ = oral form of بریشانی‌ها
 /pærishani ha:yæm ra:/ = my agitations
 فقط /fæghæt/ = only – just
 باد /ba:d/ = wind
 و /væ/ = and (pronounces /ɑ/ when combines two words)
 باران /ba:ru:n/ = oral form of باران /ba:ran/ = rain
 شنیدند /shenidænd/ = oral form of شنیدند /shenidænd/ = they heard
 صدا /seda:/ = voice – noise
 صدایم /seda:mo/ = oral form of صدایم /seda:yæm ra:/ = my voice
 غم /ghæm/ = sadness – grief
 سرد /særd/ = cold
 وحشی /væhshi/ = wild
 به /beh/ = to
 میزد /mizæd/ = it hit
 دلم /delæm/ = my heart
 خوش /khosh/ = happy
 بود /bu:d/ = was
 بیهوش /peimu:neh/ = oral form of بیهوش
 /peima:neh/ = glass of wine
 بیهوش زدن /peima:neh zædæn/ = to raise the glass (of wine) – to drink (wine)
 قلندر /ghælændær/ = a kind of dervish in old Persia
 آتش /a:tesh/ = fire
 آتش پرست /a:tesh pæræst/ = fire worshiper – it refers to Zoroastrians who respect fire as holy. Here he says, 'I am not Zoroastrian although I am awake at night to keep the fire (of love) alive. What keeps me awake is just thinking of you.'
 نه ... نه /næh ... næh/ = neither nor
 خیال /khiya:l/ = dream – thinking of something/somebody

شب /shæba:/ = oral form of شب = nights
 مست /mæst/ = drunk
 مستم /mæst e mæstæm/ = I am heavily drunk
 الهی /ela:hi/ = a word for calling God in prayers – may God ...
 سحر /sæhær/ = early in the morning – dawn
 پشت /posht/ = behind
 کوه /ku:h/ = mountain
 ها /ha:/ = plural maker suffix
 بمیره /bemireh/ = it dies – الهی بمیره = may it/he/she die!
 خدا /Khoda:/ = God
 این /in/ = this
 رو /ro/ = oral form of را = object indicator
 از /æz/ = from – of
 عاشق /a:shægħ/ = in love – lover
 الهی نگیرد /nægireh/ = it doesn't take – الهی نگیرد = may it/he/she doesn't take ...
 نه /næh/ = no
 یک /yek/ = one
 نه ... که /næh ... keh/ = not only ... but also
 بی /bi/ = without – negative maker prefix
 قرار /ghæra:r/ = rest - comfort - appointment - date
 می خواهد /mikha:d/ = oral form of می خواهد /mikha:hæd/ = it/he/she wants
 مثل /mesl e/ = like – similar
 می خواهد باران /mikh:d beba:reh/ = it wants/is going to rain
 پر /por/ = full
 پر از /por æz/ = full of
 یاد /ya:d/ = memory – remembrance
 یار /ya:r/ = friend – close friend – love
 گریه /geryeh/ = cry – weep
 تلخ /tælkħ/ = bitter
 بی اختیار /bi ekhtiya:r/ = without control – unintentional
 مردن /mordæn/ = to die
 غرابت /ghorbæt/ = state of being away from one's home – abroad
 مستی /mæsti/ = drunkenness
 دل به مستی سپردن /del beh mæsti sepordæn/ = to fall in love with drunkenness
 دل سپردن = to fall in love - to become interested in
 جوانی /jævu:ni/ = oral form of جوانی /jæva:ni/ = youth – young age
 اعتبار /eteba:r/ = credit – reliability
 بی اعتبار /bi eteba:reh/ = oral form of بی اعتبار = is without credit – not reliable – waste
 همش /hæmæsh/ = all – always
 بی قراری /bi ghæra:ri/ = restlessness
 انتظار /enteza:r/ = wait

Week 112

Hello everyone! How are you?

How was the music in our last lesson? I hope you liked it.

If you remember, we had some discussions on 'neither...nor', 'either...or', 'both...and', and 'not only...but also' during lessons 101 – 104. Hopefully, all of you remember those lessons. If not, please be kind enough and go back to learn them first before we continue!

From today, we are going to expand these combinations a bit further. I guess it will take us a few weeks to do so.

Let us start with the example we already have in [lesson 101](#). Ready?

I am neither a politician nor a businessman. من نه سیاستمدار هستم نه تاجر /mæn næh siya:sætmæda:r hæstæm næh ta:jer/. Do you remember this?

What we are going to do during this lesson and the next few lessons is to replace simple verbs, such as 'is' – 'am' – 'are', with 'real verbs'! Take a look at the following example:

This boy neither reads nor writes.

As you notice, we have two **main verbs** in this sentence ([read](#) – [write](#)).

Now we want to know how this structure works in Persian.

It is very easy if you know lessons 101 – 104 fluently.

Ok, let's begin:

To read = خواندن /kha:ndæn/.

To write = نوشتن /neveshtæn/.

Neither...nor = نه ... نه /næh...næh/.

Translate these very simple sentences: (you have 10 seconds for each)

1- He reads =

2- Ali reads =

3- This boy reads =

4- He writes =

5- Ali writes =

6- This boy writes =

1- 2 – 3 – 4 – 5 – 6 – 7 – 8 – 9 – 10. Finished? Great! If not, please study Present Simple Tense afresh!

Yes, just translate them in Present Simple Tense. That's all.

Now, replace those 'is', 'am', 'are' with these main verbs in your sentences.

So,

This boy neither reads nor writes. = این پسر نه می خواند نه می نویسد /in pesær næh mikha:næd næh minevisæd/. **Very easy, isn't it?**

Now, let's see a couple of examples:

1- This boy neither drinks nor eats => این پسر نه می نوشد نه می خورد /in pesær næh minu:shæd næh mikhoræd/.

To drink = نوشیدن /nu:shidæn/.

To eat = خوردن /khordæn/.

2- This boy neither sleeps nor works = این پسر نه می خوابد نه کار می کند /in pesær næh mikha:bæd næh ka:r mikonæd/.

All right, I hope you enjoyed this easy lesson!

Please do the Quiz first. Then go to Useful Drills page to enjoy more!

Have a great time and Khoda Hafez!

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 103](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Near

Fat

Painter

Country

Poet

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

7 - 997 - 676 - 796 - 769 - 967 - 557 - 765 - 972 - 297 - 287 - 872 - 887 - 787

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Enemy = د + ش + م + ن

Ambassador = س + ف + ی + ر

Happy = خ + و + ش + ح + ا + ل

Near = ن + ز + د + ی + ک

(Take care of TASHDID) Painter = ن + ق + ق + ا + ش

Week 112

New Words:

[Please translate the following sentences into Persian.](#) (Please do your best first. Then correct your translation with the answers below. No cheating please!)

- 1- I neither sleep nor work.
- 2- You neither sleep nor work.
- 3- He/she neither sleeps nor works.
- 4- We neither sleep nor work.
- 5- You neither sleep nor work.
- 6- They neither sleep nor work.
- 7- This man neither sleeps nor works.
- 8- My friend neither sleeps nor works.
- 9- These children neither sleep nor work.
- 10- Those students neither sleep nor work.
- 11- Helen neither sleeps nor works.
- 12- I neither read nor write.
- 13- You neither read nor write.
- 14- He/she neither reads nor writes.
- 15- We neither read nor write.
- 16- You neither read nor write.
- 17- They neither read nor write.
- 18- This woman neither reads nor writes.
- 19- Your friend neither reads nor writes.
- 20- My children neither read nor write.
- 21- Her children neither read nor write.
- 22- These students neither read nor write.

Answers:

- ۱- من نه می خوابم نه کار می کنم .
- ۲- تو نه می خوابی نه کار می کنی .
- ۳- او نه می خوابد نه کار می کند .
- ۴- ما نه می خوابیم نه کار می کنیم .
- ۵- شما نه می خوابید نه کار می کنید .
- ۶- آنها نه می خوابند نه کار می کنند .
- ۷- این مرد نه می خوابد نه کار می کند .
- ۸- دوستم نه می خوابد نه کار می کند .
- ۹- این بچه ها نه می خوابند نه کار می کنند .
- ۱۰- آن دانش آموزان نه می خوابند نه کار می کنند
- ۱۱- هژن نه می خوابد نه کار می کند.
- ۱۲- من نه می خوانم نه می نویسم .
- ۱۳- تو نه می خوانی نه می نویسی .
- ۱۴- او نه می خواند نه می نویسد .
- ۱۵- ما نه می خوانیم نه می نویسیم .
- ۱۶- شما نه می خوانید نه می نویسید .
- ۱۷- آنها نه می خوانند نه می نویسند .
- ۱۸- این زن نه می خواند نه می نویسد .
- ۱۹- دوستت نه می خواند نه می نویسد .
- ۲۰- بچه هایم نه می خوانند نه می نویسند .
- ۲۱- بچه هایش نه می خوانند نه می نویسند .
- ۲۲- این دانش آموزان نه می خوانند نه می نویسند .

Week 113

Hello everyone! How are you?

I hope all of you had a great New Year. I am really sorry for my long absence. Life is not always the same, specially for a person in my situation!

Please do the Quiz first. Then go to Useful Drills page.

Before we start, let me introduce a Frsi Editor. One of our friends, Daniel McCabe, has made a Farsi Editor software. Currently, I have not tried it. For sure, I will give it a try in near future. Maybe you would like to try now. Please right-click [here](#) and choose 'Save Target As' to download this file. The file is in ZIP format. So, you may need Winzip or Winrar to unzip this program after downloading.

Daniel says, "The programs requirements are;

w2k or wxp (I don't have a w98 machine to test it on)

IME support for right to left languages (for the fonts)

Dot Net Framework (dotnetfxredist_X86.msi) as it was developed in vb.net 2k3

The user can either type directly (via HWKB) into the text area or utilize the SWKB Displayed to enter text. This text can be pushed to word (sent as a series of keystrokes after opening a new instance of word). I basically works like the on screen keyboard that is supplied with wxp but only for its-self with limited formatting options. It is basic but it does what I wanted it to do.

It is only a beta 1 at the moment so changes can be made like outputting to other applications or the look and feel of the app etc.

There are some GPL Persian fonts included. "

You may reach Daniel [Here](#) .

Thank you Daniel for your work and dedication.

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 102](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Wet

Dry

Deep

Shallow

Wise

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

90 - 109 - 190 - 910 - 901 - 9110 - 1109 - 1019 - 9019

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== د + و + س + ت = دوست

Book <= /keta:b/ <== ک + ت + ا + ب = کتاب

Crazy = ا + ح + م + ق

Angry = ع + ص + ب + ا + ن + ی

River = ر + و + د + خ + ا + ن + ه

Near = ن + ز + د + ی + ک

Shirt = پ + ی + ر + ا + ه + ن

Week 113

New Words:

To teach = درس دادن /dærs da:dæn/

To answer = جواب دادن /jæva:b da:dæn/. Also پاسخ دادن /pa:sokh da:dæn/

Question = سوال /su:a:l/. Also پرسش /porsesh/

Questions = سوالات /su:a:la:t/. Also سوالات /su:a:la:/ (Mostly in daily conversation). Also پرسش ها /porsesh ha:/

To clean = تمیز کردن /tæmiz kærdæn/

To wash = شستن /shostæn/

Dishes = بشقاب ها /bosh gha:b ha:/. Also ظرف ها /zærf ha:/

Roommate = هم اتاقی /hæm ota:ghi/

Partner = شریک /shærik/. Also هم اتاقی /hæm ota:ghi/ if it refers to 'roommate'.

To fix = تعمیر کردن /tæmir kærdæn/

To go shopping = خرید کردن /khærid kærdæn/. Also خرید رفتن /khærid ræftæn/ mostly in daily conversation.

Waiter = خدمتکار /khedmæt ka:r/

Please translate the following sentences into Persian. (Please do your best first. Then correct your translation with the answers below. No cheating please!)

1- I neither teach nor answer the questions!

2- You neither teach nor answer the questions!

- 3- He/she neither teaches nor answers the questions!
- 4- We neither teach nor answer the questions!
- 5- You neither teach nor answer the questions!
- 6- They neither teach nor answer the questions!
- 7- My teacher neither teaches nor answers the questions!
- 8- This teacher neither teaches nor answers the questions!
- 9- I neither clean the room neither wash the dishes!
- 10- You neither clean the room neither wash the dishes!
- 11- He/she neither cleans the room neither washes the dishes!
- 12- We neither clean the room neither wash the dishes!
- 13- You neither clean the room neither wash the dishes!
- 14- They neither clean the room neither wash the dishes!
- 15- My sister neither cleans the room neither washes the dishes!
- 16- My roommate neither cleans the room neither washes the dishes!
- 17- My partner neither cleans the room neither washes the dishes!
- 18- This young girl neither cleans the room neither washes the dishes!
- 19- I neither fix the bicycle nor go shopping!
- 20- You neither fix the bicycle nor go shopping!
- 21- He/she neither fixes the bicycle nor goes shopping!
- 22- We neither fix the bicycle nor go shopping!
- 23- You neither fix the bicycle nor go shopping!
- 24- They neither fix the bicycle nor go shopping!
- 25- My brother neither fixes the bicycle nor goes shopping!
- 26- His father neither fixes the bicycle nor goes shopping!
- 27- Their waiter neither fixes the bicycle nor goes shopping!

NOTE: As you see in numbers 1-8 or in 19-27 below, since the Persian verbs have one part in common (da:dæn) or (kærdæn), the second part is optional. That is why I have put them in parenthesis.

Question: In this word (Question = سوال /su:a:l/), why we do not read it as / səva:l/ or something? Simply because this word has one pronunciation and that is /su:a:l/!!

Answers:

- ۱- من نه درس می دهم نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهم)!
- ۲- تو نه درس می دهی نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهی)!
- ۳- او نه درس می دهد نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهد)!
- ۴- ما نه درس می دهیم نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهیم)!
- ۵- شما نه درس می دهید نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهید)!
- ۶- آنها نه درس می دهند نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهند)!
- ۷- معلم نه درس می دهد نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهد)!
- ۸- این معلم نه درس می دهد نه به پرسش ها جواب (می دهد)!
- ۹- من نه اتاق را تمیز می کنم نه ظرف ها را می شویم .
- ۱۰- تو نه اتاق را تمیز می کنی نه ظرف ها را می شویی .
- ۱۱- او نه اتاق را تمیز می کند نه ظرف ها را می شوید .
- ۱۲- ما نه اتاق را تمیز می کنیم نه ظرف ها را می شویم .
- ۱۳- شما نه اتاق را تمیز می کنید نه ظرف ها را می شوید .
- ۱۴- آنها نه اتاق را تمیز می کنند نه ظرف ها را می شویند .
- ۱۵- خواهرم نه اتاق را تمیز می کند نه ظرف ها را می شوید .
- ۱۶- هم اتاقیم (هم اتاقی من) نه اتاق را تمیز می کند نه ظرف ها را می شوید .
- ۱۷- شریکم نه اتاق را تمیز می کند نه ظرف ها را می شوید .
- ۱۸- این دختر جوان نه اتاق را تمیز می کند نه ظرف ها را می شوید .
- ۱۹- من نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کنم نه خرید (می کنم).
- ۲۰- تو نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کنی نه خرید (می کنی).
- ۲۱- او نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کند نه خرید (می کند).
- ۲۲- ما نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کنیم نه خرید (می کنیم).
- ۲۳- شما نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کنید نه خرید (می کنید).
- ۲۴- آنها نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کنند نه خرید (می کنند).
- ۲۵- برادرم نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کند نه خرید (می کند).
- ۲۶- پدرش نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کند نه خرید (می کند).
- ۲۷- خدمتکارشان نه دوچرخه را تعمیر می کند نه خرید (می کند).

Week 114

Hello everyone! How are you?

Please do the Quiz first. Then go to Useful Drills page.

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 105](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To go

To want

To say

To write

My friend

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

16 - 61 - 116 - 611 - 161 - 601 - 196 - 689 - 665541 - 116699

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ < == دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ < == کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To write = ن + و + ش + ت + ن

I go = م + و + ر + ی + م

I say = م + ی + و + گ + ی + م

Maria = ا + ی + ر + ا + م

To say = ن + ت + ف + گ

Week 114

New Words:

Swimming = شنا /shena:/

Soccer = فوتبال /fu:tba:l/

Travel = سفر /sæfær/. Also مسافرت /mosa:feræt/.

To travel = سفر کردن /sæfær kærdæn/. Also مسافرت کردن /mosa:feræt kærdæn/.

[Please translate the following sentences into Persian.](#) (Please do your best first. Then correct your translation with the answers below. No cheating please!)

- 1- I both work and study.
- 2- You both work and study.
- 3- He/she both works and studis.
- 4- We both work and study.
- 5- You both work and study.
- 6- They both work and study.
- 7- This young man both works and studies.
- 8- My sister both works and studies.
- 9- These children both work and study.
- 10- I like both swimming and soccer.
- 11- You like both swimming and soccer.
- 12- He/she likes both swimming and soccer.
- 13- We like both swimming and soccer.
- 14- You like both swimming and soccer.
- 15- They like both swimming and soccer.
- 16- My son likes both swimming and soccer.
- 17- Her daughter likes both swimming and soccer.
- 18- I both teach and travel.
- 19- You both teach and travel.
- 20- He/she both teaches and travels.
- 21- We both teach and travel.
- 22- You both teach and travel.
- 23- They both teach and travel.
- 24- My teacher both teaches and travels.
- 25- Jonathon both teaches and travels.

Answers:

- ۱- من هم کار می کنم هم درس می خوانم .
- ۲- تو هم کار می کنی هم درس می خوانی .
- ۳- او هم کار می کند هم درس می خواند .
- ۴- ما هم کار می کنیم هم درس می خوانیم .
- ۵- شما هم کار می کنید هم درس می خوانید .
- ۶- آنها هم کار می کنند هم درس می خوانند .
- ۷- این مرد جوان هم کار می کند هم درس می خواند .
- ۸- خواهرم هم کار می کند هم درس می خواند .
- ۹- این بچه ها هم کار می کنند هم درس می خوانند .
- ۱۰- من هم شنا (را) دوست دارم (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۱- تو هم شنا (را) دوست داری (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۲- او هم شنا (را) دوست دارد (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۳- ما هم شنا (را) دوست داریم (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۴- شما هم شنا (را) دوست دارید (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۵- آنها هم شنا (را) دوست دارند (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۶- پسرم هم شنا (را) دوست دارد (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۷- دخترش هم شنا (را) دوست دارد (و) هم فوتبال (را).
- ۱۸- من هم درس می دهم (و) هم مسافرت می کنم .
- ۱۹- تو هم درس می دهی (و) هم مسافرت می کنی .
- ۲۰- او هم درس می دهد (و) هم مسافرت می کند .
- ۲۱- ما هم درس می دهیم (و) هم مسافرت می کنیم .
- ۲۲- شما هم درس می دهید (و) هم مسافرت می کنید .
- ۲۳- آنها هم درس می دهند (و) هم مسافرت می کنند .
- ۲۴- معلم هم درس می دهد (و) هم مسافرت می کند .
- ۲۵- جاناتان هم درس می دهد (و) هم مسافرت می کند .

Week 115

Hello everyone, how are you?

Many of you have been eager to know more about me! They want to know who this Hassan H. is!

Well, you are right! You have the right to know the person who speaks this much! But, the problem is that I am right too!!

Currently and quite unfortunately, I do not have any special news to share with you, but I promise I will do that some day in future! In the meantime, let me say that I am "Mr." and not "Ms."!! Considerably young! Made in Iran !! Married, and leading a considerably messy life!! (My management is honestly terrible!!). I would die of hunger if my wife left me alone for just one day!! (My cooking ability is my management's older brother!!)

My hobby is "thinking"!!

With the help of a wonderful person, I am now writing my autobiography. I deeply hope I will finish it very soon. When this happens, you will know me more 'inshallah'!!

All right, please do the Quiz first and then go to Useful Drills page.

Love,

Hassan H.!!

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 99](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Boyfriend
Girlfriend
Guest
Friends
To read

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

5 - 50 - 15 - 105 - 551 - 501 - 505 - 150 - 555 - 115 - 511

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Girlfriend = د + و + س + ت + د + خ + ت + ر

Boyfriend = د + و + س + ت + پ + س + ر

Friends = د + و + س + ت + ا + ن

To read = خ + و + ا + ن + د + ن

Guest = م + ه + م + ا + ن

Week 115

New Words:

To confess = اعتراف کردن /etera:f kærdæn/.

Should = باید /ba:yæd/.

To explain = توضیح دادن /tozi:h da:dæn/.

To borrow = قرض کردن /ghærz kærdæn/. Also قرض گرفتن /ghærz gereftæn/.

Some = کمی /kæmi/. Also in daily conversation, یه خورده /yeh khordeh/.

Money = پول /pu:l/.

To sell = فروختن /foru:khtæn/.

Please translate the following sentences into Persian. (Please do your best first. Then correct your translation with the answers below. No cheating please!)

1- I should either confess or explain.

2- You should either confess or explain.

3- He/she should either confess or explain.

4- We should either confess or explain.

5- You should either confess or explain.

6- They should either confess or explain.

7- Your friend should either confess or explain.

8- Bijan should either confess or explain.

9- These children should either confess or explain.

10- I should either borrow some money or sell the car.

11- You should either borrow some money or sell the car.

12- He/she should either borrow some money or sell the car.

13- We should either borrow some money or sell the car.

14- You should either borrow some money or sell the car.

15- They should either borrow some money or sell the car.

16- This family should either borrow some money or sell the car.

17- My friend should either borrow some money or sell the car.

Answers:

- ۱- من باید یا اعتراف کنم یا توضیح دهم (بدهم).
- ۲- تو باید یا اعتراف کنی یا توضیح دهی (بدهی).
- ۳- او باید یا اعتراف کند یا توضیح دهد (بدهد).
- ۴- ما باید یا اعتراف کنیم یا توضیح دهیم (بدهیم).
- ۵- شما باید یا اعتراف کنید یا توضیح دهید (بدهید).
- ۶- آنها باید یا اعتراف کنند یا توضیح دهند (بدهند).
- ۷- دوستت باید یا اعتراف کند یا توضیح دهد (بدهد).
- ۸- بیژن باید یا اعتراف کند یا توضیح دهد (بدهد).
- ۹- این بچه ها باید یا اعتراف کنند یا توضیح دهند (بدهند).
- ۱۰- من باید یا کمی پول قرض کنم یا ماشین را بفروشم.
- ۱۱- تو باید یا کمی پول قرض کنی یا ماشین را بفروشی.
- ۱۲- او باید یا کمی پول قرض کند یا ماشین را بفروشد.
- ۱۳- ما باید یا کمی پول قرض کنیم یا ماشین را بفروشیم.
- ۱۴- شما باید یا کمی پول قرض کنید یا ماشین را بفروشید.
- ۱۵- آنها باید یا کمی پول قرض کنند یا ماشین را بفروشند.
- ۱۶- این خانواده باید یا کمی پول قرض کند یا ماشین را بفروشد.
- ۱۷- دوستم باید یا کمی پول قرض کند یا ماشین را بفروشد.

Week 116

Hello everyone, how are you?

I did not know you would miss me this much!! Quite promising!! Thanks for the messages.

I had a friend who had an unsuccessful marriage. His wife was always complaining that he did not love her since he had never expressed his love. They had almost broken their relation. One day, he told me that he loved his wife. But his problem was that he could not express it plainly. I asked him to go tell her exactly the same words that he was telling me while I was waiting for him outside.

Then, he went to his wife and said, "I have always loved you. But I cannot express it. This is my problem!"

Her wife began to laugh and I spent several hours just behind their house waiting for him to come back, which he didn't! So, I left back home alone!!

Sometimes, we love somebody or something but we do not express it. It is like we invest money in the bank for somebody, but he/she cannot receive it. We have invested in a wrong way.

I don't know why I spoke this much! So,!! /begzærim/! (Let it go / Anyway)

Today, we have a good Persian music in our Useful Drills page. So, please do the Quiz first. Then go to Useful Drills to enjoy!

See you next week!

By the way, don't forget to visit the [Persian Literature Page](#)! It is new!

Quiz: (Source: [Useful Drills 85](#))

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat it for a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

On TV

To teach

To arrest

To speak

To steal

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

8 - 18 - 81 - 108 - 881 - 118 - 181 - 880 - 808 - 110

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To meet / visit = + + + + + + + + +

To speak = + + + + + + +

To introduce = + + + + + + + + +

To teach = + + + + + +

Week 116

Today, we have another Persian music in MP3 format. I deeply hope you will like it. Sit back and have Fun!!

Please Right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download this song.

- [- Bezan Baran! By Habib](#)

- /bezæn ba:ra:n/ - Pour down rain! By: Habib

/bezæn ba:ra:n bæha:ra:n fæsl e khu:n æst/. Pour down rain! Spring is a bloodshed season! (Allusion)

/bezæn ba:ra:n keh sæhra: la:leh gu:n æst/. Pour down rain! The land is like tulips red! (Allusion)

/bezæn ba:ra:n keh beh cheshma:n e ya:ra:n/, pour down rain! Coz in friends' eyes down!
/jæha:n ta:rik o dærya: va:zhegu:n æst/. The world is dark, seas are upside-

down!
/bezæn ba:ra:n keh beh cheshma:n e ya:ra:n/, pour down rain! Coz in friends' eyes
/jæha:n ta:rik o dærya: va:zhegu:n æst/. The world is dark, seas are upside-

down!
/bezæn ba:ra:n bæha:ra:n fæsl e khu:n æst/. Pour down rain! Spring is a bloodshed season! (Allusion)

/bezæn ba:ra:n keh sæhra: la:leh gu:n æst/. Pour down rain! The land is like tulips red! (Allusion)

/bezæn ba:ra:n keh din ra: da:m kærdænd/, Pour down rain! They have made religions trap!

/sheka:r e khælgh o seid e kha:m kærdænd/. with which, they hunt people, they fish but naives!

/bezæn ba:ra:n khoda: ba:zicheh i: shod/, Pour down rain! They have made God a plaything,

/keh ba: a:n kæsb e næng o na:m kærdænd/. with which, they build up their world, they become prominent!

/bezæn ba:ra:n beh na:m e hæ r cheh khu:bist/, Pour down rain in the name of the good, whoever,

/beh zir e a:va:r ga:h pa:y ku:bist/. for, there is still joy under such ruins.
/mæza:r e teshneh ju:ba:ra:n por æz sæng/, The bed of thirsty streams are filled

with rocks,

/bezæn ba:ra:n keh væght e la:yru:bist/. Pour down rain! It's time to cleanse!
/bezæn ba:ra:n bæha:ra:n fæsl e khu:n æst/. Pour down rain! Spring is a

bloodshed season! (Allusion)

/bezæn ba:ra:n keh sæhra: la:leh gu:n æst/. Pour down rain! The land is like tulips red! (Allusion)

/bezæn ba:ra:n o sha:di bækhsh ja:n ra:/, Pour down rain and give joy to souls,
/beba:ra:n shogh o shirin kon zæma:n ra:/. Pour down jubilantly and sweeten the time!

به بام غرقه در خون دیارم /beh ba:m e ghærgheh dær khu:n e diya:ræm/, On the blood-covered rooftop of my home,

بیا کن پرچم رنگین کمان را /beh pa: kon pærchæm e rængin kæma:n ra:/. Raise the rainbow flag!

بزن باران که بی صبرند یاران /bezæn ba:ra:n keh bi sæbrænd ya:ra:n/, Pour down rain! Friends are restless!

نمان خاموش گریان شو بباران /næma:n kha:mu:sh, gerya:n sho beh ba:ra:n/. remain not silent! Burst out in rain!

بزن باران بشوی آلودگی را /bezæn ba:ra:n, beshu:y a:lu:degi ra:/. Pour down rain! Wash the filth

زدامان بلند روزگاران /zeda:ma:n e bolænd e ru:zega:ra:n/. off the long robe of life!

بزن باران بهاران فصل خون است /bezæn ba:ra:n bæha:ra:n fæsl e khu:n æst/. Pour down rain! Spring is a bloodshed season! (Allusion)

بزن باران که صحرا لاله گون است /bezæn ba:ra:n keh sæhra: la:leh gu:n æst/. Pour down rain! The land is like tulips red! (Allusion)

بزن باران که دین را دام کردند /bezæn ba:ra:n keh din ra: da:m kærdænd/, Pour down rain! Coz they have made religions trap!

شکار خلق و صید خام کردند /sheka:r e khælgh o seid e kha:m kærdænd/. with which, they hunt people, they fish but naives!

بزن باران خدا بازیچه ای شد /bezæn ba:ra:n khoda: ba:zicheh i: shod/, Pour down rain! They have made God a plaything,

که با آن کسب ننگ و نام کردند /keh ba: a:n kæsb e næng o na:m kærdænd/. with which, they build up their world, they become prominent!

بزن باران به نام هر چه خوبیست /bezæn ba:ra:n beh na:m e hæ r cheh khu:bist/, Pour down rain in the name of the good, whoever,

به زیر آوار گاه پایکوبیست /beh zir e a:va:r ga:h pa:y ku:bist/. for, there is still joy under such ruins.

مزار تشنه جویباران پر از سنگ /mæza:r e teshneh ju:ba:ra:n por æz sæng/, The bed of thirsty streams are filled with rocks,

بزن باران که وقت لایروبیست /bezæn ba:ra:n keh væght e la:yrubist/. Pour down rain! It's time to cleanse!

بزن باران بهاران فصل خون است /bezæn ba:ra:n bæha:ra:n fæsl e khu:n æst/. Pour down rain! Spring is a bloodshed season! (Allusion)

بزن باران که صحرا لاله گون است /bezæn ba:ra:n keh sæhra: la:leh gu:n æst/. Pour down rain! The land is like tulips red! (Allusion)

Week 117

Today, we have a 'gol mangoli' page!!

'gol mangoli' means 'colorful'. It is not a formal word though. But, you can use it as frequently as you can.

Example:

Hassan, you have made this page very colorful!! = /hasæn! In sæfhæ ro kheili gol mængolish kærdi!!

This means that there are two many colors in a small area.

You could say this if:

1- You are reflecting your criticizing idea in a very kind way. As you see in the example above.

2- You are praising a work / you are really happy with the colorful atmosphere.

You could also use 'gol mangoli' when there is considerable diversity or when you see too many things gathered together in one place. You could mean either positive or negative.

All right,

From today, we are going to work on a very short and interesting story called 'A Little Frog's Dream'. The book is written by: Lin Songying and Illustrated by: Zhai Shaorong. The Dolphin Books in Beijing, China has published this book. Many thanks to Xiao Mei for sending this interesting book to me.

I have provided you with the original text and the vocabulary next to each picture. Please do your best to translate this story into Persian! Call yourself translator!! I support you!!

Please do the translation first. Then go to Useful Drills page to have some drills. I am not giving you my translation on this story. Don't worry. Just do your best. I am sure what you say will be understandable in your Persian communities! Do not get upset if sometimes they may laugh at your work. You cannot make progress unless some people laugh at you in the beginning! Soon, you will see yourself laughing at them!! Just try hard! It's a deal!



1

Little frog is looking at herself in the water of a pond. She hates her green coverall. She thinks it is not beautiful at all.

Little = /ku:chu:lu:/ = /ku:chæk/

Frog = /ghu:rba:geh/

To look at = /nega:h kærdæn beh/

In = /dær/ = /tu:/ = /tu: ye/

Water = /a:b/

pond = /morda:b/

Water of pond = /a:b e morda:b/

To hate = /motenæf.fer bu:dæn æz/

Coverall = /pu:st/ - /pu:shesh/

At all = /æslæn/ = /hich/



2

“How wonderful it would be if I could have one colored coverall as beautiful as flowers” she thinks.

How = /cheghædr/

Wonderful = /ja:leb/ = /a:li/

It would be = /mi shod/

If = /ægær/

I could have = /mi tæva:nestæm/

I could have = /da:shtæm/

One = /yek/ = /yeki/

Colored = /rængi/ = /rænga:ræng/

As beautiful as = /beh

ghæshængi ye/

To think = /fekr kærdæn/



3

Little frog dreams and dreams, until a flame appears and the rays of rose clouds are turning her coverall red.

To dream = /kha:b didæn/

Until = /ta: inkeh/

Flame = /sholeh/

To appear = /peida: shodæn/

Ray = /pærto/

Rays = /pærto ha:/

Rose = Rose (as in English)

Cloud = /æbr/

Rose clouds = (?) /æbr ha: ye ghermez/

Turn (sth) to (sth) = /tæbdil kærdæn/



4

“Look! A red frog! How beautiful!” little swallow exclaims.

Look = /nega:h kon/

How neautiful! = /cheghædr

ghæshængeh/!



5

Little frog is pleased to hear this and jumps here and there to show off her new clothes.

Is pleased = /khosh ha:l mishævæd/

To hear = /shenidæn/ = /æz shenidæn/

This = /in/ = /in hærf/

To jump = /pæridæn/

Here and there = /inja: væ a:nja:/

To show off = /poz da:dæn/ =



6

Soon she feels hungry, and little swallow asks her to catch insects with her.

Soon = /bezu:di/ = /tu:li

nemikeshæd keh/

To feel hungry = /ehsa:s gorosnegi

kærdæn/ =

/beh hæmeh nesha:n da:dæn/
Her new cloths = /leba:s e no
æsh/ = /leba:s e ta:zeh æsh/

/goshneh shodæn/
Swallow =
/pæræstu:/
Ask somebody =
/æz kesi
kha:stæn/ = /æz
kesi porsidæn/
To catch =
/gereftæn/
Insect =
/hæshæreh/
Insects =
/hæshæra:t/

Please do not forget our today's Quiz! It maybe good also!

Quiz: (Source: Lesson 117 - Your own Translation!!)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

To hate

Colored

As beautiful as

To catch

To dream

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

0 - 10 - 20 - 30 - 40 - 50 - 60 - 70 - 80 - 90 - 100

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To catch = + + + +

To hate = + + + + + + + +

To dream = + + + + + + + +

To jump = + + + +

Week 117

The Useful Drill is a bit different today.

How was the translation lesson? I know, I know it was difficult! Remember what I told you long time ago? Practice makes perfect!

Here is today's work:

1- Look at your translation again for a while. Now close it. Forget your translation. Try to tell your computer or your close friend (if you have a patient friend!) the same story in your own words. I mean choose any Persian word or phrase you want to explain this story once more in Persian. You may call it Free Translation. In this drill, you do not need to be loyal to the original text. Make it as long as you can.

2- Look at the pictures. Describe the pictures. Talk about anything you see in the pictures. Describe the colors, nature, or anything else. Make sure you are doing this in Persian!

Have a great week!!! Sorry, I mean week!!

بوم‌شناسی بررسی دانش **برهمکنش** های میان جانداران و محیط آنهاست. از این رو می‌توان مدعی شد که بوم‌شناسی کهن‌ترین علم بشری است. اگر طبق تعریف بوم‌شناسی بررسی علمی **پراکنش** و **فراوانی** جانداران، و **برهمکنش** هایی که این پراکنش و فراوانی را تعیین می‌کنند باشد، پس ابتدایی‌ترین انسان‌ها به خاطر نیازشان به دانستن اینکه نه تنها غذا، بلکه دشمنان غیرانسانی‌شان کی و کجا پیدا می‌شوند، باید بوم‌شناسانی از این دست بوده‌باشند. حتی نخستین کشاورزان برای شناخت شیوه‌ی اداره‌ی منابع خوراکی زنده و نیز اهلی‌شده‌شان می‌بایست از آن هم کارگشته‌تر می‌شدند. بدین ترتیب این نخستین بوم‌شناسان، که بوم‌شناسانی **عمل‌گرا** بودند، درصدد شناخت **پراکنش** و **فراوانی** جانداران و به‌کارگیری این دانش در جهت منافع جمعی‌شان برآمدند. آنان به موضوعاتی علاقه‌مند بودند که بوم‌شناسان **عمل‌گرا** هنوز هم به آنها علاقه‌مندند: چگونه می‌توان میزان جمع‌آوری فرآورده‌های خوراکی از طبیعت را به **بیشینه** رساند؟ چگونه می‌توان این کار را برای مدتی طولانی ادامه داد؟ چگونه می‌توان **گیاهان** و جانوران اهلی را به بهترین شکل ممکن تکثیر کرد، به طوری که حداکثر **بازده** را داشته باشند؟ چگونه می‌توان منابع غذایی زنده را از شر دشمنان طبیعی‌شان حفظ نمود؟ و بالاخره چگونه می‌توان کنترل جمعیت عوامل بیماری‌زا و انگل‌هایی را که در درون بدن ما زندگی می‌کنند در دست گرفت؟

[**ویرایش**]

جستارهای وابسته

[نام رده‌های جانوری و گیاهی](#)

گرفته شده از »

Week 118

Invasion, NO!

Conquer, YES!

What is the difference? I don't know!

I believe I have explained it already. However, I am still targeted by some of my Arab brothers and sisters who still insist the Arabs did not invade Iran .

Persistency is good, but not always.

Most of my friends know me as 'talkative'! I'd love to talk more about 'invasion' and 'conquer' issue.

However, I am a bit afraid some of the students might not be happy with such topics since they believe they visit this site to learn Persian not to get involved in such issues. Let me tell you that such topics could also be part of learning a language, or I'd better say learning about a language. It is not a bad idea to know about the subjects that are somehow related to a language we are learning.

My Arab brothers and sisters, I love you all as I have told you before. This, however, should not prevent me from expressing what I believe is true.

Let me give you an example.

Almost all Iranians know Changiz Khan, the Mongolian emperor, as one of the most savage persons in history. He is our example in savageness. But, Changiz Khan is the biggest national hero for the Mongolians. The Mongolian people are proud of him. You may talk to them to see if I am right. You may also take a trip to the capital of Mongolia to see the statue of this national hero in the center of the capital city. If you have time, spend a few hours there and you will see that many even worship that statue. No need to mention that many types of wine, vodka, whiskey, even carpets, and other products are labeled 'Changiz Khan' with his victorious picture on these products. No, I am not a drinker! Honestly!

I give you another example from my homeland.

Almost all Iranians refer to Cyrus the Great as the Greatest King in our history. They are proud of him. He is the symbol of our country. Many even believe he was a righteous king sent by God since his name has been mentioned several times in the bible.

According to the Iranians, Cyrus the Great 'conquered' several countries triumphantly. The Iranians are proud that Iran 's territory reached Africa at the time of Cyrus the Great. Iran was at least three times larger under this King of kings.

To me what is surprising is that none of the Iranians have ever asked themselves what this King of Peace, King of kings, Symbol of Human Right and democracy was doing in Africa ? How did this democracy and human right seeker / supporter / distributor reach those areas? Did he do all this with a branch of olive in his hands or he killed thousands of people on his way to Africa ?

Is there anything in such action for me to be proud of?

I deeply hope the Iranians will not target me now!

I am not comparing Changiz Khan with a big prophet like Mohammad, peace be upon him. However, you should know that His followers have not taken my land, for at least one thousand year, with a branch of olive in their hands. Do you know how many people were killed, how many women were raped, how many books were put on fire, and how many homes were destroyed during that 'conquer'?

I am not saying this to condemn this generation. Just let us open our eyes and see the truth as it is. Try to know the truth first, and then try to forgive and bring a change.

I remember I had talked about this topic on our former Message Board. Unfortunately, I lost all those writings when our server crashed. If you happen to have a copy of my messages on our former bulletin board, please send me a copy. I do appreciate your support.

All right, I hope we are done with this issue.

Now, let us start our new lesson.

Peace and love I give to all of you.

Your servant,

Hassan H.

Ready for more frog works?! Here we go!

7



On a blade of a green bristle grass, little frog sees a green grasshopper. As usual, she is full of confidence about catching it.

blade = /læbeh/ - /bærg/

On a blade of = /ru: ye bærg e/
bristle = /kork/
grass = /giya:h/
green bristle grass = /giya:h e sabz e
kork da:r/

grasshopper = /mælækh/
as usual = /tebgh e mæmu:l/ - /mesl e hæ misheh/
confidence = /etema:d beh næfs/
she is full of confidence = /beh khodæsh etmina:n da:ræd/
to catch = /gereftæn/
about catching it = /keh mitæva:næd a:n ra: begiræd/



Soon she catches sight of a black mole cricket digging a hole. "be calm, I am sure I can catch her," she warns herself.

soon = /bezu:di/ - /tu:li nemi keshæd keh/

to catch sight of = /didæn/
black mole = /siya:h/

9



8

No sooner has she sprung up than the grasshopper jumps away. Little frog wonders why this grasshopper is more nimble.

no sooner = /hæmin keh/ -
to spring up = /pæridæn/ - /jæst zædæn/
to jump = /pæridæn/
jumps away = /pærvɑ:z kona:n du:r mi shævæd/
to wonder = /heira:n ma:ndæn/ - /næda:nestæn/
nimble = /særi/ - /jæld/ - /ferz/
more nimble = /særi tær/



Unexpectedly, the black mole cricket jumps into the hole before she catches it.

unexpectedly = /beh tor e gheir e montæzereh/

10

cricket = /jir jiræk/
 to dig = /kændæn/
 hole = /goda:l/ -
 /hofreh/
 be calm = /khu:n
 særd ba:sh/
 I am sure =
 /motmæ enæm/
 to warn = /ekhta:r
 da:dæn/ - /næhib
 zædæn/
 she warns herself
 = /beh khodæsh
 næ hib mizænæd/



11

Little frog has not caught a single insect and is suffering from hunger.
 has not caught = /nægerefteh æst/
 insect = /hæshæreh/
 a single insect = /hæt.ta: yek hæ shæreh/
 to suffer = /dærd keshidæn/ = /rænj bordæn/
 hunger = /gorosnegi/
 is suffering from hunger = /æz gorosnegi rænj mibæræd/ = /kheili gorosneh shodeh æst/



12

She cannot stand the hunger. So, she comes to a rice field hoping to catch some moths. However, a water snake is following her.
 to stand something = /tæhæm.mol kærdæn/
 she cannot stand it = /nemi tæva:næd tæhæm.molæsh konæd/
 the hunger = /gorosnegi/
 so = /bæna: bæer in/
 rice = /berenj/
 rice field = /sha:liza:r/
 hoping to = /omidva:r æst keh/
 some = /chænd ta:/
 moth = /pærvæ:neh/
 however = / æm.ma:/
 snake = /ma:r/
 water snake = /ma:r e a:bi/
 is following her = /da:ræd u: ra: tæghib mi konæd/

Please do not forget our today's Quiz! It can help you!

Quiz: (Source: Lesson 118 - My Translation!!)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the Persian equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

No sooner

She wonders

Soon

Be calm!

I cannot stand ...

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

7 - 70 - 17 - 137 - 1661 - 791 - 367 - 700 - 701 - 710 - 2005

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = ت + س + و + د

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ب + ا + ت + ک

However = + +

Cricket = + + + + + +

Grasshopper = + +

Hunger = + + + + +

Welcome to Useful Drills!

Fortunately (for the lazy students!!), no drills today! Just review lesson 118 once more!!

Good teacher?! Thanks!

Week 119

Hello everyone! I hope all of you had a great time in my absence!

Before we start our new lesson today, please let me take a few more minutes of your precious time to show you more of my 'talkativeness'!! I promise this will be my **last words on this topic** .

I never thought one word could take us all into these many words. After I wrote lesson 118, I received several messages again. The next are short parts of some of them.

No 1:

“ Mr.Hasn

the differenc is Conquer mean to bringing advance living and rul to other nation and more friends and comfort for your nation. but invasion mean stilling people goods and destroying their Civilzation and life without bringing development in people brian and heart!

It seems you calim know alot about Iran ...”

No: 2

“you seem to use all opportunity to attack the Arab people. You do it in your message board, in your lessons, even in your homepage”

No: 3

“why do you think it is good to make others happy by destroying the Arabs?”

And so many other messages in this kind.

To make the long story short, I have chosen parts of one message to answer here. This message is from a person whom I know for some time. I couldn't ignore her for two reasons:

1- I know her for some time (favoritism is still working!!)

2- The way she has expressed her feeling to defend her nation. I think it is a good lesson for all of us to react in a peaceful way to show others that they may be wrong and this is what the world of Islam needs to do in these days to change many people's attitudes.

I deeply hope my answer today will be positive. So here we go (just for the last time please):

Dear Nani,

First of all, I love your paintings. Thank you for sharing them with me. Please do not take my comments on 'invasion' personal. I did not and will not allow myself to insult a big prophet like Mohammad, peace be upon him.

The next are my short answers to you. My answers are in **Bold**.

“...I didn't notice that you hate Arab or said something bad about them and I don't blame you ...”

– **Nani, I do not hate the Arabs. Why should I hate them? What 'hate' can do that 'love' can't? We are close to each other. We have about one thousand years of history in common now, our grand grandparents have met!!**

“...Each one of us are loyal to his country and his nation and feel proud about it...”

– **Yes you are right. Our home is our mother. We love our mother.**

“...when I read your words I felt that it's make a sense I have always asked my self why Iran share with us some of our words and if you came to it's original you find that it's Arabic”

– **Yes, you are right. Lots of Persian words are replaced by the Arabic ones.**

“...I for my self don't really care about those bad things that other people did. they were dead and there works were dead with them. I care about now about our behavior with others now in these days”

– **Yes, you are right again!**

“...time is passing people are changing and there way of thinking is changing too.”

– **Absolutely correct! But some people still do not like this idea. They are still living in thousands of years ago!**

“Sir you are a teacher and I know that you want to teach everything about your country right but please don't put lines between us. You know how many people is visiting that site and all are reading your words. They already have a bad thoughts about Arab and about Islam and when you said that, you completed their thoughts and become beliefs”

– **Nani, I am sorry if you and others feel this way. I did not want to hurt you or others. We should learn to accept the truth. Now, please let me tell everyone that I do never ever accept to insult a prophet or somebody's belief. I do not think the majority is always right. I do not think like the majority. I do not think I should join the majority to condemn a prophet or a religion to please a few people who seem to be strong now. I am not able to do that. I do not even allow people use my words in a wrong way to support a wrong policy. I love the truth. That's why I am still suffering in my daily life. If, in nowadays, many are targeting Islam or the prophet Mohammad just because of some political leaders' policies (either Moslems or non-Moslems), they are wrong. I strongly believe that both Moslems and non-Moslems should be exceptionally careful at this time. We are at a very crucial stage in our history. Based on such judgments and hatred, we can never ever bring peace to this world. What is happening in the world today is the mixture of politics and religion presented to the naïve. We should always remember that we cannot judge Jesus based on what the political leaders did during the Middle Ages or later, nor can we judge Mohammad based on what the current Islamic leaders are doing. The sun will not remain behind the clouds for good. We have seen this before and our children will see it later! Do not live in dogmatism.**

Our problem today is that we judge the prophets based on what their followers are doing. Now let me ask you a question.

Can we say Jesus was homosexual because such and such priests in such and such churches practice homosexuality today? Can we refer to these priests as our standard based on which we can judge Jesus?

For sure not. We cannot judge Jesus based on what such priests are doing. Jesus is the standard upon which such priests should be judged. We cannot put the standard upside down. If we do, we are benefiting from this standard to satisfy our own desires.

So, the world should not judge the prophet Mohammad based on what such and such Islamic rulers are doing. Do not put the standard measure upside down please.

Personally, I love all messengers. This is my ideology if you are eager to know. I love the way that gathers all human being under one God. In one word, I love 'love' because I do not do 'religions businesses'. I am not a politician!

“we are not bad each nation has it's black dote in it's history but so so many good things that still hidden”

– **Yes, you are right again. I never said you are bad and I will never say that.**

“I hate politics :)”

– **Me too!! But quite unfortunately, to rule over the nations, politics is necessary! The point is that politics is different from spirituality. You cannot find a righteous politician nor can you find a political righteous! Keep thinking!**

By the way, the best title for your last painting could be 'Pari' or 'Fairy'.

All right, I believe we have talked enough on this topic.

Are you ready for more frog works now?! Good!

Today, we have the last part of our short story translation. I hope you enjoyed it. Please be in touch and give me your comments. Do not feel bad if, in many cases, you do not receive my direct reply through e-mail. I ensure you that I read your messages.

Please do not forget our today's Quiz! It can help you!

Quiz: (Source: Lesson 119 - My Translation!!)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalent. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Frightened

To begin to understand

To awaken

Just then

Nice

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

6 - 60 - 16 - 65 - 636 - 106 - 666 - 677 - 680 - 860 - 816

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ < == دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ < == کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To understand = + + + + +

Red color = + + + + +

To realize = + + + + +

Still = + + +



13

Little frog is frightened and jumps away.
is frightened = /tærsideh æst/
to jump = /pæridæn/ - /khiz zædæn/
jumps away = /khiz zæna:n du:r mi shævæd/
Two possible translations here:
1- ghu:rba:gheh ku:chu:lu: tærsideh æst, væ khiz zæna:n du:r



14

Now she begins to understand that it is the red color of her coverall that has made her fail.
now = /ha:la:/
she begins to understand = /kæm kæm motevæjeh mi shævæd/
that = /keh/
to fail = /na:ka:m shodæn/ - /ræd shodæn/
that has made her fail = /keh ba: es e na:ka:mi æsh shodeh

mi shævæd/
 2- ghu:rba:gheh
 ku:chu:lu: dær
 ha:li keh tærsideh
 æst pa: beh
 færa:r
 migoza:ræd/

æst/



15

Just then, a
 sound awakens
 her.
 just then =
 /na:gæha:n/ -
 /yek dæf e/
 a sound = /seda:
 i:/
 to awaken =
 /bida:r kærdæn/



16

“Oh, it's a dream after
 all,” little frog realizes.
 dream = /kha:b/ -
 /roya:/
 after all = (here in this
 text, it means) =>
 /khosh bækhta:neh/ -
 /hæmæsh/

Oh, it's a dream after
 all = /va:y, hæmæsh
 kha:b bu:d/.
 to realize =
 /motevæjeh shodæn/



17

She looks in the
 water and sees
 she is still
 wearing a green
 coverall.
 still = /hænu:z/
 she is still
 wearing =
 /hænu:z ...
 pu:shideh æst/



18

“Mum, the coverall
 you have given me is
 very nice, just as
 green as the grass. I
 like it very much.” she
 tells her mother.
 Her mother is happy.
 nice = /na:z/ -
 /ghæshæ ng/
 just = /dorost/ -
 /dæghighæn/
 as green as grass =
 /beh sæbzi ye chæ
 mæn/ - /mesl e
 chæmæn sæbz eh/

Week 119

Welcome to Useful Drills!

Suppose that you are a Persian teacher. You have applied to get a job in a Persian community. They give you the story of the little frog to translate (Just speak, do not write). You have 15 minutes to read the story and translate it into Persian. You may also give the Persian meaning of some of the words in the story. Do your best, or you will lose the job!! Unlike your teacher, your interviewer is very tough!! Good luck!

Hello everyone, how are you?

Hope you had a great time between the two lessons!

As it has been the case in many of our classes, I need to mention something here.

I am not jealous! Really! This feature hurts the persons who carry it in their heart more it hurts others. Try it and you will see that I am right!!

But something hurt me during the past week. I spent several hours last week on 'silently listening to people's conversation'!! No I am not that bad!!

I did it online and enjoyed it a lot! How did it go?

I entered several Persian chat rooms without chatting! I just sat back, had my coffee and followed the conversations among the people whom I did not know! Yet, I enjoyed it.

They talked about Iranian national soccer team, the election, the recent rain in some provinces, the hot weather, their first date with their friends, the recent argument in their home because of such a date, their teachers in the class, their boring homework, and bla bla bla!! They were still talking when I went offline!

I also visited several message boards and all of them were alive with lots of topics in them. I saw hundreds of members on different message boards, and maybe, thousands of different topics. The people in nearby villages (web pages) seemed friendlier and more active! What a village they should have!!

So, I enjoyed it a lot! It was a big fun for me! (Not because of the 'dates', because of the discussions and the fresh topics)

But, when I came back to our Easy Persian message board, it seemed empty for years. I haven't met anybody in our chat room since it has been online.

What hurt me was that Easy Persian is more popular than all those web pages I had been to during the past week. However, people on those pages are more active than us here. I repeat that I am not jealous about what they are doing on those pages. Just a question mark flashed through my mind that why our people here are so reluctant to participate in group activities on this site. I am not benefiting from your chats and other language related activities in our message board. But, why are you denying each other a simple talk or debate? What is the main reason that keeps you away from joining such activities in our message board? Think about it and let me know if you found any answer.

You know what? I feel I am missing Qajar Coffee on our former message board. With his hot topics, he made several people join a hot discussion! Do you always like disputable topics to intervene?

All right,

Now let us watch our new lesson!! Yes, 'watch'!

Today, we have a kind of movie show. It is just a test. Let's see how this one works. The most negative point here is that the file size is a bit big and will probably affect my server's monthly bandwidth. Let us keep our fingers crossed that everything will be fine!

The lesson today is the first page of the first book of the first school year in Iran !! That's right!

The first page of class 1 in primary school. The book is published in Iran in 1382 (Iranian calendar). So, it should be in 2003. Quite new, isn't it?

So, here we go!

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download this lesson in AVI format. Most probably, you will need Real Player (or Windows Media Player) to play this file. The file size is 4.59 MB, and the duration is 4.54 minutes.

As a short encouragement, it is really easy for you!!

Lesson 1 – Iranian primary school – Book 'Persian' / 'Farsi' – published 1382 / 2003 – Iran

Quiz: (Source: Useful Drills 24)

1- Listen to the audio files first (preferably once). Repeat a couple of times. Write it down on a paper. Find their English equivalents. (Seen)

One

Two

Three

2- Find the **Persian** equivalent for the following words and make four sentences with each of them (in different tenses).

Red

Yellow

Green

White

Purple

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

9 - 913 - 992 - 969 - 696 - 620 - 655 - 6365 - 8952 - 5847 - 9874

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ < == دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ < == کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

Blak = + + +

Purple = + + +

White = + + +

Yellow = + +

As always, the Useful Drills today is very simple!

I have mentioned several sentences in the lesson today that you watched in AVI format. All you need to do is to change the sentences to make new sentences. Here is how:

1- The curtain in my room is purple. Listen! Then continue with other objects with different color.

2- I have said that ' ' You change such sentences into a slightly different one.

EX: Mother is reading a book. Azadeh is reading a book. And so on.

3- Use the word 'Like' = and make 4 sentences with this verb (with different subjects). Listen!

4- Write a short composition in Persian to describe your own room. You may follow the examples we had today.

Have fun and come back next week!

3- Say these numbers in Persian:

200 - 201 - 101 - 102 - 20 - 2000 - 210 - 120

4- Follow the examples, combine the letters, and make words using the given letters. You'll have to change the big letters into the small ones whenever needed.

Friend <= /du:st/ <== دوست = د + و + س + ت

Book <= /keta:b/ <== کتاب = ک + ت + ا + ب

To be <== = ب + و + د + ن

Home - House <== = خ + ا + ن + ه

Street <== = خ + ی + ا + ب + ا + ن

To come <== = آ + م + د + ن

Week <== = ه + ت = ه + ف

New Words:

Small = کوچک /ku:chæk/.

Big = بزرگ /bozorg/.

Young = جوان /jæva:n/.

Old = پیر /pi:r/.

Ugly = زشت /zesht/.

Lovely = دوست داشتنی /du:st da:shtæni/.

Strong = قوی /ghævi/.

Weak = ضعیف /zæ i:f/.

Please repeat the above adjectives for several times. Then, cover the Persian words and look at the English ones and find their Persian equivalents by heart. And finally, use each of the above adjectives in simple sentences like what we had during the main lesson and keep yourself ready for the next week.

Week 121

Like our lesson today, the Useful Drills page is a bit different! Today, we are going to answer some questions instead of doing our routine drills. You may answer the questions in either Persian or your local language.

Questions:

1- Who is a refugee?

2- Did you know that many famous people such as Albert Einstein, Nadia Comaneci, and Henry Kissinger

were refugees? Would you say 'no' to any of them?

3- How many refugees do you know?

4- What have you done for them?

5- What would you expect from other people to do for you if you were a homeless refugee?

We, the Easy Persian family, are a very big family and can do a lot. Our family has about 55000 members!
Too big for a family!

If each one of us put 1 dollar aside in one month, then we can not only feed thousands of people from across the globe but also help them get resettled in a third country. We can touch the heart of thousands of people without even knowing them.

Did you know that 1 dollar in some countries where refugees are struggling can feed several people?

Did you know that 1 dollar a month is too small for us to affect our daily life?

Do you know that?

Words to learn:

Refugee = پناهنده /pæna:hændeh/. [Listen!](#)

Refugees = پناهندگان /pæna:hændega:n/. [Listen!](#)

Asylum seeker = پناهجو /pæna:h ju:/. [Listen!](#)

Asylum seekers = پناهجویان /pæna:h ju:ya:n/. [Listen!](#)

Homeless = بی خانمان /bi kha:noma:n/. [Listen!](#)

Help = کمک /komæk/.

To help = کمک کردن /komæk kærdæn/.

United Nations = سازمان ملل متحد /sa:zema:n melæl e mot.tæhed/. [Listen!](#)

Let us not forget the refugees! = پناهندگان را فراموش نکنیم! /pæna:hændega:n ra: færa:mu:sh nækonim/. [Listen!](#)

Easy Persian Site support center

How can I support my favorite webpage?

I have been using this free site for quite a while. I appreciate this free work which is a labor of love. In return, I would like to show my love to others by the ways mentioned below:

1- I will teach at least one sentence to somebody during this week, patiently and for free!

2- I will offer a couple of bucks to the beggars I see during this week.

3- I will feed at least one needy person once during this week.

4- I will get a branch of flower and I will go to a hospital or even a prison to visit some people. No matter if I do not know them.

5- I have some other idea that is not mentioned here and I am going to offer my love in the way I have in my mind.

Result,

At least 50000 sentences are going to be taught to 50000 people in one week.

At least 50000 beggars are going to receive a couple of bucks each.

At least 50000 needy people will have something to eat as their lunch or dinner.

At least ...

At least ...

At least ...

Wow, it is huge! Drops of water can make oceans if they gather!!

Hello everyone, how are you?

Week 122

First of all, let me thank you for your warm messages during past week. I am happy that you liked [lesson 121](#). I am also happy that you have such a willing heart to help others. May the One bless you all. Amen. Today, we are traveling to some 800 years ago!! We are going to old Persia to see an old lover. Guess who? Correct! We are spending some time with Hafez today. This poem is a response to several friends

who loved to hear more about Hafez and his poems. So, here it is!

I have chosen a very famous poem. Although comparing to many other poems written by Hafez, this is not what we can call 'A level', it is deep, lovely and famous (at least among the Iranians). I can say more than 95 percent of the Iranians know at least several words of this poem, especially the first two lines. Why? I don't know!! It should have its own reasons! You judge it by yourself!

This poem although old in date, is always fresh in meaning. Most of his poems have this feature. That's why Hafez has remained great in our history. He was centuries ahead of his time. The more you read his original work, the more new things you learn, and the more you love him. Some works never expire! If Hafez's poems were in English, or if Persian were the international language as English is today, for sure Hafez would be somewhere at the highest peak of world's literature.

In this poem, I have not remained loyal to the original text. That is to say, I am not presenting a word for word translation here. I thought I could convey his message more accurately if I got rid of word for word translation. So, I have sacrificed words for meaning.

The English translation is far from the beauty of the original work. To enjoy Hafez and Persian poetry, you must be able to read the original works. In the meantime, I deeply wish I had an advanced Persian class where I could teach only Hafez for years! Please pray for me to get such a class.

All right,

What you need to do today is sit back and go through the translation first. After you feel comfortable with the translation, you may go to Useful Drills page for the original text, its English phonetic writings, and the sound file. I hope you will enjoy this lesson.

See you all next week. Khoda Hafez for now!

Week 122

Persian Classical Poetry - Vaezan By: Hafez - Translation and sound file: Hassan H.

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the sound file in MP3

Persian Classical Poetry - Vaezan By: Hafez

واعظان کاین جلوه در محراب و منبر می کنند	/va: eza:n kin jelveh dær mehrab o menber mikonænd/
چون به خلوت می روند آن کار دیگر می کنند	/chun beh khælvæt mirævænd an kar e digær mikonænd/
مشکلی دارم ز دانشمند مجلس باز پرس	/moshkeli daræm ze danesh mænd e mæjles baz پرس/
توبه فرمایان چرا خود توبه کمتر می کنند	/tobeh færmayan chera: khod tobeh kæmtær mikonænd/?
گوییا باور نمی دارند روز داوری	/gu: i: ya: bavær nemidarænd ru:z e daværi/
کاین همه قلب و دغل در کار داور می کنند	/kin hæmeh ghælb o dæghæl dær kar e davær mikonænd/
یا رب این نو دولتان را با خر خودشان نشان	/ya: ræb in no dolætan ra: ba: khær e khodshan neshan/
کاین همه ناز از غلام ترک و استرمی کنند	/kin hæmeh naz æz ghola:m e tork o æstær mikonænd/
ای گدای خانقه برجه که در دیر مغان	/ey geda: ye khanghæh bærejeh keh dær deir e moghan/
می دهند آبی که دلها را توانگر می کنند	/midæhænd a:bi keh delha: ra: tævangær mikonænd/
حسن بی پایان او چندانکه عاشق می کشد	/hosn e bi payan e u: chændan keh a:shægh mikoshæd/
زمره ای دیگر به عشق از غیب سر بر می کنند	/zomreh i: digær beh eshgh æz gheib sær bær mikonænd/
هر در میخانه عشق ای ملک تسبیح گو	/bær dær e meikhaneh ye eshgh ey mælek tæsbih guy/
کاندر آنجا طینت آدم مخمر می کنند	/kændær anja: tinæt e a:dæm mokhæm.mær mikonænd/
صبحدم از عرش می آمد خروشی عقل گفت	/sobhdæm æz ærsh mi amæd khorushi æghl goft/
قدسیان گویی که شعر حافظ از بر می کنند	/ghodsiyan gu: i: keh sher e hafæz æz bær mikonænd/

@www.easypersian.com

Isn't Persian sugar?!!

Preachers By: Hafez

Preachers who look glorious on stages and on heights,

When alone, (they) do something different!

I have a problem, ask the most knowledgeable person in the community,

Why those who preach for repentance repent less?

They seem not to believe in the Day of Judgment

That's why they change the Words, they misinterpret God's work.

Dear God, place such notorious wealthy devils on their true lowly position,

And let them not boast about what they've gained from people.

Dear love seekers, wake up and seek the Temple of Love ,
Because there alone, you'll find the wine that puts your spirit on high
His endless love, even if it puts lovers on fire,
Gives you new face in love, revealed from the heaven
Worship o lovers, at the Tavern of Love,
Because there alone, you'll find the water that transforms your soul
At dawn, a voice was heard from the heaven above,
Wisdom said, "It seems saints and angels are practicing the words of Hafez!"

Hello everyone, how are you?

Week 123

My friend always said, "God helps lazy people!"

Don't follow my friend! This is not true although it saved my day today!

Frankly, I didn't know what to teach this week!! (Anybody may run out of words / topics from time to time!!)

I was just wondering what good topic to choose for this week when I saw 'Persian measure units' on our message board! If you remember I told you once that this message board is useful!! So, I found my topic for today!

I began to focus on this topic when I received a lovely e-mail from an on time student who gave me several points to talk about!! That's why our Belgian Thibault is nice and lovely!! (Kidding!)

Now, I had a lot to talk about this week. So far God has helped me twice!!

But tonight when I was traveling in cyberspace, I came across a Persian radio station where God had decided to help me for the third time this week!!

I decided to spend some time and take a rest in this Persian radio station before I had to continue my journey in this endless space! Trying to listen to a pleasant interview, I found a lovely music!! Travel is always good!

I could hardly sacrifice this song for 'Persian measuring service' today!!

So, I finally chose the topic for today. Please come back next week if you are a tailor!! We will have several measures in our next lesson.

Maybe you will call me 'nationalist' today because of this song! You try it by yourself and probably 'nationalism' will increase this week!!

I believe this song could be a kind of national song. In a wider meaning, it could be 'international' if we replaced one word of this song with another one. Here's how:

The second line from the end reads: عاشق هر ذره ای از خاک ایرانم /a:shagh e har zarah i: az kha:k e ira:nam/ = I am in love with every single sand / part of **Iran 's soil!**

If we simply replace ایران /ira:n /with کیهان /keyha:n/, which means UNIVERSE, we will have this:

عاشق هر ذره ای از خاک کیهانم /a:shagh e har zarah i: az kha:k e keyha:næm/ = I am in love with every single sand / part of the **universe's soil!**

This one seems deeper, at least to me!! You know why? Because the rain is generous to everything, everywhere, and everybody. Do not release your points and ideas now!! Please go through the song first and then give advice!

I have no idea about the singer or the lyricist. If you do, please let me know.

Before we go to this song, let me tell you that the quality of the original song was not better than this! Have fun!

Please right-click [here](#) and choose 'Save Target As' to download this MP3 song into your computer. Then, go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the lyrics and translation.

See you next week and Khoda Hafez!

Week 123

This song maybe difficult to sing but, for sure, is wonderfully pleasant to listen! That's why we have two ears against one mouth!!

قطره بارانم /ghatreh ba:ra:nam/ = I am a drop of rain

من یکی هستم ولی یکصد هزارانم /man yeki hastam vali yeksad heza:ra:nam/ = I seem one but I am hundreds of thousands!

در پی پیوستن به جمع یارانم /dar pei ye peivastan e beh jam e ya:ra:nam/ = I am looking to join other friends' fellowship

قطره بارانم /ghatreh ba:ra:nam/ = I am a drop of rain

قطره بارانم /ghatreh ba:ra:nam/ = I am a drop of rain

فکر همراهی با سیل خروشانم /fekr e hamra:hi ye ba: seil e khoru:sha:nam/ = I am thinking of companionship with the roaring flood!

فکر تشنگی گلها در گلستانم /fekr e teshneki ye golha: dar golesta:nam/ = I am thinking of thirst of flowers in the garden!

قطره بارانم /ghatreh ba:ra:nam/ = I am a drop of rain

قطره بارانم /ghatreh ba:ra:nam/ = I am a drop of rain

می توانم چشمه های خشک را از نو بجوشانم /mitava:nam cheshmeh ha: ye khoshk ra: az no beju:sha:nam/ = I can make dry springs gush forth again!

می توانم سرزمین خشک را از نو برویانم /mitava:nam sarzamin e khoshk ra: az no beru:ya:nam/ = I can make dry lands green again!

از گل بپوشانم /az gol bepou:sha:nam/ = cover them with flowers!

از نو برویانم /az no beru:ya:nam/ = grow them afresh!

اما کوچکم /ku:chakam am.ma:/ = I am little, but

دست دریا را همیشه پشت سر دارم /dast e darya: ra: hamisheh posht e sar da:ram/ = I am always holding the hands of sea behind me!

من به صبح روشن فردا امیدوارم /man beh sobh e roshan e farda: omidva:ram/ = I have hope in tomorrow's bright dawn

من به صبح روشن فردا امیدوارم /man beh sobh e roshan e farda: omidva:ram/ = I have hope in tomorrow's bright dawn

قطره بارانم /ghatreh ba:ra:nam/ = I am a drop of rain

از تبار نوس امیدوارانم /az taba:r e noras e omidva:ra:nam/ = I am from a newly-born family of 'Hoppers'!

عاشق هر ذره ای از خاک ایرانم /a:shagh e har zareh i: az kha:k e ira:nam/ = I am in love with every single sand of Iran's soil!

قطره بارانم /ghatreh ba:ra:nam/ = I am a drop of rain

Hello everyone, how are you?

Week 124

This is not my business! I am responsible for myself! Maybe they have done something wrong that are suffering like this! They are not part of my family! What is important is that I am fine! I shouldn't touch them, maybe it is epidemic! I should ask my family to stay away from them! And so on.

We are all thinking about ourselves. We always think such things happen to people far from us. We do not know that one of them could be one of us.

Strange ice-breaker today?!

What am I talking about?

Brain Tumors, Breast Cancer, AIDS-related Lymphoma, Gastric Cancer, Hodgkin's disease, Kidney Cancer, Liver Cancer, Lung Cancer, Prostate Cancer, Thyroid Cancer, Vaginal Cancer, and lots of strange names that we have never heard of. There are some people around us, who are suffering from such strange diseases. They do need hope to keep on living. At least, we can give them hope to fight for their life if we cannot help them with their hospital fees and the devices needed for their treatment. We can spend some time with them. We can be part of their life. We do not need to remind them of their disease. At least, we can keep them busy by words, memories, light activities and even by listening to them.

These people need us even if we do not know them. Let us help them keep walking.

What do you think?

All right, as you remember, I told you last time to come back if you were a tailor!

Ok tailors, are you ready?!!

Today, we are going to learn some measures / units in Persian. Honestly, I do not know many of them in Persian! But we will try to remember as many as we can! Ok?

Let's start with the simple ones!!

Meter = متر /metr/. [Listen!](#)

Centimeter = سانتی متر /sa:nti metr/. [Listen!](#)

Square (for numbers) = مربع /morab.bæ/. [Listen!](#)

Square (a part of streets) = میدان /meida:n/. [Listen!](#)

Square (a four-angle shape in geometry) = مربع /morab.bæ/.

Cube (a solid object with six equal square sides) = مکعب /mokæ.æb/. [Listen!](#)

Cube (for numbers) = same as above!

Question:

How do you say 'sugar cube' in Persian?

Did you use مکعب /mokæ.æb/?!

It is wrong!

'Sugar cube' is simply قند /ghænd/ in Persian!

Easy, isn't it?!

That's why Persian is sugar!! Remember, Persian is not قند /ghænd/!!

By the way, if you happen to travel to Iran, you would see this قند /ghænd/ everywhere next to each cup of tea!! Enjoy your tea if you are in Iran!

Length = طول /tu:l/.

Width = عرض /ærz/.

Height = ارتفاع /ertefa:/. [Listen!](#)

Depth = عمق /omgh/. [Listen!](#)

Ok, let us learn some shapes here before you know that my measuring knowledge is finishing!!

Triangle = مثلث /mosæl.læs/. [Listen!](#)

Rectangle = مستطیل /mostætil/. [Listen!](#)

Circle = دایره /da:yereh/. [Listen!](#)

Ellipse = بیضی /beizi:/. [Listen!](#)

Cone = مخروط /mækhru:t/. [Listen!](#)

Geometry = هندسه /hendes.seh/. [Listen!](#)

All right, please go to [Useful Drills](#) page to see some examples.

Not a perfect tailor yet?! Come back next week to learn some UNITS.

I hope this lesson was useful.

Happy tailoring!!

See you next week!

Khoda Hafez!

Week 124

Try to learn the examples. Although the sentences may have a couple of equivalents in Persian, I have given you one of them to make it easier for you. The Persian sentences below (1-4) are the exact equivalents of the **second** English sentences. Enjoy your drills!

1- This ruler is 50 centimeter long = the length of this ruler is 50 centimeter.

. طول این خط‌کش پنجاه سانتی متر است . /tu:l e in khæt kesh pænja:h sa:nti metr æst/. [Listen!](#)

2- This room is 3 meters wide = the width of this room is 3 meters. عرض این اتاق سه متر است . /ærz e in ota:gh seh metr æst/. [Listen!](#)

3- This wall is 2 meters high = the height of this wall is 2 meters. ارتفاع این دیوار دو متر است . /ertefa: e in diva:r do metr æst/. **Listen!**

4- This water is 1 meter deep = the depth of this water is 1 meter. عمق این آب یک متر است . /omgh e in a:b yek metr æst/. **Listen!**

5- I will wait for you near that square. من نزدیک آن میدان منتظرت خواهم بود . /mæn næzdik e a:n meida:n montæzeræt kha:hæm bu:d/. **Listen!**

Note:

If you are talking about shapes, you could simply add the word به شکل /beh shekl e/ like below.

6- This table is square. این میز به شکل مربع است . /in mi:z beh shekl e moræb.bæ æst/. **Listen!**

7- The football field / ground is rectangle (rectangular). زمین فوتبال به شکل مستطیل است . /zæmin e fu:tba:l beh shekl e mostætil æst/.

8- This paper is triangle. این کاغذ به شکل مثلث است . /in ka:ghæz beh shekl e mosæl.læs æst/.

9- The backgammon dices are cubical. تاس تخته نرد به شکل مکعب است . /ta:s e tækhteh nærd beh shekl e mokæ.æb æst/. **Listen!**

Note:

In such sentences (6-9), you could simply delete به شکل /beh shekl e/ and add ی to the end of each shape.

Example:

This paper is triangle. این کاغذ مثلثی است . /in ka:ghæz mosæl.læsi æst/. **Listen!**

I hope it was not difficult for you.

See you next week.

Hello everyone, how are you?

Week 125

Before I say anything else, let me warn you that our lesson today is a bit long! Be patient please!

However, if you do not like to read my writings, please scroll down the page to see the lesson (I am not a dictator teacher!).

After I confessed during one of our former lessons that I was running out of knowledge, I found lots of things to say! (Maybe, that's why confession is very common in Christianity!!)

To make your job and mine easier, let me use numbers!

1- About this sentence that you saw on our homepage: "Say farewell to Easy Persian! Soon!!"

First, let me thank you for all your very warm messages. I should admit that I was a bit naughty! Yes, it was just an ad! Nothing more!! Sorry, for that! I promise not to do that anymore! You know what? I am going to find a job in an advertising company!!! Do you think I will have any success?!!

I was not going to take that message down for quite a while! Unfortunately (!!), I saw some messages on the message board that said, "Hassan needs money?!"

So, after I saw that message, I modified the ad immediately. Honestly, it was not about asking you for money. (Since it was an ad, it could be about making money though!!) Please do not misunderstand me; I am not that much money-centered! (I like it though!!)

But one of the good points of such an ad was receiving wide variety of emails with lots of interesting topics!! Let me share only one sentence of several hundred lovely messages that was lovingly touching for me.

Here is the sentence,

"It would be a crime to remove such a valuable source of knowledge from the internet.

Khayli Mamnoon and khodafiz."

I promised him that I would never become a criminal!!

2- I want to share a great site with you here. Unfortunately, the main portion of this site is in Persian.

Besides, the topics are really deep and mostly difficult. So, I strongly recommend this site to native Persians (with desire to follow such topics) and to the very advanced Persian students.

I would also like to take advantage of this opportunity to thank Mr. Professor Jamali for all his love and

hardship he has gone through in exploring and sharing such deep and historical meanings of the words in our culture. I have been enjoying his speeches continuously since I found him. How much one could do! And how much one person could know!

Dear professor Jamali, if you happen to see this message, please be noted that your hard work will not remain fruitless. You are sowing something that will certainly grow tomorrow. Thank you.

Here is the page: <http://www.khomam.com/>

3- Today seems to be our 'sharing day!' lots of things to share!

I guess many of you know Alijsh on our message board. I am telling you that this young man is far older than his age! (I mean mentally, not physically!!!)

I am afraid I am not allowed to reveal his age to you here! Currently, accept it from me that he is very well-talented!

Could you believe this program that you are going to download in minutes is written by such a young man who could hardly convince the father of the girl that he is old enough to marry his daughter!! (He has never done that!! Honestly!! This is just an example! Hint that is!!)

This program is called PVC. It is not that kind of plastic things! Or some permanent virtual circuit things! PVC is standing for Persian Verb Conjugator. It is a simple program that conjugates any Persian verb for you in a matter of 'no seconds'! That is amazing! I do not know how he has done it and I do not want to know it!! It is too complicated for me! But, if you are looking for a talent, this is your man!!

Let me thank Ali for making and sharing such a lovely program.

You do not need to install anything.

Just download the zip file here and unzip it. In your unzipped folder, you will see a file called 'pvconjugator'. Click on it and follow your screen!!

To get most out of this program, first read the 'Help' that is provided in this program. For more information please contact Ali directly (later!).

Ali agha, dastet dorost!! = dasset dorost = dastet dard nakoneh!! = thank you!!

[Download Persian Verb Conjugator \(PVC\) here!](#)

Note: This program is in ZIP format. So, you will have to Unzip it first. Then, in your Unzipped folder, click on PVC.EXE. That's it! You are done! Enjoy Conjugating your Persian infinitives!

Important: Please note that this program is copyrighted to Mr. Ali J. and is available for your **personal use only**. For commercial use or for further information about this PVC program, please contact [Ali directly](#).

All right, now the lesson today.

As you remember, I promised to continue Measures / Units in Persian this week. Unfortunately, you have to wait a few more weeks for that. The reason is that I am going to introduce this 'Easier than Easy Persian' today! First things first!! I am telling you that it is a very nice work. I highly recommend it (not merely because it is mine!!)

This work is based on Persian primary books series, grade 1. This book is now being taught in primary schools in Iran . It contains 40 lessons (119 pages) that start with easy ones and ends in more difficult texts. So, both beginners and intermediate students, both children and adults can enjoy this CD. Yes, the complete work is on a CD.

To let you know more about this CD, I am going to post three lessons online for you to enjoy; that is one lesson per week. This will give you the chance to see different lessons with different levels of difficulties. Then, you can decide if you want to have one copy of this CD or you want to let Hassan H. keep it with himself for a rainy day!!

Ok, let me speak no more today! You will have the pilgrimage to read more after you click on the link below!!

Please come back for other lessons! They will be uploaded very soon.

Sorry for talking this much today!

Wish you all the best,

Your servant,

Hassan H.

Week 125

No drills today! I hope you enjoyed the lesson!

Hello everyone, how are you?

Week 126

Today, I have a very easy job!! Please click on the link below to see your lesson!

Wait a moment! Before you leave, I have some very short words to share with you.

1- The PVC program I talked about last time is ready now! You may either download it [here](#) or go to [lesson 125](#) if you don't like this link!

Note: This program is in ZIP format. So, you will have to Unzip it first. Then, in your Unzipped folder, click on PVC.EXE. That's it! You are done! Enjoy Conjugating your Persian infinitives!

Important: Please note that this program is copyrighted to Mr. Ali J. and is available for your **personal use only**. For commercial use or for further information about this PVC program, please contact [Ali directly](#).

2- I found a great web page last week. Since we had many things to share last time, I saved it for today (like housewives who save some eatables for a rainy day! = the child's crying day!!). Please click on the link below to find an excellent Persian Radio Station. [The Iranian Radio online just round the clock!](#)

All right, now like a good student go to your lesson below!!

That's it for today. See you all next week!

Khoda Hafez!

[Please click to see the second lesson of this CD.](#)



Easy Persian Primary School-book 1

Salam beh hamegi! (Hello everyone!)

After months of hard work, finally this easier than Easy Persian is here!

The best and the easiest way you could ever find in learning a language is this: don't do anything!! Just sit back and enjoy your class! If your teacher speaks too much, turn it off! That's it! But, you won't miss the class! It's that good!! It's that fun! You won't stop reading along with your teacher!! You cannot remain silent! That's a deal! You will see yourself doing something! It's that much encouraging!

This is the first CD of the primary school books series. I have done all I could to make it as fun as possible. Just remember the more comfortable you feel now means that the harder work someone has done for you! I hope you will enjoy it!

One of the biggest points of this CD, besides learning the language, is that it takes you to the same environment as the local students are now. You will feel that you are closer to the original local color of this language. Who knows, maybe you will have a lot of sweet dreams of Iran just because of this book!! To help you more with this feeling, I have pronounced most of longer sentences in the same way as I used to read them as a school boy years ago when doing my homework! I liked it! I was not sure if you liked that kind of reading though. Otherwise, I could read all like this! That's my favorite! I hope you will like it too!

Points to remember when you are going to use this CD:

1- The original book is written for the native speakers. It is clear that a native speaker, no matter if it's a child, can speak his / her mother tongue very fluently! So, it is natural if they are supposed to do more. However, we should not expect the non-natives to have the same potential as their native counterparts have.

Solution: I have modified the lessons to best suit your needs as a non-native.

2- Based on what mentioned in number 1 above, I have not worked too much on some pages that need more work for beginners. You are not supposed to work much on those pages either! This is just to make

the learning easier for you. Do not worry though; you will not miss a big part by skipping over those pages! However, I have put such kind of pages under 'Optional' for you to use if you feel comfortable with them.

3- Although I have tried to pronounce the words and sentences as clearly and slowly as possible, you may 'PAUSE' the video files at any time you wish if you think you cannot follow longer sentences. If you want my personal suggestion, follow the files without pausing them!!

4- As for writings, there are enough video files at appropriate places to help you with your writings. However, if you think you need more of them, you could still practice with more words. The letters you will learn during this course will be good enough to be used in all words. They may be used a bit differently in different words, but, definitely recognizable!

5- Again for writings, do not feel strange if, sometimes, you face a different kind of /shin/ or /sin/ or /gaf/ in my writing drills! It is a kind of Persian Calligraphy called 'Nastaligh'. Honestly, I am not very good at that! But based on what I am good at, I have tried to write most of them in Nastaligh! Keep practicing; maybe you could write better than me! So, you have both Writing drills and Calligraphy lessons together! **This CD is highly recommended.**

Week 126

No drills today! I hope you enjoyed the lesson!

Hello everyone, how are you?

Week 127

What would you do if someone broke your child's head?!!

I, most probably, would break both the child and his father's head!! The eye for an eye policy is great if it supports me!! Right?

Recently, I read breathtaking news on BBC Persian. Maybe, you have seen it as well.

A 12-year-old boy called Ahmad who, seemingly was carrying a toy gun, was shot dead in Palestine. The Israeli police thought he was a terrorist.

We would never rest in peace if it were our child. Ahmad's father, however, had a different idea.

According to the news, when the father got into the hospital, the doctors told him that the bullet had pierced his child's brain; so, he would certainly die.

“What about other parts of his body? Are they working well?” Ahmad's father asked the doctors. “Yes, they do not have any problems,” came the reply.

“Take the working parts off his body and plant them into the body of as many Israeli people as possible.” The father commanded.

And so did the doctors. In hours, the heart, the kidneys, and other parts of Ahmad's body were transplanted to six different Israeli people of different ages, mostly children.

Ahmad died but his death saved the life of six people from the so called enemy tribe. What he did was far deeper than the Good Samaritan's. What he did was million times more powerful than thousands of bombs and stones thrown everyday. Ahmad's father conquered the heart of the world with love.

This was Ahmad's father's message: “the reason I did that was to send the message of love and peace to all who love peace. Everybody plants olive tree to convey peace and I have planted parts of my child's body into the body of Israeli kids to keep the symbol of peace alive in them.”

This is not a made up story. This has happened and I am sure most of you have seen or heard about it. Long live love, long live peace.

I request all of you to wash your eyes and look at things around you afresh. Please pray for love, peace, Ahmad, and his family who are having a deadly difficult time at this very moment. Where are you God to see all these?

To read the original news in Persian, please go to this address:

http://www.bbc.co.uk/persian/news/story/2005/11/051109_si-ismail-khatib.shtml

All right, please click on the link below to see today's lesson. As promised, today, we have the last part of Persian primary school book sample. I deeply hope you will like it.

As the other note, I have recently started writing in Persian after years! To express myself in words, I have made a Weblog. Unfortunately for the non-Persians, the main part of this Blog is in Persian. This was all I could do at this time. I hope those who can read and understand Persian will like it. Here is the address:

<http://iseed.blogspot.com/>

Please let me receive your comments.

Ok, that's it for today.

See you next week.

Khoda Hafez!

Week 127

Again, No drills today! I hope you enjoyed the lesson!

Week 128

Is bad always bad?

I would say 'yes' if you had asked me this question one week ago! Today, I have a different idea (even temporarily!!). Compared to the worse, bad is good!!

Recently, I always complained that my old computer has made me crazy! Although I loved my computer, I thought it was not good anymore, which means it was bad! Then one day, it stopped working permanently! As a result, I lost my connection with the outside world, which was a terrible experience. It was then I came to know that even if it worked poorly, it was good enough to connect me to you! So, compared to 'worse', bad is good!

This week, I decided to buy a new computer. I checked my savings and noticed that it was too little for a new one! (Now, you know how rich this teacher is!!). Through some channels, I finally managed to get a new computer. So, I guess I can spend more time online from now on. Say 'hurray' if this made you happy!

I also want to take advantage of this time to share something with you. From among all the possessions of this world, I have only one thing that I guess is mine! And that is my tongue!! Recently, I noticed my tongue remains silent! You know that I am very talkative! So, silence kills me! Honestly! I noticed that I could not write or say anything for quite long time. I hate this situation and I would love to ask you to pray to God, or whosoever you believe in, to push my tongue towards words! Please ask Him to let my tongue speak again! Let me see how many of you have got pure heart (!!); for it is said that if you keep asking God with a pure heart to give you something, it will be given to you!! Maybe it is a test for your pure hearts!!

All right,

Now let's see the lesson. If you remember, I told you in lesson 125 that after the Primary School CD sample pages, we would continue our Persian Measure / Units lessons. So, here we are again! We will learn some more of Persian Units today. If I happen to get more, I will certainly share it with you again. By the way, how was the Primary School CD? I thought you liked it. So far, only a few have shown interest in it. (My interest measuring system works based on the number of orders placed!!). I am not threatening you, but let me tell you that the less you welcome my works, the less I will find the courage to do more! There is a Persian expression that says: **دروآلاح رس رب ار نخس بحاص عمستسم**!! Listen! It means something like this: supportive listeners / audiences create better speakers! Or, Good audiences put the speaker in a better speaking mood.

Well, I am already convinced that your heart is beautifully pure!! I have already started talking this much!! Keep praying please!!

Here are some more Persian measures / units:

human: **رفن** /næfær/

Example: two people = **دو رفن** /do næfær/.

camel : **رفن** /næfær/

Example: two camels = **دو رتتش رفن** /do næfær shotor/.

Note: some of these measures, like what you see in camel, are not very common in nowadays Persian.

You could simply say **دو رتتش** /do shotor/.

carpet: **تخت** /tækhteh/

Example: one carpet = **شرف تخت کی** /yek takhteh færsh/.

airplane: **دورف** /færvænd/

Example: one airplane = **امیپاوه دورف کی** /yek færvænd hæva:peyma:/

car: هاگتسد /dæstga:h/

Example: one car = نی شام هاگتسد کی /yek dæstga:h ma:shin/.

check (bank note): مرقف /fæghæreh/

Example: two checks = دو کچ مرقف ود /do fæghæreh chek/.

house / residential place: باب /ba:b/

Example: five houses = مناخ باب جنپ /pænj ba:b kha:neh/. Or, ینوکسم دحاو باب جنپ /pænj ba:b va:hed e mæsku:ni/ = five residential places

kilogram: ولیک /kilo/ or, /kilu:/

Example: three kilos banana = زوم ولیک جنپ /pænj kilu: moz/.

gram (as in kilogram): هرگ /gram/ (same as in English)

Example: one gram gold = ال ط هرگ کی

litter (1000 cc): رتیل /litr/

Example: ten litter milk = ده ریش رتیل هد /dæh litr shir/.

bottle of beer or other alcoholic drinks: رطب /botr/

Example: two bottles beer = دو وچبأ رطب ود /do botr a:bj/

Very important and brilliantly relieving note!!!

It is said that necessity is the mother of invention!! Here, I should say laziness is the mother of invention!!

You know why? Read below!

In daily conversations, we the Iranians do not use most of these measures!! Instead, we have a very short word that replaces all the **countable** measures!! That easy word is ات /ta:/.

Example:

Five cars = پنج ات نی شام ات جنپ /pænj ta: ma:shin/.

Ten camels = ده رتش ات هد /dæh ta: shotor/.

Four planes = چهار امیپاوه ات راهچ /chæha:r ta: hæva: peyma:/.

Now satisfied?!! Easy Persian makes sugar sweeter!!

Before I say bye to you, let me give you a small homework!!

Question: I said for **countable** nouns, we use ات /ta:/ in daily conversation. What is the word for **non-countable** nouns?

Example:

What if the word is 'water' or 'milk' or 'beer'?

Keep thinking!!

See you all next week.

Till then, Khoda Hafez!

Sorry, sorry, it's me again! I said many things today and still need to say one more thing! I forgot to wish you a very happy and blessed Christmas as well as a wonderful new year! So, merry Christmas and happy new year to all of you!

Wow, your hearts are great!! I am just wondering with so many pure hearts, why is it that our world is still filled with hatred and war? Let us pray for the rulers!!

Week 128

Again, No drills today! Just make somebody happy during the Christmas! Also, sing Merry Christmas song to that person!! Make sure he/ she is patient enough to tolerate your voice!! Always remember that action speaks louder than words!! Merry Christmas and Happy New Year!

Enjoy your holiday!

Week 129

First, let me thank those who sent me their Christmas and New Year wishes either by writing a few touching words or by choosing/making lovely e cards. Thanks a million! من کن درد نوتتسد!

I am really happy that you have accepted me as a person you could think of during your happy time. It means a lot to me. God bless you all!

Before we start our new lesson today, I have two things to share with you.

First, one of our old Easy Persian friends has done a nice a job. She has collected and summarized all tenses we have already covered in one page. I have edited her work for you to enjoy. Please click [here](#) to download it in Microsoft Word Format. Let me thank Semberlyn Crossley on behalf of all of you. Thank you Semberlyn!

Second, is an open letter from a Pakistani brother to Mr. Osama Bin Laden!! His message is very touching and it may not be very bad if we all read it together!

Here is the message:

An Open Letter To Osama bin Laden and Ayman Al-Zawahiri.

(Wherever You Are)

Aslam-o-Alaikum!

Do you know what degree of shame, abomination, misery and wretchedness is being heaped on the innocent and peace-following Muslims all over the world because of this so-called and self styled Jihad of yours?

Do you know how many innocent, unsullied people are being daily butchered as result of this professed Jihad of yours? How many children are being orphaned and women being widowed precisely for the same reason.

And do you know, killing one faultless human being is like killing the entire humanity. You must definitely be knowing that you will surely be held accountable for this all bloodshed. Will you, then, be able to face your God? I challenge, no!

Then, why have you become an agent of some hidden hand. Why are you taking the responsibility of the murder of entire humanity to yourself on his behest. Why are you dragging the Muslims down? Why are you demeaning Islam by presenting it as a terrorist religion? Acting like this, which religion are you rendering a great service to? Are you raising the standard of Islam high or you (if you reflect on it) are causing the heads of the followers of the path of the righteous bow down with shame in-front of the entire humanity.

Today most of the Muslims believe that you are not a true Muslim but planted by the enemies to destroy the image of Islam.

For God's sake, take recourse to sense, and announce a CEASEFIRE at once so the inhabitants of world may be introduced to that divine aspect of the Muslims at whose hands no soul suffer, whose words and actions bear no tinge of dichotomy, whose speech, when uttered, conveys to others the message of love and protection, whose thoughts, when thought, are devoted to the well being of others. Herein lies the true success, and herein lies the victory of the true religion of Allah.

S.A.Rehman

(Peace Activist)

PAKISTAN

All right,

Today, we have a new translation work again. I hope you will enjoy it. Actually, I am not going to work hard on it today!! You are going to do the main job and I am going to wait for one more week!!

Here's how:

Please read the following short story carefully. Then, do your best to translate it into Persian. You may look for the new words on Useful Drills page if needed. Next week, I will provide you with the Persian translation. Hope it will be ok with you.

Once again, I wish you a very prosperous 2006.

See you next week.

The text:

I don't like her!

Bob goes to a new school.

One day, he comes back from the school.

“Bob, do you like your new teacher?” his mother asks him.

“I don't like her,” Bob says in reply.

“Why?” asks his mother.

“Because, first she says that three and three is six. Then, she says that two and four is six too! So, I don't like her!!”

Week 129

To like = نیشاد تسود

Goes = دور یم

New = مزات = دیج

Comes back from = درگ یم رب ... زا

In reply = باوج رد

Why = ارچ

Because = مکنی ا یارب = اریز

First = لوا

Says that = مک دیوگ یم

Is (here in this text) = دوش یم

Then = دعب

So = ن یمه یارب

The Tower of Babel (Genesis 11: 1-9)

The tale of the Tower of Babel is an "explanation" of why there are so many different languages. You can find the story in some of those languages by following the links below. Having a single text in a variety of languages is a good way to see similarities and differences between those languages.

The Tower of Babel did in fact exist: it was a seven-stage ziggurat (stepped pyramid) with a temple to the god Marduk at the top. It was called *Etemenanki*, or 'the temple of the platform between heaven and earth', and was built in the city of Babylon sometime during the 6th or 7th century BC.

Persian/Farsi (فارسی)

1. در آن روزگار همه مردم جهان به یک زبان سخن میگفتند.
2. جمعیت دنیا رفته رفته زیاد میشد و مردم بطرف شرق کوچ میکردند. آنها سر انجام به دشتی وسیع و پهناور در بابل رسیدند و در آنجا سکنی گزیدند.
- 3 و 4. مردمی که در آنجا میزیستند با هم مشورت کرده، گفتند: «بیایید شهری بزرگ بنا کنیم و بر جی باند در آن بسازیم که سرش به آسمان برسد تا نامی بر ای خود پیدا کنیم. بنای این شهر و برج مانع پر اکنگگی ما خواهد شد.» بر ای بنای شهر و برج آن خشتهای پخته تهیه نمودند. از این خشتهای بجای سنگ و از قیر بجای گچ استفاده کردند.
- 5 و 6. اما هنگامی که خداوند به شهر و بر جی که در حال بنا شدن بود نظر انداخت، گفت: «زبان همه مردم یکی است و متحد شده، این کار را شروع کرده اند. اگر اکر آنها جلو گیری نکنیم، در آینده هر کاری بخواهند انجام خواهند داد.
7. پس زبان آنها را تغییر خواهیم داد تا سخن یکدیگر را نفهمند.»
8. این اختلاف زبان موجب شد که آنها از بنای شهر دست بردارند؛ و به این ترتیب خداوند ایشان را روی زمین پر اکنده ساخت.
9. از این سبب آنجا را روی زمین پر اکنده ساخت.

Week 130

If you remember, we had the following text last week. I asked you to work on it. Did you listen to what I said? Great students!!

All right, let us take a look at the text once more:

The text:

I don't like her!

Bob goes to a new school.

One day, he comes back from the school.

"Bob, do you like your new teacher?" his mother asks him.

"I don't like her," Bob says in reply.

"Why?" asks his mother.

"Because, first she says that three and three is six. Then, she says that two and four is six too! So, I don't like her!!"

You already know the new words, don't you? If not, please visit the [Useful Drills 129](#) again!

Ok, here we go:

I don't like her = امرادن تسود ار وانم /mæn u: ra: du:st næda:ræm/.

This is the formal translation, or the book style, which is ok.

However, there is an easier way to translate this.

I don't like her = امرادن شسود /du:sesh næda:ræm/.

Bob goes to a new school. = دور یم یدیج سردم مباب /ba:b beh mædreseh ye jædidi mi rævæd/.

One day, he comes back from the school. = ددرگ یم رب سردم زا وازور کی /yek ru:z u: æz mædreseh bæ r mi gærdæd/.

تدی دج ملعم ایآ – باب: "دسرپ یم وا زا شردام = "Bob, do you like your new teacher?" his mother asks him. = /ma:dæræsh æz u: mi porsæd, "ba:b, a:ya: moællem e jædidæt ra: du:st da:ri?"

"I don't like her," Bob says in reply. = "امرادن شسود": دیوگ یم باوج رد باب = /ba:b dær jæva:b mi gu:yæd: "du:sesh næda:ræm/.

"Why?" asks his mother. = "دسرپ یم شردام = /ma:dæræsh mi porsæd: "chera:?"

"Because, first she says that three and three is six. Then, she says that two and four is six too! So, I don't like her!!"

دوش یم مه راهچ هفاضا هب ود هک دیوگ یم دعب. شش دوش یم هس هفاضا هب هس هک دیوگ یم لوا وا مکنیا یارب "امرادن شسود نم سپ. شش

/bæra: ye in keh u: ævvæl mi gu:yæd keh seh beh eza:feh ye seh mi shævæd shesh. Bæd mi gu:yæd keh do beh eza:feh ye chæha:r hæm mi shævæd shesh. Pæs mæn du:sesh næda:ræm!"

NOTE: In all sentences above, you may replace دی دج with مزات /ta:zeh/. They are almost the same.

All right,

It was very easy, wasn't it? Good!

So, because both you and I did great today, I have a very small gift for you! Please don't forget to see

[Useful Drills](#) page now!

See you next week and Khoda Hafez!

Week 130

As I promised, I have a very small gift for you here. It is another Persian music in mp3. This song is called Gol e Yakh (خی لگ) and is performed by Koroush Yaghmaee / Yaghmaei (یامغی شوروک). It is very famous and very old, I guess! My flowerology (!) is terrible, but I think it means something like 'The Ice Flower'! (Is there such a flower anyway?!)

Please right click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download it. What you see below is the lyrics. Hope you will like it!

[Gol e Yakh, a song by Koroush Yaghmaee / Yaghmaei](#) - یامغی شوروک زا یا هنارت - خی لگ

Koroush Yaghmaei – Gol e Yakh

هدرک هنول - تگنشق نومش چ ات ود نویم م غ
هدرک هنوخ - تهایس یاهوم وت بش
هنم یاه بش شم - تهایس نومش چ ات ود
هنم یاه م غ شم - تمش چ ود یاه یهایس
مشیم نوراب - دایم نییاپ ماه هژم زا ضغب یتقو
هدرک هنوریو ومیدابآ م غ لیس
هرب یم داب وم ییاهنت ینوم یم نم اب یتقو
هدرک هنوبش نوراب مامش چ ات ود
تفر و دز رپ نم یاتسد زا راهب
هدرک هنووج ملد یوت خی لگ
هریگ یم شیتآ ییاهنت زا مراد مقاتا وت
هدرک هنومز نیایوت هفوکش یا
هگید متفر مادص متفر مینووج منوخب یچ
هدرک هنووج ملد یوت خی لگ
هگید متفر مادص متفر مینووج منوخب یچ
هدرک هنووج ملد یوت خی لگ
هدرک هنول - تگنشق نومش چ ات ود نویم م غ
هدرک هنوخ - تهایس یاهوم وت بش
هنم یاه بش شم - تهایس نومش چ ات ود
هنم یاه م غ شم - تمش چ ود یاه یهایس
مشیم نوراب - دایم نییاپ ماه هژم زا ضغب یتقو
هدرک هنوریو ومیدابآ م غ لیس
هرب یم داب --- وم ییاهنت ینوم یم نم اب یتقو
هدرک هنوبش نوراب مامش چ ات ود
تفر و دز رپ نم یاتسد زا راهب
هدرک هنووج ملد یوت خی لگ
هریگ یم شیتآ ییاهنت زا مراد مقاتا وت
هدرک هنومز نیایوت هفوکش یا

Updated:

I received a message from dear Mr. Ali, the PVC maker, who wrote the followings to me. What you see below is a short part of his message.

“You said your ‘flowerology’ is not good! You have chosen ‘the ice flower’ for **گی لگ**. I don't know if it was serious or just a joke. Yes, there is a flower called **گی لگ**, which is called ‘winter sweet’ or ‘chimonanthus fragrance’.

ان ابرق من کن درد ت تسد،
Ali jan,

It seems that more and more men of intelligence are visiting this site from inside Iran ! I must be more careful!!

Well,

Honestly, I didn't know that. But still now, I do prefer my own title, “the ice flower”! I impose my own title on this work!! This is called ‘freedom of speech’!!! Although in ‘freedom of speech’ policy I do not have to explain it to you, I give you my reasons here!!

(Translation lesson!):

The reason is that the ‘winter sweet’ takes the reader to sweet dreams! I mean, based on the title, the reader assumes that the lyrics should be of sweet moments in love – (**winter sweet**). So, the title takes the reader to a wrong scenario.

However, the lyrics here convey a different message. It is talking about the moments when grief nests in your eyes. It is talking about the darkness that is in control of everything.

So, the title should not take the reader to a wrong place. That is why I prefer ‘the ice flower’, which creates some sense of frozen flower scenario (maybe in love, friendship etc, etc).

Good justification, isn't it?!

You know what? Sometimes, my wife tells me that I could be a good mullah or preacher!! Really! You know why?

The ability to justify things is the first thing you need to be a good preacher, which I have!!!

Hope this was useful.

Week 131

I wanted to write a new lesson today. However, all the news about Iran and the crazy nuclear things that are happening in the world today, have given me a kind of sad feeling. Like many of you, I hope everything will be fine for the people. What do you think is happening? Who is responsible? Who are the victims of these huge political games? When will such crazy games end?

Not knowing what to do, I was just surfing the internet when I found a lovely music. It was very touching and I decided to translate it for today's lesson. Please go to the [Useful Drills](#) page to enjoy it!

Wish you all the best and see you next week.

Khoda Hafez!

By the way, as you probably know, we are approaching the Iranian New Year. Let me simply wish all of you a very peaceful and prosperous Persian New Year! Happy Norouz / Norooz!

Again by the way (!!)

Our friend Ali who had made PVC (Persian Verb Conjugator) program, has updated his work. I have put a link to his work on our [home page](#). It is a nice work and very useful. Please feel free to use this free service! Also, please send your comments and questions regarding this program to him. You will find his e-mail address on [PVC page](#). Please note that your words are encouraging and will bring many changes. Do not deny him a short note!

Happy Iranian New Year! (March 2006 = 1385). Hope to always have it in peace. Please pray for my people.

Week 131

All right,

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download this music. I hope you will like it.

[Imagine!](#) **شوی مق شوایس زا یا هنارت** By: Siavash Ghomeishi - Persian Music (mp3)

Here is the lyrics and translation:

Imagine! By: Siavash Ghomeishi / Ghomeyshi
 Imagine! Even if it is hard to imagine
 a world where each person is truly fortunate!
 Imagine a world where money, race, and power have no place!
 a world where riot police is not the answer to the calls for unity!
 a world with no nuclear bombs, no artillery, and no bombardments!
 a world where no child will leave his legs on land mines!
 Everybody free, totally free!
 no one in pain, no pain!
 You wouldn't read in newspapers that
 such and such person committed suicide! (**See the footnote**)
 Imagine a world with no hatred, no gunpowder,
 no cruelty of arrogant, no fear, no coffin!
 Imagine a world filled with smile and freedom!
 full of flowers and kisses! Filled with up-growing improvements!
 Imagine! Even if it is a crime to imagine so!
 even if you'd lay down your life on this!
 Imagine a world where prison does not exist in reality,
 where all wars of the world are included in 'The Ceasefire Treaty'!!
 a world where nobody is 'The Boss' of the world!
 people are all equal!
 Then each person will have an equal share in
 each single seed of wheat!
 No border, no boundaries – motherland would mean the entire world!
 imagine you could be the interpretation of this dream!

Footnote:

Actually he says, "You won't read in newspapers that whales committed suicide!"

Maybe he refers to that whale in London that had escaped from the sea probably because he / she did not feel safe in the sea anymore!

Footnote Correction:

Ali wrote to me recently and said, " The story of this whale belongs to several months after the release of this song. That is, when Siyavash released his new album this whale hadn't done the suicide yet, let alone considering the time of composition of the lyrics. That is, linking these two things together is just the product of your inventive mind, a fragment of your assumption (:D) You know, the suicide of whales is seen very often in many parts of world. So Siyavash is talking generally. The story in London is just an instance and not the very case."

Thank you Ali jan for your attention.

I would also like very much to thank Mr. Siavash Ghomeishi for his wonderful work. Lots of people have thanked me for putting this song here. Agha Siavash, dast marizad ghorban! Bashad keh hamareh delat sarshar az safa vo samimiat va dahanat ghazal khan e solh bashad. Amen.

فراماسونری
از ویکی‌پدیا، دانشنامهٔ آزاد.

Week 132

I am your slave! I am your servant! I am the sand under your feet! Under your shadow! You are my owner! My control is in your hand! I am smaller/younger than you! I am at your service! You just make your lips wet! Upon my eyes! You are beating me with wood! Don't beat me with wood! I am really embarrassed!! I swear to you!! The electricity jumped out of my head!! You can never find these in even boogiemans book!!! God's hand has no voice!!

Crazy Hassan? What's wrong with this man today? He seems out of his mind! (Is this what you are thinking about me now?)

Don't worry if you thought so and do not blame yourself for what you thought!! Let me explain.

This is our lesson today!

Such phrases (except crazy Hassan!!), are parts of Persian daily conversation!

I remember I had hardly completed one or two semesters at my university several years ago. One day, one of my friends and his cousin, who had a foreign friend, came to me. I don't remember how his cousin had managed to find such a friend at that time.

After simple greetings and introducing, his cousin handed me a letter and asked me to translate it into English! When I read the letter, 'the electricity jumped out of my head'!!! There were lots of such phrases that 'you could never find in even boogiemans's book'!!!!

I went home and looked for my Persian – English daily phrasebook (!!), which one of my very own professors had written!

In some one hour or so, I was walking towards my friend's house with the translation of the letter in my hand.

The translation was something like this:

Dear high Excellency doctor, (I have forgotten the name of the doctor)

I have hope that your sacred existence and your highly valuable family are fine. If you want to know our health, I must say that we are fine under your holy shadow! My family is fine and they are kissing your hand!! Thank you for the gifts. You beat us with wood and I felt very embarrassed!! As I told you, I am always pure for you and you are the crown of our head! I am always at your service. How are your respected daughter and wife? I hope wherever they are, your shadow will be on them forever. I take God my witness that we always remember you and your flower daughter! You always have a place on our head! Next time, please tell me when you are coming and I will sacrifice a sheep or cow under your sacred feet! Please don't worry about that job. Upon my eyes! You just make your lips wet and I will do it for your holy existence!!

Well, the letter was much longer and far more complicated than what you see above!! I hope the poor doctor understood it properly!!

All right, now let's see what these very common Persian phrases mean!

As you know, each language has its very own structure and local color that can hardly be translated. Still now, I do not know how our beloved professor, who had got his university degree in States, had ended in such a comic phrasebook!! This commercial world!!!

Ok, let's make it shorter! What I am going to do is to mention some English phrases and the possible Persian equivalents you could use in reply. Please do not try to translate such phrases! If you want to give it a try, you should find a foreign doctor, one Persian-English phrasebook, and one nice Hassan H. first!!!!

Possible scenario:

Possible answer:

Possible Persian phrase:

How are you?

- Fine. Thanks.
- We are (here)!! Thanks!
- I am pure for you!
- I am smaller than you!
- نونم م. م. ب. بوخ
- رکش! می ت سه
- ماش صل خم
- ماش کی چوک

In reply to work, job, or life-related questions. Ex: how is your work/job/life going?

- Going well.
- Not bad.
- So so.
- هبوخ
- سین کدب
- مرنگی م

Note: you could combine all of them in reply. Say one after another.

Haven't seen you for a while. (Where have you been?)

Under your shadow!

نوت هیاس ریز

What's new? What's news?

Your good health!

امش یتمالس

You just hint /ask and I will do it for you!

You just make your lips wet!

نکرت بل طقف امش

In reply to such questions: can I ? – may I?

Yes please.

You are the owner of my choice!! (You rule!)

دیرایتخا باص. منک یم شهاوخ

In reply to such questions: could you do ... (for me)?

Sure.

Upon my eyes!

مش چ یور هب

When someone does something good for you, or says something good to you. Or, when they praise you.

Thank you.

You are so kind.

You are beating me with wood! You make me feel embarrassed.

- منونمم
- نیراد فطل امش
- نینک یم یراکبوچ
- دینک یم هدنمرش

When you are shocked by some words, news or some actions done (mostly unusual).

I was shocked. I did not expect it.

Electricity jumped off my head!!

دیرپ مرس زا قرب

When you do not want to give something to somebody. Or, you do not want to do something for somebody.

Sorry, I can't.

I am afraid I can't.

I am embarrassed!

ما هدنمرش

When you want to say that such and such words, actions, or things are really unusual and rare.

Such a thing is hard to happen. Such words are hard to think of.

This cannot be found in even boogieman's book!

دایمن ریگ مه وید باتک وت یتح نی!

When somebody does something bad to somebody else and gets his/her punishment from other sources.

Ex: your friend hits you in the head and runs away. While running, he / she falls down and hurts his/her leg.

God's hand has no voice!!

هرادن ادص ادخ تسد

When something or somebody burns up your energy and you feel exhausted /deadly tired. Ex: this lesson made me deadly tired!

This job / this person made me deadly tired.

This made me deadly tired!

This took my father out!

دروارد ومردپ نی!

All right, I deeply hope you understood me today!! I also hope you enjoyed the lesson! This lesson took my father out!!!!

See you all next time!

Khoda Hafez!

Happy Iranian New Year! (March 2006 = 1385). Hope to always have it in peace. Please pray for my people.

Week 132

Today's drill is absolutely **optional**!!

Try to translate this letter into Persian!!

Dear high Excellency doctor, (I have forgotten the name of the doctor)

I have hope that your sacred existence and your highly valuable family are fine. If you want to know our health, I must say that we are fine under your holy shadow! My family is fine and they are kissing your hand!! Thank you for the gifts. You beat us with wood and I felt very embarrassed!! As I told you, I am always pure for you and you are the crown of our head! I am always at your service. How are your respected daughter and wife? I hope wherever they are, your shadow will be on them forever. I take God my witness that we always remember you and your flower daughter! You always have a place on our head! Next time, please tell me when you are coming and I will sacrifice a sheep or cow under your sacred feet! Please don't worry about that job. Upon my eyes! You just make your lips wet and I will do it for your holy existence!!

Have fun! :)

What you see below is the Persian translation of the above text. One of the students have done this. It is not exactly the same, but so close to the text. So, it is posted 'as is'. Thanks Anita for the nice job!

جناب آقای دکتر.....
امیدوارم که آن وجود نازنین و خانواده
گرامی خوب باشد. اگر بویای مال ما با شیر
باید بگویم که در زیر سایه پرمهر شما خوب
هستیم و به خاطر هدایای شما هنگی دستبوس هستند.
شما ما را پوپ کاری و شرمند کردید. همانطور که
منزکر شدم من همیشه مخلص شما و خانواده هستم.
شما تاج سر ما هستید. من فداتنگرام همیشه
شما می باشم. دختر محترم شما و خانم پهلورند؟ آرزو
می کنم هر کجا هستند سایه شما پیوسته بر سر آنها
گسترده باشند. خدا را شاهد می گیرم که ما همیشه
شما و دختر گلستان را بیاد داریم. شما همیشه روی سر
ما با دارید! فواهش می کنم دفعه بعد ما را از آمدن
مورد با فبر کلید که گوسفندی یا گاوی بلوی
پای شما قربانی کنم. لطفاً در مورد آن کر نگران
نبا شید. کافی است شما لب تر کنید من آفر
برای آن وجود نازنین انجام فواهم داد!!

Week 133

Tell your child to start whistling from now!!!

There is a Persian story that says:

In old days, a villager once wanted to go to a city for a short trip. Most of his neighbors asked him for a gift from the city. From among them, there was a lady who had a child. She gave 5 bucks to the villager and asked him to buy her child a whistle on his way back home. Holding the money tightly in his hand, the man said, "Go tell your child to start whistling from now!!!"

Some of you have asked for more materials so that they can learn Persian faster. Although I'd love to do that, it is not always possible for me to meet your increasing demands. The Late Ahmad Shamlu has a poem that says, "I could do a lot more if my daily needs allowed me"!!

Like you, I have lots of daily troubles. You bet my troubles are far deeper and more breathtaking than yours. One day, you will know all about it.

Anyway, to speed up your learning process, I am offering a new online course from now. This course is for dear members only!! (Although all of you are dear to me, the members will be dearer!!!) That is to say, Easy Persian has a **Members' Area** now.

As a member, you will get a personal page that helps you a lot reach your goals faster. This area is mostly focused on 'daily words' and is mainly based on daily media such as daily TV shows broadcasted from Iran, parts of Persian movies, Iranian radios, etc; and of course, Persian mp3!

This is how it works:

- 1- I give you a short TV show, for example, and you are supposed to watch it a couple times to see how many words you can clearly spot without my help.
- 2- Then, I give you all the words and sentences you just heard (in written form).
- 3- You watch the show again with the help of the words I gave you. We do this to improve your listening ability.
- 4- I give you the English explanations or equivalents of the Persian words (written script).
- 5- You work on it a bit to get to know the show better to improve / correct your understanding ability.
- 6- At this stage, you try to translate the show with the help of my words / explanations.
- 7- I help you with your translation.
- 8- You correct your work based on my advice. (You may also correct my work based on your advice!)
- 9- Homework. You should be able to use what you are learning! So, I choose some words or phrases for you to work on it. Do not panic! I will be with you as your loyal guide step by step!
- 10- At the end of each lesson, you may send me your questions and I will do my best to help you. Your messages / questions will be my top priority.
- 11- Some lessons will be done online in some voice chat rooms together. That is to say, we set a time to meet each other online and we will have a very nice class together. I am sure you will love it!

All right, that's the work in brief for now. I will surely expand this course gradually based on your suggestions. You will have several lessons a month (6-7 lessons). It is big enough to keep you busy for sure!! However, as it is not an official class, you will have the choice to do it during your spare time. I think I am flexible, what about you?!

All you need to do now is to place an order through the buttons below.

Dear members, start whistling from now!!

Important Note: As you have probably noticed, this new course **may not** be very useful for absolute beginners. So, I suggest you learn some basics first with the help of our Easy Persian online lessons.

The fee and subscription process:

There are two kinds of subscriptions as follows:

- 1- One-month subscription (USD 22 per month)
- 2- Three-month subscription, which is cheaper (USD 59 for three months)

So, please click on either button below to process the payments. Thanks.

Week 133

Ok, we are going to have some more of the 'boogieman's words' today!! I didn't know many loved such lessons. So, here we are with one more!

Possible scenario	Possible answer / sentence	Possible Persian phrase
When you meet a friend after some time	It's good to see again! Eager to see you!	رادی قاتشم
When you see someone working	Hello, hope you are not tired.	دیشابن هتسرخ. مالس

and want to show your support/encouragement. When you write to somebody and want to wish him / her strength in daily life	Hello. May God give you power! (In writing): Hello, I wish you strength in whatever you are doing.	توق ادخ .مالس مک یراک ره رد مراودیما .مالس دیشابن متسخ دیتسه
When someone is talking about some problems that you feel you have the same pains. When what they say reminds you of your own problems, hardship ...	I have the same problems. I have gone through the same situation. Don't put your hand on my heart which is full of blood!	هنوخ مک رانن ملد ورسد
When your very own relatives/friends discourage you in what you are doing while you expected their encouragement.	I expected your support. Who else will support/respect me when you are doing /saying this? Respect/support starts from home!	دایم رد هنوخ زا اقآ اقآ
When you advise somebody and he/she doesn't accept it and you want to let him/her know that you told him/her what you were supposed to. So they cannot blame you later.	I told you what I thought was useful (but you didn't want to listen)	می تفرگ ام دوب ن تفرگ ام زا (Note: Here you could also simply delete /bu:d/ from this phrase.
When someone is trying to do something alone while he/she can ask for others' help. When someone is doing something alone (usually big) and others are expected not to help.	You cannot do it all alone. One hand has no voice!	مرا دن ادص تسد کی
When you want to tell somebody to come over (to your house or your workplace) to see you whenever he/she is free.	Come over see us /me whenever you are free. Hit me a head whenever you are free!	ن زب ام هب رس هی یدرک تقو
When you are disappointed with somebody and want to show that you are very upset.	You disappointed me deeply. My heart is full of pain because of you.	هرپ تزا ملد یلیخ
When you want to say 'good bye' and leave.	Ok, bye. I am leaving. We went / left!	می تفر ام

All right, I hope you enjoyed the lesson. Please do not forget the 'whistling part'!! I am counting on you. Ma Raftim!!

Homework:

How many Persian slangs have you learned by now? Name at least 10 of them and explain when they can be used.

P.S. After the above homework, please take a look at [Useful Drills 132](#). Dear Anita has translated the previous homework (a letter to a doctor!) into Persian. Although it could be edited in different sentences, I decided to post it 'as is'. It is a nice work and you may work on it to improve her job, if you wish.

Week 134

Hello everyone! Hope you are fine.

I wanted to apologize for my delay in writing a new lesson. However, as it has been the case for the past several lessons, I don't seem to be on time anymore. To avoid lots of apologies, let me express my sincere apologies now for all the possible delays in either the past or future! Do not worry though. I will do my best to be as much available as I can.

During all this time, like the majority of people (I don't mean 'you' though!!), I have tried to convince myself that I should keep myself busy with my daily life without paying attention to what's going on around me. I tried to be a 'good child' (as the Iranians say) and a silent teacher! However, silent teachers may become disobedient from time to time! That's not my fault! We just live in a world where, mostly,

unpleasant things happen around us everyday. That's what turned Hassan the teacher into Hassan the politician today!!!

I am sure all of you are doing your very best to make good progress in your daily life and career. Have you ever asked yourself what good your progress is for if you can not touch people's heart? What were we good for if we failed to impact others in daily life? How could we call ourselves successful when we are not willing to bring a change? So, please do not think such lessons are a matter of 'waste of time'. Through your efforts and mine, we can bring a lot of change to this world.

I think the best part of the World Cup 2006 was this message: Say no to racism! This phrase could be good for nothing if we did not put it into practice.

This is our lesson today: The paradoxical behavior of world leaders

Based on news:

- Tens of thousands immigrants and asylum seekers gathered together in streets inside USA to claim their civil right while authorities are busy with their foreign policy! This happens when the United States of America has lost thousands of her soldiers in different countries to so called support freedom and democracy in the world. It happens when millions of American dollars are being allocated to democracy-exporting attempts in Iran, Afghanistan, Iraq, Cuba, and lots of other places in order to keep human right alive in those areas. Seemingly, those who are already inside USA do not deserve the right of human!!
- Thousands of asylum seekers are being treated like animals in camps in Germany . They are desperately in need of basic human right. They are facing serious discrimination and racist behavior while the world leaders, through either their silence or false propaganda, spread anti-foreigner attitudes. This happens when the German government seems deeply concerned about human right in Iran .
- Thousands of asylum seekers in Belgium have been demonstrating for weeks to convince the authorities that they are in need of help. The only answer they have got by now is the well-organized riot police. Many have been arrested and are facing deportation.
- Hundreds of Afghan refugees, who were facing deportation in Norway , went on hunger strike for weeks. The only good news is that different humanitarian sources have pushed the Norwegian government to reconsider their cases. Still, there is no bright horizon for these people.
- Thousands of immigrants and asylum seekers are living like criminal animals in camps in Australia for years while the Australian government is known as one of the pioneers in giving shelters to the homeless.
- Hundreds of asylum seekers, mostly Sudanese, are crying for help inside Sweden with no success.
- Several asylum seekers hanged themselves in Denmark after the Danish government denied them the right to live in that country. Most of such asylum seekers have no choice but to live in an isolated island called Jylland.
- As a result of the UNHCR close cooperation with the riot police in Turkey , hundreds of refugees, who have been living in a terrible condition for years, were beastly attacked just outside the UNHCR office because of their cry for help.

This is just parts of the sufferings people are going through across the globe. What I do not understand is the paradoxical attitudes of world leaders. They endanger their soldiers in different countries to support human right while the right of hundreds of thousands human is being ignored on their very own soil.

Could it all be political games? Who are the victims of such games then?

Like it or not, the world leaders are the dictators' biggest allies at this time. Through what they are doing to such asylum seekers and refugees, the world leaders are pushing these people to love their former governments.

Dear leaders of the world,

Refugees are not a threat. They are threatened. They have left their homeland to seek refuge in your home based on the 1951 Convention you, yourselves, have issued. Please note that diversity enriches your nation. Do not kick them out like animals or you will face the consequences in long term. Do you know how dangerous a man would become when he comes to this conclusion that his former anti-freedom government was better than these so-called freedom and human right exporters? Do you know what would happen when people trust you no more? Do you know the main source of any government is 'people' not 'technology'? Do you know what would happen if you lost the support of your people when they wake up? Do you know false propagandas may not work anymore when people come to know the truth? You are making the world unsafe through the duality in your foreign policy. On one side, you seem to be against one government, and on the other side, you are not willing to give support and shelter to the dissidents of the very same government, who had no choice but to flee their country. You are turning dissident families into loyal supporters. You are taking long and dangerous trips to Middle East , for example, to so-called

save this part of the world while the basic right of the very same people is being ignored inside your home. Why do you go to war if it is not for the right of such people? What is the goal behind such huge expenses and propagandas? Is it all for political, commercial, and religious domination? Time will unveil the truth. I understand some one billion American dollars go to UNHCR as annual budget. Although this budget is big enough to create glorious jobs for many in this organization, the majority of refugee children are still starving everyday. Therefore, I would like to take advantage of this opportunity to suggest you kindly close all UNHCR offices across the globe. This would have a clear message to people of all nations: do not put your hope on others! This is for the good of both your budget and the people in need. In this way, people will not put their hope and trust on any international organizations to come and save them. When they came to know that there is nobody outside their borders to give them a helping hand, they would stay firmly, hand in hand, at home and fight for their own right. In this way, they will not be turned into some political weapons in the hands of some political powers. In this way, they will certainly get the result in a shorter time.

All right,

I am sorry for going too far! I am now sure you prefer Hassan the teacher to Hassan the politician; since the teacher was more patient!! Believe me; such a condition demands such anger!!

The next is an interview with Bimarz (Without Borders), the International Organization of Iranian Refugees. I have invited them to join us today here to put you in the picture. Just smile to them to make the picture more pleasant!!!

Special thanks goes to Mr. Saeed Arman for his time and continued attention.

Here is the interview:

Easy Persian: Could you please introduce yourself?

Bimarz: My name is Saeed Arman, the Chief Executive of the International Organization of Iranian Refugees. At the eve of the Iranian revolt against the Shah, I joined the revolution and played an active role in that movement. After the Islamic government of Iran came into power, I joined the military campaign against this regime. I am now in Britain and am proud to say that I am chosen as the chief executive of Bimarz (Without Borders), which is the International Organization of Iranian Refugees. I have had wide variety of activities during all these years including the membership of Worker-communist Party of Iran - Hekmatist

Easy Persian: What is Bimarz and its mission?

Bimarz: As its name suggests, it is simply 'Without Borders'! This is an organization that supports those who fought for the right of human and as a result, had to flee their country and cross borders! Take a look at Iran , for example. The medieval authorities have beastly tortured and suppressed 70 million Iranians for the past 27 years. They have oppressed workers mercilessly, prohibited any political activities of parties and individuals, imposed medieval conditions on women and turn them into third-class members of our society. They have stoned people to death, murdered some 100 thousands innocent civilians who had not committed any crimes but to cry for freedom, and so on. The result is that more than 3 million Iranians have left their home. What our organization is trying to do is, at least, to create a safe place for those who managed to cross the borders of their country. Fortunately, we have taken great steps by now and have made good progress. We continued the way and the ideology of a great man called Mansour Hekmat who founded the organization 16 years ago. Other activists, such as Gholam Keshavarz who was later assassinated by the Iranian regime's agents in Cyprus , put their minds and attempts into this movement to let it grow. Ideologically, our organization is a secular and progressive body that seeks friendship and companionship with anybody whose heart is beating for human right and freedom; regardless of their nationality, religion, political ideas, and ideological approaches.

Easy Persian: Could you please tell us the situation of refugees and asylum seekers in Europe in brief?

Bimarz: Unfortunately, it is hard to explain. The situation of refugees and asylum seekers have been deteriorating year after year since the early nineties and the end of the cold war. And this strengthened racism, fascism, and religious domination. The same governments that signed the 1951 Convention began to ignore it gradually. Of course, not all of them. Some of them remained flexible; under pressure! And some who are still seeking cheap labor prefer to accept millions of workers and immigrants from Eastern Europe , who are mostly skilled workers.

The result is that, instead of giving more facilities to immigrants and asylum seekers, these governments have started to increase the number of immigration officers!! They have decided to build detention centers that are huge enough to be a house for thousands of people! By this, they have created a different hell for those who fled their countries with the hope of finding peace and freedom.

The European countries try to deal with the refugee crisis in a well-organized and harmonious way. They have issued more restricting rules unanimously. They even hold conferences on this. From among others, Sweden, Germany, Britain, and Belgium have the largest number of asylum seekers. Consequently, there are tougher situation and campaign in these countries.

Easy Persian: Approximately, how many people are waiting for their resettlement in Europe and what is their nationality?

Bimarz: This is also a tough question. Even the governments, with lots of facilities, have not been able to give a clear number. Naturally, it is more difficult for us to know! However, based on the papers released by governments, I can give you some numbers. In Britain, for example, in July this year, there are 310 – 510 thousands including asylum seekers, immigrant workers, and even students who are not willing to repatriate although their visa is expired. On July 19, the authorities announced that the real number is much more than this. Such people are staying here illegally. I have no doubt that there are also thousands of others who have been waiting for their residence permit or resettlement for years. I guess most of them will face the same situation as those illegal workers and students by near future. This is just in England. In Sweden, tens of thousands are living in hide like shadows or ghosts. Their children, instead of playing and enjoying their childish world, are oppressed and depressed in hide. They cannot even go to school. They are ignored the basic right of human. They are witnessing the sufferings their parents are going through. These are happening in such countries that are known as freedom, democracy, and human right pioneers.

As another example, more than 100 thousands of different nationalities are desperately waiting in Belgium.

In total, I could say more than one million people are waiting in Europe. They are living in a terrible condition. They spend most of their life in detention centers, refugee camps, hostels, and even in a small room under rooftops. Besides, they ought to be worried day and night since the immigration police may break into their shelters at any time and take them away. This has happened several times.

Easy Persian: How long have they been waiting for an answer, and what answer do they usually get from authorities?

Bimarz: It depends. Some of them have been waiting for 11 years to get a paper that releases them from homelessness. 11 years to get their ID! In countries like Germany, Sweden, Britain, and Belgium, it mostly takes 2 – 6 years to get such a paper (if they are lucky to get accepted!). Countries mostly have a clear answer: ‘Iran is safe!’ In some cases, if they show more kindness, they would say, “at least, you will not get stoned like those homosexuals or minority tribes!” More than 90 percent get such answers. They mostly keep these asylum seekers in a long and decaying waiting period so that some of them commit suicide. Some burn themselves; some hang themselves. The result is death. Sometimes, they face such terrible conditions that decide to go on a hunger strike, which takes the joy of a normal life away from them.

Easy Persian: How do the authorities treat these refugees and asylum seekers?

Bimarz: In most cases, they treat them like criminals. They assume every asylum seeker is a liar. So, there is no trust. I remember in 2001, a 27 year-old Iranian killed himself in a hotel in Leicester. We got there and, with lots of difficulties, managed to invite mass media to the hotel. This made the State Ministry react in such words, “We would certainly reconsider Mr. Ramin Khaleghi's case if he had appealed!” Remedy after death! It sounds stupid. What was surprising was that the Medical Foundation, which is a civil right defender, had certified that Mr. Ramin Khaleghi was tortured in Iran.

Easy Persian: How do the local people deal with this crisis? Do they care, or, they are just busy with their own daily life?

Bimarz: They are mostly silent because of lack of information. They do not know what is happening in their neighborhood. Besides, their daily life struggles have made them forgetful! However, there are some humanitarian bodies that have devoted their life to supporting such homeless people. They defend the right of civilians, which after September 11, is ignored very easily. After September 11, governments put people in jails for months and even years with the name of possible threat to the society; with the name of war on terrorism. People even get kidnapped. I believe humanity is a lot weaker after September 11. The authorities try to so-called defend themselves against terrorism and this makes it really hard to defend the right of an asylum seeker. This, however, does not mean that they would be able to block all ways of struggles that lead to a change. This does not mean that people should remain silent and not try to change this inhumane attitudes and approaches. That is why we, as a movement, exist. That is why we try to bring a change. That is why we try to impose ourselves on governments to convince them to deal with these

human beings in a human way.

We, at Bimarz, are very small part of a big family of humanitarian activists and need your support. Such a huge job cannot be done without the help of people, especially those in Europe .

Easy Persian: I understand a lot of refugees have been demonstrating in Belgium for some time. Even, many of them have been striking in churches and other places. How many asylum seekers are protesting there? What is the reason of this protest? And, what answer or possible support they have received from either authorities or the church elders in Belgium ?

Bimarz: Yes. More than 100 thousand human of different ages, children, young adults, adults, parents, and old-aged, from wide variety of countries including Africa, Iran , Algeria , Iraq and so on, have been desperately waiting for an answer for more than 6-7 years. Each person has a limited capacity. They cannot wait forever. So, their dissatisfaction of the current situation burst out in the form of a public demonstration at different locations in Belgium , including inside churches in Brussels . Many of them, who are Iranian, have gone on a hunger strike. They are struggling in a very tragic situation.

Although Bimarz does not support the idea of hunger strike since we believe this will hurt their own body, we have been doing all we can to stay close to them to give them a helping hand. We also publicly announce that we would consider the Belgian government as responsible for any kind of the consequences these asylum seekers might face because of their hunger strike.

Quite unfortunately, the Belgian government has chosen 'Force' against these people. They don't seem to respect 'the life campaign' of these asylum seekers. They haven't shown any support by now. However, the good news is that there are some humanitarian organizations and churches that are ceaselessly supporting these helpless people.

Easy Persian: What role can people of the world play to help these homeless asylum seekers? How can they help?

Bimarz: They need to learn that the right of civilians should be the top priority of their life. If they learn to defend the life of human, regardless of their race, nationality, religion, and background, they are automatically on the path of helping these asylum seekers. To be specific, our societies are missing 'Helpers'. We need to create more and more humanitarian centers, movements, and organizations that care for the right and life of people. Let us forget about color, race, religion, nationality. Let us stay together, hand in hands, to support the life of human. The authorities have been trying to make 'asylum seeking' a criminal act. They treat these asylum seekers as if they are all criminals. We need to stand up and tell the world that they are not criminals. They are human who are looking for a safe place to live. They need to have the same rights as others do. This is their right.

Easy Persian: What does Bimarz or these asylum seekers expect of the world leaders who claim to have been defending freedom and democracy?

Bimarz: It could be better if you asked, "What do you expect of people of the world, not of leader!" A person like President Bush is not expected to give democracy and peaceful life to either Americans or others who live at the other side of this planet. Rather, it's people of the world, who can bring a change. It's people of the world, who can tell their governments that they are wrong. I strongly believe people need to take action to support the right of asylum seekers before we face worse and worse conditions. People should learn not to be indifferent on this matter.

Easy Persian: Do you have any particular message to share with the easypersian.com visitors?

Bimarz: First, let me thank everybody for all the efforts they do to bring a change. Let me say that what you do is deeply appreciated. I also hope that we could have closer cooperation with each other so that, through you, the non-Persian world may hear such cries for help.

Easy Persian: I understand most part of Bimarz webpage is in Persian. Could you give us a specific page where non-Persians can reach in order to help or offer donation?

Bimarz: We are trying to present Bimarz in English too. To do so, we need help. Let me use this opportunity to ask those, whose heart is beating for others, to get involved in this humanitarian campaign. Let us know if you want to give us a hand in any possible field.

Also, we welcome your financial support since Bimarz does not get any financial help from any government. We have managed to survive on others' donations. You are more than welcome if you want to help. Donations could be sent through the bank account of Bimarz, which is provided below. Help us help those in need.

Easy Persian: Thank you very much for your time and attention. Like all of you, the easypersian.com is impatiently looking for a world without such tensions and brutalities.

Bimarz: I also thank you warmly for your time and attention.

July 20, 2006

Here is the bank account:

Account Holder: Iranian Refugee Organisation

Name of Bank: HSBC Bank

Sort Code:40-04-01

Account Number: 21843575

Contact information:

Webpage: www.bimarz.net

Chief executive: saeed_arman2002[at]yahoo[dot]co[dot]uk

Note: We held this interview in Persian. Then, Hassan (the teacher) translated it into English. My apologies for any possible translation mistakes. Special thanks to Agha Javad for his corrections.

All right, this was the lesson today. Please go to [Useful Drills](#) page to take a break!

See you soon.

And, here is a very nice video clip / slide show. This clip **is not** on Easy Persian server. Please right-click and choose 'Save Target As' to download it. It is a considerably big file. Please be patient!

[Tasavor kon!](#) = Imagine – By: Siavash Ghomeishi => The MP3 version of this song and the English translation is available on [Useful Drills 131](#)

Week 134

I hope the lesson today did not make you tired! To have a good break, which is also related to our lesson, right-click on the MP3 link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download this lovely song.

By the way, after I wrote parts of this song on our homepage a couple of lessons ago, a friend wrote to me critically and said, "I did not know you are one of Michael Jackson's fans!! Cool!!"

To avoid receiving further messages on this topic, let me write a few words here!

I think 'who is speaking' is not that important as 'what being spoken'. We should learn to accept acceptable words and logics. That's what our world is missing now!

I think Michael Jackson said what millions of preachers and leaders ought to think of seriously! So, get the light and forget about the lamps if you are looking for a change!!

Anyway, here is [the song: Heal the World – by Michael Jackson in MP3](#)

The lyrics:

Think about the generations and to say we want to make it a better world for our children and our children's children. So that they know it's a better world for them; and think if they can make it a better place.

There's a place in your heart
And I know that it is love
And this place could be much
Brighter than tomorrow.
And if you really try
You'll find there's no need to cry
In this place you'll feel
There's no hurt or sorrow.
There are ways to get there
If you care enough for the living
Make a little space, make a better place.

Heal the world
Make it a better place
For you and for me and the entire human race
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make a better place for
You and for me.

If you want to know why
There's a love that cannot lie

Love is strong
It only cares for joyful giving.
If we try we shall see
In this bliss we cannot feel
Fear or dread
We stop existing and start living
Then it feels that always
Love's enough for us growing
Make a better world, make a better world.

Heal the world
Make it a better place
For you and for me and the entire human race.
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make a better place for
You and for me.

And the dream we would conceived in
Will reveal a joyful face
And the world we once believed in
Will shine again in grace
Then why do we keep strangling life
Wound this earth, crucify it's soul
Though it's plain to see, this world is heavenly
Be God's glow.

We could fly so high
Let our spirits never die
In my heart I feel
You are all my brothers
Create a world with no fear
Together we'll cry happy tears
See the nations turn
Their swords into plowshares
We could really get there
If you cared enough for the living
Make a little space to make a better place.

Heal the world
Make it a better place
For you and for me and the entire human race
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make a better place for
You and for me.

Heal the world
Make it a better place
For you and for me and the entire human race
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make a better place for
You and for me.
Heal the world
Make it a better place

For you and for me and the entire human race
There are people dying
If you care enough for the living
Make a better place for
You and for me.

There are people dying if you care enough for the living
Make a better place for you and for me.
There are people dying if you care enough for the living
Make a better place for you and for me.

You and for me / Make a better place
You and for me / Make a better place
You and for me / Make a better place
You and for me / Heal the world we live in
You and for me / Save it for our children
You and for me / Heal the world we live in
You and for me / Save it for our children
You and for me / Heal the world we live in
You and for me / Save it for our children
You and for me / Heal the world we live in
You and for me / Save it for our children

Week 135

Hello everyone,

Hope you are doing great in my absence!

Today, I am going to share with you part of my history! This is a very lovely song and I am sure you will like it too. This song is very special to me. Enjoy it!

This song is called 'eshgh e man' = my love; and performed by Farzin.

Special thanks go to very dear Anita, one of our successful and hardworking [online students](#), who translated this song into English. (With a little bit help from Hassan H!!)

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download this song in MP3. The Words are available on [Useful Drills](#) page.

[عشق = My love - By Farzin \(MP3\)](#)

See you all soon.

Regards.

The text and translation:

Eshgh-e Man عشق من - BY Farzin (فرزین)

From among hundreds of flowers I chose you ترا از بین صدها گل جدا کردم

And in my heart I felt absolute happiness. تو سینه جشن عشقت رو بپا کردم

From then on, in order to put an end to my loneliness برای نقطه پایان تنهایی

Yours was the only name on my tongue. تو تنها اسمی بودی که صدا کردم

My love. Be my love عشق من - عشق من

Say you'll fill me with wanting like water bubbling in a pristine spring, بگو از پاکی چشمه منو لبریز خواستن کن

With your own two hands weave a wreath of flowers to put around my neck. با دستات حلقه ای از گل بساز و

گردن من کن

My heart is grown cold in doubt and loneliness از آدم ها دلم سرده آگه از مرگ باورها

Stroke my hands which have been icy cold for so long کن تو دستامو که خیلی وقته یخ کرده نوازش

Which have been icy cold for so long. خیلی وقته یخ کرده که

My love. Be my love عشق من - عشق من

So from now on I'm through with worrying دیگه دلوایست بودن واسم بسه

And from now on I'm through with wandering aimlessly دیگه بیهوده پیمودن واسم بسه

I'm tired of wilting زیادیم کرده پژمردن

I'm tired of grieving زیادیم کرده غم خوردن

With cruel loneliness توی بیداد تنهایی

Dying inside in the midst of living. مردن در عین زندگی

My love. Be my love عشق من – عشق من عشق من

Say you'll fill me with wanting like water bubbling in a pristine spring, کن بگو از پاکی چشمه منو لبریز خواستن

With your own two hands weave a wreath of flowers to put around my neck. با دستات حلقه ای از گل بساز و

گردن من کن

One's heart will grow cold if you doubt it's love . آگه از مرگ باورها از آدم ها دلم سرده .

Stroke my hands which have been icy cold for so long نوازش کن تو دستامو که خیلی وقته یخ کرده

Which have been icy cold for so long. که خیلی وقته یخ کرده

My love. Be my love عشق من – عشق من عشق من

So from now on I'm through with worrying بودن واسم بسه دیگه دلواپست بودن

And from now on I'm through with wandering aimlessly بيمودن واسم بسه دیگه بيهوده

I'm tired of wilting زياديم کرده پژمردن

I'm tired grieving زياديم کرده غم خوردن

With cruel loneliness توی بيداد تنهایی

Dying inside in the midst of living. در عين زندگي مردن

My love. Be my love عشق من – عشق من عشق من

Week 135

How was the song? Hope you liked it. Here is the words and the English translation of the song

عشق من (eshgh e man) = My love performed by Farzin.

جدا کردن = to separate – to choose something from among many

جشن = party – festival – happy gatherings

جشن گرفتن = جشن به پا کردن = to hold a party – to celebrate

نقطه ی پایان = the end point – to put an end to

صدا کردم = I called

پاکی = purity – innocence

چشمه = water stream – spring

لبریز = full

پر کردن = لبریز کردن = to fill

پر کردن = to fill (a cup – a form)

لبریز کردن = to fill (a cup)

حلقه ای از گل = a ring made of flower – flower wreath

باور = faith – belief

مرگ باورها = the death of faiths – lack of belief – lack of trust

دلسرد بودن = to feel disappointed – to be frustrated – discouraged

نوازش کردن = to pet

خیلی وقته = it has been long

یخ کرده = frozen

دلواپس = worry – the state of being worried

دلواپس بودن = to worry

واسم بسه = enough for me

بیهوده = in vain – useless – fruitless

بیموده = to walk in vain – to seek in vain – to wonder around aimlessly

زیادیم کرده = I have had enough of this – that's enough for me

پژمردن = to fade (as for flowers) – lack of joy (in one person's face) – pale

غم خوردن = to feel sad – to grieve

بيداد = harsh – cruelty – mercilessness

تنهایی = loneliness – the state of being / doing something alone

در عين = in the midst of – in the middle of

Week 136

Today, we are going to learn how we can use two 'Verbs' in one Persian sentence. So far, we have learnt 'single –verb' sentence such as 'I went to school' – 'I saw a man in the market' – or, 'I bought a cat'. I am sure all of you know these already. If not, please take my advice and start over!

Today, we want to see how we can say this sentence in Persian: "I want to go".

As you see, there are two 'verbs' in this sentence: 'want' and 'go'.

Do you have any idea how we can use them both in one sentence? Give it a try and write down your final phrase in Persian on a piece of paper. I just want some proof!!

Ok, now, let's try it together. Ready?

"To want" = خواستن /kha:stæn/

"To go" = رفتن /ræftæn/

So,

I want = می خواهم /mi kha:hæm/.

You knew this already, right? Great!

As you see, we have no problems with the first 'Verb' in our sentence. All we need to do is to change the 'second verb' a bit. Here's how:

I hope you still remember the way we handled 'Present Simple Tense' in [lesson 53](#). According to what we have learned, each Persian verb has an 'imperative base or root'. What we need to do here is to find that 'imperative part' of each verb. Here, for example, 'To go' = رفتن - and the main root is رو /ro/ or برو /boro/.

What we need here is the second choice (برو /boro/).

We are almost done! Now, let's go back to our phrase "I want to go".

Ready?

I want to go. = می خواهم بروم /mikha:hæm berævæm/.

You want to go. = می خواهی بروی /mikha:hi berævi/.

He / she wants to go. = می خواهد برود /mikha:hæd berævæd/.

We want to go. = می خواهیم برویم /mikha:him berævim/.

You want to go. = می خواهید بروید /mikha:hid berævid/.

They want to go. = می خواهند بروند /mikha:hænd berævænd/.

Got it? Wonderful!

Now, let's try this one: I want to sleep.

"To sleep" = خوابیدن = /kha:bidæn/.

The root is خواب /kha:b/ - or, بخواب /bekha:b/.

As I just told you, we need the second root (/bekha:b/).

Now, let's continue it with different subjects.

I want to sleep. = می خواهم بخوابم /mikha:hæm bekha:bæm/.

You want to sleep. = می خواهی بخوابی /mikha:hi bekha:bi/.

He /she wants to sleep. = می خواهد بخوابد /mikha:hæd bekha:bæd/.

We want to sleep. = می خواهیم بخوابیم /mikha:him bekha:bim/.

You want to sleep. = می خواهید بخوابید /mikha:hid bekha:bid/.

They want to sleep. = می خواهند بخوابند /mikha:hænd bekha:bænd/.

Easy, isn't it? That's the sugar!!

Now let's see another example.

"To study" = درس خواندن /dærs kha:ndæn/.

Oops, this is a compound verb in Persian (درس خواندن)! What should we do? We just focus on the second part. Here's how:

The root is درس خوان /dærs kha:n/ or درس بخوان /dærs bekha:n/.

As you know, we need the second option which has /be/ in the beginning (بخوان درس).

All right, the problem seems solved!

I want to study. = می خواهم درس بخوانم /mikha:hæm dærs bekha:næm/.

You want to study. = می خواهی درس بخوانی /mikha:hi dærs bekha:ni/.

He / she wants to study. = می خواهد درس بخواند /mikha:hæd dærs bekha:næd/.

We want to study. = می خواهیم درس بخوانیم /mikha:him dærs bekha:nim/.

You want to study. = می خواهید درس بخوانید /mikha:hid dærs bekha:nid/.

They want to study. = می خواهند درس بخوانند /mikha:hænd dærs bekha:nænd/.

One more example before you start your job!

I want to write a letter. = می خواهم نامه ای بنویسم /mikha:hæm na:meh ee benevisæm/.

You want to write a letter. = می خواهی نامه ای بنویسی /mikha:hi na:meh ee benevisi/.

He / she want to write a letter. = می خواهد نامه ای بنویسد /mikha:hæd na:meh ee benevisæd/.

We want write to a letter. = می خواهیم نامه ای بنویسیم /mikha:him na:meh ee benevisim/.

You want to write a letter. = می خواهید نامه ای بنویسید /mikha:hid na:meh ee benevisid/.

They want write a letter. = می خواهند نامه ای بنویسند /mikha:hænd na:meh ee benevisænd/.

Important note: Please note that this is not the final rule. There will be some minor changes. We will take care of it during our next lessons.

Ok, I enjoyed this lesson! I have no idea about your struggles!! I just hope you enjoyed it as well.

Please go to the Useful Drills page for further practices. We continue this lesson next week.

Till then, bye! خدا - حافظ تا بعد /ta: bæd, Khoda: ha:fez/!

Week 136

Translate these phrases into Persian. Follow the patterns.

1-

I want to see the car.

You want to see the car.

He / she wants to see the car.

We want to see the car.

You want to see the car.

They want to see the car.

To see = دیدن /didæn/ => Root => بین /bin/ - Or, ببین /bebin/.

I want to see the car = می خواهم ماشین را ببینم.

2-

I want to wash my hands.

You want to wash your hands.

He / she wants to wash his/her hands.

We want to wash our hands.

You want to wash your hands.

They want to wash their hands.

To wash = شستن /shostæn/ => Root => شوی /shu:y/ - Or, بشوی /beshu:y/.

I want to wash my hands = می خواهم دستم را بشویم.

3-

I want to have dinner.

You want to have dinner.

He /she wants to have dinner.

We want to have dinner.

You want to have dinner.

They want to have dinner.

To have = to eat = خوردن /khordæn/ => Root => خور /khor/ - Or, بخور /bokhor/.

I want to have dinner. = می خواهم شام بخورم.

Ok, keep practicing!

Lesson 136

Hello everyone, hope you are fine and doing well.

Today, we are going to learn how we can use two 'Verbs' in one Persian sentence. So far, we have learnt 'single -verb' sentence such as 'I went to school' - 'I saw a man in the market' - or, 'I bought a cat'. I am sure all of you know these already. If not, please take my advice and start over!

Today, we want to see how we can say this sentence in Persian: "I want to go".

As you see, there are two 'verbs' in this sentence: 'want' and 'go'.

Do you have any idea how we can use them both in one sentence? Give it a try and write down your final phrase in Persian on a piece of paper. I just want some proof!!

Ok, now, let's try it together. Ready?

"To want" = خواستن /kha:stæn/

"To go" = رفتن /ræftæn/

So,

I want = می خواهم /mi kha:hæm/.

You knew this already, right? Great!

As you see, we have no problems with the first 'Verb' in our sentence. All we need to do is to change the 'second verb' a bit. Here's how:

I hope you still remember the way we handled 'Present Simple Tense' in lesson 53. According to what we have learned, each Persian verb has an 'imperative base or root'. What we need to do here is to find that 'imperative part' of each verb. Here, for example, 'To go' = رفتن - and the main root is رو /ro/ or برو /boro/.

What we need here is the second choice (برو /boro/).

We are almost done! Now, let's go back to our phrase "I want to go".

Ready?

I want to go. = می خواهم بروم /mikha:hæm berævæm/.

You want to go. = می خواهی بروی /mikha:hi berævi/.

He / she wants to go. = می خواهد برود /mikha:hæd berævæd/.

We want to go. = می خواهیم برویم /mikha:him berævim/.

You want to go. = می خواهید بروید /mikha:hid berævid/.

They want to go. = می خواهند بروند /mikha:hænd berævænd/.

Got it? Wonderful!

Now, let's try this one: I want to sleep.

"To sleep" = خوابیدن = /kha:bidæn/.

The root is خواب /kha:b/ - or, بخواب /bekha:b/.

As I just told you, we need the second root (/bekha:b/).

Now, let's continue it with different subjects.

I want to sleep. = می خواهم بخوابم /mikha:hæm bekha:bæm/.
 You want to sleep. = می خواهی بخوابی /mikha:hi bekha:bi/.
 He /she wants to sleep. = می خواهد بخوابد /mikha:hæd bekha:bæd/.
 We want to sleep. = می خواهیم بخوابیم /mikha:him bekha:bim/.
 You want to sleep. = می خواهید بخوابید /mikha:hid bekha:bid/.
 They want to sleep. = می خواهند بخوابند /mikha:hænd bekha:bænd/.
 Easy, isn't it? That's the sugar!!
 Now let's see another example.
 "To study" = درس خواندن /dærs kha:ndæn/.
 Oops, this is a compound verb in Persian (درس خواندن)! What should we do? We just focus on the second part. Here's how:
 The root is درس خوان /dærs kha:n/ or درس بخوان /dærs bekha:n/.
 As you know, we need the second option which has /be/ in the beginning (درس بخوان).
 All right, the problem seems solved!
 I want to study. = می خواهم درس بخوانم /mikha:hæm dærs bekha:næm/.
 You want to study. = می خواهی درس بخوانی /mikha:hi dærs bekha:ni/.
 He / she wants to study. = می خواهد درس بخواند /mikha:hæd dærs bekha:næd/.

We want to study. = می خواهیم درس بخوانیم /mikha:him dærs bekha:nim/.
 You want to study. = می خواهید درس بخوانید /mikha:hid dærs bekha:nid/.
 They want to study. = می خواهند درس بخوانند /mikha:hænd dærs bekha:nænd/.
 One more example before you start your job!
 I want to write a letter. = می خواهم نامه ای بنویسم /mikha:hæm na:meh ee benevisæm/.
 You want to write a letter. = می خواهی نامه ای بنویسی /mikha:hi na:meh ee benevisi/.
 He / she want to write a letter. = می خواهد نامه ای بنویسد /mikha:hæd na:meh ee benevisæd/.
 We want write to a letter. = می خواهیم نامه ای بنویسیم /mikha:him na:meh ee benevisim/.
 You want to write a letter. = می خواهید نامه ای بنویسید /mikha:hid na:meh ee benevisid/.
 They want write a letter. = می خواهند نامه ای بنویسند /mikha:hænd na:meh ee benevisænd/.

Important note: Please note that this is not the final rule. There will be some minor changes. We will take care of it during our next lessons.
 Ok, I enjoyed this lesson! I have no idea about your struggles!! I just hope you enjoyed it as well.
 Please go to the Useful Drills page for further practices. We continue this lesson next week.
 Till then, bye! خدا حافظ /ta: bæd, Khoda: ha:fez/!

Useful Drills 136

Translate these phrases into Persian. Follow the patterns.

1-

I want to see the car.

You want to see the car.

He / she wants to see the car.

We want to see the car.

You want to see the car.

They want to see the car.

To see = دیدن /didæn/ => Root => بین /bin/ - Or, ببین /bebin/.

I want to see the car = می خواهم ماشین را ببینم.

2-

I want to wash my hands.

You want to wash your hands.

He / she wants to wash his/her hands.

We want to wash our hands.

You want to wash your hands.

They want to wash their hands.

To wash = شستن /shostæn/ => Root => شوی /shu:y/ - Or, بشوی /beshu:y/.

I want to wash my hands = می خواهم دستم را بشویم.

3-

I want to have dinner.

You want to have dinner.

He /she wants to have dinner.

We want to have dinner.

You want to have dinner.

They want to have dinner.

To have = to eat = خوردن /khordæn/ => Root => خور /khor/ - Or, بخور /bokhor/.

I want to have dinner. = می خواهم شام بخورم.

Ok, keep practicing!

Lesson 137

Hi everybody! Welcome back to the class!

Today, we will continue the lesson 136 on 'using two verbs in one Persian sentence'.

I hope you did not have any problems with lesson 136.

Today, we are going to have some more examples to make sure everybody understood this lesson perfectly.

Please go through the followings patiently.

1- I asked her to go.

To ask = خواستن /kha:stæn/.

To go = رفتن /ræftæn/.

Question: who is supposed to go?

Of course I know that you know the answer. I just wanted to make sure if I knew the right answer!

So, your answer is totally correct!

'She' is asked to go. Therefore, in your Persian sentence, the second verb 'to go' should refer to 'third person', which in this sentence is 'her = she'.

I asked her to go = از او خواستم بروم /æz u: kha:stæm berævæd/.

You could also say, 'من از او خواستم بروم' – which is the same as the first sentence.

You see how sugar this Persian is!! I should have called myself 'Hassan the Sugarist'!!! Not, Hassan 'the Persian language teacher'!!

All right,

Now let's continue with the above sentence.

I asked her to go.

You asked her to go.

She/he asked her to go.

We asked her to go.

You asked her to go.

They asked her to go.

My father asked her to go.

Your mother asked her to go.

Her brother asked her to go.

Your sister asked her to go.

People asked her to go.

Her neighbors asked her to go.

Her teacher asked her to go.

Enough? Or, should I continue?!

You try based on the explanation given in this lesson. But, worry not!!

You may find the correct answers on Useful Drills page. First, give it a try.

Second example:

I hope you can come.

To hope = امیدار بودن /omidva:r bu:dæn/.

To come = آمدن /a:mædæn/.

I hope you can come = امیدوارم بتوانید بیایید /omidva:ræm betæva:nid bia:eed/.

Seems difficult!!

Do you know why?

Because we simply missed the second verb in our English sentence! The second verb in our English sentence is 'to can', which seems a bit odd for those who deal with English language as their second language. 'To can' does not seem to be very popular! That's this word's problem! This word is not strong enough to get people's attention! So, foreigners know it mainly as an auxiliary word.

So,

To can = توانستن /tæva:nestæn/.

As you see, the Iranians have treated this word as a very main verb in their language! That's part of our culture. We do not kill the weak!!!

Ok,

'can' and 'come' refer to 'you' in our sentence. Therefore, they should refer to 'you' in our Persian sentence. How?

I hope = امیدوارم /omidva:ræm/.

You can = می توانی /mitæva:ni/ - or: می توانید /mitæva:nid/, which is more polite.

You come = می آیی /mi a: i:/.

Do not be afraid!

As our rule, the first verb does not change. So, we go for other verbs.

You can = می توانی /mitæva:ni/ => می توانید /mitæva:nid/ => بتوانید

The problem seems gone!

I hope you can come = امیدوارم بتوانید بیایید /omidva:ræm betæva:nid bia:eed/.

I hope she can come = امیدوارم بتواند بیاید /omidva:ræm betæva:næd biya:yæd/.

I hope they can come =>

I hope your friend can come => امیدوارم دوستت بتواند بیاید

I hope the guests can come.

Guest = مهمان

Guests = مهمانان = مهمان ها

I hope everybody can come =>

Everybody = همه => this word comes with 'plural form of verb', like what we see in 'they can come'.

My mother hopes she can come. مادرم امیدوار است او بتواند بیاید

My friend hopes your brother can come.

My friends hope you can come.

His family hopes you can come.

Family = خانواده

His family = خانواده اش

Ok, please do your best first and then go to the Useful Drills page for the answers.

See you all soon.

Till then, bye! خدا حافظ /تا بعد – خدا حافظ /ta: bæd, Khoda: ha:fez/!

Useful Drills 137

Note: make sure you covered lesson 137 first.

Drills 1:

I asked her to go . از او خواستم برود .

You asked her to go. از او خواستی برود .

She/he asked her to go. از او خواست برود .

We asked her to go. از او خواستیم برود .

You asked her to go. از او خواستی برود .

They asked her to go. از او خواستند برود .

My father asked her to go. پدرم از او خواست برود .

Your mother asked her to go. مادرت از او خواست برود .

Her brother asked her to go. برادرش از او خواست برود .

Your sister asked her to go. خواهرت از او خواست برود .

People asked her to go. مردم از او خواستند برود .

Her neighbors asked her to go. همسایه هایش از او خواستند برود .

Her teacher asked her to go. معلمش از او خواست برود .

Drills 2:

I hope you can come = امیدوارم بتوانید بیایید

I hope she can come = امیدوارم بتواند بیاید

I hope they can come => امیدوارم بتوانند بیایند

I hope your friend can come => امیدوارم دوستت بتواند بیاید

I hope the guests can come. امیدوارم مهمانان بتوانند بیایند

Guest = مهمان

Guests = مهمانان = مهمان ها

I hope everybody can come => امیدوارم همه بتوانند بیایند

Everybody = همه => this word comes with 'plural form of verb', like what we see in 'they can come'.

My mother hopes she can come. مادرم امیدوار است او بتواند بیاید

My friend hopes your brother can come. دوستم امیدوار است برادرت بتواند بیاید

My friends hope you can come. دوستانم امیدوارند بتوانی بیایی

His family hopes you can come. خانواده ام امیدوار است بتوانی بیایی

Family = خانواده

His family = خانواده اش

Note: 'family' is considered 'singular' in Persian. (just in grammar not in reality!!)

See you soon.

The Alternative Persian Dictionary

Version date: 1 June 2004

© 1995-2004 The Alternative Dictionaries

Web site: <http://www.notam02.no/~hcholm/altlang/>

PREFACE, DISCLAIMER AND COPYRIGHT

This dictionary consists of contributions made by voluntary Internet users. The contributors are not paid for their entries in any way. Due to several incidents of abuse in previous version of the submission system, contributors who made entries then are made anonymous in this version. Contributors who want to be credited for old entries should contact the editor (see web site for contact information).

The entries are not guaranteed to be accurate. No responsibility is taken for the content. Although the entries may describe terms that are racist, sexist, blasphemous or derogatory in other ways, the descriptions themselves should be in a neutral language. If you find entries with derogatory descriptions, you may contact the editor (see web site for contact information).

This dictionary, or part of it, is not to be used for commercial purposes. "Mirroring" on other web sites

is not permitted. The dictionary may be copied freely for personal use. Shorter excerpts of the content may be quoted, as long as the source is referenced, including the URL to the web site. Permission may be given to use entire dictionaries for special non-profit scientific, artistic or similar purposes. The Alternative Dictionaries are a non-profit project. An exception to this is sponsoring to help the project survive, if that should become necessary. Donations in form of books or other printed matter relevant to the project are welcome!

Hans-Christian Holm

Editor, the Alternative Dictionaries

Web site: <http://www.notam02.no/~hcholm/altlang/>

a

ahn † shit

b

bacha bawz (noun) † young pederast NOTE

bacha = boy; this indicates a boy who

submits to pederasts

c

coon butt

coonee † one who shares his butt

cos † vagina

g

gooz fart

h

hasheri horny

k

kir † penis

kir khor † cock eater

kiram tu coseh nanat ‡ my cock is in your

mother's pussy

koce khor † pussy eater

kut † shit NOTE No sure how used - expletive?

Please feel free to update.

m

mader genduh ‡ mother f*cker

mardekeh worthless man NOTE "marrd" means

man

maudar ghabe ‡ your mom's a bitch NOTE Lit.

'mother bitch'

n

nekbat dirty slut

Lesson 138

Happy Persian / Iranian New Year to all of you!

Dear all,

Salam!

Hope you are doing great! I have not written a new lesson for a long time for which I do apologize. The reason is that I do not have that much free time I used to. However, I will do my best not to forget you permanently!!

As you know, we are approaching the Persian New Year which the Iranians call 'Norooz / Norouz'.

Norooz means 'the new day' in Persian and it refers to the first day of spring. So, in Iran , the New Year starts with spring. What a meaningful coincidence!!

Based on what I have found online, this year, the New Year will start at 3:38 AM Wednesday – March 21, 2007 – (Tehran time).

So, on March 21, Iran will enter the year 2566 (based on the Iranian traditional calendar) – or - 1386 (based on the Islamic calendar which is used these days).

On the last Wednesday evening of the old year, as a very old tradition, most Iranians make fire and jump over it in groups and sing 'zardi ye man az to – sorkhi ye to az man!' [Listen !](#)

This literary means, 'Fire, you take away my yellowness and give me redness!'

I guess, yellow refers to the weaknesses and the negative points and red refers to new blossoming and freshness.

I would like to take advantage of this opportunity to wish you all a very blessed and prosperous Iranian New Year!

I do hope this year will be the year of peace, stability and friendship among nations of the world (although we don't seem to be headed that way!!)

Anyway, Sal e No Mobarak!! [Listen !](#)

All right,

As you may remember, we have started using two verbs in our Persian sentences. I hope it was not very difficult for you to catch up with this new structure.

What we are going to do today, and maybe during our next classes, is to work more on some examples to help you get the concept properly.

So, please translate the following sentences into Persian. When you are done, take a look at the Useful Drills page to check your answers.

Remember, no cheating! Put your answers on a piece of paper before you look at my answers.

Also, remember; do not write your answers in pencil!! I need some solid proof!!

Here are the drills:

1- I would like to talk to you.

2- She would like to talk to you.

3- They would like to talk to you.

4- We would like to talk to you.

5- The boss would like to talk to you.

6- My friends would like to talk to you.

Would like to = نتساوخ /kha:stæn/.

I would like to = مئاوخ یم /mi kha:hæm/.

I would like to talk to you = امش اب مئاوخ یم /mi kha:hæm ba: shoma: hærf bezænæm/.

Please note that this is the written Persian which is totally correct and understandable. However, if you want to say these sentences in conversational form, follow this rule:

I would like to talk to you = مئاوخ یم مئزب فرح تاها اب مئاوخ یم /mi kha:m ba:ha:t hærf bezænæm/.

As you noticed, the first part was changed (mi kha:m **ba:ha:t**).

Ba:ha:t is the short form of اب وت /ba: to/ = to you / with you

In the same way, **ba:ha:sh** is the short form of اب وا /ba: u:/.

So, just keep this in your mind.

Based on this rule,

“ **She would like to** ” will be ‘mi kha:hæd = mi kha:d’.

Please note that what you learn through the Easy Persian is mostly the written form which is the standard language. Once you know the standard language, it will not be very difficult to change them into oral form.

1- I want to celebrate the New Year.

2- My neighbors want to celebrate the New Year.

3- The Iranians want to celebrate the New Year.

4- My kids want to celebrate the New Year.

5 – The students want to celebrate the New Year.

6 – He wants to celebrate the New Year.

To celebrate = نتفرگ نشج /jæshn gereftæn/.

The New Year = سائون لاس /sa:l e no/ = سائون لاس /sa:l e jædid/.

My neighbors = مئاوساهاه یم /hæmsa:ye ha: ye mæn/.

My kids = مئاوچهاه یم /bæch.cheh ha: ye mæn/.

Written form: I want to celebrate the New Year. = مئاوخ یم سائون لاس مئاوخ یم

Oral form: I want to celebrate the New Year. = مئاوخ یم سائون لاس مئاوخ یم

1- I prefer football to basketball.

2- You prefer football to basketball.

3- She prefers football to basketball.

4- We prefer football to basketball.

5- You prefer football to basketball.

6- They prefer football to basketball.

7- Iranians prefer football to basketball.

8- My friend prefers football to basketball.

To prefer something to something = نداد حیجرت رگی دزیچ هب ار یزیچ /chizi ra: beh chiz e digær tærjih da:dæn/.

To prefer somebody to somebody = نداد حیجرت رگی دسک هب ار یسک /kesi ra: beh kæs e digær tærjih da:dæn/.

Written form: I prefer football to basketball = مه دیم حیجرت لابت کسب هب ار لابتوف نم.

Listen !

Oral form: I prefer football to basketball = مه دیم حیجرت لابت کسب هب و لابتوف نم Listen !

Note: In Persian, Mostly , ra is pronounced /o/ in daily conversation.

For example:

Football ra = Football o

Miz ra = miz o

Hassan ra = Hassan o

Again example:

I saw Hassan =>

Written form = مدید ار نسح نم

Oral form = مدید و نسح نم

I deeply hope you are not confused!

Please do not be hasty. Do first things first and learn things step by step.

Ok,

Hopefully, you enjoyed the lesson.

Please go to the Useful Drills page to compare your answers with mine.

Once again, Sal e No Mobarak!

Hope to see you soon = رادی دیدیم هب Listen !

Useful Drills 138

Hello again!

Enjoy the drills!

Written Persian:

- 1- I would like to talk to you. . می خواهم با شما حرف بزنم .
- 2- She would like to talk to you. . می خواهد با شما حرف بزند .
- 3- They would like to talk to you. . می خواهند با شما حرف بزنند .
- 4- We would like to talk to you. . می خواهیم با شما حرف بزنیم .
- 5- The boss would like to talk to you. . رئیس می خواهد با شما حرف بزند .
- 6- My friends would like to talk to you. . دوستانم می خواهند با شما حرف بزنند .

Oral Persian:

- 1- I would like to talk to you. . می خوام با هات حرف بزنم .
- 2- She would like to talk to you. . می خواد با هات حرف بزنه .
- 3- They would like to talk to you. . می خوان با هات حرف بزنن .
- 4- We would like to talk to you. . می خوایم با هات حرف بزنیم .
- 5- The boss would like to talk to you. . رئیس می خواد با هات حرف بزنه .
- 6- My friends would like to talk to you. . دوستانم می خوان با هات حرف بزنن .

[Listen to sentence NO 5 above](#)

[Listen to sentence NO 6 above](#)

Written Persian:

- 1- I want to celebrate the New Year.
می خواهم سال نو را جشن بگیرم
- 2- My neighbors want to celebrate the New Year.
همسایه هایم می خواهند سال نو را جشن بگیرند
- 3- The Iranians want to celebrate the New Year.
ایرانی ها می خواهند سال نو را جشن بگیرند
- 4- My kids want to celebrate the New Year.
بچه هایم می خواهند سال نو را جشن بگیرند
- 5 - The students want to celebrate the New Year.
دانش آموزان می خواهند سال نو را جشن بگیرند
- 6 - He wants to celebrate the New Year.
می خواهد سال نو را جشن بگیرد

Oral Persian:

- 1- I want to celebrate the New Year.
می خوام سال نو رو جشن بگیرم
- 2- My neighbors want to celebrate the New Year.
همسایه هام می خوان سال نو رو جشن بگیرن
- 3- The Iranians want to celebrate the New Year.
ایرانی یا می خوان سال نو رو جشن بگیرن
- 4- My kids want to celebrate the New Year.
بچه هام می خوان سال نو رو جشن بگیرن
- 5 - The students want to celebrate the New Year.
دانش آموزا می خوان سال نو رو جشن بگیرن
- 6 - He wants to celebrate the New Year.
می خواد سال نو رو جشن بگیره

Listen to sentence NO 5 above

Note:

In the above sentences, since the word ون in Persian ends with /o/ sound, we cannot pronounce /ra/ as /o/ here. Two /o/ sounds close to each other seem odd in pronunciation. That is why we use ور here.

Please note that it is very challenging to issue a general rule for all these things. Besides, I don't like rules!!

The best way is to use sentences and phrases to get to know how we should use words in our sentences (Just like young children when they learn their mother tongue. They have no idea about the rules but they speak their mother language better than those who are graduated in that particular language!)

Written Persian:

- 1- I prefer football to basketball. من فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهم
- 2- You prefer football to basketball. تو فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهی
- 3- She prefers football to basketball. او فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهد
- 4- We prefer football to basketball. ما فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهیم
- 5- You prefer football to basketball. شما فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهید
- 6- They prefer football to basketball. آنها فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهند
- 7- Iranians prefer football to basketball. ایرانی ها فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهند
- 8- My friend prefers football to basketball. دوستم فوتبال را به بسکتبال ترجیح می دهد

Oral Persian:

- 1- I prefer football to basketball. من فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می دم
- 2- You prefer football to basketball. تو فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می دی
- 3- She prefers football to basketball. اون فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می ده
- 4- We prefer football to basketball. ما فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می دیم
- 5- You prefer football to basketball. شما فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می دین
- 6- They prefer football to basketball. اونا فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می دن
- 7- Iranians prefer football to basketball. ایرانی ها یا فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می دن
- 8- My friend prefers football to basketball. دوستم فوتبال و به بسکتبال ترجیح می ده

Listen to sentence NO 7 above

Note:

As I told you, when we use sentences, we come to know the rules better.

So, try to focus on the Persian sentences in both written and oral form to find out the changes.

Now, you can do it yourself!

Lesson 139

Greetings to everyone. Welcome back!

It was our happiest day when our teachers were absent from the class! I even remember we sometimes wished (a couple of our teachers whom we did not like) broke their leg on the way to school so that we could have a happy holiday!!

How do you feel when you do not see me around? I hope you are not asking for my broken leg!!!

Anyway, we are going to continue our previous lesson to make sure we have not wasted our time. Do you still remember how we used two verbs in one sentence? I know it was not very easy. However, we have to deal with such structures eventually.

So, to help you more with this structure, I am going to give you more drills this week. I deeply hope you'll find them useful.

Ready?

Please try to translate the following phrases first. Then, take a look at the answers in the Useful Drills page. Wish you best!

1- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your class.

2- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your work.

3- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your trip.

4- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your holiday.

5- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your life.

6- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your time.

Hint:

I am glad to see that = من یب یم هک مل احشوخ

To enjoy = ندرپ تذل

To enjoy something = ندرپ تذل زا

You are enjoying your class = یرب یم تذل تسالک زا یراد

Finished translation? Good!

I know it was so easy for you. So, please forgive my talkative personality. My tongue is all I have!

Now, let's change the above phrases a bit before we go to next. You have five minutes for the next five sentences. Agreed? Great!

1- She is glad to see that you are enjoying your class.

2- We are glad to see that you are enjoying your holiday.

3- They are glad to see that you are enjoying your trip.

4- Hamid is glad to see that you are enjoying your time.

5- Students are glad to see that I am absent!

Hint:

Hamid is glad that = هک تس لاجشوخ دیمح

Absent = بیاغ

Now look at this one.

1- I am glad to hear that you finally reached your goal.

2- I am glad to hear that you finally finished your school.

3- I am glad to hear that you finally married her.

4- I am glad to hear that she finally returned home.

5- I am glad to hear that he finally got his visa.

6- I am glad to hear that she finally visited Iran .

7- I am glad to hear that you finally woke up.

8- I am glad to hear that you finally learned Persian.

Hint:

I am glad to hear that = مونسش یم هک ملاجشوخ

Finally = بهرخالاب /bel ækhæreh/ - or , تیاهن رد /dær neha:yæt/

To reach = ندیسر

To reach something / somewhere = ندیسر هب

To reach goal = ندیسر فده هب

Goal = فده

To finish = ندرک مامت

To finish something = ندرک مامت ار یزیچ

Note: the word ار is a preposition for the verb 'FINISH'.

Visa = ویزی /vi:za:/ (stress on Z/ - or, دی‌داور /ræva:did/

I am going to give you one more structure if you are not tired.

1- It took me years to get used to my job.

2- It took me weeks to find her.

3- It took me days to find this house.

4- It took them months to find a way.

5- It took us hours to understand each other.

6- It took me two days to write a new lesson.

7- It took me ages to convince her.

8- It took me a lifetime to finish my book.

9- It took her a while to fix her car.

10 – It took Hamid a few years to get used to this country.

Hint:

The first part of the above structure has one equivalent in Persian (well, mostly).

It took me = it took them = it took her = it took us = it took them = it took Hamid

What is important here is the 'SUBJECT'.

Confused?

I know!

Let me make it easier.

It took me years = نم ات دیشک لوط لاس دنچ

It took them months = اهن آت دیشک لوط هام دنچ

It took her two days = وا ات دیشک لوط زور ود

It took Hamid a few years = دیمح ات دیشک لوط لاس دنچ

Feel better now? Me too!!

Now, let's try the first sentence together.

To get used to = ندرک تداع هب

1- It took me years to get used to my job = منک تداع مراک هب ات دیشک لوط لاس دنچ

In the same way, you could translate this one:

It took her years to get used to her job = دنک تداع شراک هب (وا) ات دیشک لوط لاس دنچ

You see how easy it is?!

In Persian, we say 'puzzles are easy after they are solved'!! (دوش ناسآ تشگ لح وچ ام عم)

Listen!

All right, please do your job first before going to the Useful Drills page. But wait. You may need these words first.

To understand = ندیمهف

To understand each other = ندیمهف ار رگیدمه فرح => in English, we say 'I don't understand you'. In Persian, we say 'I don't understand your words'. That is why 'to understand each other' is translated as ندیمهف ار رگیدمه فرح

Lesson = سرد

Ages = (here in this lesson) = یلیخ = اه لاس = رمع کی = یرمع

To convince = ندرک عناق Listen! – Or, ندرک دعاقتم

To convince somebody = ندرک عناق ار یسک = ندرک دعاقتم ار یسک

Lifetime = (see 'ages' above)

A while = می‌کند = می‌کند = می‌کند

Ok. No more BLA BLA TALKS! Promise!

Please get started now before I change my mind again!

See you soon and have a great time.

Useful Drills 139

Hello again!

Enjoy the drills!

1- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your class = تاسالک زایراد منیب می‌هک مل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌تذل

2- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your work = تذل تراک زایراد منیب می‌هک مل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌م

3- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your trip = تذل ترفس زایراد منیب می‌هک مل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌م

4- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your holiday = زایراد منیب می‌هک مل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌تذل تتالی‌طعت

5- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your life = تا‌یگدنن زایراد منیب می‌هک مل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌تذل

6- I am glad to see that you are enjoying your time = تذل نتقو زایراد منیب می‌هک مل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌م

1- She is glad to see that you are enjoying your class = زایراد دنیب می‌هک تاسالک ل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌تذل تاسالک

2- We are glad to see that you are enjoying your holiday = زایراد منیب می‌هک مل‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌تذل تتالی‌طعت

3- They are glad to see that you are enjoying your trip = زایراد دننیب می‌هک دن‌احش‌وخ
یرب می‌تذل ترفس

4- Hamid is glad to see that you are enjoying your time = یراد دنیب یم هک تس ا لاجشوخ دیمح
یرب یم تذل تتقوزا

5- Students are glad to see that I am absent! = نم دنیب یم هک دن لاجشوخ نازوم آشناد
مبیاغ

1- I am glad to hear that you finally reached your goal = هپ هرخالاب مونش یم هک ملاجشوخ
یدی سر ت فده

2- I am glad to hear that you finally finished your school = هک ملاجشوخ یدرک مامت ارتا هسردم
هرخالاب مونش یم

3- I am glad to hear that you finally married her = چاودزا و اب هرخالاب مونش یم هک ملاجشوخ
یدرک

4- I am glad to hear that she finally returned home = هناخ هپ و ا هرخالاب مونش یم هک ملاجشوخ
تشگرب

5- I am glad to hear that he finally got his visa = ارش یازی و هرخالاب مونش یم هک ملاجشوخ
تفرگ

6- I am glad to hear that she finally visited Iran = ندید ناریا زا هرخالاب مونش یم هک ملاجشوخ
درک

7- I am glad to hear that you finally woke up = یدش رادیب هرخالاب مونش یم هک ملاجشوخ

8- I am glad to hear that you finally learned Persian = یسراف هرخالاب مونش یم هک ملاجشوخ
یتفرگ دای ار

-

Note:

In all above phrases, you may use plural verbs to make it either plural or more polite.

Example:

I am glad to see that you are enjoying your class = ناتسالک زا دیراد منیب یم هک ملاجشوخ
دیرب یم تذل

We are glad to see that you are enjoying your holiday = زا دیراد مینیب یم هک میللاحشوخ
دیرب یم تذلل نانا تالی طعت

I am glad to hear that you finally reached your goal = هب هرخالاب مونسش یم هک مللاحشوخ
دی دی سر نانا فده

-

1- It took me years to get used to my job = منک تداع مراک هب ات دیشک لوط لاس دنچ

2- It took me weeks to find her = منک ادیب ار وا ات دیشک لوط هتفه دنچ

3- It took me days to find this house = منک ادیب ار هناخ نیا ات دیشک لوط زور دنچ

4- It took them months to find a way = دننک ادیب (ار) یهار ات دیشک لوط هام دنچ

5- It took us hours to understand each other = ار رگی دمه فرح ات دیشک لوط تعاس دنچ
می م ه فب

6- It took me two days to write a new lesson = (یا هزات سرد) یدی دج سرد ات دیشک لوط زور ود
مسی ونب

7- It took me ages to convince her = منک ش دعاقتم ات دیشک لوط (یرمع) رمع کی

8- It took me a lifetime to finish (writing) my book = ار مباتک ات دیشک لوط (یرمع) رمع کی
منک مامت

9- It took her a while to fix her car = دنک ریمعت ارش نیشام ات دیشک لوط یتدم

10 – It took Hamid a few years to get used to this country = هب دیمح ات دیشک لوط لاس دنچ
دنک تداع روشک نیا

Lesson 140

Greetings to everyone. Welcome back!

Salam beh hameh ye dustan e khub!

بوخ نانا سود همه هب مالس

(Greetings to all of my good friends!)

Haletun chetoreh?

ههروطچ نوت لاج

(How are you? / How are you doing?)

Cheh khabar?

رېخ ههچ؟

(What's news? / What's new? / how is everything?)

Kar o bar chetoreh?

ههروطچ راب و راک؟

(How is your work going? / How is the business going?)

Khosh migzareh?

ههردگيم شوخ؟

(Are you having good time?)

Emruz mikham ye dars e jadidi ro shoro konam.

منک عورش ور یدیدج سرد هی ماوخ یم زورما

(Today, I want to start a new lesson)

Nemidunam duseshe darid ya na!

هن ای دیراد شسود منود یمن

(I don't know if you (will) like it or not!)

Rasteshu bekhain, nemidunestam chi dars bedam!!

مدب سرد یچ متسنود یمن نی اوخ ب وشت سار

(If you want the truth / to tell the truth / to be frank, I didn't know what to teach!!)

Banabar in, tasmim gereftam az yek ketab komak begiram.

مريگب کمک باتک کی زامت فرگ میمصت نی اربان ب

(Therefore, I decided to get help from a book)

In dars az ketab e sal e sevom e ebtedaee entekhab shodeh.

هدش باختنا یی ادا تبا موس لاس باتک زا سرد نی

(This lesson is chosen from the primary school book, grade three)

Dastan e in dars rajeh beh chand ta kabutareh.

هرتوبک ات دنچ هب عجار سرد نی انا تساد

(The story of this lesson is about a few pigeons)

Chand ta kabutar keh ba ham parvaz mikardand, ru ye derakhti neshastand.

دنتسشن ی تخرد یور دندرک یم زاورپ مه اب هک رتوبک ات دنچ

(A few pigeons who were flying together, sat in a tree)

Nagahan, ghazaee keh zir e derakht bud, tavajoheshan ra beh khod jalb kard.

درک بلج دوخ هب ار ناش هجوت دوب تخرد ریز هک یی اذغ ناهگان

(Suddenly, the food under the tree got their attention)

Anha az derakht paeen paridand va mashghul e khordan e ghaza shodand.

دندش اذغ ندروخ لوغشم و دندیرپ نیی اپ تخرد زا اهنآ

(They flew down the tree and got busy eating the food.)

Vaghti sir shodand va mikhastand parvaz konand, motevajeh shodand keh tu ye dam oftadeh and.

دنا هدا تفا ماد یوت هک دندش هجوت م دندنک زاورپ دنتساوخ یم و دندش ریس ی تقو

(When they felt full and wanted to fly away, they noticed they were in a trap.)

hameh tarsideh budand va nemidanestand cheh konand.

دندنک هچ دنتسناد یم ن و دندوب هدی سرت همه

(They were all frightened and did not know what to do)

dar in mian, yeki az kabutarha tasmim gereft hameh ra nejat dehad.

دهد تاجن ار همه تفرگ میمصت اهرتوبک زا یکی نایم نیار د

(At this moment / from among them, a pigeon decided to save all)

an kabutar beh dustanash goft keh natarsand.

دنسرتن هک تفرگ شناتسود هب رتوبک نآ

(That pigeon told / asked his / her friends not to be afraid)

vaghti hameh saket shodand, u beh anha goft keh montazereh farmanash bashand.

دنشاب شنامرف رظاتنم هک تفرگ اهنآ هب وا دندش تکاس همه یتقو

(When they all remained silent, he / she told / asked them to wait for his / her command / order)

an kabutar az dustanash khast keh hameh ba ham parvaz konanad.

دننک زاورپ مه اب همه هک تساوخ شناتسود زا رتوبک نآ

(The pigeon asked his / her friends to start flying all together)

yek , do, seh. parvaz!

زاورپ . هس - ود - کی

(One, two, three. Fly!)

hameh ba ham shoru kardand beh par zadan ta in keh dam ra az zamin boland kardand.

دندرک دنلب نیمز زا ار ماد هکنیا ات ندرپ هب دندرک عورش مه اب همه

(They all began to move their wings together until they lifted the trap (up in the air))

anha anghadr talash kardand ta dar nahayat movafagh shodand az dast e sayyad farar konanad.

دننک رارف دایص تسد زا دندش قفوم تیاهن رد ات دندرک شالت ردقنآ اهنآ

(They tried and tried until they finally managed to escape from the hunter)

Ok, hello again!!

I put the lesson upside down today!!

As I just told you, I wanted to choose something for this class and I came up with an allegorical story which comes from the Persian traditional literature. It is a part of our primary school books now.

I was going to present this story today in this class. After writing the introduction in both English and Persian, I changed my mind! I noticed that I have already given you a lot of information in this class! So, just study the above text and accept it as our lesson for this week!

We are going to read the simplified text of the above story from the next week on.

So, have a great time and come back soon!

Mokheles shoma, (sincerely yours)

Hassan.

Note 1:

The Persian phrase (mokhles e shoma = امش صلخ م) is not very formal. In formal situations, you would better use this: eradatmand e shoma = امش دنم تدارا

Note 2:

Probably, you noticed that some parts of my sentences in the above text do not seem to be formal Persian language. You are right. I have narrated some parts of the story in oral Persian. So, do not feel surprised. It is still Persian, but oral of course!

Note 3:

If you are done here, please take a look at the Useful Drills page. I have written one part of the above story for you there as an icebreaker. All you need to do is to find the new words in English and to try to translate the text into English as well! I deeply hope not all words are new!!

We will work on it next time.

Hamisheh khosh bashid! دیشاب شوخ هشیمه (Be happy, always! / I hope you are always happy!)

To improve your listening ability, you may download this lesson in audio MP3.

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the file.

Hameh ba ham (all together) – an allegorical story from the book Kelileh vo Demneh

Note 4:

Sorry I am not a storyteller! Be patient!

Useful Drills 140

Hello again!

Enjoy the drills!

مه اب همه

تذل (یبآ) نوگلین نامسآ رد یزاب و یدازآ زا و دندرک یم زاورپ نامسآ رد داش و دازآ اهرتوبک
دندرب یم

دنتسشن یتخرد یوریگتسخ عفر یارب – یتدم زا سپ

دوب ناوارف هناد – تخرد نییپ

دید ار اه هناد نارتوبک زا یکی

دناسر تخرد نییپ هب ار دوخ شخچ کی اب و دوشگ لاپ مارآ

دروخ ار اه هناد زات دنچ

دندوب هزمشوخ و هزات اه هناد

دندوب هزمشوخ یاه هناد نی زات درک ادص مه ار دوخ ناتسود

دندش هناد ندیچرب لوغشم و دنتسشن اه هناد رانک – دندمآ نییپ اهرتوبک

دش زاورپ هدامآ نارتوبک زا یکی دندش ریس بوخ هک یتقو

دنک زاورپ ات دوشگ لاپ

تسناوتن یلو

تسا هدروخ هرگ شپاپ هب (ینامسیر – یبانط) یدنب هک درک ساسحا

دوب هتفرگ مه ار اهناآ یپ ماد یاه خن یلو دندنک زاورپ ات دندوشگ لاپ زین رگید نارتوبک

Lesson 141

Hello again, welcome back.

As we talked last time, we are going to work on a short Persian story today. You may take a look at the [lesson 140](#) first if you do not know what we are talking about.

What we are going to do today is to go through the first part of this story. I will help you with the English translation of this lesson first. This is just to help you understand the structure of sentences in Persian. So, please don't feel bad if the translation is not in fluent English. This is done on purpose to present a more loyal piece of work, loyal to the original Persian text.

Ok, I hope you are ready.

Here is the first part of the story in Persian:

- همه با هم
- 1- کبوترها آزاد و شاد در آسمان پرواز می کردند و از آزادی و بازی در آسمان بیگون لذت می بردند.
 - 2- پس از مدتی برای رفع خستگی روی درختی نشستند.
 - 3- پایین درخت دانه فراوان بود.
 - 4- یکی از کبوتران دانه ها را دید.
 - 5- آرام بال گشود و با یک چرخش خود را به پایین درخت رساند.
 - 6- چند تا از دانه ها را خورد.
 - 7- دانه ها نازه و خوشمزه بودند.
 - 8- دوستان خود را صدا کرد تا از این دانه های خوشمزه بخورند.
 - 9- کبوترها پایین آمدند - کنار دانه ها نشستند و مشغول برچیدن دانه شدند.
 - 10- وقتی که خوب سیر شدند یکی از کبوتران آماده پرواز شد.
 - 11- بال گشود تا پرواز کند ولی نتوانست.
 - 12- احساس کرد که بندی به پایش گره خورده است.
 - 13- کبوتران دیگر نیز بال گشودند تا پرواز کنند ولی نخ های دام بای آنها را هم گرفته بود.
 - 14- صباد که در کمین نشسته بود صدای بال کبوتران را شنید و خوشحال به سوی آنان شناخت.

I deeply hope you had the time to work on the above text as I had asked you. If not, give it a try now before reading the translation presented below.

The text in English:

All together

1- Pigeons, free and happy, were flying in the sky and were enjoying the freedom and games in the blue sky.

2- After some time, to get rest, they sat in a tree.

3- Under the tree, there were plenty of seeds.

4- One of the pigeons saw the seeds.

5- Gently, it opened its wings, and with a turn, landed (arrived – got there) under the tree.

6- It ate a few seeds.

7- The seeds were fresh and delicious.

8- It called its friends so that they could have these tasty seeds.

9- The pigeons came down, sat near the seeds, and started eating the seeds.

10- When they felt full, one of them got ready to fly.

11- It opened its wings to fly, but couldn't.

12- It (the pigeon) felt a rope / string was knotted to its legs.

13- Other pigeons opened their wings as well to fly, but the ropes of the net was knotted to their legs, too.

14- The hunter who was sitting in hide (who was hiding) heard the noise of the pigeons' wings, and ran to them happily.

Done? Well done! Now, go to the Useful Drills page.

[See y](#)

Useful Drills 141

Now translate these sentences into Persian, using the words and phrases you just learned in this lesson. Remember, no cheating please! Do your best first and then take a look at the translation below to correct your words. Enjoy the homework!

1- The plane was flying in the blue sky.

2- The war prisoners were eventually freed from prison and enjoyed their freedom.

- 3- One of the students played guitar.
- 4- The plane gently landed in the airport.
- 5- The food was tasty.
- 6- We missed the flight.
- 7- I felt she was mad at me.
- 8- Hearing my voice, she ran to me joyfully.
- 9- Hearing the car, I opened the door quickly.

- 1- هواپیما (داشت) در آسمان آبی پرواز می کرد.
 - 2- زندانیان جنگی بالاخره از زندان آزاد شدند و از آزادی شان لذت بردند.
 - 3- یکی از دانش آموزان گیتار زد.
 - 4- هواپیما آرام (به آرامی) در فرودگاه فرود آمد (بر زمین نشست).
 - 5- غذا خوشمزه بود.
 - 6- پرواز را از دست دادیم (به پرواز نرسیدیم).
 - 7- احساس کردم از دست من عصبانی است.
 - 8- وقتی صدایم را شنید به سویم (به طرفم) دوید.
 - 9- وقتی صدای ماشین را شنیدم فوراً (با عجله) در را باز کردم.
- Foran = فوراً

Here is the text in Persian.

To fly = پرواز کردن

War prisoners = زندانیان جنگی

To free = آزاد کردن

To be / get freed = آزاد شدن

Freedom = آزادی

To play = (here in this sentence) زدن - نواختن

In general, 'to play musical instruments' can be translated into two forms in Persian.

The word نواختن is used in very formal situations or literary contexts.

Example: he plays guitar = او گیتار می نوازد => this translation seems a bit odd in daily conversation although it is absolutely correct.

We generally use زدن => Example: he plays guitar = او گیتار می زند

Important note:

Although زدن is preferred to نواختن, in the following combinations we need to use نواختن:

Guitar player = نوازنده گیتار

Violin player = نوازنده ویولون

Piano player = نوازنده پیانو

Flute player = نوازنده فلوت

And so on.

To miss = (here in this sentence) = از دست دادن - نرسیدن

Flight = پرواز

To be mad at = to be angry with => in Persian, we usually say, 'to be angry with somebody's hands!'

Example: are you mad at me? از دست من عصبانی هستی؟

I am very angry with you = خیلی از دستت عصبانی ام

Hearing my voice => in such structures, we need to know the subject of the sentence first. In English, 'hearing my voice' does not tell us who the subject is. So, in Persian, we need to look for the subject.

Hearing my voice, she ran to me => 'she' is the subject who actually does something.

Hearing the car, I opened the door quickly => 'I' is doing something here.

Got it? Good!

Hearing my voice, she ran to me => وقتی صدایم را شنید - به سویم دوید

Note: in English we say, 'she ran to me', in Persian, we say, 'she ran towards me'. This is why I have used به سویم

All right. That's it for today.

Hope you will come back!

ou soon again (I hope so!).

Lesson 142

Salam,

Hal e shoma? Khub hastin? Khosh migzareh? Omidvaram keh hamisheh deletun shad va labetun khandan basheh.

(The above text in English: Hello. How are you? Are you fine? Are you enjoying your time? I hope your heart is always happy and your lips are always smiling!)

Well, this is a kind of Persian greetings. You may use them at different occasions (not at gravesites of course!!); like when you are talking to your friends, colleagues, boss, and even boyfriends or girlfriends.

Before we start today, I have a couple of words to share with you.

1- I know you are busy and it may not be fair to ask you do something beyond your ability on this site. However, this may be useful to help you improve. One of the site's features which makes the site dynamic and gives the users the opportunity to exchange words and ideas with each other is the Message Board. I admit that I have not been a good Board Admin in protecting your messages on the board; the board broke a couple of times and we lost all the previous messages. I am sorry for this. But, the Forum is again online and is a good place for you to be in touch with other students. It also gives you the chance to get to know new friends. Unfortunately, you are not using the message board as I expected. So I am inviting you to get involved in the board's activities more actively when you have enough time. Please remember that your active presence makes me active on this site; otherwise, I may feel discouraged.

2- Some friends are complaining that the ads on the pages are distracting. I am sorry for this, but the point is that they are necessary for the maintenance of this site. Currently they are the main source of my income here.

3- A friend from India , a land which I love, wanted to know how we say western months in Persian. Thanks to Sardar Ji for his comments. So before we continue part 2 of the story on lessons 140 and 141, I want to take advantage of the time to explain this point here.

As you may probably know, Persian language is closer to French than it is to English, as far as pronunciation is concerned. The point is that the way words pronounce in French is closer to Persian structure. Based on this, we Iranians use the French pronunciation of western months. To save time for you and me, I am going to write the months and their Persian script without explaining them more. All you need to do is to listen to the pronunciation which comes at the end of December below!

January = ژانویه
February = فوریه
March = مارس
April = آوریل
May = مه
June = ژوئن
July = ژوئیه
August = اوت
September = سپتامبر
October = اکتبر
November = نوامبر
December = دسامبر

Now listen! (You may also right click on the link and save the sound file in mp3 format)

All right,

Now we can go back to the Persian story of Kelileh vo Demneh.

همه با هم – قسمت دوم

- 15 – کبوتران با عجله بال می زدند .
16 – هر یک برای رهایی خود می کوشید .
17 - گاهی یک گوشه ی دام از زمین کنده می شد – ولی بلافاصله به زمین می افتاد و گوشه دیگر آن بالا می رفت .
18 – کبوتر دانا و هوشبازی که نامش "طوفی" بود گفت: " ای دوستان! ما باید از قبل می فهمیدیم که یک نفر این دانه ها را به اینجا آورده است. ما باید از اول فکر می کردیم که چرا این همه دانه نازه و خوشمزه در پای درخت است. اگر فکر می کردیم در دام نمی افتادیم. حالا هم اگر کمی فکر کنیم و متحد و هماهنگ شویم می توانیم نجات پیدا کنیم. اکنون لحظه ای آرام بگیرد و آنگاه با فرمان من همه با هم به پرواز در آید ."
19 – صباد شتابان به سوی درخت می دوید که طوفی فرمان پرواز داد .
20 – کبوترها به فرمان او یک باره بال زدند و دام را از جا کردند و به هوا بردند .
21 – صباد با خود گفت: " این کبوترها سرانجام خسته می شوند و روی زمین می افتند. خوب است آنها را دنبال کنم."
22 - ولی کبوتران که با قدرت تمام بال می زدند از چشم صباد ناپدید شدند و پس از مدتی در کنار جوی آبی فرود آمدند .

Ok, this is the text for today. Please right-click on the link below and save the audio file first.

Kelileh vo Demneh – part 2

Try to listen to the audio file a few times as you look at the above Persian writings.

Then, learn the words below.

- 15 - کبوتران با عجله بال می زدند .
16 - هر بک برای رهایی خود می کوشید .
17 - گاهی بک گوشه ی دام از زمین کنده می شد - ولی بلافاصله به زمین می افتاد و گوشه دیگر آن بالا می رفت .
18 - کبوتر دانا و هوشبازی که نامش "طوفی" بود گفت: " ای دوستان! ما باید از قبل می فهمیدیم که بک نفر این دانه ها را به اینجا آورده است. ما باید از اول فکر می کردیم که چرا این همه دانه تازه و خوشمزه در پای درخت است. اگر فکر می کردیم در دام نمی افتادیم. حالا هم اگر کمی فکر کنیم و متحد و هماهنگ شویم می توانیم نجات پیدا کنیم. اکنون لحظه ای آرام بگیرد و آنگاه با فرمان من همه با هم به پرواز در آید ."
19 - صباد شنبلان به سوی درخت می دوید که طوفی فرمان پرواز داد .
20 - کبوترها به فرمان او بک باره بال زدند و دام را از جا کنند و به هوا بردند .
21 - صباد با خود گفت: " این کبوترها سرانجام خسته می شوند و روی زمین می افتند. خوب است آنها را دنبال کنم."
22 - ولی کبوتران که با قدرت تمام بال می زدند از چشم صباد ناپدید شدند و پس از مدتی در کنار جوی آبی فرود آمدند .

to fly - to start flying = به پرواز در آمدن

fast - quickly = شنابلان

towards = به سوی

to command - to order = فرمان دادن

to lift something - to lift something off its place like trees and pillars = از جا کردن

(they) took (the net) into the sky - the birds flew the net = به هوا بردند

he said to himself - he thought = با خود گفت

finally - eventually = سرانجام

to tire - to feel tired = خسته شدن

to chase = دنبال کردن

with all power / strength = با قدرت تمام

to disappear from somebody's eyes = از چشم ناپدید شدن

after a while - after some time = پس از مدتی

beside - near = در کنار

to land = فرود آمدن

Wow, it was a lot of work!!

Ok, please do the translation on your own. I don't think it is a hard work now. Then, take a look at the Useful Drills page to work on some structures.

Have a great time.

Hassan.

Useful Drills 142

Salam again!

As you noticed on the [lesson 142](#), we have a couple of new structures. Let's take a look at them first and then make more sentences based on this.

Ready?

=> ما باید از قبل می فهمیدیم که we must have understood this already that

ما باید از اول فکر می کردیم که => we must have thought of this from beginning

Ok, I think this is somehow new for you although I guess we had something on this structure before.

Anyway, let's work on some examples:

1- I must have told you earlier.

2- I must have known this.

3- I must have done the job myself.

4- I must have called you in advance.

5- I must have set a time for the interview.

I hope this structure is not difficult for you.

See you soon again.

The next are the translation of the above sentences.

-
- ۱- باید قبلا بهت (به شما) می گفتم .
 - ۲- باید این را می دانستم .
 - ۳- باید این کار را خودم می کردم .
 - ۴- باید قبلا (پیشاپیش) بهت (به شما) زنگ می زدم .
 - ۵- باید وقتی را برای مصاحبه در نظر می گرفتم (تعیین می کردم).
-

That's it for today.

Hope you will come back!

Lesson 143

Hello everyone,

Before we start today, let me wish you all a very happy New Year. I hope the year 2008 will be a year of peace, good health, success, friendship, victory, sweeeeeet as honeyyyyyy and fuuuuuuuuuull of moneyyyyyyyyyyyyyy for all of us!! Amen? Great!!

Ok, today we will finish the last part of the Persian story from the book *Kelileh vo Demneh*, which I have chosen from the book 'Farsi – elementary school – year 3'; a book currently taught in Iran . Hopefully you liked it. (Part 1 - Part 2)

See you soon,
Hassan.

- 23- در کنار جوی آب لانه ی موشی بود .
- 24- طوفی از قدیم با این موش دوست بود و او را "زیرک" صدا می کرد .
- 25- موش که در لانه خود خوابیده بود از صدای بال کبوتران بیدار شد و بیرون آمد .
- 26- همین که طوفی و دوستانش را گرفتار دید برای بریدن بندهای پای طوفی پیش رفت .
- 27- طوفی گفت: "دوست من! ابتدا بند از پای پارالم باز کن . دلم می خواهد دوستانم زودتر از من آزاد شوند ."
- 28- زیرک به سرعت بندهای دام را جوید و آن را پاره کرد .
- 29- کبوتران آزاد شدند و از موش تشکر کردند .
- 30- کمی آب خوردند و آزاد و شاد در آسمان به پرواز در آمدند .
- 31- وقتی که کبوتران دوباره خود را آزاد یافتند با هم فرار گذاشتند که دیگر اشتباه خود را تکرار نکنند تا در دام صیادان گرفتار نشوند .

Ok, this is the text for today. Please right-click on the link below and save the audio file first. [Kelileh vo Demneh – part 3](#) Try to listen to the audio file a few times as you look at the above Persian writings. Then,

learn the words below.

در کنار = beside – near

جوی آب = water stream

لانه = nest

از قدیم = since old time – from long ago

صدای می کرد = Called him

دوستم مرا حسن صدا می کرد = my friend called me / would call me Hassan

زیرک = in this text, it is the name of the mouse, but it means clever – smart

موش که = the mouse who

صدای = voice – noise

بال = wing – wings

بیدار شد = he woke up because of EX: مهشید از صدای تلفن بیدار شد (Note: Mahshid is she)

همین که = as soon as – no sooner than

گرفتار = jailed – stuck in net

برای بریدن = to cut

ابتدا = first

با رانم = my friends

دلم می خواهد = I want (in English we say 'I want', in Persian we say 'من می خوام' or 'دلم می خواهد' which means 'my heart wants' – but they are basically the same)

Warning! => **Do not** use 'دلم می خواهد' in response to such phrases: Why are you sleeping? Why are you not going to work today? Why are you not calling your friend? Why are you doing this? And in response to similar phrases. Why? Because in such phrases, it means 'it is none of your business'!

به سرعت = quickly – fast

جوید = chewed

جویدن = to chew

پاره کردن = to cut apart – to tear

من از او تشکر کردم = EX: I thanked her = تشکر کردن

کمی = a little

یافتند = they found

خود را آزاد یافتند = they found themselves free

دوباره = again – once more

با هم قرار گذاشتند = they promised to one another

قرار also means appointment – date

EX: I have an appointment with her = من با او قرار دارم

دیگر = (here in this text: anymore – no more)

تکرار کردن = to repeat

اشتباه = mistake – error – wrongdoing

تا = (here in this text: so – so that)

Ex: I explained this so you could / would know من این را توضیح دادم تا بدانید

Please do the translation on your own. I don't think it is a hard work now. Then, take a look at the [Useful Drills](#) page.

Have a great time.

Lesson 144

When I teach I feel I am somebody!! But unfortunately, this feeling is not lasting long these days!

Hello everyone; I deeply hope you are doing well. Many of you have expressed concern that I may not be around any longer. Well, I am just writing to let you know that I am still alive!

Ok, before we start our new lesson, I want to make a promise. Hopefully, I will not become 'the boy who cried out wolf'! From next week, we will begin to work on Persian short stories. I don't know how long I can continue this time-consuming project but I will do my best. Currently, this is how this project will go: I choose a short story to read in the way I have done it today. After one story is done, we will work on another.

The Little Black Fish, Mahi siyah e koochooloo, written by the late Samad Behrangi, will be our first story next week. I guess we will spend roughly 23 sessions on this book.

The reason I have chosen this long way is that you already know a lot about Persian grammar, or at least I assume this is the case if you have carefully studied 143 lessons. By now, you should be able to feel comfortable with Persian texts. To avoid spending the rest of our life on grammatical points, to change the mood of the class and to help you use your grammatical knowledge in real contexts, I am becoming a story teller!!

All right,

What we are going to do today is very simple. And this is what we will be doing from next week.

1- Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the file.

2- Patiently watch the video and listen to my 'deadpan' voice (as one of the students has described my voice!!)

3- Try to understand the story as much as possible. You may use a dictionary; a good online dictionary is Farsidic.com.

4- Go to Useful Drills page for the translation of the story as well as the new words.

Acknowledgment: This story is translated by a wonderful friend, Anita Goebel who has my eternal gratitude.

That's it for today. Please don't forget to come back next week (most probably Thursday).

Here is the video file:

[The Fox and the Rooster – Rubah o Khoros](#)

Useful Drills 145

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siyah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - **Page 1** - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

شب چله = the longest night of the year (one night before winter starts)
ته = bottom
ته دریا = bottom of the sea
ماهی پیر = the old fish
تا دوازده هزار = twelve thousands
از بچه ها = of (her) children
و نوه هایش = and (her) grandchildren
دور خودش = around (herself / himself)
جمع کرده بود = had gathered
و برای آنها = and for / to them
قصه می گفت = told / telling stories
یکی بود یکی نبود = once upon a time
یک ماهی سیاه کوچولو بود = there was (once) a little black fish
که با مادرش = who with his mother
در جویباری = in a stream
زندگی می کرد = lived / was living
این جویبار = this stream
از دیواره های سنگی کوه = from the stone-made walls of the mountain
بیرون می زد = came out – flowed out
و در ته دره روان می شد = and flowed down the valley
خانه ماهی کوچولو = the little fish's home
و مادرش = and his mother's
پشت = behind

سنگ سیاه = a black stone

پشت سنگ سیاهی بود = was behind a black stone

زیر = under – beneath

سقف = roof – ceiling

حزه از سقفی = a roof made of moss – beneath the moss

شب ها = nights – at night

دوتایی = the two of them

زیر حزه ها = under the moss

می خوابیدند = slept – would sleep

ماهی کوچولو = the little fish

حسرت به دلش مانده بود = was eager – very much loved to do something

که یک دفعه هم که شده = that for just once

مهتاب = moon

توی خانه شان = inside their house

مهتاب را توی خانه شان ببیند = to see the moon in his house

مادر و بچه = the mom and the child

صبح تا شام = from morning till night

دنبال همدیگر می افتادند = followed one another – chased each other

و گاهی هم = and (also) sometimes

قاطی = mixed with others – amongst others

قاطی ماهی های دیگر = along with other fish

تند تند = fast - quickly

توی یک تکه جا = in a small or tiny spot / place

می رفتند = went – would go

و = and

بر می گشتند = came back – would come back / return

یکی یک دانه = one and only one – mom's little man!

چون = since - because

از ده هزار = from among ten thousand

تخم = egg - fish egg - sperm - testicle / ball (don't tell anybody!!)

تخم گذاشتن = to lay eggs

تخمی که مادر گذاشته بود = the eggs which his mother had laid

تنها = only

همین یک بچه = this very child

سالم = sound and safe or healthy - the only one survived

سالم در آمده بود = (this child was the only one who had survived from among the ten thousand eggs his mother had laid)

چند روزی بود که = for a few days

ماهی کوچولو the little fish

تو فکر بود = was in (deep) thinking - his mind was occupied

و خیلی کم حرف می زد = and he rarely spoke

با تنبلی = with laziness - lazily

و بی میلی = and without interest - reluctantly

از این طرف به آن طرف = from this side to the other

می رفت = he went - he would go / swim

و بر می گشت = and returned - would return

و بیشتر وقت ها هم = and (also) most of the time

از مادرش عقب می افتاد = he was left behind his mother

مادر خیال می کرد = mother would think - thought - assumed

بچه اش = her child

کسالتی دارد = has (minor) illness - doesn't feel well

که به زودی بر طرف خواهد شد = which / that will be gone soon (the illness) - or, her child will be fine soon

اما نگو = but she didn't know that

که درد ماهی سیاه = the pain of the black fish

از چیز دیگری است = is from something else - she didn't know that the black fish was suffering from something else (other than an illness)

یک روز = one day
 زود صبح = early in the morning
 آفتاب نرده = before sunrise – at dawn
 ماهی کوچولو = the little fish
 مادرش را بیدار کرد = awakened his mother
 و گفت = and said
 مادر = mom
 می خواهم = I want to – I would like to
 با تو = with you
 چند کلمه ای = a few words
 حرف بزنم = talk – (I would like to have a few words with you)
 مادر = mother
 خواب آلود = sleepy – half awake
 گفت = said
 جون = o boy! – darling – sweetie
 حالا هم وقت گیر آوردی = this is not the right time
 حرفت را بگذار برای بعد = save your words for a later time – let's talk later
 بهتر نیست؟ = isn't it better to ...?
 برویم گردش = to take a walk – to go swimming / playing and sightseeing
 ماهی کوچولو گفت = the little fish said
 نه مادر = no mom
 من دیگر نمی توانم = I no longer can ... - I am no more interested in ...
 گردش کنم = playing – I am no more interested in playing
 باید از اینجا بروم = I have to leave this place

Useful Drills 146

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - [Page 2](#) - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

حتما = really - sure - surely - necessarily

؟حتما باید بروی؟ = Do you really want to go?

آره مادر = yes mother

باید بروم = I must go

آخر = (here in this text) but

کی زودی = at such an early hour in the morning - so early in the morning

؟کجا می خواهی بروی؟ = where do you want to go?

می خواهم بروم بینم = I want to go see

آخر جویبار = the end of the stream

؟می خواهم بروم بینم آخر جویبار کجاست؟ = I want to go see where the end of the stream is - I want to go see where the stream ends

میدانی مادر = you know, mother

ماه هاست = for months - it has been months

تو این فکر = I am thinking - I have been thinking

من ماه هاست تو این فکر = for months, I have been thinking - This thought has kept me occupied for months

که = that (as in a clause)

هنوز که هنوز است = still - by now - (it's a matter of emphasizing on the time which has been passed - example: I have been studying Persian for years, **but still**

(vali hanuz keh hanuz ast), I am not fluent = man sa:l ha:st keh fa:rsi mikha:nam, vali hanuz keh hanuz ast, rava:n nistam.)

ن نتوانسته ام = I have not been able to - I can't

چیزی سر در بیاورم = (I haven't been able to) find out anything special / to understand ...

از دیشب تا حالا = since last night (up to now)

چشم به هم نگذاشته ام = I haven't closed my eyes - I haven't taken sleep - I have stayed up (thinking)

همه اش = always - continuously - ceaselessly

فکر کرده ام = I have thought

آخرش هم = at the end - eventually - finally

تصمیم گرفتم = I decided

خودم بروم = to go myself

پیدا کنم = find => I decided to go find the end of the stream by myself.

دلم می خواهد = my heart wants - I want - I would like - I would love

بدانم = to know
 جاهای دیگر = other places
 چه خیرهایی هست = what's happening => I really want to know what is happening in other places
 مادر خندید = mother laughed – laughing, mother said
 من هم = I, too – me too
 وقتی = when (as in a clause, not as in a question)
 بچه بودم = I was young – I, at young age – when I was a child
 خیلی = a lot – very much
 از این فکرها = thoughts like this – similar ideas
 آخر جانم = (my little) sweetie / sweetheart
 جویبار که اول و آخر ندارد = stream has no beginning and no end
 همین است که هست = this is all – stream is this – this is all that exists
 همیشه = always
 روان است = flows - is flowing – is floating – is moving – is fluent
 و به هیچ جایی هم نمی رسد = and it (stream) doesn't reach/get anywhere – it doesn't end anywhere
 آخر مادر جان = but mom – but, my dear mother
 مگر نه این است که = is it not that ...? – is it not true that ...?
 هر چیزی به آخر می رسد = everything comes to an end
 مادرش میان حرفش دوید = his mother interrupted him – his mother began to talk while he was still talking
 گنده = big
 حرف های گنده گنده = words which are not expected from you because you are too young, or not educated enough – big words (bigger than what your age indicates)
 بگذار کنار = (here in this text) forget ... - don't use (such big words)
 باشو برویم = (get up and) let's go – come on; let's go
 حالا موقع ... = now is the time to
 من دیگر خسته شده ام = I am fed up or tired of (such games/sightseeing...) – I am no more interested in ...
 می خواهم راه بیفتم و بروم = I want to take off (and leave)
 بینم = to see ...
 ممکن است فکر کنی = you may/might think
 که یک کسی = that someone

Useful Drills 147

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - [Page 3](#) - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

می خواهم بدانم که = I want to know (that)
راستی راستی = really – truly – seriously – indeed
زندگی = life – living – lifetime
اینکه = does life really mean ...
تا یک تکیه جا = in one small place
هی = on and on – consistently – continuously
بروی و برگردی = (here in this text) to go and return – to move – to swim and to repeat doing the same thing
تا پیر بشوی = until you are old – till your old age
و دیگر هیچ = and nothing else – and nothing more than that
یا اینکه = or (another option)
طور دیگری = different way – another way – an alternative
هم = also – as well
می شود زندگی کرد = (it is possible) to live – (there is another way) of living
وقتی = when
تمام شد = finished – ended
وقتی حرف ماهی کوچولو تمام شد = when the little fish stopped / finished talking
مگر به سرت زده؟ = are you out of your mind? – are you crazy?
همین جا = here – this very same place
که ما هستیم = where we are living (as a clause not a question)
همین است = this very same thing – (life is what we have / we are living)
در این وقت = at this moment
ماهی بزرگی = a big fish
به خانه آنها نزدیک شد = came close to their house – (a big fish came near their house)
همسایه = neighbour
سر چی؟ = for what reason? – Why?
بگو مگو می کنی = arguing (why are you arguing with your child?)
انگار = it seems that – apparently
خیال ندارید = you don't want to ... - (it seems you don't want to go swimming today)
مادر ماهی = the fish's mother – (**Note:** here, I think you could also read this as 'madar mahi' instead of 'madar e mahi'. If you do so, then it would mean: the mother fish – as opposed to 'the baby fish') (hope I am right!)
به صدای همسایه = at the neighbour's voice/calling
چه سال و زمانه ای شده! = what a time! What strange time!

حالا دیگر = now – at this time – nowadays
 خواهند بچه ها می = children want to ... - children are trying to ...
 چیزی یاد بدهند = teach (us) something / a lesson - (children want to teach us how to live, for ex.)
 چطور مگر؟ = what's happened? What's up?
 این نیم وحیی = this little creature – (a 'rather taboo' expression against somebody when we want to say that he or she is 'too little' to get involved in 'big projects or ideas')
 کجاها = where – how many places
 می گوید = he (she) keeps saying – he (she) insists
 دنیا چه خبر است = what's happening in the world/other places
 چه حرف های گنده گنده ای! = what big words! Nonsense!
 کوچولو = the little one
 بینم = tell me – let me see
 تو از کی تا حالا؟ = since when you ...
 عالم = a knowledgeable person – scientist – a man of wisdom
 فیلسوف = philosopher
 ما را خبر نکردی = didn't tell us = you kept it a secret from us (as an irony/sarcasm)
 به چه می گوید = whom/what do you call (a man of wisdom)
 فقط = just – only
 ام خسته شده ام = I am tired of ... – I am fed up with ...
 و نمی خواهم = and I don't want to ...
 خسته کننده = tiring – boring
 بدهم = (I don't want to) continue
 الکی = without any reason – purposeless – aimlessly – (الکی گفتم = I didn't mean it – it was just a joke)
 الکی خوش باشم = to be happy without having enough reasons to be happy – to pretend to be happy
 و یک دفعه = and all of a sudden
 چشم باز کنم = I awake – I come to understand / realize

 مثل شماها = like you
 هنوز = still
 همان ماهی به = the same fish
 چشم و گوش بسته = unsophisticated – uneducated – inexperienced or without knowledge
 وا = a word to show exclamation – a word of surprise (generally used by ladies)
 چه حرف ها! = strange words!
 من هیچ فکر نمی کردم = I never thought
 اینطوری = like this
 از آب در بیاید = to become (I never thought my child would become something like this)
 بد جنس = someone with bad intent/spirit
 کدام بد جنسی = which devil
 نازنین = lovely – nice – adorable
 زیر پای کسی نشستن = (using convincing words) to deceive somebody

Useful Drills 148

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - [Page 4](#) - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we

may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

هیچ کس = nobody

من خودم = I myself

عقل = wisdom – knowledge

هوش = consciousness – sense

عقل و هوش دارم = I am wise enough (to know/understand things)

می فهمم = I understand (I am wise enough to understand)

چشم دارم = I have eyes

و می بینم = and see

همسایه = the neighbour

خواهر = sister (the way of addressing women – usually **not** used by young people)

حلزون = snail

پیچ پیچیه = the twisted – the spiralled (an adjective for snails)

یادت می آید؟ = do you remember?

آره = yes

آره خوب گفتی = yes; that's it / that's him - yes; you are right

زیاد = a lot – very much

با کسی شدن = to spend time with somebody (in a negative sense as if you want to either make trouble for that person or deceive him) – to bother somebody

بگویم خدا چکارش کند = depending on contexts, this expression could reflect either a curse or a prayer, so this could have either negative or positive connotation. **Example of negative meaning:** you are on a trip to a remote city where you find a shirt in a store. Using his talkative nature, the shopkeeper convinces you that the shirt is of high quality. You pay a lot of money and, happily, take the shirt home with you. After the first wash, you notice that you are badly cheated. Then, (using a lot of 'nice adjectives' against the shopkeeper, you say, 'khoda begam chi karet koneh!' Here, you may mean something like this: 'May God Himself take care of you!!' OR, 'You, son of a ...!' But of course, your Persian sentence is a **polite way** of expressing such dissatisfaction or hatred. **Example of positive meaning:** Your friend tells you a very lovely joke which keeps you laughing for a long time. While laughing, you may say, 'khoda begam chi karet koneh!' or, 'khoda begam chi karet nakoneh!' Here, you may mean something like this: 'May God Himself make you laugh!' OR, 'That was great!'

مادر کن = enough, mother! – Don't say that – Don't speak like that
 رفیق = friend – pal
 رفاقت = friendship – fellowship
 رفاقت ماهی و حلزون = friendship between fish and snail
 دیگر نشنیده بودیم = we have never heard of
 من هم = me too – I as well – me either – me neither
 دشمنی = hostility – animosity
 اما = but
 شماها = you – all of you – you all
 بیچاره = poor fellow - helpless
 بیچاره حسن! = poor Hassan!
 سر کسی را زیر آب کردن = to kill somebody by putting his head under water – to drown somebody – to get rid of somebody
 این حرف ها = these words – such talks
 این حرف ها مال گذشته است = these words belong to the past – the past is passed
 شما خودتان = you yourself – you yourselves
 حرف گذشته = the talks about the past – the past
 پیش کشیدید = you started first – you talked about the past first
 پیش کشیدن = to raise (a point) – to mention – to talk about ...
 حقش بود = it was the right thing to do – he got what he deserved (in a negative sense)
 حقش بود بکشیمش = he deserved death – we did the right thing that we killed him
 مگر یادت رفته؟ = have you forgotten?
 اینجا و آنجا = here and there – everywhere
 اینجا و آنجا که می نشست = wherever he was – in each gathering he attended
 چه حرف هایی می زد = what issues he raised – what topics he talked about
 پس = then – therefore
 مرا هم بکشید = kill me as well
 چون = because – since

همان حرف ها = the same words – the same things – (because, I am also talking about the same things)
 چه در دسترتان بدهم = to make the long story short
 مگو = discussion – argument – strife
 ماهی های دیگر را به آنجا کشاند = (their argument) brought the other fish to them – (their arguments) drew the attention of other fish
 حرف های ماهی کوچولو = the words of the little fish
 همه را = everybody (as an object)
 عصبانی کرده بود = made everybody angry
 یکی از = one of
 ماهی پیره ها = the old fish – the elderly fish
 خیال کرده ای = you think – you believe – do you think? do you believe?
 رحم کردن = to have mercy on
 هم = here in this sentence, it is a word to show emphasis
 به تو رحم هم می کنیم؟ = (do you think) we will have mercy on you (because you are our friend's child)?
 دیگری = another – another fish
 فقط = only – just
 گوشمالی = punishment – slight punishment – rebuke
 کوچولو = a little – a bit – a minor
 می خواهد = he / she needs (a little punishment) – this asks for a little punishment – only a little punishment will solve this issue/will make him/her understand
 بروید کنار = step aside – step away – watch out
 دست به بچه ام نزنید = don't touch my child

Lesson 149

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 5

Dubareh salam! Welcome back.

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words.

See you next week,

Hassan

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 5](#)

Useful Drills 149

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 5 - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

دیگر یکی = another one – the other one
یکی دیگر از آنها = (another) one of them
وقتی = when – if – since
آنطور که لازم است = as needed – as necessary – as expected – as worth it
تربیت نمی کنی = you don't train – you don't raise – you don't teach
وقتی بچه ات را – آنطور که لازم است – تربیت نمی کنی = when you don't raise your child as you should have – when you don't raise your child as expected (by society)
باید = should – must
سزا دیدن = to face the consequences (of something) – to be punished (in retaliation of / in response to what one has done)
باید سزایش را هم ببینی = you should face the consequences – you deserve the outcome (of your own action)
همسایه = the neighbour
حجالت کشیدن = to feel embarrassed – to feel shy
من که خجالت می کشم = I feel embarrassed
در همسایگی شما = in your neighbourhood – close to you
زندگی کنم = I live (I feel embarrassed to live in your neighbourhood)
دیگری = the other one – another one
تا کارش به جاهای باریک نکشیده = this is an expression which means: before it is too late – before he / she has made more troubles (for us)
بفرستیمش = let's send him/her
پیش = near – to
حلزون بیره = the old snail – (let's send him/her to where we have sent the old snail => let's kill him like the old snail)
ماهی ها = the fish
تا آمدند = before (the fish) could ...
ماهی سیاه کوچولو را بگیرند = catch / stop the little black fish
دوستانش = his / her friends
او را دوره کردند = circled around him/her – protected him/her by gathering around him/her

معرکه = battlefield – the place of turmoil – the place where an event is happening

از معرکه بیرونش بردند = took him/her away – saved him/her from the trouble – helped him/her to escape

مادر ماهی سیاه = the black fish's mother

توی سر و سینه زدن = to hit yourself in the chest and head to show that you are in trouble, in need of help or suffering from a major loss. Ex: mourning on the body of a close relative – OR- feeling helpless when a close friend is down but you can't do anything to save him

توی سر و سینه اش می زد = she fearfully expressed helplessness when she realized that her child was in a big trouble – (something like this: O, God, please help.)

گریه کردن = to cry – to weep

وای = a word to express sorrow / misery / worry

بچه ام = my child

از دست رفتن = to get lost – to die – to be no more

بچه ام دارد از دستم می رود = I am losing my child – my child is in grave danger

چکار کنم؟ = what can I do? – What should I do?

چه خاکی به سرم بریزم؟ = what soil can I put on my head?! This is also an expression. When you are in absolute helpless condition and don't know what to do to stop a catastrophe from happening, you say, 'chekh khaki beh saram berizam?'

برای من گریه نکن = don't cry for me

به حال این = for these ... - For the condition /situation of ...

به حال این پیرماهی های درمانده گریه کن = cry for these miserable, old fish

یکی از ماهی ها = one of the fish

از دور = from afar – from a distance

داد کشید = shouted – cried out

توهین نکن! = don't insult! – behave yourself!

نیم وجیبی! = the little one!

دومی = the second one

اگر بروی = if you go – if you leave

و بعدش = and then

پشیمان بشوی = feel sorry – repent – change your mind

دیگر = any longer – no more – anymore
راهت نمی دهیم = we won't let you come back – we won't accept you anymore
سومی = the third one
این ها = these – these thoughts/words/ideas
هوس = temptation – unfounded thought
دوره جوانی = young age (these are the baseless / unfounded thoughts of the young age)
نرو = don't go
چهارمی = the fourth one
مگر اینجا چه عیبی دارد؟ = what's wrong with this place?
پنجمی = the fifth one
دنیای دیگری = other/another world
در کار نیست = there is no other world
برگردا = come back!
ششمی = the sixth one
سر عقل آمدن = to act wisely – to come to your senses
اگر سر عقل بیایی = if you change your mind – if you act wisely (as we do)
آنوقت = then
باورمان می شود = we will believe
راستی راستی = truly – beyond doubt – really
فهمیده = wise – understanding
ماهی فهمیده ای هستی = you are a wise fish
هفتمی = the seventh one
آخر = (here in this text) you know, - but – actually
عادت کردن = to get used to – to be accustomed
ما به دیدن تو عادت کرده ایم = we are happy to see you around – we will miss you
به من رحم کن = have mercy on me

Lesson 150

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 6

Dubareh salam!

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words.

See you next week,

Hassan

Useful Drills 150

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 6 - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

دیگر = anymore – no more

نداشت = (he/she) had nothing more to tell them – he/she had nothing else to do with them

چند تا = a few of

از دوستانش = of his/her friends

هم سن و سال = of the same age

تا آبشار = to a waterfall – as far as a waterfall

همراهی کردن = to accompany

برگشتند = they returned

از آنجا = from that point – from there

وقتی = when – at the time of – while

به امید دیدار = Godspeed – farewell – good luck

فراموشم نکنید = don't forget me

چطور می شود؟ = how come? – How is it possible?

خواب خرگوشی = the rabbit-like sleeping – deep sleep – absolute ignorance

بیدار کردن = to awaken

به ما چیزهایی یاد دادی = you taught us what/something

که پیش از این = (that/which) before this – never already

حتی = even – never ever

را هم نکرده بودیم = we had never ever thought (of what you taught us)

دوست دانا = wise friend – knowledgeable friend

بی باک = bold – fearless – brave

آبشار = waterfall

پایین آمدن = to descend – to come down

افتاد = fell – jumped down

توی = in – inside

برکه آب = pond – mass of water

پر آب = full of water

اولش = first – in the beginning

دست و پا (را) گم کردن = to lose hands and legs (to feel confused) – the state of not knowing what to do

اما بعد = but then – but later – but soon

شروع کردن = to begin – to start

شروع کرد به شنا کردن = she / he began swimming
 دور = around
 و دور برکه گشت زدن = and turning around in the pond
 تا آنوقت = until then – by that time – before then
 ندیده بود که = he/she had not seen that (that as in a clause)
 آنهمه = that much – so much
 یکجا = in one place
 جمع شدن = to gather – to get together – to come together
 هزارها = thousands
 ماهی کفچه = a kind of fish (probably round, flat fish => sorry for not knowing 'fishology'!!)
 توی آب = in the water
 وول خوردن = (here in this text) to move around in group like a group of fish moving in water
 دیدند ماهی سیاه کوچولو را که = when they saw the little black fish
 مسخره کردن = to ridicule – to make fun of – to look down on – to fool (somebody)
 ریخت = appearance – figure
 ریختش را باش = look at him/her (in a negative sense)
 موجود = creature (what kind of creature are you then?)
 خوب = well
 ورنه = to examine – to look at – to watch
 خواهش می کنم = please
 توهین کردن = to curse – to insult
 توهین نکنید = don't insult

 آشنا شدن = to become acquainted – to become friends – to get to know one another
 ما همدیگر را ... صدا می کنیم = we call each other ...
 اصل و نسب = noble – well-founded (family) with a known history
 دارای = with – having or containing
 دارای اصل و نسب = with nobility – we are from upper class families
 از ما خوشگل تر = more beautiful than us
 تو دنیا = in the world
 پیدا نمی شود = cannot be / will not be found
 مثل تو = like you
 بی ریخت = ugly
 بدقیافه = ugly – not handsome
 هیچ = at all – never
 من هیچ خیال نمی کردم = I never thought / imagined
 اینقدر = this much – like this
 خودپسند = self-praiser – a person who loves and praises himself
 بخشیدن = to forgive
 من شما را می بخشم = I forgive you
 چون = because – since
 این حرف ها را = these words
 از روی = out of – because of – due to
 نادانی = ignorance – lack of knowledge
 یکصدا = in chorus – all together
 یعنی = you mean
 ما نادانیم؟ = we are fool/stupid/illiterate

Lesson 151

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 7

Salam!

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words.

See you next week,

Hassan

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 7](#)

Useful Drills 151

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 7 - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

نادان = foolish – ignorant

اگر نادان نبودید = if you weren't ignorant/irrational

می دانستید = you would know

در دنیا = in the world

خیلی های دیگر هم هستند = there are also a lot of others / other people / other creatures

که ریختشان = whose form – whose appearance

برای خودشان = for them – to them – for themselves – to themselves

خوشایند = pleasing – satisfying

حتی = even

اسمتان = your name

مال خودتان = yours – what belongs to you

شما حتی اسمتان مال خودتان نیست = word for word translation: you, even your name does not belong to you

NOTE: If you remember, I told you that کفچه ماهی is a kind of fish. Well, to be exact, it is 'baby frog – froglet – tadpole'. The little black fish is telling these 'baby frogs' that their name (in Persian) does not say anything about them being frogs and therefore, even their name, which they are proud of, is not theirs. Kafcheh mahi is the combination of two words: mahi = fish - and kafcheh = (could mean) something that is flattened / levelled

Points: 1- To bring a change, we need to question everything, including our own names, titles, thoughts, ideas and bla bla bla!!

2- To bring a change, we need to look at ourselves from a third person's point of view. That is, we have to 'observe' ourselves

خیلی عصبانی شدند = they became very angry

اما چون = but because – yet since

دیدند = they saw – they noticed – they found out – they recognized

راست می گوید = he / she tells the truth – he / she is telling the truth – he / she is right

از در دیگری در آمدن = word for word: to enter through a different door – to choose a different approach – to change tactic / policy / method

به در و دیوار زدن = word for word: to hit the door and window – to try hard to convey a message – to try various possible ways (to convey a message)

بیخود = in vain – useless

اصلا تو بیخود به در و دیوار می زنی = you know what? You are trying in vain / wasting your time

هر روز = everyday

از صبح تا شام = from morning till night – all day long

دنيا را می گردیم = we turn around the globe – we visit every part of the earth – we have been everywhere

غیر از خودمان = except us

پدر و مادرمان = our parents

هیچکس را نمی بینیم = we don't see anybody else

مگر = except

کرم = worm

ریزه = little – tiny – small – something of little value, which does not worth paying attention

به حساب آمدن = to be taken into account – to be of importance (so people can count on it / so people pay attention to it)

Ex:

در بازی های سیاسی مردم به حساب نمی آیند = in political games, people are of little importance / people are not taken into account / people play minor roles

برکه = pond

بیرون رفتن = to leave – to go out

چطور؟ = how?

دنيا گردی = visiting various parts of the earth – travelling around the globe

جهان گردی = tourism

جهان گرد = a person who visits various places – tourist

دم زدن = to claim – to pretend

Ex: How could you talk about travelling around the globe when you have never been outside this pond?

دنیای دیگری = another world

غیر از برکه = besides this pond

دست کم = at least

باید = must – should

فکر کنید = think
این آب = this water
از کجا = from where?
به اینجا = to here – here
می ریزد = it (water) pours (down)
خارج از = outside – beyond
خارج از آب = outside water
چه چیزهایی = what? – What things?
هست = there is – there are – exists
کجاست؟ = where is ...?
هرگز = never

Note: In English, we say: I have never **seen** her. In Persian, we say: I have never **not seen** her. => man har gez u ra **nadideh** am.
باها! = you are out of your mind, pal / friend! (something like this!)
خنده اش گرفت = he / she began to laugh
فکر کرد = he / she thought
که بهتر است = it would be better
کسی را به حال خودش گذاشتن = to leave somebody alone
دو کلمه ای = a few words – have a short chat
زیر = (as for voice) high – opposite to bass or deep voice/sound
از جا پراند => (a high voice of a frog) scared the little black fish
لب = edge – near – by – at – bank (riverbank)
جست زد = to leap – to jump
پیش ماهی = near the fish
من اینجا = I am here
فرمایش = what do you want? – What's the matter? What are you looking for?
خانم بزرگ = a word to address /call old ladies or grandmas (respectfully)

Lesson 152

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 8

Dear all,

Salam! Please let me wish you all a very blessed and merry Christmas followed by a prosperous New Year.

I hope the year 2009 will be the year of peace and friendship between nations. (With so many things happening through 'peaceful leaders', my prayer seems to be something very unrealistic!!) - But anyway, **'ma goftim'**! (I said what did worth mentioning - or - I said what had to be said) - (You will learn this structure later today)

Ok,

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 8](#)

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words. Let me warn you that we have **'loads of words'** today!!

All the best!

See you next week,

Hassan

Lesson 153

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 9

Salam, welcome back!

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 9](#)

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words. Let me warn you that we have 'loads of words' today!! All the best!

See you next week,

Hassan

Useful Drills 153

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - [Page 9](#) - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

خودت را به آن راه نزن = don't pretend that you don't understand what I mean

As far as I remember, we have two phrases in Persian to convey this message. When someone, who surely knows what you are talking about, pretends that he has no idea what you are saying, you say, 'khodet o beh un rah nazan!' You may also say, 'khodet o beh khucheh ye Ali chap nazan!' If the person, whom you are talking to, is very close, really a close friend who will not get offended, as a joke, you can say, 'khar khodeti!' which, in word for word translation, means, 'you are a donkey!' So, be careful when you are using the last one. Generally speaking, these phrases mean, 'don't pretend to be silly; I know that you know what I am talking about!'

منظورت = you mean

منظورت منم؟ = are you talking about me? Do you mean 'me' when you say ...?

منظورت چیه؟ = what do you mean?

منظورتونو نمی فهمم = I don't understand what you mean

پاک = clean – pure – (here, in this text) completely

پاک بچه شده ای = you are thinking absolutely like children – you don't see the entire picture – you don't understand (why I am doing this)

من با قورباغه ها لجم = I don't like frogs – I have a long-term hostility with frogs

و برای همین = and because of this – therefore

شکارشان می کنم = I hunt them

خیال کردن = to imagine – to assume – to think

موجود = creature – being

تنها موجود = the only creature / being

دنیا = world – universe – globe

خوشبخت = fortunate – lucky

بهبشان بفهمانم = (I want to) make them understand

که = that (as in a clause)

واقعا = really – truly

دنيا دست کیست؟ = in word for word translation, this means, 'whose hands are running the world?'

When you want to show your power to your opposite number, as either a friendly joke or a real threat, you say, 'I'll show you whose hands are running this world'. This means, 'I'll show you who is stronger' – or – 'I'll take revenge on you' – or – 'I'll teach you a good lesson' – or – 'I'll take action'.

Here, in this story, the crab is telling the little fish that, due to a long-term hostility, he is killing frogs to show them that he is stronger than them.

جانم = dear – darling – dear friend

پس بسکی = backward – This is not a common phrase but surely is a pleasant combination. The writer describes the way crabs walk as a backward or imbalanced move, which makes the fish laugh.

خنده دار = something which makes you laugh

بی اختیار = without control – unintentionally

خنده اش گرفت = (the fish) started laughing

بیچاره! = you, the weak person! – Poor fellow

هنوز = still – yet

بلد نیستی = you don't know (you still don't know how to walk, how could you possibly know whose hands are running this world? – something like this!!)

فاصله گرفتن = to separate – to depart – to stay away from

سایه ای = a shadow – shade

بر آب افتاد = fell on water

و ناگهان = and suddenly

ضربه محکمی = a strong strike / punch / hit (something hit the crab hard)

فرو کردن = to bury – to pierce something (hard) into the ground (the strike was so strong that buried the crab into the sand)

مارمولک = lizard

قیافه خراب = the appearance / condition of the crab

چنان = so much – so that – so ... that

لیز خوردن = to slip – to slide

نزدیک بود = it was close – (he almost fell)

توی = in – inside

دیگر = no more – no longer

بیرون آمدن = to come out

چوپان = shepherd

لب آب = near water

ایستاده = is standing
گله = cattle – flock
پوزه = animals' lips (!!)
پوزه کسی را به خاک مالیدن = to defeat someone badly – to demolish someone
مع و مع و یع = the voice sheep and goats create – bleat
پر کردن = to fill
آنقدر = long enough
صبر کردن = to wait
آنوقت = then
صدای زدن = to call out somebody
جانور = beast – animal – creature
عاقل = wise
دانا = a person who knows a lot – a person of knowledge
اینست که = that's why
در راه = on the way – on my way
می ترسانند مرا = they scared me of - I was scared of
خیلی = very – very much
مرغ سقا = a kind of bird that hunts fish
اره ماهی = a kind of fish (that probably eats smaller fish)
پرنده ماهی خوار = a kind of bird that eats fish – probably, kingfisher (sorry for not knowing 'animology'!)

Lesson 154

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangji - Page 10

Salam, welcome back!

After a long recession in 'energy-giving compliments' (!), Katty from Australia has sent me a warm message. It is an interesting message (at least to me!), so I asked her if I could post it here. Although she had intended her comments to be a personal encouragement, she agreed to let me share it with the other students. Hopefully, you too will like it.

My special thanks to her and to all of you - whether you have the time to write or not.

Here is Katty's message:

'Dear Hassan,

I just wanted to let you know how appreciative I am of all your hard work putting together such comprehensive Persian lessons. I am an Australian who stumbled on your site 12 months ago now, while messing about with google.

I have 3 Iranian friends. Although we all met in the work place (they are 2 doctors and a pharmacist and I am a nurse), we soon developed close friendships outside of work as well. Originally, I thought it would be fun to learn a couple of greetings in Farsi to surprise my friends with, but then I found your site and since then, something amazing has grown out of it!

You had me hooked from lesson 1 and not only have I learned to speak, read and write a little of the language (I'm currently working through lesson 90), it has become a whole cultural experience as well. As I work my way through your lessons, I have been exposed to a host of new thoughts, interests and delights. Thank you Hassan, for between you and my 3 friends, I have grown a great deal personally.

I love studying your lessons and find them very thorough and well explained. I also enjoy your sense of humour as well as the passion that becomes evident at times. You have given me a great deal of pleasure in learning your language, not to mention pleasure to my friends as they enjoy my efforts! Those efforts have often been the source of much good natured laughter as I stumble my way through simple conversation. It works both ways though, we laugh about their English mistakes too, and just as my friends help me with my Farsi, I help them with their Australian, which I think at times they think is a totally different language to English!

The whole experience however, has not just restricted to language. I have learned a lot about Persian culture, literature, geography, politics, music and food. (My teenage sons particularly like the food part!) But most importantly, we have all learned that in this world, that is so full of violence and hatred, it is possible to bridge the gaps of language, culture and religion, and experience lasting and deep mutual friendships, based on respect, tolerance and love for each other. And that is a lesson I so want my sons to remember all their lives.

So, thank you Hassan, for the big part you have unknowingly played in the life education of myself and my children. I can only begin to imagine the innumerable hours that you have dedicated freely to your site. Perhaps at times you have felt discouraged or very tired of the whole thing and maybe even wondered why you ever started it in the first place, but know this - you have played a part in influencing and bringing good things to this family in far off Australia, and if you have touched us, how many others who visit your site have also received in a similar way?

daestetun daerd naekoneh!

khoda hafez,

Kathy

* * *

All right,

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 10](#)

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words.

See you next week,

Hassan

Useful Drills 154

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 10 - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

اره ماهی = swordfish
پرندۀ ی ماهی خوار = heron
این طرف ها = around this area – near here – here
پیدایشان نمی شود = they can't be found in this area – they don't exist/live here
مخصوصاً = particularly – especially
که = which – that (as in a clause)
توی دریا = in the sea
سقائک = مرغ سقا = pelican
همین پایین ها = down the river – nearby
مبادا = lest – here in this text, it is a word for warning, similar to 'watch out; the bird may deceive you'.
فریب = deceit
فریب خوردن = to be cheated/ deceived
کیسه = bag – a 'bag' near the pelican's neck, in which the bird stores the fish it has just captured
خیلی آب می گیرد = it (the bag) can hold/contain a large quantity of water
ندانسته = without noticing it
وارد شدن = to enter
بکراست = straight – without delay
البته = of course
گرسنه = hungry
من گرسنه ام = I am hungry
من گشنمه (man goshnameh) (oral/informal) = I am hungry
اگه او گرسنه اش نباشد = if he/she is not feeling hungry
ذخیره کردن = to store
بعد = later
بخورد = to eat
مگر اینکه = unless
پاره کردن = to tear/cut apart
خنجر = dagger
خنجری = a dagger
گرفتار شدن = to be trapped/captured/hunted
آنوقت = then – at this time – saying this
ریز = little – small

برگشت = returned
تشکر لازم نیست = you don't need to thank me – no need to thank me
از این خنجرها = daggers like this
وقتی = when
بیکار می شوم = when I have nothing to do – when I am free – during my spare time
می نشینم = I sit
گیاه = plant – grass
تیغ = thorn – sharp leaves of a plant
از = with – from
دانا = wise – of wisdom – knowledgeable
تو مثل = like you – similar to you
قبل از من = before me
مگر = a word to show emphasis
مگر پیش از این هم او را دیده ای؟ = have you already seen him/her?
مگر پیش از من (قبل از من) ماهی یی (ماهی دیگری) از اینجا گذشته است؟ = has any other fish gone this way before me?
خیلی ها = a lot – many
دسته = group – crowd
به تنگ آوردن = to make someone tired/give up/helpless – to put pressure on someone
حرف می آورد = word brings/creates (new) word
به حساب فضولی ام نگذاری = sorry for asking – hope you don't mind me asking ...
بگو بیتم = tell me
چطور؟ = how?

Lesson 155

Hello everybody, welcome back.

Before we begin today, please allow me to wish you and all your loved ones a very happy and prosperous new year. As you may know, tomorrow, March 20, will be Noruz, the Persian New Year. I am not going to talk much about this occasion but please let me tell you something about the Persian calendar.

One of the students wanted to know the reason I have put 'the year 2568' on the Easy Persian homepage, since according to many other websites, the coming year should be '1388'.

Before I explain this, please let me humbly request our Muslim brothers and sisters not to side against me. Please read this patiently and be honest in your passing judgement- if any.

By the year 1979 (Western calendar) when the Islamic revolution hit the nation, Iranians had their own traditional Persian calendar according to which the year was around 2536. This traditional calendar, with its own long history, dated back to the time of Cyrus the Great, who was the king of Iran about 2530 years ago during the Achaemenid Dynasty. In very simple and short words, the traditional calendar mirrored 2500 years of history in my country.

In 1979 after the religious government came into power, its leaders, at the top of whom was Khomeini, the Supreme Leader, decided that the old calendar must be replaced by an Islamic calendar to reflect the fact that our country was born again in Islam. Although this Islamic calendar, supported by religious figures, existed during the Shah of Iran, it never took the place of the old one. This new calendar dates back to the time when Prophet Mohammad moved from Mecca to Medina in Saudi Arabia about 1388 years ago. With the old calendar gone, more than one thousand years of our history was wiped off the map of our culture. There is a huge cultural disaster here.

With all my due respect to everybody, I want to say that to me my nation is more important than my religion; I had no idea about my future belief system at the time I was born but I did have a country where I could begin my life. Therefore, belief system is not my first priority. Probably I don't need to remind you that millions of Iranians, who are homeless today, have fled their motherland because of the belief system imposed on them.

As far as ideology or faith is concerned, I think anybody who says 'I am the only way' is an arrogant – or at least, his statement could mislead people. Each person is free to decide what to believe; your faith is your most personal affair. Diversity enriches society.

Probably this confession will upset some of you but, since many want to know, let me tell you that I am neither Muslim, nor Christian, nor Baha'i, nor part of any other religion. I think believing in one particular religion narrows my mind and this will make me look at the world through a particular 'window'. Although I consider myself spiritual, I don't like to look at the world around me through any religious window. Instead, I prefer to step out of the house of religions to see the whole picture of my surroundings. I want to choose for myself what I like, not to accept what my parents have chosen for me. I love love. Religions divide people in hatred. To me, turning off my brain and letting my religious leaders decide on what is good for me, is an unforgivable insult to my brain, which is the best member of my body.

Anyway, it seems that I am losing my control! In short, the Islamic government has cut out one millennium from our history and, apparently, most Iranians are not happy with this.

Ok, that was the Persian calendar! Happy the year 2568 to all of you!

All right,

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words.

See you next week,

Hassan

Useful Drills 155

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 11 - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

با هم = together – united

آخر نه که با همند = since they are together – due to the fact that they live together

همینکه = as soon as – no sooner than

تور = net – fishing net

وارد شدن = to enter (the net) – to fall in trap

می کشند = they pull

تور را با خودشان می کشند = they pull away the net – (Together, the fish swim and take the fishing net away)

ته دریا = bottom of the sea

گذاشت = (he/she) put – (the lizard put her ears on/against the breakage in the rock)

شکاف = gap – breakage – division – divide

سنگ = stone – rock

گوش داد = (she) listened

مرخص می شوم = I have to go – I am leaving

من دیگر مرخص می شوم = (This is a very common phrase. You may use this at the end of your conversation when you want to say goodbye)

ناچار = inevitably – having no other choice – to have to

راه افتاد = he/she took off – here in this text, it means something like this: the fish continued his journey

همینطور = on and on – continuously – repeatedly

سوال پشت سوال = question after question – questions, questions, questions, one after another

دایم = repeatedly – on and on – always

سوال از خودش می کرد = he/she raised questions to himself/herself – he kept asking himself – he had many questions to ask himself

بینم = let me see – am I doing the right thing? – is this stream really taking me to the sea? => You may use any word or phrase in your native language to create the picture of somebody who is talking to himself in an uncertain situation

راستی = truly – really

نکند = what if - Lest

زورش به من برسد = what if pelican is stronger than me? What if I can't defeat the pelican?

دلش می آید؟ = how can a swordfish eat the other fish of its own kind?

چه دشمنی با ما دارد؟ = what is his reason to be our enemy? What is this animosity between him and us?

وَجِب = span – the distance between the fingertip of your thumb and the fingertip of another finger, usually the ring finger, when your hand is wide open – here in the text, it means, inch by inch (during this journey)

چیز تازه ای = something new

یاد گرفتن = to learn

حالا دیگر خوشش می آمد ... = now, he liked ...

معلق = somersault

معلق زنان = zanan in this combination means 'an action which is continued/being repeated'

قوت می گرفت = he felt/would feel power within himself

أهو = gazelle – deer

با عجله = hastily – in a rush

خوشگله = beautiful

چه عجله ای داری؟ = what's the hurry?

شکارچی = hunter

دنبالم کرده = is after me – is chasing me

گلوله = bullet

به من زده = بهم زده = (one bullet actually hit me)

ایناهاش = voila – here it is

جای گلوله = the place where the bullet had hit the deer – (the fish couldn't locate the bullet on the deer's skin)

لنگ لنگان = limping

راست می گوید = (the fish, by seeing the deer limpidly running away, knew that it - the deer- was telling the truth)

یک جا = at one place – somewhere

لاک پشت ها = tortoises – turtles

در گرمای آفتاب = in the warmth of the sun – under the sun

چرت می زدند = were taking a nap

کبک = partridge

قهقهه = the sound caused by loud laughter – here in this text, it refers to the singing of partridges

دره = in the valley
 می بیچید = (the singing) filled the valley
 عطر = smell – odor
 علف = grass
 کوهی = mountain – mountainous – of mountain
 موج زدن = to move like waves (the wild/mountainous perfume of grass filling the air)
 قاطی شدن = to mix /be mixed (the perfume mixed with water => could be sensed from under the water)
 بعد از ظهر = in the afternoon
 بهن = wide – vast (in the afternoon, the fish arrived at a place where the valley was vast)
 بیشه = thicket – coppice – grove - pond
 آب از وسط بیشه می گذشت = water passed from within / through a pond /thicket
 آب آن قدر زیاد شده بود که = there was so much water that ...
 راستی راستی = truly – from the bottom of his socks (sorry!! From the bottom of his heart!)
 کیف کردن = to enjoy something very much/wholeheartedly
 برخورد = (he then) came across a lot of fish
 از وقتی که = since when – from the time
 از مادرش جدا شده بود = he had separated himself from his mother
 ماهی ندیده بود = (he) hadn't seen other fish
 دورش را گرفتند = circled him – surrounded him
 مثل اینکه = it seems that – you seem ...
 غریبه ای = you are a stranger
 ها؟ = this /ha/ is very similar to 'eh' in Canadian English (I am getting tired, eh?!! =
 daram khasteh misham, ha!)

Ok – man digar morakh.khas mishavam! See you next week!

Lesson 156

Salam beh hamegi!

I hope you are doing well, particularly, with your Persian!

Before we begin today, I have a few announcements!

1- So far, two people have shown interest in translating the little black fish. If you want to take part in this 'fishy' project (!), please feel free to let me know. Also, please tell me if I am allowed to put your name online. Thanks.

2- One of the students, Sardar Ji, from India, has kindly sent me several pages from a Persian language book (primary school book), with its translation. I will put it online next week. My special thanks to Sardar Ji. Namaskar ji!

3- If you send me the Persian version of this Rumi's poem, you will get free access to the Easy Persian Love Songs Collection. But don't try to cheat me by sending something fake! Honestly, I am very good at poetry (except this poem)!

Here is the poem in English:

'When we are dead,

Seek not our tomb in the earth,

But find it in the hearts of men'.

4- For those of you, who have been eagerly asking for a picture of 'this Hassan' so they can see 'the face of their teacher while studying', I have good news! Since generosity is part of my nature (!!), instead of one single picture, I am giving away a whole bunch of my video files!

Recently I have begun delivering speeches, but I noticed it's no fun to talk to myself only! Therefore, I decided to record what I say and share the files with others on internet. I hope these video files will be of use to some people.

Let me warn you that unlike the peaceful Hassan you are dealing with here on Easy Persian, Hassan the speaker may not be so friendly. On my new website, I will talk about a wide variety of topics such as religion, religious dogmas, freedom, human rights, books, movies, democracy, dictatorship and so on and so forth. That Hassan, whom you will see shortly, is not talking from any religious, ideological or political point of view. Since he is trying to explore things as they are, he feels free to put question marks in front of everybody and everything including but not limited to God, messengers/prophets and the holy books. You may not like that Hassan if you are religious, or if you are looking at the world through 'the window' of your party, congregation, leader, or organisation.

But you are lucky because the language in those video files is Persian! That's all I could do to maintain peace and friendship between you and me!

You may find the temporary address here: <http://www.easypersian.com/shabneshini/index.html>

My very best wishes to you,

Hassan H. Faramarz

Sunday, 12 April 2009

All right,

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 12](#)

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words.

See you next week,

Hassan

Useful Drills 156

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - [Page 12](#) - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

همین = this – this very same
رودخانه = river
سر راه = on the way – on your way
کیسه = bag
گل و گشاد = large – large and wide
باز = still – again
هر طوری شده = under any circumstances (no matter what)
به زودی = soon
میان ماهی ها چو افتاد = rumor/news reached the other fish (this phrase is not very common)
ترسی ندارد = (the little fish) has no fear from – is not afraid of
وسوسه شدن = to be tempted – to have/get the desire to do something
از ترس بزرگترها = due to/since/because they were afraid of the older fish (their parents)
صدایشان در نیامد = they didn't say anything/remained silent
اگر مرغ سقا نبود = if the pelican weren't (wasn't) around – if we didn't fear the pelican, (we would go with you)
لب رودخانه = near the river – on riverbank
ده = village
ظرف = dish – dishes – plate
مدتی = for some time – for a little while
هیاهو = (loud) noise/voice
گوش دادن = to listen
آب تنی = swimming – swim
تماشا کردن = to watch

Lesson 157

Salam beh hamegi! Welcome back!

Thank you very much for your comments on my [video presentations](#). I will be more than happy if you share them with your Persian speaking friends - **BUT** if your friends are supportive of the Iranian government, then don't tell them anything about this! You may lose a friend and I may lose a student!!

Thanks a million!

All right,

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the video file.

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 13](#)

Then go to [Useful Drills](#) page for the new words.

See you next week,

Hassan

Useful Drills 157

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 13 - Words

Note: *This is just a suggestion and you don't have to take this serious.* The Control Panel of my webhost tells me that people in more than 80 countries have visited Easy Persian this month. It is huge, isn't it? I was thinking if it is possible for you to translate the little black fish into your own language with the help of the words and phrases I provide you with. At the end of 23 weeks, we will have at least 80 black fish!! Don't worry if you are not a well-founded translator; just do your best. And also, don't worry if many other students who speak your language may translate this book into your language! This is absolutely ok; we may have 10 German translations, 15 French, 20 English, and so on. If you send them to me, I will post all of them together under your glorious names! I think this is a good idea.

New Words:

گرفت خوابید = (the fish) fell asleep – went to bed

نصف شب = midnight

توی ماه افتاده = (the moon) has fallen into the water – the picture of the moon is reflected in the water

بیرون خزیدن = to creep/crawl/swim out (quietly)

بیش ماه رفت = (the little fish) went to the moon (to its reflection in the water)

شما کجا اینجا کجا! = (A Persian saying) when you see someone in an unusual place – or – when a friend comes visit you after a long time, you say, shoma koja, inja koja! (How strange of you to be seen here/ to come see old friends!)

جهان = world – universe

جهانگرد = tourist

جهانگردی = tourism

جهانگردی می کنم = I am traveling around the world

بگردی = > گشتن = to see – to visit (the world is very big; you can't see everywhere)

باشد = it's ok – no problem – let it be big

جلو نورم را بگیرد = to block my light

بتابد = تابیدن = to shine

می تابانم = I reflect it

راستش = to be frank – honestly

راستی = by the way

Lesson 158

Dear all,

Salam arz shod! I hope everything is going well.

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the new lesson. You may find the new words below.

Don't forget to check the Useful Drills page; you will find something interesting there. A generous person from India, a place I adore, has translated Primary School, Grade 1, for you. It is a nice job – about 12 pages - done by Sardar Ji and, each week, I will put one page online for you to study. He has my respect and gratitude.

Best wishes,

Hassan

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 14](#)

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 14 - Words

آکرم توپ دارد.
آکرم با پری دوست است.
آکرم با پری توپ بازی می کند.
پری توپ را می اندازد.
آکرم توپ را با پا می زند.

1. Akram has a ball.
2. Akram is a friend of Pari.
3. Akram is playing ball with Pari.
4. Pari is throwing the ball.
5. Akram is kicking the ball.

این مرد نانوا است.
نانوا نان می پزد.
نانوا نان را در تنور می پزد.
او نان را از تنور بیرون می آورد.

1. This man is a baker.
2. The baker is baking / cooking the bread.
3. The baker is cooking Nan in the Oven.
4. He is bringing the bread out of the Oven.

You may find Useful Drills [here](#).

Useful Drills 158

What you see below is 'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1 – translated by Sardar Ji from India. Each week, I will post one page right here – for about 12 weeks. I hope you will like this nice work.

Thank you Sardar Ji – Namaskar Ji!

'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1

آن نمک است.
آن نمکدان است.
این کودک است.
این کودک اکرم است.
اکرم نمکدان در دست دارد.
او با نمکدان نمک می ریزد.

1. That is salt.
2. That is salt container.
3. This is a child.
4. This child is Akram.
5. Akram has salt container in her hand.
6. She is pouring salt with salt container.

این اردک است.
اردک در آب است.
اردک در آب بازی می کند.
این بز است.
این بز بازی می کند.

1. This is a duck.
2. The duck is in water.
3. The duck is playing in the water.
4. This is a goat.
5. This goat is playing.

اکرم توپ دارد.
اکرم با پری دوست است.
اکرم با پری توپ بازی می کند.
پری توپ را می اندازد.
اکرم توپ را با پا می زند.

1. Akram has a ball.
2. Akram is a friend of Pari.
3. Akram is playing ball with Pari.
4. Pari is throwing the ball.
5. Akram is kicking the ball.

این مرد نانوا است.
نانوا نان می پزد.
نانوا نان را در تنور می پزد.
او نان را از تنور بیرون می آورد.

1. This man is a baker.
2. The baker is baking / cooking the bread.
3. The baker is cooking Nan in the Oven.
4. He is bringing the bread out of the Oven.

Dubareh salam!

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the new lesson - [page 15](#). You may find the new words below.

Don't forget Sardar Ji on our [Useful Drills](#) page.

Best,

Hassan

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 15](#)

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 15 - Words

کردن التماس = to beg/entreat/plead

افتادن به التماس = to beg/entreat/plead

حضرت = (a religious word) your/his holiness – your/his highness – sir

شنیدن = to have heard about something or someone's ability/capability/good character

Ex:

تعریف شما را خیلی از حسن شنیده ام = Hassan has spoken highly of you – Hassan has praised you a lot – I have heard Hassan talking about you very positively

خیلی وقت پیش = long time ago

اگر لطف کنید = if you kindly ...

منقار = beak (birds' mouth!)

منقار مبارک = (religious connotation) your kind/holy/good beak (if you kindly open your holy beak a bit!

دعا گو = a person who says praises

Ex:

اگر به من ویزا بدهید همیشه دعا گوی شما خواهم بود! = if you give/issue me visa, I will always pray for you!

وجود مبارک = your/his holiness – you

همین حالا = right now – immediately

قورت دادن = to swallow – to gulp down

ذخیره = something saved for a later use – deposit

ماهی ذخیره دارم = I still have fish in my bag – I have saved fish in my bag

ته = bottom

ریخته بود = there were

کسی را از راه در بردن = to deceive someone

معدن = mine (as in gold mine) – a source of ...

بخشایش = generosity – forgiveness (do you think this bird is forgiving enough to let you go if you beg him?)

به یک شرط = on one condition

فضول = nosy – intruder

خفه کردن = to kill someone by taking oxygen away from him (such as to drown a person by holding his head under water – to cover someone's mouth and nose in such a way that he can't breathe, and dies) – to suffocate – to drown – also: to suppress and demolish a movement (unlike what you witnessed on streets in Iran!!)

به دست آوردن = to get/gain

کنار کشیدن = to pull over – to stay aside – to stay away – to walk back or withdraw (due to fear)

به جان همدیگر / یکدیگر انداختن = to create hatred or animosity among two or more people to make them fight each other or to break their unity

من نقشه ای دارم = I have a plan

در فکر چیزی بودن = to think about / of something/somebody – to have hope for something – to have focused on something

ریختند = (here in this sentence) they attacked the black fish

عقب نشستن = to withdraw – to step back

به هر حال = anyway – whether you like it or not

گیر افتادن = to have fallen in trap / trouble

زورتان هم به من نمی رسد = you are not strong enough to defeat me – you are not as strong as I am

Useful Drills 159

What you see below is 'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1 – translated by Sardar Ji from India. Each week, I will post one page right here – for about 12 weeks. I hope you will like this nice work.

Thank you Sardar Ji – Namaskar Ji!

'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1 - Week 2

آن آسب می دَوَد.
آن آسب تَنَد می دَوَد.
آن مَرَد آسب سِواری می کَنَد.
آن مَرَد آسب را تَنَد می رانَد.

1. That horse is running.
2. That horse is running fast.
3. That man is riding the horse.
4. That man is riding the horse fast.

اِمروز باران پارید.
اِمروز باران تَنَد پارید.
مِن در دِیستان بودم.
مِن از دِیستان اَمدَم.
مِن تَنَد اَمدَم.

1. Today it rained.
2. Today it rained hard.
3. I was at school.
4. I came from school.
5. I came fast.

اِسْم این پسر نادر است.
اَمین دوستِ نادر است.
کتابِ اَمین در دَستِ نادر بود.
نادر کتابِ او را پس داد.

1. The name of this boy is Nader.
2. Ameen is Nader's friend.
3. Ameen's book was in Nader's hand (Nader had Ameen's book).
4. Nader gave back his book to him.

سارا سه روز بیمار بود.
اِمروز سارا به دِیستان می رَوَد.
مادر سارا به مدیر دِیستان نامه می نویسد.
او به مدیر می نویسد که سارا بیمار بوده است.

1. Sara was sick for three days.
2. Today Sara is going to school.
3. Sara's mother is writing a letter to the school principal.
4. She is writing to the principal that Sara was sick (has been sick).

Lesson 160

Hello everybody,

I hope all of you are doing well. The reason I am not updating these pages very often, as I used to, is not that I don't want to see you! It is because I simply can't do it! To tell the truth, I have

decided to go back to school! We Iranians say, “پیری گه کرم ویری پ” - “peeri yo marekeh geeri”! [Listen!](#) Basically it means, “doing at old age what you should have done at young age!” or “doing the activities of the youth (and trying to show the others that you are still young) at an old age”!

Don't think I am old! I am only about twenty years older than many of my classmates!! But who cares! It does worth it. It is a memorable feeling and I suggest you, too, do something to feel young!

I am doing philosophy in a degree level and absolutely love what I am doing! Yeah! But as you can imagine, this means a lot of work and 'suffering' for poor Hassan and the family!

Now that you know what Iranians say about a person who wants to look young at an old age, please let me tell you what the very same Iranians say about a person who - in my case - through disclosing his secrets tries to be friendlier with others more than before! We say, “مالس مالت سور” - “salam e roostae bi tama nist!” [Listen!](#) This means: “A (poor) villager is expecting something from you when he comes greets you warmly!” I am not expecting much! It is just this: if, by accident, you have saved some money to give away to those who need it, or to throw it into the ushers' bags in your church this coming Sunday(Just a joke!), please send that donation to Hassan because he desperately needs your support now. Khoda kheiretun bedeh! (May God reward you back!)

Today, I seem very talkative! Just one more short note! I finally finished writing my memoir - with a selfless friend's help, of course - and signed a contract with a publisher in USA last week. Again, YEAH! I expect the book to be in the market around Christmas - or early in the next year. I will certainly let you know about it.

All right, no more 'roodeh derazi!' (ی زارد ه دور) (Being very talkative).

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the new lesson - [page 16](#). You may find the new words below.

Don't forget Sardar Ji on our [Useful Drills](#) page.

Best,

Hassan

کردن خفه = to kill someone or something by taking oxygen away from him/her/it – to suffocate – to drown – to suppress or demolish a voice or movement
ما آزادی می خواهیم = we want freedom!
عقل از سرتان پریده! = wisdom has flown away from your head!! You are out of your mind
راه فرار = a way to freedom – in this text, it is something like this: you can't get out of here
گول زدن = to cheat – to deceive
گول خوردن = to be/get deceived
تو این حرف ها را برای این می زنی که ... = you say this to ...
جان خودت را نجات بدهی = to save yourself
فکر کسی را کردن = to think of/about something/somebody – to respect other people's rights – to value others
نشان دادن = to show – to present – to prove
بیجان = بی جان = without life – lifeless – dead
مردن زدن = خود را به مردن زدن = to pretend to be dead
آن وقت = then
بینیم = let's see
رها کردن = to free – to set somebody or something free
قبول کردن = to agree – to accept
همه تان را = all of you (as an object in the sentence)
پاره پاره کردن = to tear something apart
وسط حرف کسی دویدن = to jump into someone's words/statement – to interrupt somebody/something
داد زدن = to speak in a loud voice – to cry out – to shout
بس کن دیگر! = enough! That's enough – I have had enough of it – stop!
تحمل کسی یا چیزی را داشتن = to tolerate someone or something
من تحمل این حرفها را ندارم = I can't stand these words – I have had enough of these words – these words scare me – I can't take any more of it
بچه ننه = mother's little baby (as a very negative statement) – a person who gives up very easily – a person who can't stand hardship (see the word taham.mol above) is called bacheh naneh!
ناز نازی = almost the same as bacheh naneh
چرا دیگر = why then? – Why?

چیزی را جلوی چشم کسی گرفتن = to hold something before someone's face – to show something to somebody

ناچار = without having any other choice – necessarily

Ex: ناچار پذیرفتم (nachar paziroftam) = I agreed/accepted (because I had to – because I had no other options)

دروغگی = pretending – falsely

با هم زد و خورد کردن = to get involved into physical confrontation – to fight one another

زودن خود را به مردن = to pretend to be dead

بالا آمدن = to come up (as in water level) – to raise – to ascend – (here in this text, it means something like this: the fish swam up out of the water which was in the bird's bag to talk to the bird – terrible translation!!!)

فضول = nosy person – a curious person (in a negative sense) who wants to know what the others are doing - a person with sharp tongue/language

به پاداش همین کار = in return/response to what you did

زنده زنده = alive

قورت دادن = to swallow – to gulp down

حسابی = (see the examples below)

Ex: به غذای حسابی خوردم (yeh ghaza ye hesabi khordam) = I ate a lot (because the food was wonderful and I was really starving)

Ex: به خواب حسابی کردم (yeh khab e hesabi kardam) = I slept like a piglet – as the Chinese say, meaning, deep and good sleep, because I was really tired

Ex: به تفریح حسابی کردم (yeh tafreeh e hesabi kardam) = I spent a good amount of time on visiting various places

مجال پیدا کردن = to have/get an opportunity – to have enough time to ...

به سرعت برق = as fast as electricity – in one glance

رد شدن = to pass – to go through

کارشان ساخته شد = they died – they fell into the bird's stomach

Useful Drills 160

What you see below is 'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1 – translated by Sardar Ji from India. Each week, I will post one page right here – for about 12 weeks. I hope you will like this nice work.

Thank you Sardar Ji – Namaskar Ji!

'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1 - **Week 3**

مادر آکرم آش می پزد.
آکرم سبزی را پاک می کند.
آکرم سبزی را در آش می ریزد.
مادر آکرم کشیک درست می کند.
او کشیک را در آش می ریزد.
آکرم آش را دوست دارد.

1. Akram's mother is preparing/cooking soup.
2. Akram is cleaning vegetables.
3. Akram is pouring the vegetables in the soup.
4. Akram's mother is preparing whey (Kashak).
5. She is pouring kashak in the soup.
6. Akram likes soup.

آمین برادر آکرم است.
پدر آمین و آکرم در مسافرت است.
فردا آمین و آکرم با مادرشان پیش پدرشان می روند.
آمین و آکرم کیف، کتاب و دفترشان را می برند.
آمین و آکرم در مسافرت درس را فراموش نمی کنند.

1. Ameen is Akram's brother.
2. Ameen and Akram's father is on travel.
3. Tomorrow Ameen and Akram will go with their mother to see their father.
4. Ameen and Akram are taking with them their purse, books and notebooks.
5. Ameen and Akram do not forget their studies on journey.

آمین با پدرش از بازار تخته خرید.
آمین با پدرش از بازار میخ خرید.
آمین میخ و تخته را به خانه برد.
او با تخته و میخ میز ساخت.
پدرش در ساختن میز به او کمک کرد.

1. Ameen and his father bought a board from market.
2. Ameen and his father bought nails from market.
3. Ameen took the nails and the board home.
4. He made a table with the board and the nails.
5. His father helped him in making the table.

Lesson 161

Hello everyone,

Please let me wish you a merry Christmas and a very happy new year. I hope the year 2010 will be a year of good health and success for all of you.

Please right-click on the link below and choose 'Save Target As' to download the new lesson - [page 17](#). You may find the new words below.

Don't forget Sardar Ji on our [Useful Drills](#) page.

Best,

Hassan

[The little black fish \(mahi siah e koochooloo\) – by Samad Behrangi – page 17](#)

The Little Black Fish - Mahi siah e koochooloo - Samad Behrangi - Page 17 - Words

همان وقت = immediately – at that moment – at the same time
 خنجرش را کشید = pulled his/her dagger (out of its hidden place)
 و به یک ضربه = and with one hit/stroke
 دیواره = wall, parapet, the curtain-like wall of the bird's bag
 شکافتن = to break/cut apart
 در رفتن = to escape
 از درد = in pain – painfully
 سرش را به آب کوبید = (the bird) hit its head against the water (looking for the fish)
 دنبال کردن = to chase – to trace
 دشت هموار = flat land/field
 پیوستن = to join – to come together – to become a member/supporter of
 چند برابر = several times bigger
 فراوانی = abundance – to be available in large quantity – good economical time
 لذت بردن = to enjoy – to have good time with
 به خود آمدن = to come to your senses – to wake up to truth – to realize
 ته = bottom
 آب ته ندارد = the water has no bottom! (Very deep)
 بر خوردن = to come across something – to see something
 به جایی برخورد = (the fish) didn't come across any object (the water was endless and the fish could not find the edges)
 هر طور که دلش خواست = as he/she wished – as he/she liked it (without any restrictions)
 باز = still - again
 مثل برق = very quickly – as fast as electricity!
 اره = saw (as an object/tool)
 دو دم = double sided/edged
 جلو = in front of – on (its mouth)
 همین حالاست که = that is the time when (the other fish will kill him – for example) – that is the end of his/her life
 تکه تکه کردن = to cut something/somebody (here in this sentence, the black fish) into pieces
 زود = quickly
 به خود جنبیدن = to move or to shake (himself/herself) (I don't think this is very common in Persian)
 جا خالی کردن = to move to one direction in order to miss something that is coming your way (in order to hit you)
 وسط راه = on his way
 گله = a large group – cattle – flock
 غریبه = stranger – newcomer
 باتلاق = swamp
 فرو رفتن = to be swallowed by – to go down
 دسته = group
 داخل شدن = (here in this sentence) to join – to be part of
 گشت زدن = to travel around – to go on sightseeing
 در بردن = to take something away – to steal
 همراه بودن = to be with – to accompany

Useful Drills 161

What you see below is 'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1 – translated by Sardar Ji from India. Each week, I will post one page right here – for about 12 weeks. I hope you will like this nice work.

Thank you Sardar Ji – Namaskar Ji!

'Ketab e Avval e Dabestan' – Primary School, Year 1 - Week 4

آمین دوچرخه دارد.
پیچ دوچرخه آش باز شده است.
آمین یا آچار پیچ دوچرخه را سفت می کند.
او دوچرخه سواری را دوست دارد.

1. Ameen has a bicycle.
2. His bicycle's screw is open/loose.
3. Ameen is fixing/tightening the screw/bolt with the wrench (screwdriver).
4. He likes cycling.

آمین و آکرم به مادر خود کمک می کنند.
آکرم سفره را به اتاق می آورد.
آمین بشقاب و قاشق را به اتاق می آورد.
آکرم قندان را پر از قند می کند.

1. Ameen and Akram help their mother.
2. Akram brings tablecloth to the room.
3. Ameen brings spoons and plates to the room.
4. Akram fills the sugar bowl with sugar (cube sugar).

مادر آکرم و آمین چای درست می کند.
او چای را در قوری دم می کند.
وقتی چای دم کشید، او برای آکرم و آمین یک استکان چای می ریزد.

1. Akram and Ameen's mother is making tea.
2. She is brewing the tea in the teapot.
3. When the tea is ready, she will pour a cup for Akram and Ameen each.

این گوسفند است.
مردم از شیر و گوشت و پشم گوسفند استفاده می کنند.
این سگ است.
اگر سگ گرگ را ببیند پارس می کند.
گرگ از ترس سگ به گوسفندان نزدیک نمی شود.

1. This is a sheep.
2. People make use of milk, meat and wool of sheep.
3. This is a dog.
4. If the dog sees a wolf, it will bark. Or, the dog barks when it sees a wolf.
5. Wolves, being afraid of dogs, don't come near sheep.